

VOLUME XXXIV

JANUARY, 1925

NUMBER 138

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of Its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITOR

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry

Copyright, 1925, by

The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association. Editor, Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Baltimore, Md., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

Office of Publication, Baltimore, Md. Editorial Office, Washington, D. C. \$2.50 per year; single copy, 65c. Canadian and foreign postage 25c additional

Recommended

The German Cavalry in Belgium and France, 1914.

By Lieutenant-General von Poseck, Inspector General of Cavalry, German Army. Maps, index. (Price, \$4.00). The only COMPLETE story of the very IMPORTANT work of the German Cavalry at the beginning of the World War. How the Cavalry facilitated the rapid advance of the German armies, the concentration, marches, reconnaissances, initial maneuvers, MOUNTED and dismounted fights, CHARGES, services of security and information, meeting engagements, the WHOLE story told in chronological order by units and so tied up and related that one can easily follow it through out the excellent maps. Material for this book came principally from EYE-WITNESSES and is therefore doubly valuable. Read what Cavalry DID.

As to Military Training

Arranged by Major J. F. Wall, U. S. Cavalry. 267 pages. Illustrated maps. (Price, \$2.50). Compilation of IMPORTANT parts of manuals. Handy for saddle pocket. "A handy compendium of useful information well adapted to the needs of the mounted service and which any one entering upon a military career may study with great profit."—W. A. Holbrook, Major-General, U. S. A., Chief of Cavalry.

Elementary Equitation

By Baretto de Souza. 338 pages. 96 illustrations. \$3.50. An excellent book in its field. Clarity of explanation, fortified by a large number of very helpful drawings, is one of the principal virtues of this book. The writer is a well-trained and experienced riding-master, who bases his methods and explanations on sound principles of anatomy and horse mechanics. Helpful to any rider. Emphasis upon certain desirables—lightness of hand, suppleness of trunk and arms, for example—just to mention a few—is sure to get under the skin of the most confirmed horse-killer. The chapter on "correct position of the rider" is particularly good. Matter not commonly found in horse books on the side saddle is presented in this book. The several gaits, the use of the legs and the reins are given quite fully, as well as excellent cautions as to the manner of applying these aids. A few simple suppling exercises and flexions are described, and the last chapter deals with stumblers, sblers, rearers, runaways, punishments, and rewards.

BOOK DEPARTMENT

U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

1624 H STREET N. W.

WASHINGTON, D. C.

Cavalrymen! Read This!!

YOUR Association is in the magazine business. As a dealer, the Association gets a commission you as individuals cannot get. If every Troop and officer sent their magazine orders through the Association, the profit in a year would pay for the publication of one number of the Cavalry Journal. We guarantee as low prices as can be gotten, meeting all competition. Send ALL your magazine and book orders through YOUR Association.

SERVICE FOR THE SERVICE

A History of Cavalry

By Colonel Denton. 467 pages. Index, 11 maps. (Price, \$4.20.) The BEST constructed book on our shelves and the ONLY history of Cavalry. Every statement of fact substantiated by reference to the original source. Accurate, vivid, full of information, with pen photos of the great cavalymen of all ages. Shows the development of arms, armor, tactics, organization, the growth of the infantry and artillery along with the Cavalry and the interplay one on the other, and in this sense is a SHORT HISTORY OF WARFARE. All important battles described. SECOND EDITION. No Cavalry library complete without this book.

As to Polo

By Forbes. New Edition. 25 diagrams of plays in colors. 151 pages. (Price, \$3.00). The STANDARD book on American game. Details, equipment, stickwork, team play. How to play EACH position.

Breaking and Riding

with Military Commentaries. By Fillis, former Encuyer-en-chef to the Central Cavalry School at St. Petersburg. 356 pages, index. 70 illustrations. New Edition. (Price, \$7.50.) Horse-lore classic by master with fifty years' horse experience. Not pupil of Baucher. Fillis improved on his method. Fillis taught principle there must always be progression; that horse must be kept up to bit; that horse must always be kept straight. Not equitation manual. Possesses instead GENIUS. Fillis' method of instruction is by relation—instruction in simplest form. Book for practical horseman. Definite, full explanation by master-horseman of how each movement is accomplished. Therein lies Fillis' value.

Equitation

By Bussigny. Photographs; 361 pages. (Price, \$7.50.) The perfectly trained horse, mounted by a perfectly trained rider, is goal of this system of PRACTICAL exercises. After 35 years' horse experience, this pupil of Baucher, an old French campaigner gives the results of a LIFE'S OBSERVATION of the horse. Careful, DETAILED EXPLANATION and illustration. Scientific.

CONTENTS FOR JANUARY 1925

VOL. XXXIV, No. 138

EARLY HISTORY OF AMERICAN CAVALRY.....	7	✓
Major General William Harding Carter.		
THE SPANISH HOFREITSCHULE.....	19	✓
THE NECESSITY FOR CORRECT STANDARDS IN TRAINING.....	23	✓
Major General Eli A. Helmick, The Inspector General.		
WINNING THE 1924 ENDURANCE RIDE.....	29	✓
Private Samuel J. Matheson, Troop "F," Third Cavalry.		
"ALLONS"	34	✓
Mark VII.		
THE 1924 CAVALRY RIFLE AND PISTOL TEAMS.....	42	✓
Lieutenant Colonel A. H. Davidson, Fourteenth Cavalry.		
FIDLER'S GREEN IN PROSE.....	46	✓
C. S. C.		
IMPRESSIONS OF A RESERVE CAVALRY OFFICER AT CAMP MEADE.....	47	✓
Lieutenant Guerra Everett, Cavalry Reserve Corps.		
THE STORY OF AN OFFICER'S PATROL.....	50	✓
Translated from "La Revue de Cavalerie". Captain Royden Williamson, Fifth Cavalry.		
THE 1924 ENDURANCE RIDE.....	61	✓
WITH THE "CAVALREE" AT FORT RILEY.....	71	✓
Oliver McKee, Jr.		
ANNUAL REPORT OF THE CHIEF OF CAVALRY.....	77	✓
Major General W. A. Holbrook.		
EDITORIAL COMMENT	81	✓
SKEPTICS—RESPONSIBILITY FOR VIEWS OF AUTHORS—THE ASSOCIATION AND THE JOURNAL—MARQUIS SADDLE EQUIPMENT—THE CAVALRY FUND—OR- GANIZATIONS 100% IN MEMBERSHIP.		
TOPICS OF THE DAY.....	84	✓
PURCHASE OF HORSES AND MULES—THE VIII OLYMPIADE—A COMMENDATION BY THE CHIEF OF CAVALRY—AN APPRECIATION OF CAVALRY.		
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED.....	88	✓
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS.....	90	✓
POLO	97	✓
THE NATIONAL GUARD.....	106	✓
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES.....	109	✓
CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES.....	111	✓
REGIMENTAL NOTES	112	✓

Check the books you wish and give mailing address below:

Name

Address

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

—ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President:

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Retired.

Vice-President:

Brigadier-General STUART HEINTZELMAN.

Secretary and Treasurer:

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel Wm. J. GLASGOW, Cavalry.

Colonel JAMES H. REEVES (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel HERBERT B. CROSBY, Cavalry.

Colonel LEON B. KROMER (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel WILLIAM P. DRAPER, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Colonel ARTHUR C. COLAHAN, 103d Cavalry.

Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry.

Major JOHN C. MONTGOMERY, Cavalry.

Major JONATHAN M. WAINWRIGHT, 3d Cavalry.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION FOR THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Any person desiring to become an active or associate member shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility and be accompanied by payment for at least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL; and, the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership from the date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced.

Active and associate members of the Association shall subscribe annually for the JOURNAL and make payment therefor in advance.

Application for membership should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., showing present or former military status and accompanied by remittance to the order of the Association for \$2.50, first year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Membership is continued after the first year by renewal of subscription to the JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXIV

JANUARY, 1925

No. 138

Early History of American Cavalry

BY

Major General WILLIAM HARDING CARTER

THE romance attaching to Fort Chartres, Fort Duquesne, Ticonderoga and other early posts has not yet been duplicated in the stories of those beyond the Mississippi, but the eventful experiences of the regulars on the western frontier entitle them to recognition and the diligent historian may some day find a fruitful field there worthy of his endeavor. The search for and tying together of facts concerning the early history of the regular army is not an easy matter even when one is familiar with the archives. During long periods of supposed peace the small frontier garrisons which made the settlement of half a continent possible, unostentatiously went about their work of carving the path of an empire without expectation of other reward than a consciousness of duty right nobly performed.

THE FIRST CAVALRY UNIT

The cavalry played an important part in the frontier service of the army and in delving into its history it was observed that The Battalion of Mounted Rangers, the first cavalry unit authorized in the regular army, had never received the credit due it as the progenitor of the dragoons.

During the Black Hawk War large numbers of Mounted Militia were called into service for short periods. The attention of the authorities was then directed to the growing necessity of recognizing the western Indian frontier and of providing for its defense.

As early as November 21, 1831, the Secretary of War, Lewis Cass, in reporting to the President the results of an attack by a party of Fox Indians upon the village of Menominees, encamped near Prairie du Chien, under the protection of Fort Crawford, said: "This aggression shows the necessity of employing upon the frontiers a corps of mounted men, to be stationed at the most exposed points, and to be prepared to follow every party that may attempt to interrupt the peace of the border by attacking our citizens, or other Indians. No infantry force can expect to overtake these predatory bands."

Congress in response to the suggestion passed an Act, which was approved June 15, 1832, and which authorized the President to raise a body of "six hundred Mounted Rangers, to be armed, equipt, mounted and organized

Major General Malin Craig
Chief of Cavalry

Courtesy of the Rasp

in such manner, and to be under such regulations and restrictions as the nature of the service may, in his opinion, make necessary."

It was provided in the act that, "The commissioned officers shall receive the same pay and emoluments as officers of the same grade in the Army of the United States, and the officers shall be allowed forage for their horses, and be entitled to the same rations as those of the same grade in the Army of the United States, respectively."

It was specifically required that the appointments of officers should be sent to the Senate for confirmation, and that all officers, non-commissioned officers and privates should "be subject to the rules and articles of war for the government of the Army of the United States, as far as the same may be applicable to the said rangers within the intent and meaning of this act, for the protection and defense of the Northwestern frontier of the United States."

ORGANIZATION

Rules and regulations for the organization and government of the Mounted Rangers, including a system of drill, were published in War Department orders dated July 23, 1832. It was provided that the Mounted Rangers should be organized as a battalion of six companies with one hundred privates each, making a total of six hundred and eighty-five officers, noncommissioned officers and privates.

Each non-commissioned officer and private was required to provide himself with a good rifle, serviceable horse and equipment, and for their use and his own services each was allowed one dollar a day and a ration, or commutation when rations were not available.

In addition to the rifle, the United States provided a pair of pistols and a sword for each ranger. The uniform prescribed was the "Hunting Dress of the West," the captains being authorized to designate the color for their respective companies. The officers when not on duty with the rangers were authorized to wear the uniform prescribed for the infantry.

It was duly announced that, "The Corps of Mounted Rangers are subject to the rules and articles of war, and to the Regulations of the Army in all that regards correspondence, returns, muster rolls, police, discipline, duty, rank and command, and also to the same accountability for public property."

Baggage wagons were not allowed for use of the rangers; on long marches on the remote frontier a limited number of pack-horses were allowed but it was enjoined upon the rangers that in their ordinary marches they must depend upon the resources of the country, and the supplies which they could carry along with them.

This battalion of Mounted Rangers was the first organization of cavalry in the regular army, and since its organization in 1832, there has never been a reorganization which did not provide for cavalry units under one of the designations habitually used to indicate the several types of mounted troops.

ITS FIRST COMMANDING OFFICER

Among the mounted militia called out in the Black Hawk War was a regiment from Michigan commanded by Colonel Henry Dodge. This officer was selected to command The Battalion of Mounted Rangers and was offered the appointment as major. His letter of acceptance of the commission, recorded at the War Department, was dated at Fort Winnebago, June 12, 1832, but in the army register of 1833 his date of commission appears as June 21, 1832, possibly under the rule that new organizations must be completed before field officers may be commissioned. The appointments of Captains Lemuel Ford, Benjamin V. Beekes, Jesse R. Browne, Jesse Bean and Nathan Boone* are dated June 16, 1832, and that of Captain Mathew Duncan is dated October 4, 1832, the delay in his case being incident to his absence on duty with General Atkinson.

The following graduates of the Military Academy were assigned to the Battalion of Mounted Rangers as brevet third lieutenants, July 1, 1832, William H. Emory, Gaines P. Kingsbury, Humphrey Marshall, James M. Bowman, Asbury Ury and Albert G. Edwards.

Under an order issued by General Winfield Scott, who had been assigned to command in the region affected by the operations incident to the Black Hawk War, Major Dodge, with three companies of his battalion of Mounted Rangers was directed to cover the frontiers between the Wabash, the Chicago and the Wisconsin Rivers, and the remaining three companies were ordered to report for duty in the western department. These companies, commanded by Captains Lemuel Ford, Jesse Bean and Nathan Boone, marched to Fort Gibson in the territory then being apportioned to the Indians moved or to be moved there from Eastern States.

WASHINGTON IRVING'S EXPEDITION

The army owes a debt of gratitude to Washington Irving for his perfect pictures of Western life, as shown to him by the rangers under whose escort from Fort Gibson he made the trip, preserved under the title of "A Tour of the Prairies." At that time, the autumn of 1832, the region watered by the Arkansas, the Canadian, the Red river and their tributary streams was a hunter's paradise where roamed elk, deer, buffalo, wild horses, bear and smaller game. Wild turkeys, venison and bear meat were served daily at the campfires.

A few excerpts from Washington Irving's story of his expedition will not destroy the flavor of his unique volume for those who may wish to read it:

"It was early in October, 1832, that I arrived at Fort Gibson, a frontier post of the far west, situated on the Neosho, or Grand river, near its confluence with the Arkansas. I had been traveling for a month past, with a small party from St. Louis, up to the banks of the Missouri, and along the

*Served as captain of rangers under Colonel Dodge in the War of 1812. He was a son of the celebrated Daniel Boone.

frontier line of agencies and missions that extends from the Missouri to the Arkansas. Our party was headed by one of the commissioners appointed by the government of the United States, to superintend the settlement of the Indian tribes migrating from the east to the west of the Mississippi. In the discharge of his duties, he was thus visiting the various outposts of civilization. Our route had been a pleasant one, quartering ourselves, occasionally, at the widely separated establishments of the Indian missionaries, but in general camping out in the fine groves that border the streams, and sleeping under cover of a tent. During the latter part of our tour we had pressed forward, in hopes of arriving in time at Fort Gibson to accompany the Osage hunters on their autumnal visit to the buffalo prairies.

"On arriving at the fort, however, a new chance presented itself for a cruise on the prairies. We learnt that a company of mounted rangers, or riflemen, had departed but three days previous to make a wide exploring tour from the Arkansas to the Red River, including part of the Pawnee hunting grounds where no party of white men had as yet penetrated. Here, then, was an opportunity of ranging over those dangerous and interesting regions under the safeguard of a powerful escort; for the commissioner, in virtue of his office, could claim the service of this newly raised corps of riflemen, and the country they were to explore was destined for the settlement of some of the migrating tribes connected with his mission.

"A couple of Creek Indians were sent off express, by the commander of Fort Gibson, to overtake the rangers and bring them to a halt until the commissioner and his party should be able to join them. As we should have a march of three or four days through a wild country before we could overtake the company of rangers, an escort of fourteen mounted riflemen, under the command of a lieutenant, was assigned to us.

"In the morning early (October 12th) the two Creeks who had been sent express by the commander of Fort Gibson, to stop the company of Rangers, arrived at our encampment on their return. They had left the company encamped about fifty miles distant, in a fine place on the Arkansas, abounding in game, where they intended to await our arrival. * * *

THE RANGERS' CAMP

"We resumed our march at seven o'clock in the morning, in confident hope of soon arriving at the encampment of the rangers. We had not ridden above three or four miles when we came to a large tree which had been recently felled by an axe, for the wild honey contained in the hollow of its trunk, several broken flakes of which still remained. * * * A few paces brought us to the brow of an elevated ridge whence we looked down upon the encampment. It was a wild bandit or Robin Hood scene. In a beautiful open forest, traversed by a running stream, were booths of bark and branches, and tents of blankets, temporary shelters from the recent rain, for the rangers commonly bivouac in the open air. There were groups of rangers in every kind of uncouth garb. Venison jerked, and hung on frames, was drying over the embers in one place; in another lay carcasses recently brought in by the hunters. Our arrival was greeted with acclamation. The rangers crowded about their comrades to inquire the news from the fort; for our own part, we were received in frank simple hunter's style by Captain B., the commander of the company, a man about forty years of age, vigorous and active. His life had been chiefly passed on the frontier, occasionally in

Indian warfare, so that he was a thorough woodsman, and a first-rate hunter. He was equipped in character; in leathern hunting shirt and leggings, and a leathern forage cap."

With this introduction to the Mounted Rangers Irving proceeds with descriptions of the march, its interests, dangers and hardships; of hunting the elk, deer, buffalo and wild horses; trailing the bee and securing vast stores of honey; of the methods and habits of the rangers in providing food for themselves and their horses in a region then known only to Indian hunters, and for the first time traversed by any organized body, civil or military.

The experiment of having in the army a body of troops subject to orders on distant service the same as other regular organizations, but required to furnish their own horses and forage, proved to be expensive and not altogether satisfactory. The Secretary of War became convinced that a regiment of dragoons would be more efficient and more economical, and said,

"From the constitution of the corps of rangers, and from the periods of their service, their organization is little superior to that of ordinary militia. Every year there must be a great loss of time in the reconstruction of the corps, and in the acquisition of the necessary experience and knowledge. And its constitution is so dissimilar from that of any other branch of the army, that a perfect union of sentiment and action between them can scarcely be expected."

"Regular cavalry are fully competent to the discharge of all the duties required of mounted rangers. In celerity of movement, they will of course be equal, and if, (which, however, is doubtful) the rifle is considered the most efficient arm for mounted troops, operating against Indians, this weapon can be placed in the hands of such cavalry, and they can easily be trained to its use.

"Besides other important objects, it is desirable to preserve in our military system the elements of cavalry tactics, and to keep pace with the improvements made in them by other nations. The establishment of a regiment of dragoons would complete the personnel of our army, and would introduce a force which would harmonize with, and participate in, the esprit-de-corps so essential to military efficiency and so easily and certainly created by military principles.

"To overtake and chastise marauding Indians, and in fact to carry on any serious operations against an Indian foe in the level regions of the west, horsemen are indispensably necessary. Presuming, therefore, that some force of this description will be retained, I have the honor to suggest the propriety of the conversion of the corps of rangers into a regiment of dragoons."

A REGIMENT OF DRAGOONS AUTHORIZED

The recommendation met with favor in Congress and, under an Act approved March 2nd, 1833, a regiment of dragoons, "in lieu of the Battalion of Mounted Rangers," was authorized, to consist of ten companies of seventy-one men each, a slight increase in numbers over that provided for the mounted rangers.

The Battalion of Mounted Rangers has been recently accredited in its historic place as the first cavalry organization of the regular army. The facts presented establish that the Battalion of Mounted Rangers was authorized by act of Congress as a part of the regular army; that the officers were nominated and confirmed by the Senate; that a due proportion of the next graduating class from the U. S. Military Academy were assigned to the rangers, and when it was decided to organize a regiment of dragoons in lieu of the Mounted Rangers, the major was appointed colonel of the new regiment, and the captains of rangers, except one physically disqualified, became captains of the dragoon regiment. When the custom of entering "Original entry into service" on the army register was inaugurated in 1838, former service in the mounted rangers was credited to former officers of mounted rangers. No volunteer service was credited on the army registers of that period.

ITS OFFICERS

Major Henry Dodge was appointed colonel of the new regiment of dragoons, Major Stephen W. Kearny was promoted to the lieutenant colonelcy and Captain Richard B. Mason to the majority. Four officers of the infantry were appointed captains, leaving six vacancies for the captains of the rangers already in the mounted service. Among the lieutenants appointed to fill vacancies in the new regiment from the infantry were Philip St. G. Cooke and Jefferson Davis.

Colonel Dodge recommended that all the officers of rangers be embodied in the new regiment of dragoons, but owing to the fact that after the captains of the Mounted Rangers had been appointed in that corps, they were allowed to select the lieutenants, it was deemed best to appoint in the dragoons only those lieutenants of rangers, exclusive of the recently graduated cadets, who had established their fitness for the military service. It was ordered by the War Department that recruits be concentrated at Jefferson Barracks to fill five companies in the Fall, and that the other five companies be organized the following Spring, the Mounted Rangers to continue in service until relieved.

As soon as half of the new regiment had been organized at Jefferson Barracks, Colonel Dodge assumed command and marched, November 20, 1883, for Fort Gibson. Upon arrival at that post which was then garrisoned by the 7th U. S. Infantry, it was learned that no quarters or stables had been constructed and insufficient forage accumulated for the horses. The regiment was placed in camp while huts were erected by the troops, the new site being called Camp Jackson. The winter was very severe and to save the horses from starvation they were turned loose in the canebrakes. Recruiting officers had announced to the men contemplating enlistment in the new regiment, that they would not be required to act as laborers but they looked after themselves in this emergency. Later when part of the regiment was ordered into winter quarters at Fort Leavenworth and found the quartermaster had not pro-

vided stables as directed, the men complained to Colonel Dodge of the deceit and refused to build stables for the horses.

THE FIRST CAMPAIGN

Colonel Dodge was directed to prepare his regiment during the spring for a campaign westward to the Pawnee country, near the base of the Rocky Mountains. In one of his letters to General Leavenworth, dated May 3rd, 1834, Colonel Dodge wrote:

"The success of the contemplated expedition into the Indian country will depend greatly on procuring guides who have a perfect knowledge of the country over which the regiment may march. The Osages are the native Indians of the country, and have a more general knowledge of the country in the direction of the Pawnee Picts than the emigrant Indians. A few interpreters will be necessary who understand the tongues of the different nations of Indians. There will be required at least twenty Indians for buffalo hunters. * * * The subsisting a regiment on the buffalo alone is a new experiment, and it will be necessary that large supplies of buffalo meat should be procured where buffaloes are plenty, to guard against contingencies. Should the Dragoons be in pursuit of an Indian enemy, and be taken out of the range of the buffalo, unless they had large supplies they might be obliged to return without effecting the object of the government, and it would be a part of the policy of an Indian enemy to retreat before the pursuing Dragoons, to take them out of the range of the buffalo."

The expedition which left Fort Gibson June 19, 1834, was the first body of troops ever to visit the wild Indian tribes of that region. Further north other troops had gone as far west as the then Mexican border on the Santa Fe trail, guarding caravans of traders. As early as June, 1829, Major Bennett Riley, with four companies, 6th U. S. Infantry, from Fort Leavenworth escorted the train of Santa Fé traders to the vicinity of Chotean Island in the Arkansas river, which was then the Mexican border. He encamped there until October 11th, when the returning traders arrived under the escort of Mexican troops commanded by Colonel Viscara of the Mexican army, who had a narrow escape in action with the Indians. Fort Riley, Kansas was named in honor of Major Riley.

DEPARTURE FROM FORT GIBSON

The expedition of the dragoons to the Comanche villages left Fort Gibson, June 19, 1834. General Henry Leavenworth had recently arrived at the post to relieve General Arbuckle, and a review of the 7th U. S. Infantry and the Dragoons was held in honor of the new commander before the Dragoons marched. The artist Catlin, who witnessed this review, wrote of it:

"The proud and manly deportment of these young men reminds one forcibly of a regiment of independent volunteers, and the horses have a most beautiful arrangement of colors. Each company of horses has



The Regiment of Dragoons Approaching Comanche Village, 1834

From Painting by Catlin

EARLY HISTORY OF AMERICAN CAVALRY

15

been selected of one color entirely. There is a company of bays, a company of blacks, one of sorrels, one of grays and one of cream color, which render the companies distinct, and the effect pleasing."

General Leavenworth accompanied the Dragoons, but being too ill to proceed, was left at the mouth of the False Washita with a number of sick officers and men. After a few days he followed on the trail and reached the "Cross Timbers," where he died. He suffered from bilious fever which almost wrecked the entire command, but Catlin recorded his opinion that death was hastened by injuries sustained by a fall while running a buffalo calf. Realizing that their mounts were being overtaxed General Leavenworth, Colonel Dodge and Mr. Catlin had just agreed not to chase any more buffalo when, upon riding over the crest of a hill they found themselves in the midst of a herd and forgot their recent vows. While pursuing a calf General Leavenworth's horse fell in a hole, knocking the rider senseless. He appeared to have been severely injured and the combination with the prevailing disease terminated his life in a few days.

THE COMANCHE VILLAGE

The official journal of the expedition recites in detail the marches of each day and the continually decreasing ranks from serious illness. Although ill himself, Catlin wrote more entertainingly:

"After many hard and tedious days of travel, we were at last told by our Comanche guides that we were near their village, and having led us to the top of a gently rising elevation on the prairie, they pointed to their village at several miles distance in the midst of one of the most enchanting valleys that human eyes ever looked upon. The valley for a mile distant about the village seemed speckled with horses and mules that were grazing in it. The chiefs of the war party requested the regiment to halt until they could ride in and inform their people who were coming. We then dismounted for an hour or so, when we could see them busily running and catching their horses, and at length several hundred of their braves and warriors came out at full speed to welcome us, and forming in line in front of us, we were again mounted, presented a formidable and pleasing appearance. As they wheeled their horses, they very rapidly formed in a line, and 'dressed' like well-disciplined cavalry. The regiment was drawn up in three columns with a line formed in front, by Colonel Dodge and his staff, in which rank my friend Chadwick and I were also paraded; when we had a fine view of the whole maneuver, which was picturesque and thrilling in the extreme. In the center of our advance was stationed a white flag, and the Indians answered to it with one which they sent forward and planted by the side of it. After we had sat and gazed at each other in this way for some half an hour or so, the head chief of the band came galloping up to Colonel Dodge, and having shaken him by the hand, he passed on to the other officers in turn and then rode along side of the different columns, shaking hands with every dragoon in the regiment. He was followed in this by his principal chiefs and braves, which altogether took up nearly an hour

longer, when the Indians retreated slowly towards their village, escorting us to the banks of a fine clear stream and a good spring of fresh water half a mile from their village, which they designated as a suitable place for our encampment, and we were soon bivouacked."

WILD HORSES

In other letters George Catlin wrote:

"The sickness and distress continually about us, spread a gloom over the camp, and marred every pleasure which we might otherwise have enjoyed; for the country abounds, most of the way, with buffalo, deer, turkies, bear, etc. Bands, too, of the snorting wild horses were almost hourly prancing before us, and I found them to be the wildest and fleetest inhabitants of the prairie of the west. The Pawnees and Comanches take vast numbers of them, but the finest and fleetest of them they cannot catch. I approached several times very near to these herds without being discovered, and with a good spy-glass examined them with great pleasure; some of them were very handsome, their manes falling almost to the ground; but when we visited the Comanche village, I looked through their almost incredible herds of horses that were grazing about them, perhaps three thousand or near it, for the splendid 'Arabian' horse of which I have heard so much at the east, as belonging to that country, but I could see or hear nothing of it; and I am strongly inclined to think that it is, in a measure, a *horse of imagination*. The horses of the Comanches are principally the wild horse, and a great many from the Spanish country. They are all small, and most of them miserable and mean."

SUFFERINGS OF THE DRAGOONS

"What the regiment of dragoons has suffered from sickness since they started on their summer's campaign, is unexampled in this country, and almost incredible. When we started from this place, ten or fifteen were sent back the first day, too sick to proceed; and so afterwards our numbers were daily diminished; and at the distance of two hundred miles from this place we could muster, out of the whole regiment, but two hundred and fifty men who were able to proceed, with which little band, and that again reduced some sixty or seventy by sickness, we pushed on and accomplished all that was done. Since our return, the sick have been brought in by dozens and scores from the points where they had been left, and although the dragoons who were well enough to leave have all marched off from this post, some to Leavenworth, three companies twenty miles distant from this, and three companies to the Des Moines on the Mississippi, to their wintering quarters, they have left at this place one hundred and forty or fifty sick, who are burying two to three and four per day of their numbers. A great many have died, and many more poor fellows must inevitably sink into their graves. The disease seems to be entirely of a bilious nature, and contracted by exposure to the sun, and the impurity of the water which, in many parts of our route, we were obliged to use. The beautiful and pictured scenes which we passed over had an alluring charm on their surface, but as it would seem a lurking poison within, that spread a gloom about our encampment whenever we pitched it."

That the memory of conditions in the region about Fort Gibson had deeply impressed the survivors, we have evidence in the resignation of Captain Lemuel Ford, whose company was stationed at Fort Leavenworth, in 1837, in which he stated:

"I have just arrived a few days since at this post from the recruiting service, and have immediately on my arrival, received orders to march with my company to Fort Gibson; a post where I know by the bad experience of the past that I cannot enjoy even common health. I served at that post or near there in command of a company of U. S. Mounted Rangers parts of the years 1832 and 1833 where both myself and company suffered severely. I was also there in command of a company of dragoons part of the summer of 1834 where I lost at and in the vicinity of the post twenty-two men out of seventy-one as well as my memory serves me; and where my own constitution received a shock from which I have never since recovered. My health previously to going to that post was equal to that of any man of my age. If my country required the sacrifice of my life in time of war, I would give it up freely, but in time of peace there is no necessity of such sacrifice. I, therefore, wish you to press the immediate acceptance of this my resignation and give me notice at your earliest convenience at Fort Gibson the common graveyard of many an honourable and unfortunate soldier."

AN INTERESTING CHARACTER

After the return of the expedition of the Dragoons from the Pawnee villages, Lieutenant Colonel Kearny was sent with three companies to the Des Moines Rapids, on the Mississippi and were quartered in log huts for the winter. One of the company commanders was Captain B. with whom Washington Irving had made the tour of the prairies. He was very tall, reputed to be six feet seven inches in height; a fine looking man with long black whiskers and a typical commander of rangers. An incident of his service at that time as told by W. T. Porter in a book entitled "The Quarter Race in Kentucky and Other Stories," survives:

"During the winter the captain was directed to proceed to Rushville, Illinois—sixty miles distant, on recruiting service. The river was closed with ice, but had the appearance of breaking up. The Captain rode to Knapp's Ferry, and waited for the ice to freeze harder or break up. On the third day no change had taken place in the ice, but the Captain, being of a convivial nature, had soon exhausted the interest of the country store. He ordered his horse, put his pistols in the holsters, buckled on his sword, mounted and rode to the river bank. Without any word of his intentions, he put his horse at speed, and galloped across the river. He never looked back and disappeared in the direction of Rushville. Arriving in the small village, he continued his wild career until the habitues of the store, who usually congregated about the fire, gave him a wide berth after he had knocked down the justice of the peace for calling him B. without his title of captain."

"One very cold morning he entered the store and none of the crowd about the fire offered him a seat. After a scornful survey, he walked

behind the counter, picked up a keg marked 'Dupont,' walked to the group and remarking, 'By the eternal, gentlemen, I think we have lived long enough,' threw the keg in the fire. The crowd of idlers threw themselves backward and fled in confusion. Hearing no explosion they ventured to return and peeped in the door only to find the Captain comfortably seated by the fire with his glass resting on the keg beside him. It turned out that he knew the keg contained no explosive, but he had the fire to himself during the remainder of his stay."

He rejoined the garrison without any recruits but his exploits had been widely heralded. An old army register in possession of the writer has noted opposite his name, "resigned" and opposite the name of the senior first lieutenant, "promoted." The latter was Philip St. George Cooke, who acquired fame as the leading cavalryman of his generation. He was the father-in-law of the famous cavalryman of the Confederacy, General J. E. B. Stuart.

THE SECOND REGIMENT OF DRAGOONS

In 1836 another regiment of dragoons was organized and designated as the Second Regiment of Dragoons, the older regiment becoming the First Regiment of Dragoons. Under an act of Congress dated August 23, 1842, the Second Regiment of Dragoons became The Regiment of Riflemen, and continued under the latter designation until the Act of April 4, 1844, repealed the Act of 1842, when the organization resumed its former designation as the Second Regiment of Dragoons.

The Regiment of Mounted Riflemen was not organized until 1846. It retained its designation until 1861 when all the mounted regiments were given new designations, the First and Second Dragoons becoming the First and Second Cavalry, The Mounted Riflemen becoming the Third Cavalry, the First and Second Cavalry becoming the Fourth and Fifth, and the new regiment then recently organized as the Third Cavalry, becoming the Sixth Cavalry. No changes of designations have been made since 1861, the more recently created regiments having been added with numerical designations in the order of their organization.

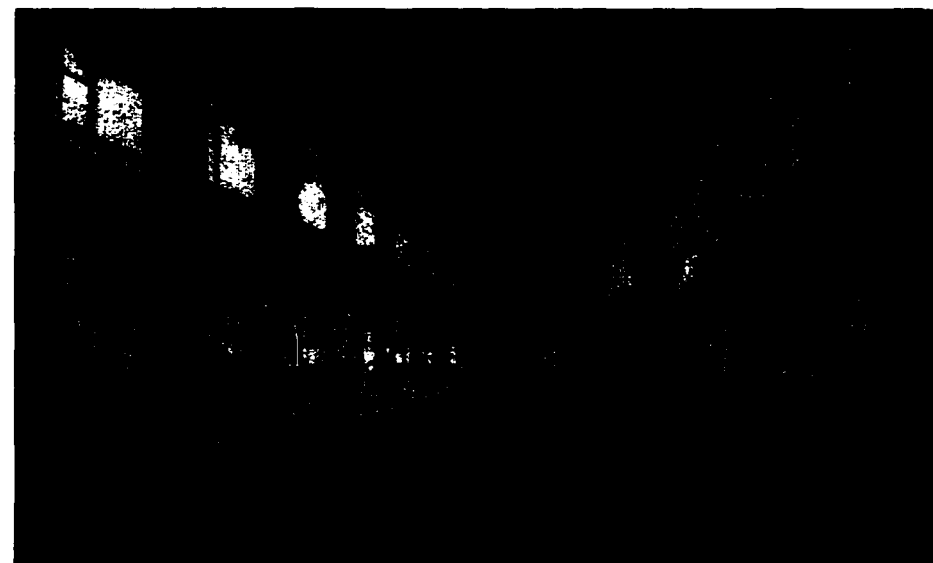


The Spanische Hofreitschule

(THE SPANISH COURT RIDING SCHOOL)

THE Spanish Court Riding School of Vienna, Austria, from an architectural standpoint, is conceded to be the most elaborate, and is also one of the largest riding halls in Europe. A relic of the feudal-days of the old Austrian Empire, it is one of the few of the old Austrian institutions which retains its pristine glory. To the lover of horses and equitation it is very fascinating, and affords an artistic setting for the horse which is without a rival in the world. The name Spanish Riding School is very confusing to a foreigner, and in order to clarify the situation a history of its conception and foundation is given, so that the reader will have a clear idea of its traditions.

The city of Vienna is the eastern bulwark of Christianity and has withstood for centuries the attacks of many Asiatic races, namely, the Scythians, Mongolians, Tartars, and Turks; and, as Metternich once said, "Asia begins on the Vienna Landstrasse."



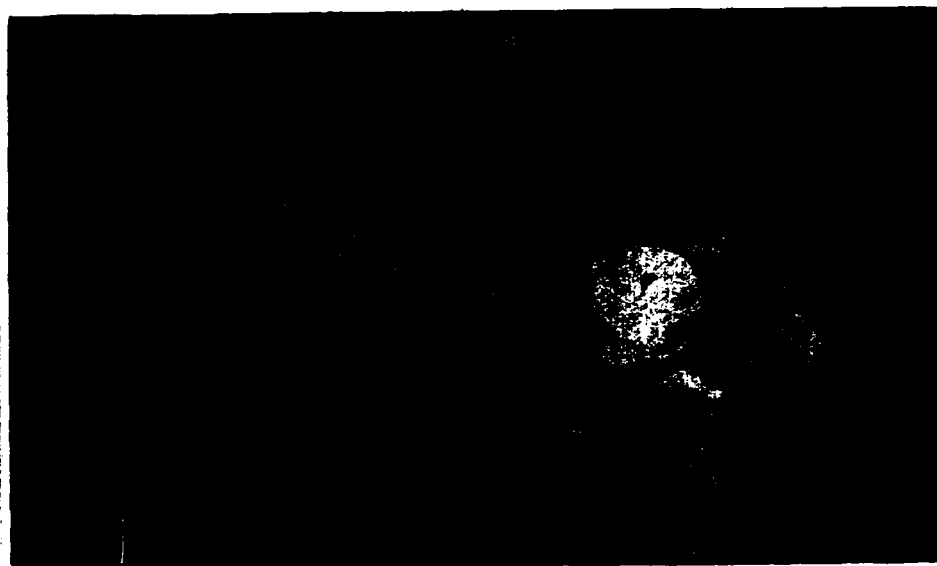
Interior View of Spanish Riding School

After the repulse of the last Turkish invasion, in 1683, a revival of the arts, architecture, and music, which was strongly sponsored by the Emperor and the old aristocracy, took place in Austria. Many representatives of all the liberal arts returned to Vienna, among whom were the celebrated architects Fischer von

Erlach, Hildebrandt, Allio, Matteille, and Daniel Gran. An artistic renaissance now occurred on Austrian soil, and within a generation the Austrian rococo, commonly known as baroque, was evolved by the architects above mentioned. One of the finest examples of this is the Spanish Riding School of Vienna.

The Riding School was ordered built in 1681 by the reigning Emperor, Leopold, who gave the architects a time limit of four years in which to complete same. Due, however, to many unforeseen delays, the school was not completed until 1735, at which time the Emperor Karl VI was the reigning sovereign of Austria.

The architect of the hall, Fischer von Erlach the younger, was the son of Johann Bernhard von Erlach, who designed and built the world's finest example of baroque architecture, "The Karlskirche," situated in the heart of Vienna. The building consists of four floors, the most beautiful of which is the third floor, the Roman and baroque decorations of which never fail to arouse the artistic delight of the many thousands of visitors who visit the hall annually.

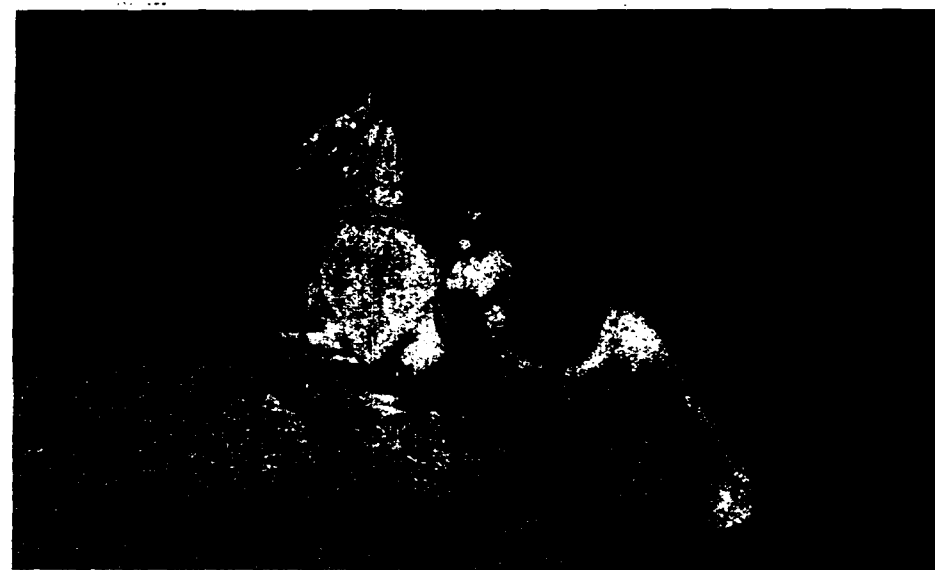


Arab Stallion Salva at Spanish Trot

The colossal dimensions of the interior, especially of the "Sala Terrena," together with its unmatched lighting effects, are beautiful, and the horse viewed in such a setting is as fine a sight as one could wish. A foreigner is always puzzled by the name of the school, but it is accounted for by the fact that at the time the Riding School was built the Hapsburg dynasty ruled Spain. The old court life in Vienna was replete with many of the old Spanish customs of eti-

quette, and the high-school equitation which is exhibited in the hall had its origin, I am told, in Spain.

The Emperor Ferdinand I, in the year 1580, established a stud farm at a small town called Lippiza, which is situated on the Reka River, near the Italian frontier, and in the vicinity of this stud farm for many centuries the famous war horses sacred to Thracia and Diomedea were bred. The ancestry of certain famous stallions bred in this vicinity can be traced back to the reign of the Roman Emperor Nero. During the past century the Austrian Government imported many Arab mares and stallions, which were interbred with local horses, and thus was created what is locally known as five families of Lippazaner horses, which were named after their ancestors and called "Plutos," "Conversanos," "Neapolitanos," "Favorys," and "Maestosos." The sixth family, called "Siglavy," derives its origin from pure Arab stock alone. The stallions are called, after an old custom, by two names, viz., that of the sire and that of the



Arab Stallion Favory Ancona II at Levade

dam. The finest stallions of this class were selected and sent to Vienna, where, after a thorough course of schooling, they were used for a time in the riding school and returned to the stud at Lippaza. The Lippazanos are a typical Arab type, from 15 to 15¾ hands high, beautifully proportioned, and are capable of great endurance; they are mostly white and cream color and afford one a fine and easy ride. One of the best horses of this type which I have seen belongs to the senior instructor of the Austrian riding school near Vienna, and stands 16 hands high. It is one of the best-schooled horses I have ever seen—fine conformation, good bone, and beautifully mannered.

Before the war, only the nobility and the instructors of the court cavalry were allowed to ride in the hall, and at that time the school consisted of 90 horses, together with a large corps of instructors and non-commissioned officers. At the close of the war, the Social Democratic régime confiscated all the horses, so I am informed, except six. The school is now being carried on by one officer and six non-commissioned officers, who, without pay or emoluments of any kind and at great sacrifice, secured permission to keep this relic of the old régime in force. During the starvation period which Austria underwent in 1919 and 1920, they went without food themselves in order to provide forage for their horses. I think this action on their part is one of the finest examples of the love of man for the horse and the traditions of horsemanship which has ever come under my notice. In order to maintain the school, quarterly exhibitions are given. The public, despite the general poverty, crowds the hall, and the applause given is not only for the horse, but for the spirit of the men who are giving their time and energy in order to maintain one of the few remaining relics of the old royalist régime.

The work done at the school is the strictly high-school type, but the preliminary training methods are practically the same as we use at the Cavalry School at Fort Riley, Kansas. They pay a great deal of attention to work without stirrups, ride with stirrups quite short, and the hands are carried fixed, backs up, very close together and very low.



The Necessity for Correct Standards in Training

BY

Major General ELI A. HELMICK, The Inspector General

JUST off Connecticut Avenue, on the outskirts of the city of Washington, is the Bureau of Standards. The plant comprises a large group of buildings and gives employment to a large personnel. Among its functions are the housing of the master standards of weights and measures; the preparation and distribution of correct standards to states and municipalities; the testing of standards and materials; and making scientific investigations of materials to determine their suitability and usefulness in commerce and industry. A visit to the Bureau is well worth while, for it impresses one with the importance of correct standards and calls his attention to the great amount of time and thought given to their selection and adoption, as well as to their care and preservation. Occupied as we are in our own personal affairs, we perhaps fail to realize that the commercial transactions carried on throughout our own country, and those with foreign nations, would be impossible without the existence of correct standards of currency, weights and measures.

I wonder if we ever consider that not only in commerce and industry, but in all the varied relations incident to human endeavor, correct standards are essential to efficient performance. In the conduct of Government business in all its branches and in the professions, especially in law, standards of action, precedents and procedure are indispensable to orderly and efficient operation.

APPLICATION TO TROOP TRAINING

Correct standards are quite as necessary to success in troop training as they are in other affairs. Washington made little headway in the Revolutionary War until Von Steuben formulated and introduced correct standards of training into the Colonial Army. Our success in the Mexican War was due, according to General Scott, to the high standards of training created and maintained by West Point graduates in the Army. It took two years to reach efficient standards of training and discipline in the Civil War. Although the disciplinary training of our regular troops in the Spanish-American War was of a high order, the absence of field training and staff control was plainly apparent and this fact, more than any other, led to the establishment of our present system of military schools. While the success of our armies in France may be directly traced to the influence of West Point, Leavenworth and the War College, it should not be forgotten that the progress of training made in our training camps continued to be unsatisfactory for more than a year. The cause of this was very apparent. The well-disciplined, soldierly officers and men of the Regular Army were too few to make any appreciable impression on the great masses of untrained men suddenly called into the

service. Under a mistaken view that had recently gained popularity in some of our schools, viz: that much of the time which had been devoted to the details of disciplinary training had been wasted and that efficient field training could be imparted without the disciplinary training formerly required, the drill regulations in force at the beginning of the war lacked the precision and exactitude of former editions and contained practically no illustrations. Untrained officers had to create mental pictures of correct soldierly positions or of movements and exercises from descriptions given in the text. It is not surprising that these mental pictures were inaccurate and un-uniform and that instruction was unsatisfactory. *There were no correct visible or material standards. Correct standards could not be formulated by untrained men from a written description.*

IMPROVED METHODS

It was not until August of 1918 that Training Circulars Nos. 5 and 8 were published and distributed. No. 5 had as a sub-title "Instructions pertaining to the Training of an Infantry Division and the Establishment of Divisional Schools." Circular No. 8, which was published about the same time, gave minimum specifications for trained infantry and methods of training by which the specifications could be reached. The influence of these circulars, added to that of the English and French officers who were sent to us late in the previous year, was most beneficial.

The following statements are extracted, with slight change of expression, from the Fundamental Principles governing the Training of Infantry, contained in Circular No. 5:

The first great step then in fitting infantry troops for field service is to inculcate the spirit of discipline.

If men are allowed to be sloppy and untidy in dress, slipshod and careless about rendering courtesies, the military spirit is lost and the command remains undisciplined.

Precision and snap in drill must be insisted on. Movements must be executed exactly as prescribed.

Leaders must know their work. There must be no hesitation; commands must be given correctly and with snap. They must treat all subordinates with courtesy, correct reasonable mistakes without harshness, give clear and reasonable explanations; show men how. They must insist that all subordinates do their work properly, but *they must set the example themselves.*

Esprit de corps must be cultivated and pride in the organization, to include the smallest sub-division encouraged. Competitive contests between smaller units are of great advantage.

It is not possible properly to conduct a drill or exercise without special forethought and preparation for that particular drill or exercise.

The parts in italics show that the War Department realized the difficulties in the way of efficient training and had adopted effective methods to overcome

them and was putting these methods into effect. In other words, it had concluded that satisfactory progress in training could not be expected until correct standards had been created and followed in the training camps. The excellent work of the English and French officers helped immensely and moving pictures and training centers furnished further aid in the formulation and dissemination of correct methods and standards.

We cannot afford to forget the excellent methods followed with success during the war nor the high standards which were reached if we are to hope for efficiency in our peace training.

TRUE STANDARDS

The War Department did not create standards of training when it published these instructions. A description of a standard, however, accurately stated, is not a standard. Standards are real, material things—quite generally in our service they are actual, living things. If they could be established by written descriptions, it would not be necessary for the Government Bureau of Standards to guard its master standards with the degree of care it now exercises. The actual physical standard, properly identified and certified as correct, must be preserved, in order that the correctness of those actively in use may be compared and established.

In all work of construction, accurate models or standards are required. The naval constructor makes a model of his battleship, or causes one to be made, before he begins the work of construction; the architect who received the award for the construction of the Washington Cathedral had to make a working model, in addition to detailed plans and specifications for the erection of the edifice; the War Department requires models to be constructed and tested of its small arms, field and coast defense guns before quantity construction is begun, and the same is true as to uniforms and equipment of all kinds. Descriptions will not suffice; drawings and photographs are not adequate; a standard or model must be produced.

So it is in training. The War Department may prescribe its *measures* of standards and publish schemes and methods for reaching them, but the standards themselves are living, material things that must be created, and the unit commander, whatever the size of the unit, is responsible for the creation of the standards of training in his command prescribed by the War Department or by his superiors. He is, whether he would be or not, *the master standard* in soldierly bearing, that is, in all that pertains to smartness, adherence to military traditions, courtesies, etc. No matter how high he may fix the measure of these standards in orders or instructions, *if he fails to adhere to them, either in letter or in spirit, the members of his command, following his lead, will fail also and correct standards will not be created.*

Hence it is essential that every commander have not only a definite mental picture of all he hopes to accomplish in the training of his command, but he must actually create his standards of excellence or cause them to be created.

CORRECT STANDARDS

There must be correct standards of soldierly requirements; as to smartness, set-up and bearing; as to neatness and cleanliness of uniform and equipment; as to rendering and acknowledging salutes; and as to conformance to customs and traditions of the service. In all these, as already stated, the commander himself must set the standards and cause his officers and non-commissioned officers to maintain and transmit them to the men.

There must be correct standards created and maintained in the school of the soldier, the squad, the platoon and the company; in calisthenics and individual and mass athletics; in guard mount and ceremonies; and in all that pertains to field instruction.

There must be correct standards as to police of roads, walks and grounds, rear areas as well as those in front; as to cleanliness, order and neatness of squad rooms, amusement rooms, store-rooms, toilets, dining rooms and kitchens; as to proper preparation and service of food; as to proper warehousing, neatness and order of general store-rooms; as to cleanliness of stables and corrals; as to care of animals and transportation; and as to all the various other utilities essential to garrisoned posts.

RESPONSIBILITY

In all these things the responsibility of creating correct standards and maintaining them rests primarily on the Commanding Officer, but he cannot accomplish it alone; he must have the support of his subordinates. He must be active, interested and enthusiastic, and he must inspire his subordinates with these qualities.

As indicated in previous articles appearing in this Journal, the instinct of rivalry can be utilized to advantage in creating correct standards. The post or unit commander can, by fair and proper methods of competition, select the best company in close order drill, in bayonet combat, in calisthenics or in unit athletic accomplishments. He can determine the relative efficiency of battalions in ceremonies by observing and rating their performance or having it observed and rated. He can determine those units which reach the highest standards of progress in field training.

The company commander, in the same way, can create correct soldierly standards in his company, correct standards of cleanliness and order in his squad rooms, in the arrangement of clothing and equipment in foot and wall lockers, in accuracy of knowledge, on the part of his non-commissioned officers of training manuals, and in precision and accuracy in all disciplinary training.

I sometimes ask a regimental commander to name his best company or a company commander to name his best non-commissioned officer or his best squad. Often I get a noncommittal reply—that one company is good in one thing and another in something else, or that they are all about alike; that there is not very much difference between squads or that there are no outstanding non-commissioned officers in the company. Some reply that they do not think it a good thing to make comparative ratings, etc., etc. Generally I find that little or no thought has been given to the question.

How different it is when the commanding officer is active, energetic and enthusiastic, when he takes pride in the progress of his training and in the condition of his post! Then I do not have to ask which is the best company, or who is the best officer or non-commissioned officer, but I am requested to observe some special development in training to visit a particular kitchen or inspect a stable, a store-room or some other post utility he wants me to see because he thinks it especially good. With such a commander things are generally going well; favorable conditions are noticed from the moment of entry into the post. There is an expression of keenness on the part of the commander and his staff—uniform correct, leather polished, brasses burnished; and, because good examples, like evil ones, are contagious, the standards of such a commander will be reflected not only in the attitude of his immediate staff, but in the officers of his command, and these, in turn, will transmit them to the men.

SOLUTION OF THE PROBLEM

The problem is to create and maintain an interest in the work of the unit or of the men in it. If competition will do this, why not utilize it? If the mention of a unit or an individual in a favorable way creates an interest or engenders pride, why not make the mention? If the award of a ribbon, a pennant or an inexpensive cup will create a desire to do better work, not only upon the part of the unit or man receiving it, but upon others, why not award them? The value of rewards and favorable notices and the publicity accompanying them have long been known as essential to success in athletic games, horse shows, etc. Why not make use of them in our military training? Routine and monotony in time of peace are the greatest obstacles to success in training. Interest in one's work, pride in one's organization, are the qualities which will most quickly overcome them. Any scheme or method that will create these qualities will help to form correct standards and raise efficiency in training.

RESULTS

One of our divisions in the World War showed particularly fine results from its disciplinary training. The Division Commander, after impressing upon his command that nothing reflects so discredibly on an organization, its discipline, its morale and its fighting spirit as a dirty, unkempt and slovenly appearance, ill-mannered and ungentlemanly conduct, and a half-hearted and listless manner of saluting, appealed to the officers and men to make a record for their Division in smart and soldierly appearance. But he did not stop with the appeal; he made it known that officers and non-commissioned officers would be detailed to observe members of the command in camp and elsewhere, and that they would be directed to stop and correct all those who were not in proper dress, those who failed to salute, or those who saluted in a slovenly and unsoldierly manner. He directed that the names of delinquents in this respect be reported. The first two weeks brought in a large number of reports, but the Commanding General being satisfied that the failures were due to carelessness rather than to

deliberate intention, removed all these reports, with the result that the men realizing that their commander was giving them an opportunity to respond to his appeal, took it upon themselves not only to be careful of their own deportment but to set an example to others. The result was that this division was not only commended officially for the high standard of its training, but it gained an enviable reputation for the correctness of its soldierly standards. I know of experiences similar to this in other divisions. And in every case the impetus came from the top. The commander either set the standard or caused it to be created.

IMPORTANCE OF SUBJECT

In conclusion let me repeat, for its importance justifies repetition, that the importance of correct standards in our military training cannot be over-estimated; nor can we over-rate the importance of this statement, viz: that the commander alone is responsible that correct standards are created and maintained; that while it is true that he cannot accomplish it alone, *he must see that it is done*. At no time within my memory have the standards of our military schools, from the War College to the least important service school, been as high as at the present time, and this is due, primarily, to the high soldierly standard of the officers in charge.

Colonel Applin of the British Army was right when he stated to our officers, in his lecture on discipline, that as the commander is, so will be the regiment; that the regiment is a mirror in which will be reflected his own qualities; if he is smart and soldierly, those qualities will go through the whole regiment, down to the last private; that the officers will reflect the commander, the non-commissioned officers will reflect the officers, and the men will reflect the non-commissioned officers. This statement applies with equal force to units of all grades from the Company to the Division.

The most important mission of the Regular Army in time of peace is to train the civilian components of the United States Army. This is best accomplished by showing them how it is done. How can we expect these civilian components, in their brief summer camps, to reach the standards of efficiency—especially the soldierly standards—that General Pershing so insistently demanded from our training camps during the World War, if our regular units upon which we must depend for demonstration of correct methods and standards, have not themselves reached correct standards of training?

Winning the 1924 Endurance Ride

BY

Private SAMUEL J. MATHESON, Troop "F", 3d Cavalry

Editor's Note: For the first time since its inauguration in 1919 the annual 300 mile Endurance Ride was won this year by a troop horse ridden by an enlisted man. Peggy, a grade thoroughbred mare assigned to Troop "F", 3d Cavalry at Fort Myer, Virginia, and ridden by Private Samuel J. Matheson of that troop, won first place in a field of sixteen entries.

Private Matheson, first enlistment May 6, 1901, has had twenty-three years' service as follows: Three years in the Eleventh Cavalry; twelve years in the Fifteenth Cavalry; three years in the Second Cavalry; two years in the Seventy-seventh Field Artillery, Fourth Division; and five years in the Third Cavalry, serving in all grades from private to sergeant. He is an expert horseman and for the past five years has done much work in connection with training horses for horse shows, having trained and taken care of Allahmande, Major G. S. Patton's fine horse which won the Bowman Cup twice, together with many other prizes.

About two years ago *Peggy*, the mare that I rode in the 1924 Endurance Ride was assigned to Troop "F", 3d Cavalry, of which I was a member. She was rather lively and high spirited and only certain men who knew horses well could ride her at drill. For recruits she was a little too lively. For this reason she was not used much for drill during the six months preceding the ride.

When it was decided that the 3d Cavalry would enter a team in the Endurance Ride, Major Wainwright selected *Peggy* as one of the horses to enter, and detailed me to ride her. The horse selected were sent to the Olympic Team stables about the end of August with Lieutenant Pitts in charge of training.

PRELIMINARY TRAINING

In the preliminary training we alternated daily riding with stripped saddle and carrying weight. One day we would go out with stripped saddle, do considerable trotting and galloping and a great amount of walking. The next day we would carry weight up to 200 pounds for three hours. We increased this weekly by about half an hour daily. During the last three weeks before going to Warrenton we increased the weight about ten pounds each week. until during the last week we carried 225, the dead weight being carried in weight pads under the saddle. About three days before we left for Warrenton we made a 45-mile march with full weight, 225 pounds. During the last three days we exercised with stripped saddle.

During this training at Fort Myer a full water pail was kept at all times in the horses' box stalls. They were fed four times a day, three pounds at each meal, at 6:00 A. M., 11:00 A. M., 4:30 P. M., and 7:30 P. M., with one pound of bran per day and all the hay they would eat. We groomed them thoroughly twice a day.

Exercise was so arranged that the horses would come in cool, generally walking the last four miles. Two saddle blankets were used under the saddle and the weight pad on top of them. After coming in from exercise, these were left on for a few minutes after taking off the saddle and then the horses walked around.

We left Fort Myer for Warrenton about the 12th of October with full weight, making a one day hike of about 27 miles to Bull Run battle field, where we stayed

over night. Here at night two covers were put on the horses, an ordinary saddle blanket with a horse cover over it. We had carried straw along and made it very comfortable for the horses. The next morning we left for Warrenton, about twenty miles, and arrived in good shape.

On exercise, the day after arriving at Warrenton, full weight was carried for about five or six miles, and this was repeated for three or four days. During the rest of the time before the Ride, exercise was with stripped saddle at a walk.

EQUIPMENT

For the Endurance Ride I borrowed from Captain Holt of Fort Riley a Marquis officer's field saddle, which was very comfortable and well fitted to the horse's back. For it I obtained a pair of McClellan stirrups, had the leather taken



Courtesy. Bureau of Animal Industry

Private Matheson with Peggy and the Cup

off the hoods and the tread of the stirrup cut down slightly on both sides. I then took a felt polo boot, cut the felt in two parts, and nailed one on the bottom of each stirrup. This made a sort of shock absorber and I found it to be very comfortable.

I weighed in 155 pounds stripped. For dead weight I had my horse shoer's outfit, grooming kit, extra set of horse shoes and nails in the pommel pockets, with my slicker on the cantle. I found that I had very little additional dead weight to carry. The lead I used for this purpose was carried in pockets on the lower edges of a pad which fitted over the horse's back over the saddle blanket.

The bridle I used had a German bridoon snaffle which was carefully fitted to the horse's mouth. I had two sheepskin-covered cinchas which I alternated daily, in order to let them dry out thoroughly. For a saddle blanket I used next to the horse a soft cream-colored blanket of fine wool, which was loaned to me by Captain Holt, with the ordinary saddle blanket on top of it. On top of both of these was the weight pad.

SHOEING

During training, the ordinary flat shoe was used in front, and light calks on the heels of the hind shoes. On the day before the start of the Ride, *Peggy* was shod with the same kind of shoes as before, except that I put heel calks on in front. She was shod once during the course of the ride, on the fourth day, as all of her shoes were well worn on account of the rocky roads.

BEGINNING OF THE RIDE

This being my first Endurance Ride, and wishing to get accustomed to the arrows that marked the route, and also to learn the proper timing and gaits, I started out on the 20th of October with Major Scott, who had participated in several previous Rides. I remained with him all day and came in on minimum time, nine hours. However, I learned this day that I could do better traveling alone, so I could watch myself and the mare better and not be annoyed by anybody.

Peggy was an excellent walker and I found that she could walk part of the time as fast as some of them trotted. After this I let her take her own gait and did not urge her at any time. She went better alone, and I watched her every minute. From my own experience I knew how much she could stand and traveled accordingly. She was in good shape at all times. I always tried to make time on the good roads and took my time on the bad roads. I found that on covering the bad roads we walked much faster than the others.

PROCEDURE AT NOON STOP

I let *Peggy* drink a little at all the drinking places, the route crossing a large number of small streams. I watered her about a mile before the noon stop, where we rested about eight or ten minutes. I sponged her nostrils, eyes, head and dock. The groom let her eat a little grain from a pail which he held up to her head, while I had a sandwich and a cup of coffee. She got no water at this time. The saddle was left on but the cincha was loosened. When ready to go, the cincha was tightened, the bridle was put on, I mounted and was on my way.

COOLING OUT AND CARE OF HORSE

Each day I covered the last three miles at a walk, and came in in good shape. I unsaddled the mare, left the blankets and weight pad on for about five minutes. I then took the saddle, blankets and weight pad and weighed in, turning the mare over to Corporal Thibideaux, an excellent groom. I came back and rubbed her back vigorously. Corporal Thibideaux worked very fast and we finished working on her in an hour.

After getting in I gave her a small amount of water and about half an hour afterward gave her two pounds of grain after she was cooled out. We gave her a pound of grain every hour for about two hours afterward. What grain was left was given her at eight o'clock. After cooling her out she was locked up and permitted to rest. She had all the hay she wanted.

The mare was not walked at any time after the completion of each day's ride, but left in her stall. I put a horse cover and a saddle blanket on her and covered the slats of the stall door with a grain sack to keep out drafts. She was always fresh and vigorous every morning and ate her food well.



On the Road

Courtesy, Bureau of Animal Industry

In the morning at five o'clock she was fed four pounds of grain, and later examined by the Judges and Veterinarians. Her temperature was taken at 6:15 A. M., grooming was finished at 6:25 A. M., at 6:30 she was saddled and I was ready to mount and hike out. I walked her for a mile and started an increased gait on good roads. My object in starting at 6:30 every morning was to keep away from the others and to make good time while it was cool.

Peggy was not lame at any time during the ride although she picked up a stone in her frog twice, once in a fore foot and once in a hind foot. She limped five or six yards and I dismounted and took it out. She was not bothered by scratches. In the preliminary training I watched out for scratches more than for anything else, sponging her feet and fetlocks every night and drying them out with cotton, being careful not to rub or irritate the fetlock in any way. I did not use any salve on her fetlocks during the ride but my groom carried a small

brush, smaller and softer than the ordinary grooming brush, and brushed out the fetlocks thoroughly. The Virginia clay dust is very bad and under the conditions existing during the Ride will cause scratches nine times out of ten. After fording the many streams I tried to keep out of the dust for about a mile until the water had all run off her legs.

CONDITIONING OF RIDER

As to the training of myself, I have always kept myself in good condition, riding all the time and training horses. I was positive that I could stand the five-day ride. During the Ride I ate very little and found this practice better than eating too much and getting sick along the route. At night I stayed awake a good deal doing a lot of studying about how I was going to make the ride the next day. I slept from about eleven to four o'clock and was anxious for the morning to come in order that I might start.

ROADS

The roads were very rough, particularly on the morning of the fourth day. However, it suited my mare very well for I could easily gain on the others by reason of her fast walking. I took no chances on losing time on the good roads and Peggy trotted about ten miles an hour.

For all Rides I think friends should let the horse and rider alone on the road and offer no suggestions. It is annoying, as it distracts one's attention from the business in hand. I want to go alone and keep track of the time and gait all the time.

I was in a bad fix at one time only. On the fourth day I was following the green arrows and crossed the route of the previous day marked with a blue arrow. I was not sure that I was on the right road as I was temporarily color blind and was not certain whether I was looking at a green arrow or a blue arrow. I asked an old colored woman whether that arrow was green. She must have thought I was crazy, and said, "Why, of course it is."

EXPRESSION OF APPRECIATION

The judges and other officials were on the job all the time and were very considerate. I wish to express my appreciation of the courtesies shown me by everybody on the road during the ride. In horse shows I have competed against Major Scott a good many times and been beaten several times by his horse, but I hope I have squared myself this time. I admire him greatly for his horsemanship and pluck for he sure is a game man. The members of the Fort Riley team were good men with good horses, but they had hard luck all around.

I wish to express my appreciation to Major Wainwright for coming to me every evening and telling me that you can't beat an old soldier. I wish also to express my appreciation of the way I was inspired by my Commanding Officer, Colonel Hawkins, and several officers from Fort Myer. Meeting Colonel Hawkins 30 miles out in the woods on the route filled me with courage and pride, and if he asks me to compete next year, I certainly will do so on any horse that he may select to defend the cup.

"Allons"

"Cavalry!"

The Skeptic snorted.

"Two strands of barbed wire, one machine gun and a widow woman. Bah!" and he resubmerged into an eight inch whiskey and soda glass.

Now no one can accuse me of prejudice—my own fighting was done in a uniform which made mounted service, if not impossible, at least indecent—but I had heard that same snort once before from a Colonel of the Queen's Own Cameron Highlanders as we watched the Household Brigade sweep round Orange Hill toward Monchy and the Scarpe.

Unless there happens to be a General in the vicinity, it is rarely that Providence permits a Subaltern to hear two Colonels in one lifetime admit themselves to be wrong—unqualifiedly, "Well, I'll be damned" wrong. It's a far cry from the "Green Line" on the Arras plateau to the Sorento blue water of the Bay of Monterey and the bar of the Hotel Del Monte, but if Allenby and the Life Guards made the Cameron's snort a bit premature, then Allenby and the —th Cavalry turned exactly the same trick on the Skeptic at Monterey.

The first episode is history, the second being the one—as Debrett puts it—"of which we treat."

ATTRACTIONS OF THE DEL MONTE

About this time of the year the Del Monte Hotel is thronged with the uniforms of every branch of the service. Besides the C. M. T. C. people from the Polo Fields on the hill, there are booted and spurred Reserve Field gunners and Cavalrymen from the Presidio at Monterey who come over after dinner to see what can be accomplished in the nature of an enveloping movement toward an attractive flapper. This is always a source of great annoyance to the young gentlemen from Los Angeles who figure in the seventh flight of the golf tournament, wear enormous white flannel plus fours, use much brillantane and play the fifty cent slot machines with a nonchalant abandon in an effort to offset the traditional failing of the fair for a well fitting pair of Peal's riding boots complete with guards and spurs.

All of which is no part of the story but at least provides the locale of my meeting with the Skeptic, furnishes a touch of local colour and may inspire a little consideration on the part of certain acquaintances who do their two weeks' infantry reserve training near some terrible place called Tacoma.

PONTIUS PILATE AND HIS FRIENDS

As I said before, no one can accuse me of prejudice—a mere foreign infantryman guest observer at that, and if I did wear spurs it was only because Pontius Pilate introduced me to the twin stars of Salinas as the Colonel

"ALLONS"

of the 10th Huzzars. Pontius Pilate is a priceless chap who lives somewhere in the middle of California where they grow raisins—I've forgotten the name of the place but one would never go there anyhow.

For eleven months and two weeks in each year he is inter alia a Sunday school superintendent and looks the part—in fact he might well be mistaken for the local curate, but once in his uniform as Reserve Major of Cavalry he commences a career of frightfulness that would make an Oburst of the Pommeranian Guards explode with envy. And yet, withal, the first man into the saddle after reveille, a clean point on the sabre course, and every round from his automatic scoring at the gallop down the mounted range. Damned if I know how he does it.

He was only one of a number of Reserve Field Officers whose quarters I shared, excellent fellows who loved their jobs and who parted with their mounts in 1917 to serve with other branches of the service, feeling there had been some grave oversight on the part of Providence in connection with the whole affair. Tanks, Staff, Guns, and Flying Corps had been deserted with demobilisation and like homing pigeons they sought their old squadrons and the black and gold hat cord.

"On revient toujours a son premier amour."

They were keen men, competent troop and squadron leaders, and if a little stiff the first day or two in the saddle, yet well in touch with the Army Correspondence courses and very sound on Bernhardt—but perhaps a bit shaken from the over reiterated snorts of many Skeptics.

We were really enjoying our first evening together very much—the bar of the Del Monte is only twenty minutes from the Presidio at Monterey—and it's almost as good a spot to renew acquaintances as the old "Bar Americain" used to prove. Imagine running into a fellow from San Diego who knew Marguerite of "The Cathedral" at Amiens and a major bloke who'd had his face slapped by Pip Squeak at Avesnes-le-Comte. Poisonous infant she was!

THE SKEPTIC APPEARS

In the middle of all this the Skeptic appeared just as Micky McGee was explaining that nothing was impossible with good cavalry and Pontius Pilate had got the glad eye from the younger of the Salinas sisters.

Fancy arriving at little gathering of this nature without a drop of your own and then calmly and contemptuously informing your hosts they had as much practical significance as the oft quoted biological analogy in connection with the genus taurus.

It was a stunner to me.

And then to proceed to prove it—"All of the experience and observation of the European War showed the farce of sending cavalry against any line held by infantry in position. Why keep up the damn thing anyhow?"

I thought first they were silent because he was a full colonel, you know,

broken arches and a silver eagle, till suddenly it struck me that the Reserve Cavalrymen had to put up with a lot of this sort of thing.

Again I protest all prejudice—but "Whose bread I eat, his song I sing."

THE SPURS CLANK

So I clanked my spurs—the very same Champion & Wilton's that Sergeant Ryan eyed next morning and remarked, "If ye ever stick them into No. 15 she'll kick the stars off your goddam sleeve, sir." But I had one good clank anyhow.

"The most priceless thing, sir, about observations of the war made by the more recent models of the Emperor Napoleon—democratic and otherwise—is the amazing clarity with which they discover things which a pink eyed private in the R. A. M. C. could have told them before it started.

"Cavalry could not break the Hindenburg Line—in fact it's not good business to attack barbed wire with men on horses at all. If the line can not be broken by infantry the cavalry can not go into action and will probably be raising the devil among the wenches in the rear areas, which is the legitimate function of the Staff. Therefore, they are extinct.

"What the master minds of twenty General Staffs have not yet observed is that only two times in the War was a field army put out of business—and on each of these occasions it was done with great masses of cavalry handled by competent cavalry commanders, to wit, Allenby and Von Mackensen.

"When the jolly old Hun arrived to discuss the Armistice terms he came through an unbroken front with a guard of honor, fourteen points, and not the wildest idea that he'd been licked by anyone. But after Sir Edmund had told his batman to fish a brace of Turkish Field Marshals out of the guard-house so that they might affix their respective Bradburys to a few succinct sentiments compiled without the assistance of any civilian whatsoever—well, the Western front might be safe for democracy, but a Gentleman could stroll from Dan to Beersheba without the slightest apprehension of the most casual intrusion from anyone whomsoever.

"Which is the difference between doing the job the way God intended it, Sir, with Cavalry—and letting the enveloping movement be executed by a lot of mealy mouth politicians."

The Skeptic didn't have time to respond. Pontius Pilate was opening his last quart, and even Colonel — from San Diego admitted he'd break a life long rule and have one himself this time.

A REAL CAVALRY REGIMENT

Reveille is a sweet call if you've been out of the service for a bit—it woke me up to meet the —th Cavalry on their own parade ground. They were my first acquaintance with a cavalry corps absolutely devoid of tradition, and to be perfectly frank I don't believe they'd have known what to do with it if they'd had any—simply no where to put it.

It didn't take long to grasp their attitude of being too damn busy for that sort of piffle—of course they don't talk about it, but the motto on their

Coat of Arms is "Allons." It means just exactly what it says and if you don't know what that is, you'd better find out before doing any business with the —th. None but an American Regiment could "get away" with a sentiment like that on a cap badge.

It must be admitted I had to be convinced. My first impression was not favorable because on presenting my "striker" with a button stick he eyed it with incredulous amazement—in fact he didn't believe there was such a thing. His name was Strinsky and his accent was somewhat reminiscent of a corporal in the Gordons who was never under any circumstance permitted to appear in the front rank. However, despite this bad start, after seeing the Regiment go by a saluting base at three gaits that afternoon, it wasn't until I'd had a couple after dinner that I was able to convince myself the Greys or the 2nd D. Gs. could have done it as well, that is, of course—any better!

ITS COMMANDING OFFICER

Whenever you run into a regiment where orders are given without explanations and taken without discussion you don't have to see the C. O. to know just exactly what he looks like. Unquestionably he will be known among the troopers as Hardheart, Hangman Joe, Old Frightful, or some similar soubriquet, but quite an effective way to get a thick ear or a split lip is to criticise him in their hearing if you belong to another "outfit."

As a young lawyer in Portland who had served with the 91st Division subsequently stated "When that bird told you to do anything you did it, if you had to acquire a hernia in the effort"—at least that was the gist of his remark and I rather imagine it was a sound one.

There wasn't as much of the ceremonial feature of discipline as you'd find in the Guards' Brigade but any time I'm backing my fancy in cavalry against the field I'd like to "lay off" a bit on the —th because they are exactly the sort of fellows who are liable to come out of the ruck unheralded and beat the best at any game they may be playing.

INVESTIGATING THE HORSE

For ten days or so the Regiment took us to their hearts like blood brothers—they worked us hard but they knew their jobs and I'll venture the assertion that no service can equal the American in the competency of its officer-instructors. I mean particularly their competency in instructing. Imagine spending three hours of intense interest in a blacksmith shop. After years of affection for horses and much riding and jumping I felt—up till then—that shoeing, spavins, glanders, and that sort of thing were part of the animal's own private affairs and that interest in them carried a suggestion of rather intrusive indecency—you know, like being introduced to the mother of the chorus girl you've been dashing about with.

Well, do you know that the evening after our session with Captain Adamson and his farrier, dear old Pontius Pilate and I got into a furious argument in the Grill at Del Monte on the subject of "frog pressure" and neglected the

Dark Dolores from Salinas and her slender sister to such an extent that when the waiter brought the check he enquired, "Bardon, Gíneral, is dem ladies in de bardy?" (General Kuhn and I were the only people wearing stars at Del Monte this season.)

For ten days we had a kaleidoscopic insight into the training of a caval-ryman, the tactical features of the mounted service and kindred arms includ- ing the horse guns and the machine gun sections. Little by little it was pieced together under our eyes with an efficiency and completeness that left no room for doubt.

THE TURN OF THE RESERVE OFFICERS

Finally the Reserve officers were given an opportunity at command, handling squadron and troop each according to their several ability and sta- tion. The training schedule was well worked out—in the time at their dis- posal they had put their Reserves through a carefully considered constructive programme that resulted in a completed impression of the significance of the training manoeuvre and tactics of squadron and troop. Anywhere else in the world it would have been complete—here it lacked something. It's no good knowing a job if you haven't much faith in the value of doing it—and no one had talked back to the Skeptic except an infantryman.

But as the —th Cavalry and their C. O. who didn't have to have faith— because they knew—were not altogether unmindful of the Skeptic and per- sons of that ilk—the final phase of the training was dedicated to him and to such others as needed spiritual support.

In the lobby of the Del Monte Hotel is a large blackboard on which the days events are chalked up. The Wednesday before we left the Presidio it bore the announcement among others:

There will be a military demonstration by the —th Cavalry and the 3rd Field (Horse) Artillery on the Gigling Reservation tomor- row at 12 Noon. Arrangements have been made to transport guests to an observation point of advantage as this will be a spectacular event. Reservations, etc.

THE TERRAIN

Observation Hill was a bare swell of ground about three hundred feet high and the length of a well hit mashie shot. A goodly company of fair damsels and gallant gentlemen occupied its North end and made themselves conspicuous or comfortable according as they came from Los Angeles or else- where. The South end of the Hill was reserved for the Umpires and such officers as were not actively engaged in the manoeuvre. The former included the General, a G. S. Officer from a neighboring Corps and—was it possible!— the Skeptic.

To the north and our right a road lay through a deep valley and above it rose a timbered ridge over which a cloud of dust could be seen in the rear dis- tance. It was obvious that a considerable body of troops was moving along the crest trail masked by the trees. The valley road forked sharply, one

branch crossing our front two hundred yards below, the other swinging off to the north. Between us and the road lay the west slope of Observation Hill covered with what would be sage brush if you happened to be anywhere else except in California—anyhow it was some close growing shrub about waist high—if you're an infantryman. I thought it rather a beastly place for a cavalry charge myself! Across the road rose a steep hill which commanded its forks but sloped away to the South. On it were two flags indicating a de- fensive position, while farther south and in the rear lay another flag marking a covering post.

You could see the whole thing at a glance—a rear-guard was to hold the road forks as long as they could, while the second position would cover the retreat—the idea being to force an extensive deployment of the advancing forces. On account of the proximity of "Defense Day" it should be stated that there was no one on the hill but that normally it would have been oc- cupied by perhaps a Company dug in with machine guns. To have cleared the position with infantry would have required at least a battalion in a very wide turning movement and taken several hours—the Skeptic was non- committal on just how long.

THE SHOW BEGINS

Suddenly there was the flapping rattle of mounted equipment and a patrol of the —th appeared on our left below Observation Hill—from the dust cloud on the ridge to the north where the main force of an advance guard could be presumed to be advancing, it looked like a wide flung "flankers" sec- tion. Crack! Crack! and the patrol withdrew behind the south slope.

At-tat-tat-tat-crack-crack-crack—another patrol had broken into view from the timber above the road fork and been met with rifle and machine-rifle fire. Their commander could be seen surveying the enemy's position through his glasses and despatching a message. Thereafter they disappeared from view but an occasional rifle shot with its whistling scream across the valley indi- cated they were holding the position and this would be a "live Round" party. It also suggested that any mounted action would develop nearer to us—does not the little red book say that forward units in an advance guard should hold their ground to provide the axis for a pivot of manoeuvre?

"What is the time?" asked the General of the Skeptic.

"Twelve thirty, sir."

Colonel — of San Diego now appeared with a small group of officers on the valley ridge some two hundred yards behind us. He looked over the enemy line, gave some orders and did a fade out.

A sputtering crackle of rifle fire broke from the woods over the road forks and the bullets whined on their way—there was a rattle, a roar and flutter- ing of olive drab among the pines. Att-Att-tat-tat-tat and half a dozen ma- chine rifles were scything the slope before us. Bam-Bam-Bam Bam-Whee-e- Pong! Sw-is-is-ish. The field guns were in action, spraying the hillside.

THE ACTION PROGRESSES

A ripple of dismounted men flung out of the woods toward the road forks, going to ground and firing.

Down the valley road masked from the enemy position by Observation Hill, two troops were moving at a smart canter—the purpose of the movement was now plain. They would deploy behind us and turn the objective from the south.

The Skeptic got his map out and began to check distances—he had a nasty look.

A second wave of dismounted troopers washed out of the woods into the firing line—the machine guns were now rattling into an unbroken roar and the 75's were firing as rapidly as shells could be rammed home.

The crest of the objective was ablaze and dancing earth—the theoretic enemy's fire was being beaten down and he was pinned to his ground.

It was just about as near to the real thing as one could wish to see—we were about 300 yards from the target and seeing the entire show in perfect comfort—gun flashes were stabbing through the green pines; here and there a rocking muzzle could be glimpsed.

The civilians were getting the thrill of a century and I could see the Dark Dolores looking for P. Pilate in the firing line that was crawling prone down towards the road fork.

Bam Bam Bam—whish—whee—ec. Pong, Pong. They were full out now in answer to a soaring rocket and over the south slope, within fifty yards of us swept two troops, four extended lines of screaming men on crazed horses, heads low over gleaming sabres. Down the ridge through the tangled brush they plunged, over the road and up the slope from the other side they swirled, the guns lifting from their targets to the rear in perfect synchronism and pursuits units wheeling out to a flank.

"What is the time?" asked the General of the Skeptic.

"One ten, sir."

THE POST MORTEM

We gathered for a post mortem at the assembly point and dismounted in circle around the umpires.

The General and the G. S. Major discussed the tactical features—they seemed pleased and they jolly well should have been. It was a beautifully executed movement—forty minutes to clear a position and destroy the defenders—no check whatsoever to the movement of the "main body" and no enemy left to fall back on the next cross roads. Why the best Light Infantry in the world would have taken two hours merely to turn the flank and would have found the same enemy in an equally good location some miles further along the road. Meantime a main body would have telescoped into the Advance Guard.

But the Skeptic dissented—the —the knew he would—and he ran true to form.

He could not deny that he was impressed with the accuracy and precision of the movement—he would concede that he was somewhat staggered at the speed with which it had developed, but in the large and broader tactical feature he could not concede it practical. His own experience, the lessons of the Argonne still carried their conviction. The day when cavalry could assault infantry in position had passed with Bredow's Brigade at Vionville. The defensive features of the position were thus—and here a dozen maps tumbled out in the hands of the —th's officers—but you can imagine my astonishment to see that Stillinger's showed a stream marked Tigris on its top corner and that creek is a devil of a long way from the Gigling Reservation at Monterey.

"Thus and so were the defensive features" and as each was enumerated there came an approving nod. The Skeptic knew his own "pidgin" if he didn't know everybody else's.

"And so, gentlemen, the operation fails in spite of the efficiency of execution, because it is a tactical impossibility."

"Then, Sir,"—like a pistol shot—"how do you account for its having been done?"

THE IMPOSSIBLE BECOMES POSSIBLE

The Skeptic was now consulting a map which was not of the Gigling area. It was headed "Allenby's Cavalry at Hadraniyeh Bluff" and the operation just carried out was its exact duplicate in distances, deployment, time and terrain. It could have been done off the ground from either map.

And that was jolly well that.

Pontius Pilate looked at me enquiringly.

My canteen had not even been uncorked so far and there was no echo from the spat it had just received. A horn honked in the valley.

"Allons," said P. Pilate.

So we allons-ed.

The Salinas sisters had the ice and shasta in their smart Marmon coupe below Observation Hill and the plus-four sheik from Los Angeles was pushing off when we arrived—he seemed fed up over something.

"What was it all about?" he enquired sneeringly.

"Merely to demonstrate," said P. Pilate, "that you can get anywhere and stay there if you've got the speed."

He looked toward the three of us over a tinkling glass.

"Allons," said Pontius Pilate.

And we allons-ed.

MARK VII.

The 1924 Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Teams

BY

Lieutenant Colonel A. H. DAVIDSON, Fourteenth Cavalry, Team Captain

Fifty Officers and enlisted men were assembled at Fort Des Moines, Iowa, last week in June, 1924, for a try-out for the squad to go to Camp Perry, there to participate in the National Matches and National Rifle Association Matches.

Each Regiment, by direction of the Chief of Cavalry, had a try-out from its personnel, to determine the men best qualified for team work. This method is believed to be the correct one, but it requires the loyal support of the Regimental Commanders. Equipment was issued to all men the day after they reported. June 30th, practice began and continued at the rate which from experience it was believed would produce results.

CONDITIONS OF NATIONAL MATCHES

The National Match called for 10 shots, 200 yards, standing, without use of sling, and arm away from the body, one minute per shot; 10 shots, 200 yards, sitting or kneeling from standing, 1 minute per score; 10 shots, 300 yards, prone from standing, 1 minute and 10 seconds per score; 10 shots, 600 yards prone, 1 minute per shot; 20 shots, 1,000 yards, prone, 1½ minutes per shot; a total of 60 shots for the course.

Once over the course was the rule each day. The men were divided into squads of six, each under direct charge of a squad leader, and shot in pairs. Men of each Regiment were assigned to the same squad when practicable. It was impressed upon all from the start that we were called together to improve our knowledge of individual rifle and pistol shooting, to produce the best team we could for the National Match and to make better instructors for each man's own organization. It was impressed upon all that each man should help his neighbor in every way possible, such as improving position, trigger squeeze, focusing on the front sight, etc. All were urged to keep regular habits, avoid reading in poor light, moderate the use of tobacco and be in bed so they could have at least eight hours sleep, exercise enough to insure good digestion and eat moderately.

COMPETITIONS DURING TRY-OUT

The Rifle Range was three miles from the Post, where both officers and men were quartered in a vacant barracks. Motor trucks were the means of transportation furnished by the Post Quartermaster. The road was dirt, impassable for motors when it rained. After a few days practice to allow all men to get acquainted with their guns, the range, and special equipment issued, such as telescopes and micrometers, competitions were held for the four cups that are competed for annually, namely, The Holbrook Trophy, presented by General Holbrook; The Fort Bliss Trophy, presented by the Officers of Fort Bliss; The Regimental Team Trophy; and the Cavalry Individual Championship Trophy. The last two, together with certain medals, are paid for by individual contributions



The Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Teams at the National Matches

from Cavalry officers throughout the service. More practice was then had for men to check up on their guns, and the try-out for the Camp Perry squad, eight times over the course, began.

Elimination was then made down to twenty-four. More practice was held without keeping a record and then was held a further try-out six times over the course. Elimination was then made down to nineteen. Ten times over the course would probably have been better, and had there been time it would have been done. At this point, rifle practice was suspended and the pistol elimination completed.

PISTOL PRACTICE

The pistol range was about one-half mile from the Barracks. Pistol practice had been held at odd times when the weather prevented our going to the rifle range. As with the rifle, after eight times over the National Match course, eliminations were made down to fifteen, and after a further six times over the course, eliminations were made down to ten. All but four of the pistol men were also rifle men.

The National Match Pistol course consisted of ten shots at fifty yards, one minute per shot; two scores of five shots each at twenty-five yards, twenty seconds per score, and two scores of five shots, each ten seconds per score; all on the standard American Target. This target is about seven points in each hundred harder than the L target.

The remainder of the time at Fort Des Moines was devoted to individual instruction and further competitive firing. Troop G, 14th Cavalry, was put on special duty with the team and furnished all details necessary for range work, mess and care of quarters. This troop gave excellent service. The Commanding Officer of the Post gave the Team Captain what he asked for and let him go his own way.

AT CAMP PERRY

September 1st, the squad left for Camp Perry. It consisted of a Team Captain, Supply Officer, Supply Sergeant, Cook, Kitchen Police, nineteen Riflemen and Four Pistol Men, twenty-nine in all, and arrived at Camp Perry. September 2d. The Team was well provided with tents and a good frame kitchen and mess hall. It was a great privilege, comfort, and convenience to the Team to have its own mess. At Perry the first two weeks were given over to the School of Fire which of late years precedes the Matches. During this period the service teams were given certain targets daily and allowed to go their own way. This gave them a chance to get acquainted with the range. The only disadvantage was on account of the limited number of targets. The Team was compelled to fire at several ranges at the same time, so that little supervision could be given.

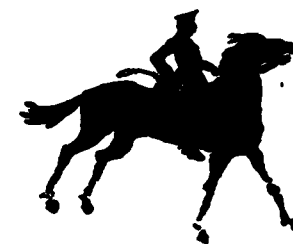
During most of the month of September there was vile shooting weather, with much rain, strong winds, and, barring a few days, too cold for comfort. On September 15th the National Rifle Association Matches began, in which our men had more or less success. In individual and team matches the team won ap-

proximately \$600.00. In the National Pistol Match our team stood third, seven points below the winners. This was the first year our pistol team has been a serious contender for first place. The same five men on the Pistol Team in the National Individual Pistol Match averaged six points higher per man than they did in the team match, in about the same weather. In the enlisted men's team match our team stood third, four below the winners. In the National Team Match the team held up well at 200 yards, both slow and rapid fire, shot below its average at 300 yards rapid fire, held up well at 600 yards, and had four men fall down at 1000 yards. The team finished in fifth place. It had a right to expect third place from the way our men had been shooting. The breaks did not come our way as they did in 1923. Cavalrymen can shoot as well as any other branch of the service, but we must have our best to be on an equal footing with the other branches who give their best for the National Matches.

CONCLUSIONS

It is recommended that the issue of .22 caliber rifles promised by the Ordnance Department to the Cavalry be expedited; .22 caliber rifles, service model, can be used by troops in inclement weather and practice with them is the best method known for teaching men to shoot. Any man who can shoot a .22 can shoot a service rifle and this practice will make a good shot shoot better. Ten .22 caliber service rifles should be issued to the Cavalry Team in 1925. All men who desire to try-out for the team in 1925 should start not later than January to prepare themselves by a few minutes daily practice in position, trigger squeeze, and rapid-fire practice. Bolt action is of prime importance. The great thing in position is to get a comfortable one. Any man who thinks he can wait until the last minute and then excel will fail. There are few natural shots. Any man physically fit to be a soldier can learn to shoot if he has the stamina to go after it and stick.

No donations were called for this year except for the cost of medals supplied through the Office of the Chief of Cavalry.



Fidler's Green in Prose

* * * So when the cavalymen die, their souls ride away with full pack and arms down the long dusty Road to the Next World. But two miles before the fork where the road turns north to Heaven and south to Hell, they ride off the road and dismount. They lead off to the right and past them march the infantry and the artillerymen drive their guns and caissons past, marching on to the fork of the Road to the Next World.

But the dead troopers lead away from the road to the green fields with trees and streams where by the river are pitched row on row of tents. Up on the hill is Headquarters and there are the marquees of the dead old cavalry officers—they too halted here, for they stayed with their own rather than swagger about Heaven or sweat through Hell. They ride with staff and orderlies, flags and escort, Murat and Seidlitz, Forrest, Ziethen and Stuart, and many more, or sit about the tables in the shade, over maps and glasses, as they did in the years when they fought and rode in this world.

Along the picket lines under the trees, the dead troopers feed and groom, each man his own horse that he loved and rode in life. Now "Recall" blows, and "Mess Call": mess is served by celestial cooks and for K. P. and stable police the angels do miracles. The darkening sky shows its jewelry of stars and troopers rest about the fires, lying on the warm grass, with pipe and mug for every man. All together, man-at-arms and squire, cuirassier, lancer, hussar and dragoon; Briton and Frank, Cossack, Roman, Greek, Yank and Reb—all races and every uniform, at peace by the white and brown tents, the horses resting at the lines; the sergeants cease from troubling, the officers too are at rest; cavalymen all, dreaming out eternity in the Last Camp.

And afar through the day and night, from the distant Road to the Next World, comes the muffled tramp of the infantry and the rumbling of the guns (and of late there has been the clangor of tanks and from overhead the hum of planes) marching on to the South Fork of the Road to the Next World.

C. S. C.



Impressions of a Reserve Cavalry Officer at Camp Meade

BY

Lieutenant GUERRA EVERETT, Cavalry Reserve Corps

DURING the War we were often reminded that second lieutenants wore little gold bars to distinguish them from officers. At this critical time, however, when the effectiveness of the Organized Reserve in our new system of national defense is being definitely determined, the observations of a second lieutenant may be of interest to those concerned with our military security; for, while a citizen may, under the Act of June 6, 1920, be commissioned in the Reserve with the same rank that he held in 1917-18, civilians will, in general, always be commissioned as second lieutenants, from which rank promotions will duly occur.

PREPARATION

The 306th Cavalry, Organized Reserves, was created as a complete officer cadre regiment, with a squadron at Baltimore, a squadron at Washington, and incidental troops at towns between. The enlisted personnel consisted of only two men, who, during the course of last winter, passed examinations for commissions, and became, of course, the second lieutenants imaginable. Through correspondence courses and monthly meetings, the officers had been kept informed of the duties that would be required of them in case of emergency; they were, at some of these meetings, freshened up on the intricacies of cavalry drill by a parody of mah jong, in which the dominoes represented galloping platoons and clouds of dust, instead of cyclones and purple dragons.

It was not without a feeling of confidence, therefore, that the 306th reported for two weeks of active duty at Camp Meade, Maryland, on August 1st, in connection with two troops of the 3rd Cavalry regulars from Fort Myer. Training was essentially practical. Paperwork, and dry lectures on military theory, so characteristic of training camps, were abandoned, and the reservists were in the saddle from six to ten hours a day. For practice in drill, each second lieutenant marched at the head of a phantom platoon, keeping his interval and distance in a fictitious troop, while the skeleton regiment formed line from column and column from line accordingly. Otherwise, for maneuvers and marches, the barriers of rank were broken down, and the full equipment of the cavalry enlisted man was issued and carried; on such occasions, the second lieutenant was apt to find his four to include a captain, a lieutenant colonel and a regimental chaplain. During the first week, every officer attended personally to the grooming of his mount and the application of saddle soap to his equipment.

Dinner at the Mounted Officers' Mess required coats, caps, and belts, and there were no doubt social occasions when any second lieutenant might justly yearn for the prestige accorded a major's insignia of superiority. A field day

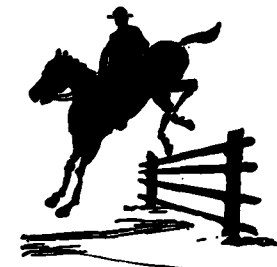
afforded an opportunity to display good horsemanship, and the ribbons were not then distributed according to rank.

VIEWPOINT OF A SECOND LIEUTENANT

In a word, it is difficult for a second lieutenant, upon returning to the world of civil affairs, to look back upon his Camp experience with anything but approval of the manner in which the training period was employed and appreciation of the attitude of the ranking officers. I presume it to be the case with most Reserve officers that the pursuit of a civilian profession or occupation makes such demands upon the intellectual and physical capacities of the individual that little beyond natural adaptability is left when the sudden command is given to Prepare to Mount. Moreover, the greater our constancy and application in furthering the ordinary pursuits of life, the more responsible our civilian status is apt to become, and it is too often the case that our relative military rank meanwhile remains stationary; hence, if there is any reluctance about reassuming the latter, such hesitancy is ascribable to a just feeling that we may not be accorded the consideration which we have been accustomed to demand, deserve, and receive, in civil life. The rank that may have been appropriate for a man six or seven years ago is manifestly in all probability not commensurate with his present position; but that, unless he can afford much additional time to be devoted to study and preparation for examination, is the rank which he must assume while on active duty.

ATTITUDE OF INSTRUCTORS

The Camp Meade authorities appeared to understand and appreciate this situation exactly. The Regular officers assigned for the instruction of the 306th were courteous and helpful without being pedantic; our own commanders within the regiment elicited the requisite discipline without the inordinate display of "hard-boiled" petty despotism. There was not a martinet in sight, and everywhere there seemed to prevail a democratic desire to teach and serve and learn which ought always to characterize the new Army of the United States.



Cavalry Dinner of 62d Cavalry Division, Camp Meade, Maryland, August 9, 1924



The Story of An Officer's Patrol

Reconnaissance of Lieutenant de Hauteclouque, 28th Dragoons, August 27-28, 1914, translated from *La Revue de Cavalerie*, Paris, May-June, 1924

BY

Captain ROYDEN WILLIAMSON, 5th Cavalry

FOR two days we were retiring, slowly but constantly, under the enemy pressure.

The lamentable exodus of the country people fleeing before the invasion, the aspect of certain infantry units sorely tried by the preceding battle, filled our hearts with melancholy.

I asked myself anxiously: "Where shall I ever find them again?" as I watched the last squadrons of my division retreating southward while I remained alone, abandoned with my men in the corner of a little wood near Blanchefosse and in my despatch case the order sending me on reconnaissance.

"The 4th Dragoon Brigade will detach on reconnaissance one platoon. This platoon will retrace its steps to the north, direction Blombay, and ascertain the general direction of march, north-south or east-west, of the main body of the enemy forces which have passed the frontier.

"Intelligence for the day of the 27th to Brunehamel. Duration of the mission: two days."

No indication of the destination for intelligence on the second day! Alas! I suspect too well the reason for that omission.

Be that as it may. Here I am with seventeen men alone for two days and two nights, all that remains of my fine platoon.

With these seventeen men, I must break through the enemy's security and penetrate sufficiently far to the north to find an observation point from which I can satisfy my faith in the general direction of the Germans. Then, from this point, I must send gallant troopers some forty kilometers through the thick of the enemy zone to carry back my information.

Covered by some vedettes, I study carefully my map and, according to it, conclude that by moving to a wooded height, hill 261, which dominates the valley of Maubert-Fontaine, I shall probably have the chance of seeing something interesting, although I may modify this idea on the ground.

During these reflections, Langlois has fed a liter of oats to each of the horses and run to fill our musette bags at an abandoned farm near by. He returns bearing in triumph two hams. These are immediately carved and distributed.

THE START

And now, enroute toward the approaching enemy.

Thank Heaven! the country is cut up into small woods, that between them the ground is dry and the footing suitable for horses. This enables us to avoid the roads where we would be certain to be stopped. Luck favors us.

Some German cavalymen, accompanied by cyclists, pass without seeing us. Some small enemy fractions, advance guards, no doubt, follow them on the roads. We proceed.

Avoiding the villages and after two hours of most prudent marching, we approach the observation point I had determined upon.

The situation thickens. The crest which I had chosen overlooks a road which it is necessary to cross.

On this road trends majestically an immense Boche convoy. And thoroughly guarded, too.

No use in tackling that. We would certainly be flattened out.

Fortunately there is another crest fifteen hundred meters distant which I can reach without crossing this popular road, and from which I shall be able without doubt to see as well as from the first one.

But mistrusting that a small German post may be installed there, I despatch Saint-Genest, with one man, to reconnoiter.

They set out at a trot. From the edge of the wood in which I have hidden my platoon I watch them with a field glass.

They drop down into a depression. Nothing yet.

AN EXCITING MOMENT

But all at once, as I scan the hillside which they are about to make for, I see through my binoculars five Germans. These, having seen my two men without the latter knowing it, are preparing to ambush them along a hedge beside which they are obliged to pass.

I see all this in a flash and am horror stricken at my impotence to save my two men from the fate which is awaiting them.

Breathlessly I watch them begin their ascent of the fatal slope.

Thank God! The Germans have lacked coolness. Not having the nerve to wait for them, they fire too soon. Five faint detonations . . . and my two bucks return at a gallop, delighted to have given so good an account of themselves.

Only, one of their horses is gravely wounded in the thigh. Lubert, my veterinary sergeant, says he won't live more than three or four hours. It is "*Guet-Apens*," a big gray, that used to pull like an extortioner formerly in the squadron school.

Since the poor beast isn't for long, I resolve to make use of him to carry in my first intelligence and to warn the division staff of what I have encountered up to now.

Tearing a leaf from my notebook, I write a message. *Guet Apens'* rider takes it, salutes and without a word departs. May God aid him!

The message, as I learned later, reached its destination. The horse fell dead upon arriving.

The Germans meanwhile, have departed. They were cyclists. I could see them making off on their machines by a transverse road.

A moment's gallop and we are on the coveted crest.

AN IMPRESSIVE SIGHT

Lord! what a swarming! All the roads are gray with troops. A veritable torrent of humanity defiling from north to south, and with the tranquillity which only comes from the absolute feeling of an insurmountable force.

Columns of infantry follow columns of artillery, and as far as the horizon, as far as my glass will carry, on all the routes, the *feldgrau* swarms. Poor France!

But it's no time for sentiment! Quick! A page from my message book, and in the clearest possible way I make a hasty sketch on which I indicate the points where the roads are encumbered at the moment I write.

"Roseleur, this information is very important."

"*Bien, mon lieutenant.*"

"At no matter what cost, the division commander must have it before night. You can find your way?"

"*Oui, mon lieutenant.*"

Roseleur salutes me, puts the paper in his right gaiter, gathers his reins and calmly departs, like a man who knows how much he must, in such a case, economize his mount.

At two hundred meters from us he takes up the trot.

Brave fellow. I follow him with the glass as he withdraws. He crosses a little wood, then another, and arrives in front of a third. But what's this?

THE MESSENGER IN TROUBLE

In a terrible header, man and horse roll on the ground. Neither stir. Then the sound of detonations, delayed by the distance, reach us.

From the wood, emerge four Germans advancing toward their victim. They, too, are cyclists. With the glasses I can distinguish their machines, leaning against a mass of stones at the entrance to the wood.

But all at once the situation changes. Caught under his dead horse, Roseleur has not delayed in getting free. There he is on his feet, his rifle in hand! How he is running!

The Germans are running after him, firing as they go.

Suddenly he turns and aims. In a flash the four Germans are hugging the ground. Roseleur darts off. The Germans arise and resume their pursuit.

Once more Roseleur's rifle cracks; once more the Germans take cover, and so on a number of times.

At last my game lad gains the road. He jumps on one of the German bicycles and to the great dumbfounding of his discomfited enemies, he escapes.

After nightfall Roseleur arrived at headquarters with his bicycle and delivered his message.

But look out! All these comings and goings of my separate troopers have put the Boches on the alert. They must have gotten wind of our patrol.

Here is an entire German squadron springing up in a wooded bottom and headed for the wood in which we are hiding. Five or six small cyclist groups are covering the roads on the outskirts of our observation point.

There is no doubt about it. We must decamp, and quickly.

A NARROW ESCAPE

"Assembly point: the wood beside that farm, in prolongation of my saber. Gallop!"

We dash like a whirlwind out of our retreat, in the face of the Germans, and before they have taken a decision, we are at the indicated point.

Out of luck! two other enemy platoons, hidden by a hedge, debouch on our right.

"Assembly point: those two elms on the crest, in the direction of my saber. Gallop!"

At four hundred meters from the elms, some significant cracks! The hill is held!

A chance! A sunken road!

"By trooper, follow me. Gallop!"

Thank Heaven! the sunken road leads to a thick wood which shelters us, panting. The horses have six kilometers of full gallop in their legs.

"Mon lieutenant, an enemy squadron is approaching the wood by the highway."

The situation is critical. The horses are all in. There's nothing to do but sell one's skin as dearly as possible. An idea!

"Everybody into the underbrush and not a sound!"

The men form in line in the thickets, happily very thick, and rest on their horses' necks to make themselves less visible. The animals themselves seem to understand—not one of them stirs.

Hidden in the wood, we hear the hoofs of the enemy cavalry beating the road not two hundred meters from us. They are passing without seeing us.

Now they have passed. Ouf!

Gliding to the edge of the thicket, I perceive distinctly the enemy groups continuing their search after having passed us.

Ten minutes' rest, and then, tranquilly this time, we move off in the opposite direction.

The sun is almost setting. From the little wood on the crest to which we have gone back, we can see the hostile tide continuing its flow toward the south. There is no doubt about it, that is their axis of march. To-morrow again we shall confirm this conclusion and then our mission will be completed.

A STOP FOR THE NIGHT

For to-night let's try to give a little rest to men and animals, which for several days have been so harassed with fatigue.

But to remain here is impossible. We would risk being captured lying down when morning comes.

According to the map, a large wood near Liart, some kilometers to the south, would seem to offer a better refuge.

"Column of twos, follow me!"

In the gathering darkness, we move along like shadows, one man a few meters ahead of us as scout. We can perceive the sparks from his horse's shoes as they strike the stones of the little path we follow. Not a word is spoken. All eyes are fixed on the surrounding country.

A village: "Halt!"

I join my scout and together we move toward its entrance.

A dark form slips toward us. It is the curé of the place, a poor old man with snow white hair. He tells us that many German horsemen passed through the village an hour before, warning him that they would return there during the night.

A water trough is near. The horses drink, while the curé and I place ourselves on the road as security against a possible surprise.

All his parishioners have fled, he tells me, but he could not persuade himself to abandon his little church. And when I ask him about a possible shelter for the night, he indicates a small farm off in the woods some hundreds of meters from the main road to Liart.

We set off. And after some exploring, we find the farm mentioned. It has, as its sole exit, a little path, bordered with fir trees, which leads to and crosses the highway.

It is not much, but we have no choice. The horses' girths are loosened and oats are fed, half the platoon feeding at a time. The men, extenuated, have scarcely the strength to eat. They fall asleep in heaps on piles of hay, at the heads of their mounts.

With the N. C. Os I organized a simple service of security, which consists solely in watching the path leading to the highway. Then, rolled in my overcoat, I go to sleep on a mattress, confident in our star for the morrow.

AN INTERRUPTED NAP

At one A. M. I feel myself shaken, while a low voice is calling:

"Mon lieutenant, mon lieutenant!"

It is Saint-Genest, come to inform me that he hears considerable noise on the main road. I get up, load my revolver and, under cover of the fir trees we creep to it.

There is a deep ditch covered by a hedge, and into this we both crawl. Then, with all our eyes, we look.

And in the inky blackness of the night a fantastic procession is revealed.

For two hours German troops are passing, within three meters of our bodies; the heavy heels of their boots scraping on the macadam.

First of all, the infantry, drunk with enthusiasm and, contrary to all the rules of night marching, singing military airs at the tops of their voices.

For a moment the road is deserted. Then, in a bewildering rattle, batteries and caissons follow the same direction. Then the infantry again, and then more artillery.

As we lie on our revolvers, we witness with poignant anxiety this wave of our enemies sweeping over our poor country.

But look! The night commences to grow pale. The haze of dawn begins to rise like a velvet mantle, lighting the woods with an indeterminate tint. Lest it be too late, we must be off.

In low tones the N. C. Os awaken the men, giving them my orders:

"Form the platoon in line in the farm yard, faced toward the exit. Mount silently and without command, each two assisting one another in order to make the least possible noise."

The dawn is rising, and with it the haze thickens.

It is a difficult problem how to get out of this rat-trap. Its only egress is this little path which, at one hundred meters from us, crosses the main highway on which the enemy troops are marching incessantly.

A BOLD MANEUVER

Our only chance is to profit by an interval between two elements in the German column and to jump, like deer, the highway at top speed.

"Move out: when the officer raises his saber, by twos behind him at a gallop."

The sound of the enemy infantry on the road seems to diminish. It's the tail of a column, without doubt.

I raise my saber.

We plunge into the alley. Like lightning, we cross the highway. Not soon enough, however, as not to be able to see the head of a new German unit coming through the fog. It salutes us with a volley, but without harming us.

We have air at last. And now, to work.

Not knowing where to send any messages, I resolve to do my utmost to complete my observations of the day before in order to confirm absolutely my idea of the direction taken by the enemy forces, then, with this obtained, to regain our lines by the shortest route, making my discoveries known to everyone I meet before coming up with my division commander.

It is little likely, too, in view of the density of German troops in the entire region, that a single messenger could get through and I haven't the heart to dispatch a man with the almost positive certainty of never seeing him again.

With the stealth of Indians, we move northward once more.

It is obvious that the fog is making the enemy nervous. Several gun shots, fired on chance, sweep our path, even as we move almost invisible through the woods. The men have become seasoned now. They pay no attention to them. Moreover, the fatigue is such that the horses themselves no longer prance when the bullets fly.

Between evening and dawn we have been making sixty kilometers coming and going; added to the sixty of the march of the day before and not forgetting that night, passed on outpost, it has been quite enough to calm the nerves of more impressionable people than the brave fellows of the 1st Squadron's 2nd Platoon.

Nevertheless, I begin to feel that physical strength is nearing its limit. We have scarcely slept three hours in as many days.

THE POOR RESERVIST

O . . . can do no more. This is a reservist who joined us at Charleville. He hasn't seen much yet. Saddle-sore, he is suffering and implores me to permit him to dismount.

Impossible, the enemy is everywhere.

A few moments later, he begs again.

Alas! I pity him, but my mission and the general security is not to be risked by an imprudence.

"No, no, no," I tell him, peevishly.

The poor boy arouses all my compassion. Yet I can not permit it. Neither can I abandon a man who would certainly be killed or taken a few moments afterward. Besides, his capture would almost surely lead to the taking of my entire patrol.

So, "No," a hundred times "no," I don't want the enemy to take a single man from me, sick or wounded.

In spite of my positive refusal. O . . . , completely done, slips underneath his horse. I see him and turn about. He is following painfully on foot, leading his horse by the bridle and already has lost some twenty meters on the platoon. I stop the outfit.

"O . . . , mount up."

"Mon lieutenant, I can't."

"O . . . , I order you to mount."

"Mon lieutenant, I assure you I can't do any more; I can't, I can't."

I am moved by the suffering of this poor fellow, for I know it is not feigned. But I have not right to allow myself to be detained.

"O . . . , I shall not leave anything living behind me, I warn you. To horse!"

And I have drawn my revolver.

A non-com helps him to mount. He groans for a while, then keeps silent. It is the unhappy duty of an isolated leader, sole master, after God, of the troops he commands.

However, without too many difficulties, we succeed in reaching our observation point of yesterday.

Singularly enough, the panorama, filled with enemies the day before, is to-day almost deserted. Alone, the main road from Rocroi is encumbered with an interminable file of vehicles of all sorts moving southward.

EVIDENCES OF VANDALISM

We depart. The villages themselves are empty, but bear traces of the enemy. Dead chickens lie in the farm yards in the midst of half-burned mattresses and chairs. Beautiful white linen, the pride of the housewives of the country, trail from broken cupboards. Writings with coal on walls here and there bear witness to the insolence of the conqueror.

On one little country house is obligingly written an inscription in German: "Good house, completely pillaged," to save others a useless ransacking.

All the inhabitants have disappeared.

We halt in the midst of all this desolation to breathe our horses and let them drink and eat. While this takes place, I wander lamentingly from house to house. Everything is upside down. In one of them, amid all sorts of filthy rubbish, lies an enemy corpse, sprawling like a hog. Dead from what? From drunkenness, from gluttony? His comrades had abandoned him there, eager no doubt, to seek other prey or other pillaging.

How lovely, this Kultur!

It is noon. The most difficult part is yet to be done. That is, to rejoin the French lines, crossing once more all the German troops we have been seeing since yesterday and behind which we find ourselves to-day.

But where to rejoin? Where is my division fighting now?

To the south a heavy cannonading has been going on for an hour.

I resolve, the enemy permitting, to bear off toward Brunehamel, where the staff was quartered last evening. Perhaps some inhabitants still remain who can give us information. On our way!

The men are somewhat rested. They have eaten and drunk at their ease, profiting by what the Germans so kindly left us.

The horses, too, seem to realize that they are on the homeward way. The sun is radiant.

In my opinion, Brunehamel ought to be just off the axis of march of the German forces seen yesterday. That perhaps will make our going easier.

In fact, aside from some small and fairly weak enemy elements marching south, their backs toward us and never seeing us, we make a march of about two hours without incident, always avoiding all roads, of course, and bounding from wood to wood.

We are not more than three kilometers now from Brunehamel. I determine to take advantage of the tranquillity of the moment and a pretty glade to give a good half hour's rest to the horses. While my non-commissioned officers organize the security, I proceed on horseback some three hundred meters in advance of the platoon to look over the ground. Dismounting and passing the reins over my right arm, I let the brave *Ibicus*, tempted by the green grass dotted with clover, graze. I take out my note book to inscribe all I have seen since yesterday in order to forget nothing.

But here is *Ibicus* commencing to sniff the air. What's up?

Looking about me, I see all at once, and scarcely one hundred meters off, five German horsemen with lances down and coming at a gallop, yelling, meanwhile, in their sympathetic jargon, things that are anything but friendly.

A RECORD JUMP

At Saint-Cyr and Saumur I had indifferent marks for vaulting. And *Ibicus* is no pony. But what a marvellous jump at a gallop I made at that moment! Never did I "beat it" so quickly.

And yet I had time to reflect. I must avoid letting these "birds" discover my platoon, so I fly like a dart in the opposite direction. The rascals pursue

me, but evidently less well mounted than I am, in a few moments they give up the chase. Their horses want no more of it.

Like a child who has just been caught in some mischief, I rejoin my platoon, which has no idea of what has happened, and keep an eye out for my five lascars.

But, thank Heaven, they have ceased to concern themselves with me.

Time flies. En route! Brunchamel is not far now.

The dirt road we are following leads directly to and joins the highway in the center of the village. My two scouts are between the houses. Nothing.

I advance with the rest of the platoon. At this moment one of the men of the point raises his lance, alert signal! I join him at a gallop.

At a turn of the street one could see the branching of the road and on the road at thirty meters distance, marching in column of fours at a walk, is some German cavalry. They are hussars, their Tolpachs covered with gray hoods.

Unluckily, they see me at the same moment and a flutter goes down their ranks.

A DARING CHARGE

There's not a moment to lose. To turn about, I have neither the time nor the wish; my pride holds a humiliating remembrance of my previous flight.

A gesture, and my men, with lances down, come up on the run.

"To the attack! Charge!" My fifteen dragoons dash forward behind me, velling like demons.

Under the shock a dozen enemy riders, taken in flank, tumble, sowing a panic in their ranks, their strength being about that of a squadron.

We literally cut them in two. While their leading platoons flee at a gallop in the direction of their march, the remainder cornered between the houses, attempt to turn about. An indescribable confusion ensues.

Without waiting upon this enjoyable spectacle, we launch off on the high-road after those fleeing before us, the prey of utter terror. This, moreover, is our direction.

As we charge, we plunge down a rapid descent. Divoy, my trumpeter, who knows his regulations, has his instrument to his lips. But at the first notes, his horse runs away, going by me like an arrow. He comes abreast of the rearmost of the Germans who, leaning on his horse's neck, forgets to defend himself.

Divoy, encumbered with his trumpet and not knowing what else to do with it, rains heavy blows with it on the head of his adversary.

All the men behind me laugh and jeer, and the plucky boy, bringing his mount in hand at last, shows us his dilapidated instrument, completely smashed over the thick head of the Teuton.

But no use trying to do too much. The hussars, who are fifty meters ahead of us, have horses obviously fresher than ours! We are not at our goal yet. "He who wants to travel far . . ."

A LUCKY SHOT

Yet I long to give a final salute. With my saber hanging by its knot, I seize the rifle of one of my men and, offhand, without drawing rein, fire into the gray mass in front of us.

To my astonishment, a German hussar tumbles from his saddle.

It is a shot I certainly could never succeed in repeating in a thousand times. I dedicate it to you, hunters of the south!

Progressively we slacken the gait and, profiting by a side road, we politely part company with these too speedy light horsemen of the enemy.

All that ended well. But no longer can we hope to return to Brunchamel for information.

Then, too, evening is coming on. If we do not wish to pass another night outside our lines, there is no time to lose.

I decide to march directly south, where we are most likely to find our comrades.

The difficulty increases, for the ground, less wooded now, no longer permits us to conceal ourselves as hitherto. And our poor animals are no longer capable of a serious effort at rapid gaits.

A village appears before us in the twilight. It seems deserted. To avoid useless fatigue, I resolve to go through it, rather than around it.

Bad hunch! In the square we fall upon an enemy troop in bivouac there. Luckily, they guard themselves poorly.

Before they had recovered from their surprise, we slip by a side street, expecting to escape through the fields.

Damnation! The exit is barricaded!

"One volunteer, to dismount and demolish that barricade."

A trooper jumps down, pushes aside a wheelbarrow, lifts up at arm's length a great ladder which bars the way, and my men, one by one, pass under it.

The enemy is acting now. Some shots, though poorly aimed yet, strike behind us. We must hurry.

A ball hits D's helmet—another has just struck the ladder between the hands of the man as he holds it.

When all the men have passed, the brave trooper says to me:

"Your turn now, mon lieutenant."

Then he methodically replaces the barricade, jumps on his horse and rejoins me.

In the failing light, I look at him. It is O . . . the reservist, our old acquaintance of this morning.

AMONG FRIENDS AGAIN

And now, O! joys to my ears! A cry in French greets us at a turn of the road.

"Halte-la! Qui vive?"

"France! Reconnaissance d'officier."

The sentinel, who has recognized us, comes out of the brush in which he was crouching: It is one of our infantrymen. His outpost commander joins him a moment later and informs me that his general of brigade is installed at Montcornet, a short distance away. At last!

I resolve to pass the night in this little village, guarded by the Queen of Battles.

Upon arriving and while my men are stabling the horses in the covered marketplace, I go to present myself to the general commanding the brigade. He welcomes me most courteously.

It is General M. . . , one of our future stars as an army commander.*

He kindly invites me to his table and makes me relate all I have seen, while a negro of the blackest hue, whose eyes never leave his general, regards him with affection.

Such is the story of my first reconnaissance.

After a night's rest, we left next day and found our regiment near Vervins, just in time to undergo the first shelling in this corner of the battle of Guise, but well content, nevertheless, to be back among friends once more.

*The author's reference is to General Mangin, who retook in 1916 Fort Douaumont and in 1918, as commander of the 10th French Army, which included the 3rd American Corps, turned at Soissons the tide of the war and began the march which ended only at the Rhine.—*Translator*.



The 1924 Endurance Ride

The 1924 Endurance Ride was held at Warrenton, Virginia, and vicinity, October 20-25. This locality is a great horse and hunting country and it was probably for this reason, as well as on account of the varied terrain available for the route, that Warrenton was selected as the site of this year's Ride.

Nineteen horses were entered for the Ride, sixteen starting. Stabling facilities were provided at the Warrenton Horse Show grounds, where every horse had a comfortable box stall. The start and the finish of each day's ride were at this point.

Whole oats, bran, hay and salt bricks were provided for all entries and no other forage permitted, although there was no prohibition on grazing. The maximum daily allowance of grain was fourteen pounds, while that of hay was unlimited.

Sunday, October 19th, the day before the start of the Ride, each horse was weighed and then examined on the halter by the Judges, assisted by the Veterinarians. This was for the purpose of first, determining whether or not each horse was a suitable entry, and second, to determine and record any blemishes or minor defects that may have existed. The horses were then shown under the saddle in the Horse Show ring at the walk, trot, canter, and extended gallop, in order that peculiarities in gait and methods of traveling might be determined and recorded. The horses were turned over to the Judges at 8:00 P. M. on the 19th.

The entries with breeding, name of owner, rider, etc., were as follows:

Pathfinder—Thoroughbred gelding; 8 years; 15-2¼ hands; 980 pounds; owner, U. S. Remount Service, Q. M. Corps; rider, Major C. L. Scott, Remount Service, Q. M. C.

Major S.—Grade Morgan gelding; 8 years; 16 hands; 1069 pounds; owner, Major C. L. Scott, Remount Service, Q. M. C.; rider, Private A. M. Mendinghall.

Ella—Grade thoroughbred mare; 8 years; 15-2 hands; 1040 pounds; owner, Third U. S. Cavalry; rider, Corporal Ray Major, Troop "B," Third Cavalry.

Micky—Anglo-Arab gelding; 7 years; 15-1¼ hands; 910 pounds; owner, Lieutenant Frederick R. Pitts, Third Cavalry; rider, Lieutenant C. E. Byers, Third Cavalry.

Vallendar—Grade thoroughbred mare; 9 years; 15-2 hands; 1000 pounds; owner, Third U. S. Cavalry; rider, Captain V. L. Padgett, Third Cavalry.

Jocko—Grade Morgan gelding; 5 years; 15-2 hands; 970 pounds; owner, Third U. S. Cavalry; rider, Sergeant Joseph Hall, Headquarters Detachment, Second Squadron, Third Cavalry.

Goose Girl—Grade thoroughbred mare; 8 years; 15-2¼ hands; 1030 pounds; owner, Third U. S. Cavalry; rider, Private Daniel J. McQuade, Troop "G," Third Cavalry.

Wine Glass—Grade thoroughbred mare; 6 years; 15-2¼ hands; 1010 pounds; owner, The Cavalry School; rider, Captain Herbert L. Earnest, Cavalry.

Rob Roy—Grade thoroughbred gelding; 7 years; 16-¾ hands; 1215 pounds; owner, The Cavalry School; rider, Captain Harold G. Holt, Cavalry.

Aline—Grade thoroughbred mare; 6 years; 15-¾ hands; 1050 pounds; owner, The Cavalry School; rider, Lieutenant Hugh B. Waddell, Cavalry.

Sorrentino, Jr.—Standard bred stallion; 7 years; 15-2½ hands; 1020 pounds; owner, Lennox D. Barnes; rider, Patrick McMahon.

Just Bingen—Standard bred stallion; 9 years; 15-1¼ hands; 920 pounds; owner, Lennox D. Barnes; rider, John Penny.

Billy Brandon—Grade Morgan gelding; 8 years; 15-1¼ hands; 1065 pounds; owner, C. C. Stillman; rider, Captain Herbert E. Watkins, Cavalry.

Donwell—Grade Morgan gelding; 8 years; 15-1 hands; 1015 pounds; owner, C. C. Stillman; rider, H. E. Fretz.

Peggy—Grade thoroughbred mare; 11 years; 15-2 hands; 965 pounds; owner, Third U. S. Cavalry; rider, Private Samuel J. Matheson, Headquarters Detachment, Second Squadron, Third Cavalry.

Lillian Russell—Grade thoroughbred mare; 10 years; 15-3 hands; 1065 pounds; owner, Captain M. S. Daniels, Third Cavalry; rider, Major K. G. Eastham, Cavalry.

FIRST DAY

At 5:00 A. M. on the twentieth, riders and grooms were on hand promptly for feeding and preparation for the start. The temperature, respiration, and pulse of each horse was taken. As each entry was required to carry a minimum of 225 pounds, the riders before saddling weighed in with their equipment and added the necessary weight in the shape of lead plates. *Rob Roy* and *Winc Glass* were the first to start, leaving at 6:30. They were followed by the others at varying intervals until 7:00 o'clock.

The weather was clear and the morning temperature indicated a mild autumn day. The route led through Manassas, Weaversville, and back to Warrenton. The road, which traversed a rolling country, was rough and rocky in many places, with a few stretches of pavement. Large numbers of loose stones added to its difficulties. Where there were no stones, the baked clay made a footing almost as hard as concrete. Many small streams from a few inches to eighteen inches deep were forded.

At the noon halting place, in addition to a lunch for the riders, two pounds of grain and a bucket of water were provided for each horse. The time spent here varied from eight to nineteen minutes. Some riders removed saddles, others did not. All horses were given grain and water. It was observed that one or two horses that were too warm for feeding, were fed grain.

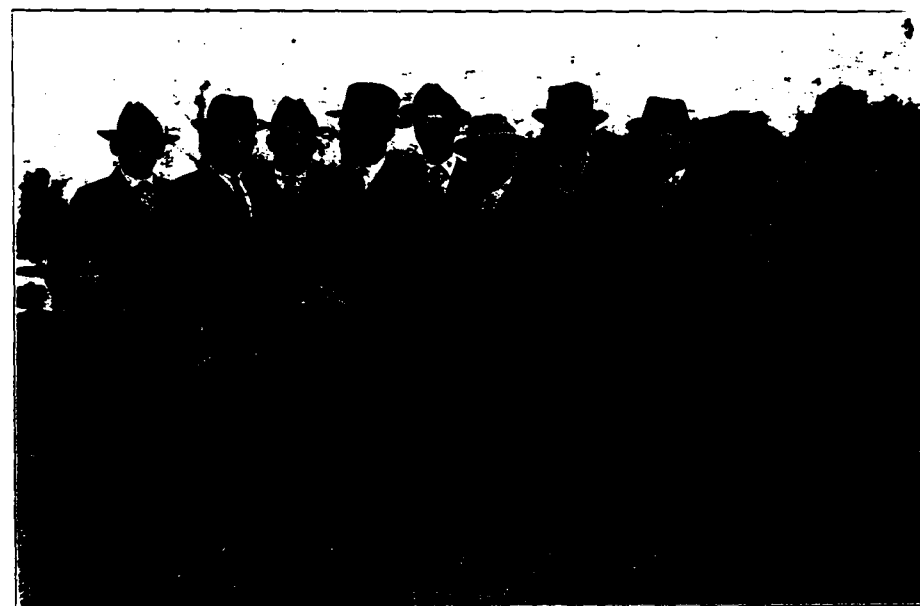
At the noon halt, *Rob Roy* was taken with colic and was withdrawn. His rider attributed it to his fretting at passing horses during the first hour and a half.

All entries, except *Rob Roy*, finished this day's ride in the minimum time of nine hours, and with one exception cooled out well and promptly. *Vallendar*, *Jocko*, *Just Bingen* and *Billy Brandon* were in the worst shape and did not recuperate as well as the others by the next morning. As in the morning, the temperature,

pulse and respiration of each entry was taken and recorded, and this procedure was repeated each day of the ride.

SECOND DAY

On the night of the 20th it turned cold, and the start on the 21st was made in a bitterly cold wind which kept up during the entire day. The route on this day was to Markham and return to Warrenton. The road was very bad, particularly the first half of the route. As on the previous day, many small streams were crossed. The effect of entering these streams with hot legs, wading icy water, out into a cold wind, on a dusty road will appear later.



Courtesy, Bureau of Animal Industry

The Officials of the 1924 Endurance Ride

Mickey was disqualified at 8:20 A. M. on account of his breeding not complying with the regulations governing the Ride, there having been a misunderstanding in regard to this matter at the time of the preliminary examination.

Jocko fell on the pavement in Warrenton soon after the start and cut his knees so badly that he was withdrawn.

The noon halt was made at the Fair Ground at Marshall and all horses ate some grain. *Ella* arrived here lame in the left hind.

Sorrentino, Jr., and *Just Bingen*, the two Standard bred stallions, showed signs of fatigue during the afternoon and it was predicted that they would not start the next day.

Peggy was the only entry to finish the day's ride in minimum time, the others finishing in from nine hours and eleven minutes to nine hours and forty-nine minutes.

That evening several horses were treated for scratches.

THIRD DAY

On the third day, it was colder than on the second day, but the wind was not so strong. The route was to Flint Hill and return.

The field thinned materially this morning, five horses failing to start. *Ella* had scratches and was lame behind, a curb on near hind probably helping it along. *Wine Glass* went out on account of scratches, and *Aline* on account of tendonitis in near fore and scratches. *Sorrentino* and *Just Bingen*, in addition to scratches, were so stiff and sore that they could not start. A shining example of taking animals bred and trained for one sort of work and trying to make them go through a gruelling test of this kind, for which they were not fitted.

With the exception of *Vallendar*, who was beginning to show the effects of the grind, the remaining entries started out the third day in good shape, although some of them had the scratches.

Vallendar came in at noon with off tendon sheath swelled badly and showed signs of interfering. She was withdrawn at 2:30 P. M. on account of lameness in both fore.

Peggy again made the best time of any entry, finishing in nine hours and twelve minutes. The rapidity with which she got over the ground was attracting considerable notice by this time, and it was predicted that she would never stand the pace, her rider being criticised for lack of judgment. But he knew what he was doing.

FOURTH DAY

On the fourth day the route was to Middleburg and return. The first half of the route was hilly and rocky. Seven horses started, namely, *Pathfinder*, *Major S*, *Goose Girl*, *Billy Brandon*, *Donwell*, *Peggy*, and *Lillian Russell*. However, *Goose Girl* and *Billy Brandon* were noticeably in worse shape than the others. Both *Pathfinder* and *Major S* were bothered by scratches at the start but worked out of it. *Peggy*, *Donwell* and *Lillian Russell* were in good shape. At thirteen miles on this morning, Major Scott and Private Mendinghall, who were riding together, missed the route and went two miles on the wrong road.

Again *Peggy* was the "Speed Demon," making the sixty miles in nine hours and one minute. The judges were now having difficulty in keeping up with her over the rough and rocky roads, and the usual form of greeting as they passed each other was "Have you seen anything of *Peggy*?"

FIFTH DAY

The same seven entries that started on the fourth day started on Friday, the fifth day. By this time every horse except *Donwell* was afflicted with scratches, although the effect on *Peggy* and *Lillian Russell* was not noticeable. *Donwell*, by the way, was the only entry of the sixteen that had long fetlocks.

This day's route was to Sowego and return. The weather had moderated greatly by this time and the roads were an improvement over those of the previous days.

All riders realized that this was the last chance to make up time, consequently all came in on minimum time except *Billy Brandon*, who took ten hours and four minutes, and was lucky to get in at all. It was only the fine horsemanship of Captain Watkins that enabled him to finish.

At the examination Saturday morning, which was similar to that on the day before the ride, *Goose Girl* and *Billy Brandon* were disqualified on account of their condition, neither being in any shape to continue.



Peggy, Winner of First Prize

Courtesy, Bureau of Animal Industry

On Sunday morning, the day of the final judging, the procedure of the previous day was repeated and the results announced as follows:

First—*Peggy*, condition, 58 2-3; speed, 38 1-3; total, 97 per cent.

Second—*Donwell*, condition, 60 (the maximum); speed, 28 2-15; total, 88 2-15 per cent.

Third—*Lillian Russell*, condition, 57 2-3; speed, 20 4-15; total, 77 14-15 per cent.

Fourth—*Pathfinder*, condition, 54; speed, 19 6-15; total, 73 6-15 per cent.

Fifth—*Major S*, condition, 41; speed, 19 6-15; total, 60 6-15 per cent.

The elapsed time for the 300 miles of the five prize winners was:

Peggy—45 hours and 13 minutes.

Donwell—46 hours and 25 minutes.

Lillian Russell—47 hours and 30 minutes.

Pathfinder—47 hours and 33 minutes.

Major S—47 hours and 33 minutes.

H. E. Fretz, the rider of *Donwell* was awarded the prize for showing the best horsemanship during the Ride. The good sense and judgment used by him in caring for his horse evoked much favorable comment.

It is interesting to note the loss of weight during the Ride, and the degree of recovery of the horses that finished. This is shown in the following table:

	Weight October 19	Weight Evening, Oct. 25	Weight Morning, Oct. 26	Weight Morning, Oct. 27
<i>Pathfinder</i>	980	930	980	995
<i>Major S</i>	1060	960	1045	1060
<i>Goose Girl</i>	1030	960	960	(Out Oct. 26)
<i>Billy Brandon</i>	1065	1010	1045	(Out Oct. 26)
<i>Donwell</i>	1015	980	1025	1060
<i>Peggy</i>	965	940	940	958
<i>Lillian Russell</i>	1065	1010	1030	1070

The increase of 80 pounds in weight of *Donwell* in thirty-six hours after completion of the ride was remarkable. During this period all horses were in custody of the Judges and under guard. *Peggy* was the only entry that did not weigh as much or more on the day of final judging as at the start. She was, by the way, also the oldest entry.

GAITS

The walk and trot were the gaits used. So far as known, there was no galloping. In 1922 the winner galloped about one-quarter mile each hour.

So far as seats were concerned, there was some variety—short stirrups and long stirrups—some posted and others did not. A general tendency to lean forward in the saddle in order to put as much of the weight as possible on the forehand was observed.

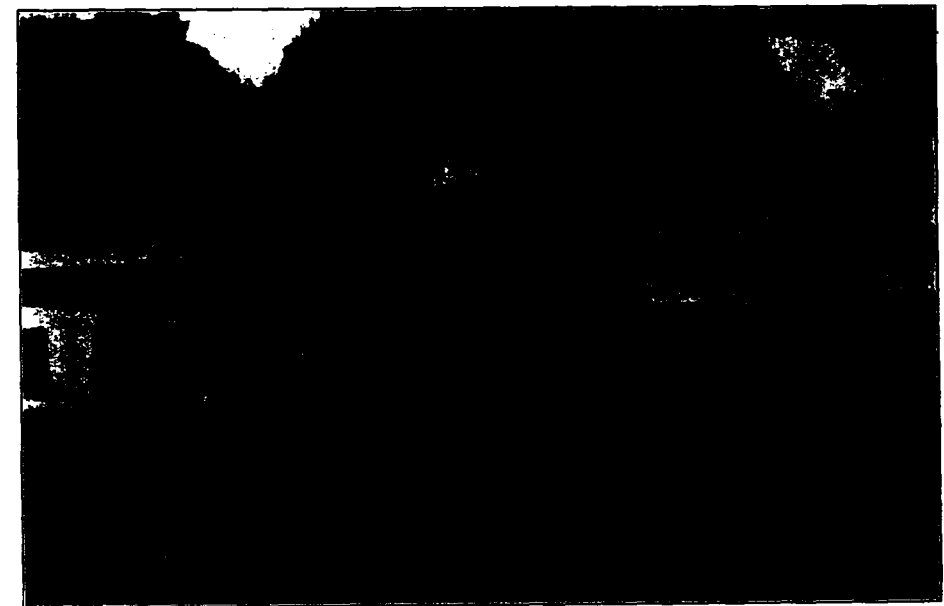
EQUIPMENT

There was considerable uniformity of equipment among the military riders. They all used the officer's field saddle, and in most cases, McClellan Stirrups without hoods. Civilian riders used stock saddles. Two saddle blankets were favored, the one next the horse being one much softer than the regulation saddle blanket. The snaffle bit was used almost exclusively, as it enabled the horses to drink freely at watering places without requiring the rider to dismount and unbridle.

Practically all riders made the additional weight required by carrying lead plates in pockets along the lower edges of a canvas pad which fitted over the

horse's back and between the saddle and the saddle blanket. Jack Fretz carried these in his chaperejos for the very excellent reason that when he dismounted at noon the dead weight was also off the horse. This method also enabled him to carry the weight low.

In this connection, the question arises whether or not the apparent tendency to obtain light men as riders is advantageous. Horsemen agree that a given amount of dead weight on a horse is more burdensome than the same amount of live weight. It would therefore seem that, taking into consideration the weight



Courtesy, Bureau of Animal Industry
H. E. Fretz with *Donwell*, Winner of Second Prize

of saddle and other equipment, about 155 pounds would be the most favorable weight for a rider.

SHOEING

The subject of shoeing was of some interest. A number of entries wore flat shoes until the day before the Ride began, when shoes with heel calks all around were put on. On the hard roads encountered, it would appear that this sudden change, unless calks were very small, would result in changing the bearing of all bones of the foot, with the consequent tendency to strain a tendon and make the footing uncertain.

Several horses were reshod during the Ride, as the stony roads wore shoes

down rapidly. The course taken by the rider of *Donwell* on the occasion when his horse required reshoeing seemed advantageous. He removed the old shoes after getting in at night, put his horse in the stall, and reshod him the next morning after he was thoroughly rested.

FEEDING

The question of feeding is of special interest. Practically all horses were offered grain at the short noon halts and most of them ate a little. In one case a horse which refused to eat was fed by hand. It has been stated by one who has made a study of the subject, that energy expended today has little relationship to food taken today; that energy expended today was stored up days ago, and possibly (in endurance tests) weeks ago. Assuming this to be correct, there would appear to be no advantage in such a feed at noon, and a possible disadvantage in laying an additional burden upon the digestive organs of a fatigued, and possibly, heated animal.



Courtesy, Bureau of Animal Industry

Major K. G. Eastham with Lillian Russell, Winner of Third Prize

A similar reasoning applies to the practice in vogue during this Ride of feeding, after completion of the sixty miles, a small quantity of grain, as soon as it was thought that the animal was sufficiently cooled out, in some cases within thirty minutes. To quote again from the authority previously referred to: "Endurance tests take for granted great fatigue, usually increasing in degree until the

close. Fatigue means greatly lowered ability to digest and almost no ability to assimilate. In Rides where a period of fourteen or fifteen hours are allowed for recuperation, and to regain reserve and equilibrium, only the latter part of this period is suitable for feeding *unless the animal is most perfectly trained*, because the fatigue will preclude digestion and failure to digest is simply an added burden to an already over-burdened animal."



Courtesy, Bureau of Animal Industry

Major C. L. Scott with Pathfinder, Winner of Fourth Prize

Whether or not we agree with the statement above quoted, the subject is worthy of careful thought and study. It is believed that the withholding until eight o'clock in the evening of all feed except hay, would have been beneficial.

GENERAL

The danger in making any generalizations in regard to feeding, conditioning and care during a ride of this kind is evident when it is realized that no two horses require the same kind and amount of conditioning or the same feeding.

The outstanding lesson learned was that the hair around a horse's fetlocks should never be cut short. Otherwise, under conditions which existed during this Ride and which might be encountered at any time in the field, scratches are almost certain to result.

A rider may say that he did thus and so and his horse made a good showing. However, it is believed that in some instances the good showing is in spite of such practices and not because of them. It reminds one of centenarians who have

always had their daily allowance of "moonshine" and have been tobacco chewers since early boyhood.

There was some criticism of the route as laid out. It was not an easy one, and it was not intended to be easy. The worst feature of it was the extremely large numbers of loose stones on the roads. This compelled the horses to pick their way, avoiding injury if they were lucky and failing to do so, if they were unlucky. That a better route could have been laid out in the locality is, however, questionable.

The Judges were Mr. Albert W. Harris of Chicago, Major Henry Leanord of Washington, D. C., and Dr. W. W. Townsend of Burlington, Vermont.

The consideration shown by the Judges and other officials toward all participants, and their earnest desire to be of every assistance, not inconsistent with the regulations governing the Ride, made a most favorable impression.

The good nature and sportsmanship of all riders under trying conditions of weather and roads, was most commendable.

An interesting and valuable feature of the ride was the relatively large number of enlisted men among the riders. That the rider of the winning horse should be an old soldier was a source of much gratification, and will undoubtedly be a great encouragement to enlisted men participating in future Rides.



With The "Cavalree" at Fort Riley

(Reprinted through courtesy of Boston Evening Transcript)

BY

OLIVER McKEE, JR.

"It's a he man's game in the Cavalree,
It's hell for leather and gripping knee,
And the heart that thumps at taking jumps,
Had better sit with the pink tea chumps
Than ride with the Cavalree."

ASK any cavalry officer of the Regular Army whether he thinks the mounted service is a "back number." He will be among the first to give his brother aviator credit for the conquest of the air, but his enthusiasm for and delight in the mounted service are every whit as keen as that of those who joined with the famous Confederate mounted leader, Jeb Stuart, in singing the praises of the "cavalree."

It is the business of the Cavalry School at Fort Riley to train for their professional duties cavalry officers of the Regular Army, and certain selected officers of the National Guard and the Organized Reserves. But it aims to do more than this. It not only tries to inspire faith in the cavalry arm and unselfish devotion to it, but also to awaken among its pupils a respect for other arms—infantry, air service, artillery, engineers—and the desire to aid them in battle. It seeks to encourage loyalty to superiors and loyalty to subordinates, comradeship between all ranks, and as important perhaps as anything else develop among the students a love of horses. Many an officer goes through the school and finds that at the end of the year's course his love for horses is reborn, and that the school has helped to make it a larger and more fundamental love. For unless you like horses you had better steer clear of the cavalry and the cavalry school.

Competent critics have declared that the Fort Riley School since the war is the finest school of its kind now in existence. Only the Saumur cavalry school in France and the Italian army school can be compared with it. Since comparisons are odious, it should suffice to say that Uncle Sam, as a cavalry instructor, ranks with the best in the world. That is sufficient praise.

EARLY HISTORY

Near the junction of the Smoky Hill and Republican rivers, where these streams unite to form the Kansas River, a monument marks the geographical center of the United States. This monument is on the military reservation known as Fort Riley, one of the old Army stations that figured in the winning of the West.

The first white man who came to the vicinity of Fort Riley was lured there by gold. Tradition has it that the famous Spanish soldier and explorer Coronado was the first to visit this particular spot. He came to the junction of these two rivers in 1542, marching there from Mexico City. After taking one good look at it, he is said to have marched right back again to Mexico City, not because the

future site of Fort Riley was so desolate a spot, but because the armor-clad Spaniards found that their iron clothes had a temperature of some 120 degrees Fahrenheit and they preferred not to make a lengthy stay. Between the time of Coronado's visit and that of the American explorers, Lewis and Clark, many a French trapper and not a few Americans in quest of furs, braved the perils of this Indian infested country. Two European Powers boasted sovereignty over this little known part of the American continent, first Spain, by right of conquest, and then France by right of treaty. So far removed was this region from the centers of responsible authority that in 1806, three years after the Louisiana Purchase, which included the present State of Kansas, Lieutenant Pike found the Spanish flag still flying over the Pawnees' village on the Kaw. No real attempt at settlement had been made even as late as 1843 when Fremont, the pioneer and explorer, visited the present site of Fort Riley on his epoch-making expedition through the Rockies. Riley at that time was in the heart of the American wilderness.

In 1852, by reason of the movement of the caravans on the Santa Fe trail, and the further encroachment of the trappers on their hunting preserves the Indian tribes of this region took the war path to check the invasions of the whites. Accordingly, in October of that year, in order to protect the whites, the War Department decided to build an advanced army post near the junction of the Smoky Hill and Republican rivers. This was the beginning of Fort Riley, which was named in honor of Major General Bennett Riley of Buffalo, New York. Until 1891 Fort Riley functioned like any other frontier post. In this year a school was established for instruction in drill for cavalry and artillery officers.

It is indeed fitting that the cavalry school of the Army should have been established in a place so intimately connected with the history of the West as Fort Riley. For the true cavalryman, wherever located, is always something of a Westerner at heart.

WHERE HORSE IS KING

Of Fort Riley it may be truly said that here the horse is king. Everyone rides, wives, daughters and mothers, as well as officer instructors and students. Even the youngsters at the post have an eye for horse flesh and know by their first names every animal in the stables.

The directors of the Cavalry School are well aware that long periods of peace may, and often do impair the efficiency of cavalymen. There is a mental and a physical, as well as a mechanical, rut. Daring and aggressiveness, qualities that are indispensable to the mounted man, may easily be lost. They must be preserved at all odds. Only constant practice, day in and day out, can keep a man a bold and confident rider. Dash and zest for his work are not to be had by the cavalryman without work. To be ready for an emergency he must be skilled in the use of his weapons and an excellent horseman. He must have a good eye for country, and be a quick thinker as well as a quick doer. That is one reason why majors and colonels, as well as captains and lieutenants, are sent by the War Department from time to time to take the course.

Take the case for example of Lieutenant Colonel Blank, —th U. S. Cavalry. In his subaltern days he was a good man in his regiment, but he has gotten a little out of practice since then. During the war he held an administrative post where he had responsibility enough, but no out-of-door work. After the war he went through the General Service Schools at Fort Leavenworth, then the War College at Washington, and from there to duty with the Organized Reserves in a large Eastern city, say Boston or Philadelphia. For five or six years he has lived comfortably, has joined good clubs, and has had considerable leisure time. He has grown to like speech-making, and has obtained a fairly large social acquaintance. He dines well if not unwisely, and it was not long before he found that his uniform was becoming strangely tight. It was several years since he had owned any horses of his own, and since, as a matter of fact, he had ridden any horse very much. He had been invited to nearby hunt clubs, but had invariably declined on the ground that he did not have any horse of his own, and that he did not like to ride other people's horses. To tell the truth, Colonel Blank had never followed hounds over a real course, and was not altogether sure whether he would enjoy it or not.

To groups of reserve officers he had told stories of various feats in horsemanship. There was the story for example of the time that he had negotiated with his horse a jump of some six feet or thereabouts. This and other similar stories he had told so often that he still imagined himself a first-class horseman and still imagined that he was in the prime of condition.

ORDERED TO FORT RILEY

One day he received from Washington an order directing him to report to the commanding general at Fort Riley, to be assigned as a student in the Field Officers Course. It was a surprise, and somewhat of a shock. He recalled many stories of the terrible things that happened at this place. Recitals of various casualties came vividly to mind—broken arms, legs, collar bones, etc. It seemed to him that everyone who had gone through the school delighted in telling about the terrible things that went on there. It was small comfort to him that they lost nothing in the telling. The embryo student officer began to think with something like dismay of the years since he had done any real riding, or sat on anything but the good old dependable McClellan saddle.

In his day cavalry marched at a walk, and sat to the trot. Galloping was out of the question, and the Russian Ride was a terrible ordeal. A brother officer informed him that even the little children at Fort Riley schooled their ponies over a Russian Ride course, that had the reputation of being twice as hard as it was at any other cavalry post. Colonel Blank in short was a little sorry that his term of desk duty was nearing an end.

At the appointed time he reported for duty at Fort Riley. In his class he found officers of national, even international reputation as riders, graduates, some of them of European schools. There were also quite a few polo players, and also a number of officers who apparently had forgotten as much as he had of the principles and the art of horsemanship. Then came a memorable visit to the assembly room. Here the most conspicuous person was the accident insurance

agent. Contrary to the custom in civilian life, it was the client who was approaching the agent rather than the agent the client. As fast as applications could be handed them, lieutenants, captains and field officers were signing the blanks, and inquiring, somewhat solicitously, the rates that were paid for various injuries, and the period spent in the hospital. He overheard a remark of the agent that the company was not fond of the Cavalry School business, and in fact had lost money in this particular line. This, of course, was cheerful news.

The thoughts of our student had been so full of riding that he was a little surprised to find himself loaded down with dozens of yellow pamphlets dealing with nearly every subject of military interest. On the schedule of instruction were such technical subjects as logistics, artillery, machine guns, chemical warfare, and also confronting him was a succession of map problems, terrain exercises and field problems. It did not take long to convince him that there was a busy nine months ahead of him.

A RIDER'S PARADISE

Outside the barracks he found a great reservation of some twenty-two thousand acres. The terrain was of the most varied character. Rivers, flat plains, and a bold plateau cut by sharp ravines, were the features that caught the eye. Good galloping ground was everywhere, for the grass at Fort Riley is cut annually, and baled into hay. Thus it is that the weeds and the scrubby undergrowth are kept down on the long slopes and straightaway stretches on the ridge tops where the footing is good. Everywhere the newcomer sees jumps, of all sorts and degrees of difficulty—bits of stone wall, rail fences, board fences, gates, brush jumps, and ditches. All the trails through the woods lead off over the jumps, and the rider finds on the bottom of every ravine flights of jumps of varying lengths. Wherever a really perpendicular bank could be found, an ingenious architect had placed, for the benefit of both man and beast, a slide. On his first ride, Colonel Blank noted all these features, but he had little time for admiring the beauty of the cottonwoods and maples along the river banks. For the time being, he was sufficiently preoccupied with jumps and slides.

He has other troubles besides those connected with riding. It is easy enough to read about chemical warfare, pioneering and observation from balloons and airplanes, but it is an entirely different matter to put theory to practice. Then he must get instruction in the proper use of cavalry weapons—rifle, pistol, saber, machine rifle and the Browning machine gun. In addition to this, he spends from four to six hours a day in the saddle. Bad weather brings little relief, for there are two large indoor riding halls on the school grounds where one can learn a great deal about riding, even though there is a blizzard outside. By way of parenthesis, it may be said that it is not long before Colonel Blank finds that his uniform is not so tight as it was. He is soon ready to take up several holes in his Sam Browne belt.

A human lot he finds the staff and the instructors. They are doing their best to help him and, what is no less important, he finds that the country is not so formidable after all. The jumps have grown smaller (or perhaps it were best to say

that the perspective has been changed), and a twenty-mile gallop across country is not such a terrible task, after all.

Then came a never-to-be-forgotten day. On a cross-country ride his section scrambled its way up a grim rock where you could easily imagine a goat would refuse to go. Suddenly man and rider found themselves on the edge of a cliff. It looked at least a hundred feet down, and it was straight down, too. Only by a stretch of imagination could it be called a slope. The face of the precipice was covered with loose rock and brush. Near the bottom the precipice, for so it appeared on high, suddenly became concave, and ended in a gully, obviously too deep to drop into. The student officer had a peculiar feeling in his throat, as one by one the riders ahead of him disappeared into the abyss in front. To turn back, however, was unthinkable, so our friend faced the inevitable. The horse, it would seem, knew the situation better than the rider. The animal balanced himself on his hocks, and let his front feet down until he had secured a precarious foothold. Then down he went with his rider with an avalanche of rolling stones. The sensation was similar to that of an Alpine descent. Down and down slid the horse, lurching from time to time to straighten himself when his hocks slipped sidewise. Near the bottom he made a lunge forward into space, and landed with a resounding thud beyond the ditch. As the officer rejoined his section, he dropped his reins, slapped his horse on the neck, cried in admiration "Fine work, old man." Then followed a gallop over flights of jumps, a dash through gullies, and slides and there began to steal over him a sense of partnership with the animal that was carrying him safely and surely over all the obstacles that both man and nature could place in their path.

THE CAVALRYMAN REBORN

Not long afterward, he chanced to draw a fine clean thoroughbred. He sensed the stride of a real horse, his gather and his reach. Seeing the long, lean, muscular neck, and the keen ears, he knew that a cool and practised eye was measuring the ground in front of him. The splendid sweep of the gallop, the swing over the jump, made his blood tingle with pride and pleasure. As he dropped from the saddle after a strenuous ride he made a resolution that he would some day own such a horse. The Cavalry School had done its work. The graduation exercises were near at hand and a real cavalryman had been born again!

In turning out real cavalymen the faculty are important, but so are the horses, the "equine faculty," as it were. Some of the horses—such as Submarine, which has thrown once every rider assigned to him—are famous the length and the breadth of the service, wherever indeed there is a detachment of Regular cavalry. The "Rasp," the year-book of the student officers, tells us many things about the horses of the teaching staff. As classes come and classes go, it is evident that the Fort Riley horses begin to take an intelligent interest in the part that they are supposed to play in the professional education of Uncle Sam's cavalry officers.

Take *Bold Boy*, of whom his pupils write: "I have tried to make my stable-mates realize that the horse is superior to man, and have given about twenty-five demonstrations to them in ridding myself of a mere rider. It is really quite easy

to do. I have studied the art of bucking, and have now mastered it to the point of the least physical exertion. I always get my man in two bucks. The opportune time to get them is after you have built up their confidence and they think that you are a nice horsie."

Then there is *Mr. Carpenter*. "Without doubt I am the roughest trotting horse in the world. I love to pass the mirror in the riding hall and see the expressions of agony on the faces of my riders as I slowly trot by. I can take a man six feet tall and in twenty minutes' slow trotting shorten him down to five feet eight inches. Oscar M—— was a tall man when he came here—look at him now. I made him what he is today. At the beginning of the year, I am a big advertiser for Mr. Tannic, and create quite a demand for his acid."

Many there are no doubt who would prefer to ride *Honest John*. "I earned my name and am proud of it. I am a safe, honest old horse, with a long record of faithful service at the Cavalry School. I belong to the National Guard, the Ladies' and Field Officers' Classes. My greatest pleasure is in the Ladies' Class, but we spend too much time before the mirror. When Wild Bill Carmody graduated from the Troop Officers' class and joined the Field Officers, he drew me as a permanent mount, and breathed a sigh of relief."

Waggoner has this to say for himself, "Me name's *Waggoner*, and I'm de toughest hoss in this here corral. They ain't nobody got anything on me when it comes to policing 'em, and I police 'em hard. I'm keeping in trim fer them new guys next year, too."

Jack Johnson runs true to his name. "I was named *Jack Johnson*, he says, "because of the fact that I have made more men take the count than the pugilist. The muscles of my back are so constructed that I probably get more altitude in my policing than any other horse in the Cavalry School. I threw A. M. Jones so quickly that the first thing he knew the tan bark flew up and hit him. The only reason that I did not throw John Lile four days in succession was that he only rode me three. My favorite stunt is to get the boys when they are all loosened up, after I have carried them over a jump. They flop easy then. I am going to break *Bold Boy's* record next year." Nothing like competition among the horses to keep the "Police" court at Riley busy.

INFANTRY'S "GUARD OF HONOR"

In peace, no less than in war, cavalry remains an indispensable part of the United States Army, as it does of every army. It is the role of the cavalry in common with that of the air service, the artillery and the engineers, to help the infantry to win battles. If the infantry is the Queen of Battles, there is reason for calling the cavalry her Guard of Honor. When the infantry is hard pressed to hold its own, the cavalry comes to her aid as a loyal and dependable friend. When victory crowns her efforts, cavalry as her faithful servant and ally makes it certain that the victory is a permanent one.

"Mobilitate vigemus" is still the motto of Uncle Sam's cavalry, and it is likely to remain the goal of successive classes at the cavalry school at Fort Riley.

EXTRACTS FROM THE ANNUAL REPORT OF THE CHIEF OF CAVALRY (Major General W. A. Holbrook) TO THE SECRETARY OF WAR

CORRESPONDENCE COURSES FOR RESERVE AND OTHER CAVALRY OFFICERS

This phase of instruction has been given close attention during the year. Course "A" has been quite completely revised, because its former subject matter had considerable use, and Courses "B" and "C" have also been changed in some respects. The Cavalry School and Cavalry Board have prepared a considerable reserve of material for future use in these courses. This office has had an active part in the general revision of the entire program of correspondence courses for all the branches.

On March 31, 1924, the date of latest available figures, the cavalry had the largest percentage of correspondence course enrollments among the combat branches, and it is interesting to note that this included 533 Reserve Officers, 65 enlisted men of the National Guard, 18 enlisted men of the Reserve, and 18 civilians.

MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT

As the mobility of cavalry is much in ratio of its equipment efficiency, the work of this section is always very important. An able commander can frequently efface tactical misconceptions before it is too late, but poor equipment is almost certain to nullify his ability. This section, therefore, has a very definite obligation as to caution and thoroughness. Throughout the year it has continued its labors in the consideration of new designs, the improvement of old, the elimination of the superfluous, and the resulting revision of the tables of basic allowances.

The outstanding projects which it has considered during the year, in liaison with the Cavalry Board, the Cavalry Division and the supply and productive agencies of the Government, are as follows: The Cavalry pack saddle (Phillips) carrying all cavalry packs except with pack trains; improvement of existing cavalry signal communications equipment, and the development of new equipment; improvement of the automatic pistol; adoption of the mesh link curb-chain, and hook; improvement of the saber knot; modification of the McClellan saddle; perfection of a cavalry pack demolition outfit; adoption of a saber pad; checking of rifle butt plates; development of a satisfactory pack cooking outfit; development of a semi-automatic shoulder loading rifle to replace the Springfield; the addition of the McEwan patch pockets to the McClellan saddle bags; development of a bipod and stock rest for the machine rifle; tripod for the Browning machine gun; test of all leather laced boots for the mounted enlisted men, and a study of the horse replacements for the cavalry.

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL

From its inception, as a comprehensive Cavalry School, in 1919, this institution has prospered; demonstrating its great value and finally developing along useful lines until, today, it is believed to be the peer of any cavalry school in the

world. Its expansion into a real cavalry school has been accomplished without detracting from the high standard of instruction in horsemanship which has characterized the institution for many years.

Its graduates have won much favorable comment because of their enthusiasm, smart appearance, horsemanship, and mental equipment as cavalymen, and, as a rule, their value in almost any duty to which assigned is pre-eminent among cavalry officers. This is not only true with regard to organizational duty, but, from the standpoint of public support of our national defense policy, it is pertinent to observe that these graduates have contributed notably to the government's interests by their successful participation in polo, horse shows and other mounted activities. The fact that they enhance these public benefits at their own personal expense is but further proof of their enthusiasm.

In as much as such a large number of cavalry officers are required on detached service for which graduates of the Cavalry School are especially needed it becomes all the more important that the cavalry should be allowed the full 8% of its branch for student personnel. This would require a slight modification of existing decisions which have limited details to 8% of cavalry *assumed* strength, rather than to *actual* strength. It is the latter which more accurately expresses the needs of the branches.

Officers of the National Guard and Organized Reserve Cavalry should be sent to the Cavalry School in an ever-increasing proportion, measured by the natural decrease in the student material of the Regular Cavalry, as the bulk of these latter officers eventually complete the school course.

THE FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION

This organization has not only fulfilled its mission as a factor of readiness in our national defense essentials, but, in a special sense, has proved to be a splendid school of instruction for higher command, has been of great value in setting standards of tactical accomplishment, has served in trying out new equipment in an exact and comprehensive way and has developed methods and means of communication and supply. It is our cavalry "proving ground" where the teachings of the Cavalry School and the "laboratory" investigations of the Cavalry Board receive test and sanction.

The maneuvers of this division held in the vicinity of Marfa, Texas, during September and October, 1923, were of value far exceeding the expense involved. Every effort should be made to hold these maneuvers annually, and, to further enhance their value, mileage should be made available to permit the attendance of many officers, from regiments not pertaining to the division, in order that these officers may benefit as observers and contribute as umpires.

The division should by all means be retained for these important purposes, in addition to its potentialities as to national defense. Its continued establishment has as a requisite only the maintenance of four, or more regiments, and the proper auxiliaries, at stations sufficiently near each other to permit concentration by marching.

PHYSICAL CONDITION OF THE CAVALRY

It is a pleasure to record that all cavalry regiments have attained very nearly, if not entirely, the authorized enlisted strength during the year—an agreeable contrast to the depleted strength existing at the date of my last annual report. The spirited methods and accurately functioning system of training which now prevail in the regular cavalry can thus produce the maximum benefit, in so far as legal limitations as to strength permit.

Although the purchase of cavalry horses authorized during the fiscal year 1925 will relieve, to some extent, the serious situation which has existed, it is my duty to point that on June 30, 1925, there will exist an additional estimated shortage of between 1000 and 1200 cavalry horses, and that the average age of the horses in the cavalry, excepting those purchased during the present year, will be about 15½ years. The rapidity with which cavalry can act in the event of emergency ought to justify its having a sufficiency of capable mounts at all times.

As heretofore, closer contact with the National Guard Cavalry has been sought in various ways during the year. It is very natural that the keen interest which characterizes National Guard Cavalrymen should lead them to desire closer relationship with the Chief of Cavalry's office. I am glad to say that this feature is well understood by the Chief of the Militia Bureau who is in thorough accord with our efforts to be of assistance to the National Guard Cavalry. I have, by invitation, visited several cavalry organizations of the National Guard and have been very favorably impressed. As this component constitutes two-thirds of our first line cavalry in the event of a major emergency, it deserves our constant interest.

RESERVE OFFICERS TRAINING CORPS

There have been no changes in the number or location of the Cavalry units of the Reserve Officers' Training Corps during the past year.

As was reported by me last year, there are no cavalry units in the Second or Seventh Corps Areas and none of college rank in the Fifth Corps Area. This serious defect affects the feeding of trained personnel to the Cavalry organized reserve divisions of these corps areas. Each year emphasizes the necessity of correcting this serious defect and I would therefore call attention to my recommendation of last year, that cavalry units be established at Cornell University, Ithaca, New York, for the Second Corps Area; at the University of Kentucky, Lexington, Kentucky, for the Fifth Corps Area, and at the Kansas State Agricultural College, Manhattan, Kansas, for the Seventh Corps Area.

CITIZENS' MILITARY TRAINING CAMPS

The camps of 1923 have demonstrated the value of this system of training citizens, besides the great benefit it gives our officers in teaching methods.

Regular cavalry troops sufficient to supply all cavalry training camps with horses and mounted horse equipment needed should be furnished so mounted instruction can be carried out to the fullest extent as called for in schedules. The

present distribution of our cavalry troops does not permit us to do this in all cases and at the same time carry on the cavalry training necessary for our regular troops.

OFFICERS RESERVE CORPS

The following table shows the number of officers holding a cavalry reserve commission and the gain made during the preceding year:

June 30, 1923.....	2,094
June 30, 1924.....	2,859

Gain	765
------------	-----

There are 94 regular cavalry officers on duty with the Organized Reserves and Officers Reserve Corps as contrasted with 57 at this time last year.

The work of these officers particularly the chiefs of staff, the assistant chiefs of staff and executive officers of units has continued to be of a high order, judging by the results achieved, and warrants the assumption that the Reserve Corps is steadily becoming more definitely established as an important factor in our general scheme of National Defense. Nor has the work of these officers been confined to the steady upbuilding of their units; no opportunity has been overlooked to inform the general public as to the function of the Organized Reserves and its relation to the general scheme of National Defense or to establish favorable relations with both civil and military organizations to the mutual benefit of all.

Instructional activities have steadily progressed along the lines initiated in former years, namely, correspondence courses, summer training camps, and practical instruction in equitation, small arms practice, tactical exercises and problems, marches, camps, etc. The importance of this latter class of instruction in the way of keeping alive interest for those Reserve Officers who cannot attend camps and for the actual instruction gained can hardly be overestimated.

This instruction has been rendered possible through the extension of facilities by the regular cavalry units, the National Guard, riding and hunting clubs, etc. The Chief of Cavalry desires to acknowledge these helpful influences toward the upbuilding of the Cavalry Reserve and believes that any sacrifice entailed has more than been compensated by the instruction gained and the mutually beneficial relations and better understanding established among the various elements of the National Defense.

Editorial Comment

SKEPTICS

THE CONTRIBUTION ENTITLED "Allons," beginning on page 34 of this number of the JOURNAL, was written by a keen observer, who was present at the recent O. R. C. Training Camp at Monterey. With the exception of a certain amount of fiction due to the article's having been originally written for a non-technical magazine, facts and circumstances are accurately recorded. The Skeptic, however, is not a characterization of any particular individual, but is merely a type.

Skeptics exist in every branch, in every profession, in every walk of life. They are generally quite free and liberal in the expression of their views and opinions, and almost invariably, such are based upon imperfect, unreliable, or insufficient knowledge of the subject under discussion.

The Cavalry needs no defense nor is it on the defensive, and the apparent tendency observed on the part of a few Skeptics in Europe as well as in our own country to damn the Cavalry as an obsolete Arm, is simply another example of the predominant characteristic of Skeptics—namely, their inability or their disinclination to ascertain all the facts concerning a subject under discussion. Their arguments and fulminations clearly indicate that they either do not read history, or that they flagrantly misconstrue and misinterpret what they do read.

The unfortunate feature of the matter is that such are generally unable to keep their distorted views to themselves, but must pass them along with a fine disregard of the harm that may be done to the subject of their comments.

Happily, such Skeptics are scarce in the military service. Each branch realizes its own capabilities and limitations, and endeavors to perform its full duty as a member of the team, doing its own share of the task in hand and expecting every other member to do the same.

RESPONSIBILITY FOR VIEWS OF AUTHORS

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL is primarily intended to be the organ of expression of members of the Cavalry Association, individually and collectively. In addition, it presents from the pens of others, articles which may be of special interest to the Cavalry or of general military value and interest.

It follows that if the JOURNAL is to be a free medium of discussion and exposition, its contents cannot be limited to doctrines or expressions of opinion which are approved by the Executive Council or the Editor. It is therefore desired that it be understood that authors alone are responsible for the views expressed in their contributions, and that the appearance of such in the columns of the JOURNAL does not necessarily indicate that they are indorsed by the Executive Council or the Editor.

THE ASSOCIATION AND THE JOURNAL

NOTWITHSTANDING THE EDITORIAL COMMENT in the October number on this subject, there appears to be an uncertainty on the part of some subscribers to the JOURNAL concerning their status as to membership in the Association.

Under the provisions of the Constitution, as it now exists, subscription to the JOURNAL is a prerequisite to membership in the Association, and an officer who fulfils the other requirements for active or associate membership, becomes a member of the Cavalry Association, upon subscription to the JOURNAL.

Should the recently proposed amendments to the Constitution be adopted at the annual meeting of the Association on January fourteenth, the matter will be much simplified and the structure turned right side up. The cost of membership will be no greater and it will be paid as annual dues and not as a subscription to the JOURNAL.

There are many officers commissioned in recent years who are not aware of the debt the Cavalry service owes to the Association by reason of what it has done in the past. In critical periods, such as reorganization of the army, and readjustments of pay schedules, the Association by various and proper methods has seen to it that the interests of the Cavalry were given due consideration. Such periods of usefulness are not continuous, but similar occasions may arise at any time.

In this connection, it is desired to express the appreciation of the Executive Council for the generous response to the recent membership drive which was based upon the desirability of membership in, and the loyal support of, the Cavalry Association as an association of officers of *our* branch of the service. The reaction in all components of the army—Regulars, National Guard, and Reserves, to this presentation of the matter, has been a conclusive demonstration of the fact that the Cavalry maintains its proper place abreast of the other branches in this manifestation of devotion to the Arm and interest in its advancement. This is largely due to the fine spirit of support and co-operation manifested by commanding officers, inspector-instructors of the National Guard and officers on duty with the Organized Reserves. Due to the good work noted above the membership now stands at the highest mark it has ever attained.

MARQUIS SADDLE EQUIPMENT

A REPRESENTATIVE of the Cavalry Association on a recent trip abroad, took occasion to visit the establishment of G. Marquis at Saumur. As a result of this visit, it can be stated positively that in the case of orders sent to Mr. Marquis, the saddles are actually made to order under his personal supervision. He has a small shop only, with few assistants, and it is this fact, together with the great care devoted to the making of each saddle, that accounts for the considerable length of time that is sometimes required for the delivery of saddles ordered from this country.

THE CAVALRY FUND

THE RESPONSE TO THE CALL for contributions to the Cavalry Fund for 1924 has been very gratifying.

The following organizations have gone over the top with 100 per cent contributions: The Cavalry School, Second Cavalry, Third Cavalry, Fifth Cavalry, Sixth Cavalry, Seventh Cavalry, Eighth Cavalry, Ninth Cavalry, Eleventh Cavalry, Fourteenth Cavalry, and the First Machine Gun Squadron.

Through inadvertence, the Seventh Cavalry and the 1st Machine Gun Squadron were omitted from the list of 100 per cent organizations given in the October number of the JOURNAL.

ORGANIZATIONS 100 PER CENT IN MEMBERSHIP

THE FOLLOWING ORGANIZATIONS, at the time of going to press, had a membership record of 100 per cent: The Cavalry School, Third Cavalry, Sixth Cavalry, Eighth Cavalry, Tenth Cavalry, Eleventh Cavalry, Twelfth Cavalry, Thirteenth Cavalry, and Troop "A," 56th Machine Gun Squadron, Texas National Guard, stationed at Brenham, Texas.



Topics of the Day

PURCHASE OF HORSES AND MULES

Major C. L. Scott, Quartermaster Corps, who is in charge of the Animal Division, Remount Service, Q. M. Corps, and also at the head of the Purchasing Board, Eastern Purchasing and Breeding Zone, furnishes the following very interesting facts relative to recent purchases of horse and mules:

Good draft horses and mules are available in sufficient numbers, and are easily obtainable of the proper type and breeding. The draft horses and mules which have recently been purchased for the Army should give thorough satisfaction.

RIDING HORSES

Riding horses, on the other hand, are almost extinct in the United States. The real condition was not revealed until purchasing started on July 1, 1924, after a lapse of about six years. The Remount Service, Quartermaster Corps, has covered the entire country with five purchasing boards in operation, and is having great difficulty in finding four thousand suitable riding horses at Army prices in the entire United States! Thousands of small, weedy horses of all types are being shown to purchasing boards, but few even approach Army specifications. It is a most serious condition and worthy of special study by all branches of the War Department.

In the purchase of riding horses under the conditions existing in this country, the purchasing board has to look at a horse with two objects in view, knowing full well that the ideal type is not obtainable. These two objects are as follows: First, will the horse in question do the work and give satisfaction in the Army? Second, if the horse is not fully satisfactory, where will a better one be secured?

OBJECT OF PURCHASING BOARDS

In purchasing riding horses, all Remount officers of the Quartermaster Corps, by careful selection and by thorough canvass of all horse sections of the United States, are endeavoring to obtain, as a whole, four thousand riding horses, such horses to be, if possible, an improvement over the average now in the hands of troops. This improvement, if it can be kept up from year to year, will eventually give the Army good mounts. Yet, no one can expect to accomplish these results in all horses that are purchased in one year.

CRITICISMS OF RIDING HORSES PURCHASED

Horses purchased east of the Mississippi, most of which have been sent to Front Royal, have been examined by officers in the Office of Chief of Field Artillery, Office of Chief of Cavalry, General Staff, and by many civilians who are good judges of horses. They unanimously report that the type of horses being secured is an improvement in type over the ones now on hand. In-

spections by me of horses in the West also lead me to believe that, as a whole, the horses being secured in that section are above the average of the ones now in the hands of troops. All purchasing officers have requested posts and stations to send in criticisms of the horses received. Many such reports have come in. These reports run from highly enthusiastic commendation to whole-hearted condemnation. In the case of those who are thoroughly disgusted with the horses which have been received, the Remount Service, O. Q. M. G., asks that they reserve judgment until such horses are put in shape. There is no one, no matter how good a judge of a horse he may be, who is capable of passing judgment on a horse which has been received after a long shipment, and which is out of condition from change of climate, change of surroundings, and from probable sickness. Such horses do not come back to normal in either looks or performances for fully six months. This is a stage when they should be carefully handled, carefully fed, and given careful work. Neglect and overwork at this stage is sure to ruin many a good mount, and the blame for this cannot be placed on the one who purchased the horse. It is noted too that criticisms are usually general. To be of any value they should be specific and in detail. Information as to where and how better horses could be secured would also be appreciated. Organizations, who receive newly purchased horses, should understand, however, that all shipments which they receive will not and cannot be high class hunters or pool prospects. Such horses are not raised in sufficient numbers, and such of these types as are being produced are worth much more commercially than can be paid by the Army.

PRESTON BRANDING SYSTEM

The Preston branding system is proving highly satisfactory to the Remount Service and the Veterinary Corps in identifying and keeping track of horses. It should also be of great value to troops receiving special issue and in identifying horses which are shipped to them. However, in purchasing, horses are bought all over the country in small lots where suitable shutes and arrangements for applying the brands are not in existence. Purchasing officers are therefore finding great difficulty in applying the brands permanently and plainly, and it is almost impossible, under conditions in which horses are purchased at farms and other places throughout the country. To make the system of any value, post and organization commanders should devote their attention to the freshening of such brands as become indistinct. The expense of providing branding irons for all posts and stations is so great that organization commanders should have their blacksmiths make the necessary letter and figures for use at any particular post or station. The plans and specifications for these branding irons can, it is understood be obtained by writing to the Jeffersonville Q. M. I. Depot. It is urged, therefore, that post and organization commanders take steps to make branding irons and to keep the brands, which have been applied, legible.

THE VIII OLYMPIADE

THE FOLLOWING COMMENTS on the subject of the VIII Olympiade from the official report of Major John A. Barry, Captain of the American team, are of interest in connection with Major Barry's article in the October number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL:

"I recommend that all details of all classes be published at least one year in advance and that all terrain, over which the test takes place, be shown to team Captain prior to his making his entries. For instance, for the Championship, entries had to be in on July 18th. The Endurance phase took place July 24th. Contestants were shown over the ground July 23rd. There is no good reason for such action. A team Captain should know what he has to do before entering particular horses for the event. In the Prix des Nations, after arrival at the Stadium, contestants were informed that the course would be 1076 metres long. Entries for this event were required to be in several days before hand. I entered *Bally Macshane*, one of the best, if not the best, jumpers in the United States. He is windy and could not gallop 1076 metres on the flat, much less over jumps. An Italian, on *Grey Fox*, admittedly the best jumper in Europe, found himself in the same fix and could not finish the course. The length of the course and the depth of the footing made the Prix des Nations an endurance test. At Antwerp, in 1920, the course was 550 metres long and my entries were based on that.

"Horse shows and competitions have a large element of luck which is one of the fascinations of the game. Our best chance abroad will come, in my opinion, only when the Remount Service, pursuing its present course, shall have bred a sufficient number of high class horses to have at Fort Riley a reservoir of same. There the horses will have been worked and compared a number of years and selections can be made with a great degree of certainty. I bought, for the 1924 games, only three horses, of these only one proved a success. I had the advice and assistance of the best horsemen in the country. It is simply impossible to go out and buy a winner, with any degree of certainty. Most winners are not for sale at any price, and to buy a suspected one for eight or ten thousand dollars is hazardous. The Swedes, who always do well at the Games, never show any except Government bred horses. Their Cavalry School has a large number of such and selections are made there. We have in our Army now so few horses of high class that no such selection can be made. The question is frequently asked, "Why are not more show jumpers produced at the Cavalry School?" The answer is because there are no horses of class in sufficient numbers to develop into jumpers. The British Cavalry School can show probably ten horses of class and ability for every one our Cavalry School has, yet I am sure our school is a much better developer of both horses and riders than is the British School. It takes many high class prospects to turn out a high class horse. The chances are much against any particular three year old developing into a world beater. We must have a number of high class three year olds and I am sure that the Remount Service in time will produce them."

A COMMENDATION BY THE CHIEF OF CAVALRY

The following letter was recently sent by the Chief of Cavalry to Private Samuel J. Matheson, Troop "F," Third Cavalry, who rode the winning horse in the 1924 Endurance Ride.

"1. I congratulate you on winning first place in the 1924 Endurance Ride at Warrenton, Virginia, October 20-24th.

"2. My congratulations carry with them the commendation that is due you for the painstaking care you gave your wonderful horse, your sympathy and affection for her being manifest in patient and untiring effort, in spite of your own illness during the ride.

"3. You won your contest by virtue of excellent training of your mount, showing rare patience, care, horsemanship, judgment of time and pace, and personal courage. These attributes reflect great credit on the Cavalry service, your own regiment and troop, in addition to showing clearly the soldierly characteristics which predominate in your own make-up."

MALIN CRAIG,

Major General, U. S. A.

Chief of Cavalry.

AN APPRECIATION OF CAVALRY

The following is an extract from an article written by an infantry officer after the Battle of Amiens, August 8th, 1918.

"Surely my most impressive experience during the late War was a view of cavalry in action. Somewhat despised on account of enforced inaction during the long trench to trench struggle preceding the operations of 1918, then the cavalry came gloriously into its own and proved its indispensable worth as an offensive force."

"In the face of a frantic, though futile fire from enemy machine guns, they charged with intrepid bravery. Within scarce a minute from the sounding of "the charge" the horseman had disappeared into the wood and panic stricken Huns were dribbling out with hands reaching Heavenward in supplication for mercy and humble submission. Thus came the conviction of the unparalleled value of the swift moving cavalry assault. The speed with which the defensive field of fire of the enemy was crossed, permitted the gunners no time to direct fire. The infantry followed, we met no opposition on the way. The company to which the writer was attached arrived at its objective without a casualty, an unprecedented record in view of the prepared resistance."—*Canadian Defense Quarterly*.

New Books Reviewed

HORSE SENSE AND HORSEMANSHIP OF TO-DAY. By Geoffrey Brooke, D. S. O., M. C., Lt. Col. 16th and 15th Lancers. Chief Instructor, Cavalry Wing, Equitation School, Weedon. Chas. Scribner's Sons, New York, 1924. (Price, \$5.00.)

Reviewed by Major B. T. Merchant, Cavalry

A very interesting, instructive book written by a man of broad experience who has applied common sense to the art of horsemanship. It is written in a plain, matter-of-fact style and appeals to one because of its simplicity and because of the fact that the author makes no pretence, as do many, that he possesses all the knowledge in the world on this subject and that his methods are the only ones worthy of consideration. In the foreword, quoting the late John Porter, "that the charm of horses was, that there was always something new to learn" the author has, to use a slang expression, said a bookful. The longer one handles horses, the more is one impressed with this fact and the charm of the game lies in its unexpectedness. I heartily recommend it to those who do and those who aspire to ride.

MODERN MILITARY MAP READING AND SKETCHING. By Captain Frank J. Pearson, Instructor in Map Reading and Sketching, The Infantry School, (288 pages), (1924). George Banta Publishing Company. Exclusive Distributors, Book Department, Quartermaster Association. (Price, \$2.50.)

This work is a complete, comprehensive, practical, generously illustrated, up-to-date treatise, based on the map reading and sketching course at the Infantry School. It handles the subject in a new and simplified manner, devoid of technical terms. A hundred or more original illustrations by the author add greatly to its value. Following each chapter are problems embodying the principle explained. An unusual and desirable feature is a special section for instructors in which schedules are prescribed with instructions as to their application. The work is recommended to any who may contemplate giving or receiving instruction in the subject of which it treats.

TACTICS AND TECHNIQUE OF THE SEPARATE BRANCHES. In Two Volumes, The General Service Schools, Fort Leavenworth, Kansas.

These volumes are compiled primarily for use as textbooks by officers taking the Command and General Staff Correspondence Course (Combined Arms, Course D)—a correspondence course for the instruction of senior officers of the National Guard and the Organized Reserves.

The purpose of Volume I is to furnish commanders and staff officers with a general knowledge of the powers, limitations, and tactics of the branches (arms, organically a part of, or frequently attached to, a division and an accurate knowledge of such details of the organization, equipment, and technique of these branches as affect a commander's decisions and orders.

Volume II is published in order that staff officers of units larger than a division, and other officers in general, may be similarly informed with respect to the auxiliary units of special types which form parts of corps and armies or are frequently attached to these units or to divisions. This volume discusses the *material* and equipment, the organization and command, and the technical functions and general tactical employment of corps troops, army troops, and the units in the General Headquarters Reserve.

With the above purposes in mind, compilers of the two volumes have put in comprehensive form, a large amount of valuable information which should be of much use not only to those for whose use the work was primarily compiled, but to all military students.

THE CADENCE SYSTEM OF CLOSE ORDER DRILL. By Major Bernard Lenta, Infantry. George Banta Publishing Company. The Quartermaster Association, Distributors.

This interesting volume of some 120 pages should be of great value to all who have occasion to drill in close order, any organization from a squad to a battalion. The subject is presented in an original and practical manner, which with the numerous illustrations depicting in great detail every phase of close order drill from the school of the soldier to that of the battalion, make the work unique. In its teaching of correct methods, exact mechanical accuracy, with the resultant infusion of snap and spirit into the drill, the book is in a class by itself.



Foreign Military Journals

Reviews by Major Harold Thompson, Cavalry

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish), September, 1924.

A brief description is given in this issue of the practice march made by the student officers of the Mounted Service School (Cavalry), together with a regiment of Hussars from the First Cavalry Division. The regiment included four saber squadrons, a machine-gun squadron, regimental combat and field trains. The route traveled began at Madrid, and followed a general west, north-east and south-east direction, through much rough district extending into the very mountainous country of the Gredos range (south-west of Avila) and returned to Madrid. The actual distance was 404 kilometers, covered in six days, or an average of about 37 miles a day. The translator considers this excellent time considering that the roads are none too numerous in the territory covered, and many are very poor, necessitating uphill work for nearly eighty miles. Also the problems of security, distant reconnaissance and contact with the enemy had to be considered. One night march of 15 miles was covered in three and a half hours, fairly good conditions of road, light and level terrain existing. No preparation for the march was made other than the usual drills and exercises, and the report states that all animals arrived at station in excellent condition.

Among the things noted are: the trot to the walk, varied in the proportion of one to three; hourly halts of five minutes were made; dismounting to lead was frequently resorted to; early morning marches commenced at five (June); watering was resorted to at every opportunity; formations were invariably in column of two's on both sides of the road or trail, or double column of two's; animals were brushed off lightly prior to starting, lightly groomed on making camp, and a thorough grooming given at the night feeding. The writer further states that, prior to mounting, saddles were adjusted well forward, the hair being well brushed back; on arrival in camp, saddles were removed, backs chafed with straw for five minutes, and then the feet, pasterns and lower legs washed and thoroughly dried. Due to the rocky country met the shoeing required the most careful attention and as a passing statement, the writer adds that night gaits should be the same as those employed during the day, walk and trot, the latter keeping the men from dozing in the saddle.

Revista Militar (Argentine), June, 1924.

In this number 1st Lieutenant Leopoldo Ornstein, Argentine Cavalry, discusses the theme "*Our Cavalry in Mountain Warfare*."

As this officer says, in opening the article, the enormous extension of the western frontier of Argentina, in close proximity to the Chilean boundary, with its hundreds of miles of mountain ranges, offers an aspect for serious study in view of possible operations of the cavalry garrisons now stationed along that far-flung frontier.

Briefly, then, from one point of view, the Andean cordillera constitutes a strategic defense of parallel chains, dividing the theatre of operations into two zones, one to the east and one west. The various physical features, such as mountain trails, tortuous ascents, deep ravines, reduced horizon, visibility, distance from supply centers and climatic rigors all increase the difficulty of cavalry operations.

As a result, operations mounted will have to be by small units and by movements limited to a great extent to the so-called roads.

Once within the foothills, gaits will have to be limited to the walk. The rocky ground formations seriously affect the horse's shoes; small scale maneuvers have shown it necessary to reshoe every eight or nine days. The unnatural position of the cavalryman in constantly ascending and descending hills and sides seriously affects the backs of the animals, and the cold and the wind, especially the latter, are most potent enemies. All of these difficulties are increased, when one considers pack transportation. The lieutenant comments at length on the enormous transmission of sound through the highly rarified atmosphere, the necessity for unusually careful reconnaissance of roads due to frequency of land and snow slides, and the ever-present problem of orientation.

Among other points considered are: the frequent mountain streams encountered, not usually deep or broad, but very rocky and which should be crossed diagonally, and enemy aerial observation. In regard to this last, he believes it impossible for troops, once within the snow line, to escape air observation, for anything moving against the white background is visible at a great distance. On the other hand, hostile planes will have to do most of their flying, either at night or during the early morning hours, the time of least contrary winds.

Referring to scouting operations on any scale, the writer believes that distant exploration will have to be united to screening, on account of the limited number of known mountain passes. This brings up the question of securing these first, for, if a pass is seized and held by the enemy, their own cavalry reconnoitering groups can do but one thing, at once seek another pass.

Believing that small units, due to various factors already explained, will be more useful than larger ones in the initial stages of reconnaissance, with prime mission of seizing and penetrating the passes, the lieutenant suggests that such groups be composed of a squadron with a platoon of heavy machine guns, a platoon of mounted infantry, a platoon of mountain artillery and a light mobile wireless section. Even this force cannot cover more than twenty kilometers a day. All movement will have to be by bounds, with close-by objectives for the patrols. The surest means of communication will necessarily be limited (for the mounted forces) to mounted messengers.

In all close-in reconnaissance by the cavalry, units of mounted infantry and mountain artillery will be indispensable. Any hold up, by even small enemy forces, will invariably delay the advancing main body.

The historical example quoted, during the war of independence, clearly demonstrates this point. In the instance stated, a small royalist force at an important passage point, held up for two days the column of Las Heras. In this case, infantry and light cannon were lacking.

In addition, it is the writer's opinion that close-in reconnaissance will have to be personally directed by the cavalry leader, who should indicate to the patrols the various points to reach from which observation is desired, assembly points for patrols, and a means of co-ordinating patrol reports. Throughout the comment runs the warning that any omission or oversight in the patrol observation may permit a surprise attack.

Combat reconnaissance will present an unusual number of opportunities of reaching the enemy flanks, this due to the complexity of the ground. This combat reconnaissance realized mounted, should be performed, once in contact, dismounted, and should invariably be offensive in character. Frontal attacks in this mountain terrain will be rare, and then the pivot of maneuver will be weak, supported by such auxiliary fire as possible, while the maneuvering mass envelops or attacks the flanks. Such movement should include the accompanying machine guns and pack artillery. Reference is made to General von Franz Khun's text on "*Mountain Warfare*," stressing the two forms of attack, the feint and the real attack. The mobility of the cavalry lends itself to this, considering the terrain of the cordilleras, admirably.

Mounted combat will not be the role of cavalry in this class of warfare. To begin with, broad fronts cannot be considered due to the topographic configuration of the ranges, and the terrain does not lend itself, either in the narrow valleys or on the heights, for the deployment and maneuvering of large cavalry masses.

On the contrary, combat in its real sense will resolve itself into skirmishes by small cavalry groups. In this respect, the Argentine cavalry have a number of skillful examples to choose from, in General San Martin's campaign in the Andes. Such dismounted combat should be supported by auto or machine rifles, while the small maneuvering force envelopes the enemy flank. Protection for led horses is always near in this terrain. In case of surprise by the enemy, the same form of combat should be adapted.

Formations recommended are open, in two or more lines, deployed at varying intervals, units or groups to employ fire at will, and movements to be made by short bounds. Indirect fire by pack artillery will be the exception due to the height of obstacles.

In all, the article harps on the theme that the cavalry, co-operating with the other arms, such as mentioned in a preceding paragraph, is in the best possible condition to cause the enemy to deploy on erroneous fronts, giving the other arms the time and chance to carry out the real attack. Thus a threatening attack by the cavalry, sometimes parallel, sometimes concentric, involves the hardest kind of a task which demands in turn more mobility and astuteness than combat power, and the cavalry is the only arm capable of realizing it.

Flank movements, rear guard action, the break through, together with comments upon resistance centers in delaying action, defense of small sectors, pursuit and retreat present no new aspects.

Concluding, this cavalryman dissents from the opinion of some who hold that mountain warfare presents no ample field of action for the cavalry. To quote him, literally, "The complicated topographic features, the few material resources, the lack of communicating roads and the rigors of climate impose a distinct physical training, diverse combat methods, an employment of weapons different from that on the plains country, where the infantry must of necessity strip itself from its powerful auxiliary arms and where the heavy artillery will be replaced by "small caliber artillery of the pack type; where the machine guns will dominate the field from the threat of the menace of accompanying artillery; where the combat planes cannot give their powerful co-operation, and where, lastly, where war of materiel, hitherto so important will be replaced by astuteness, mobility and thorough knowledge of the terrain."

In the theme "*Conduct of War by Improvised Armies*," Colonel C. Hierl devotes considerable space to the American War of Independence and the French campaign of 1792-1794.

After describing the condition of the colonies up to 1774, the writer gives a brief resume of the struggle, touching the British plan of campaign, principal actions and their results.

The most interesting part for us is the comment of the author on the results obtained and his estimate of General Washington. For England the war was one of a cabinet opposed to a colonial war, and thus dismissed. The lack of political unity, the impotence of the Revolutionary Congress do not escape the keen remarks of the Colonel, for, as he says, the colonies were more than once on the margin of the abyss. He finds that the sole merit of Congress consisted in placing Washington at the head of American armies, and leaving him there during the entire struggle. In turn, he declares that Washington was greatly aided by the various enemies of America, witness the British fleet and army not under a supreme united command, the lack of fleet co-operation, particularly during the first years of the struggle. The decisive influence appeared with the entry of the French fleet and army.

The fact that generals inferior to Washington could directly apply to the Continental Congress, thus interfering with the plans of the great leader, are severely censured. Much merit is found in the personal authority of Washington.

The Continental troops receive a rather grudging praise, the author not admitting though, that they ever became truly organized forces, on the contrary, the militia are passed over with scorn, being, "as uncertain in value at the end of the struggle as at the beginning." Many references are made to the very poor discipline or utter lack of it.

For the rapid estimate of the situation relative to the battles of Trenton, Saratoga and Yorktown, and the consequent energetic taking advantage of certain weaknesses of the enemy situation, there is more than a modicum of real praise.

This number continues the lengthy article of Lieutenant Coelho, Argentine Navy, on *Gas Warfare*."

The first part of the theme concerns the German method of manufacturing ethylene, four phases, method of detecting mustard gas, physiological action of this gas, and in this phase, its effect on white and black troops. The tactical use of the gas, in future warfare is discussed in general terms.

Revista Militar (Argentine), July, 1924.

In this number is concluded the article by Colonel Hierl, on "*Conduct of War by Improvised Armies—France, 1792-1794*."

After discussing the political state of France, the outbreak of the war proper and the movements of the different armies of the new French republic, the colonel briefly writes his impressions and conclusions.

He finds that the different allied cabinets then in power had no common object, did not act in unison and presented no allied supreme command, whereas the French, to a large extent, did, in conjunction with a superior energy of direction.

The hesitating policies, if they could be so termed, of the allies, permitted the levess en masse of the French and further allowed the citizen soldiery and their leaders to pick up some knowledge in the school of war. As a result he finds that the volunteer contingents, without instruction and undisciplined, were transformed into well organized and disciplined troops with battle experience.

A certain likeness is found in the creation of the first French volunteer units with respect to the first American revolutionary troops, namely, a short term of enlistment instead of for the war, and the naming of officers by troop units, with all its attendant failures. Bitter experiences were necessary to overcome these blunders, as well as that of voluntary service.

The imposition of obligatory military service, was, he believes, the first real step in the right direction, and this act was based upon the conception of the individual's duty toward the state.

Among the deficiencies noted, referring to the French armies of the early revolution, are: difficulty of handling by the high command, inaptness for rapid, forced operations and inability to stand up under severe reverses.

Offsetting these, and with the time gained by the lethargy of the allies, were the initiative of the revolutionary leaders whereby they took advantage of the errors of the allies, and the numerical superiority of the French, due to the system of conscription.

Boletin del Centro-Naval (Argentina), May-June, 1902.

Lieutenant Coelho continues the article on "*Gas Warfare*" in this edition.

The gases derived from arsenic are first studied, ethyldichloroarsine, its oxide, lewiste, properties of same and methods of preparation. Chloropicrin, physical and chemical properties, manufacture, physiological effects, protection against the gas and tactical uses are all well described. Most of the methods of manufacture are apparently of American origin; German sources of information are quoted at length.

Naval Surgeon Jorge Howard, presents a brief theme based upon a study of the losses suffered by British naval units, in the battles of Camperdown, Nile, Trafalgar and Jutland.

Inasmuch as certain factors are not considered, inferences appear to be drawn from the number of men engaged, and the percentage of losses.

Accordingly, we find that in their order of time these figures:

Camperdown—number of men engaged 8,221.....	Per cent losses 10.
Nile—number of men engaged 7,985.....	Per cent losses 11.2
Trafalgar—number of men engaged 17,772.....	Per cent losses 9.5
Jutland—number of men engaged 60,000.....	Per cent losses 11.1

It is necessary to add that in the latter sea fight, losses by ship, all units and classes, are given, together with the information whether losses occurred through drowning, shell-fire, gas or burns.

Considering vessels sunk, with crews drowned, the surgeon finds the actual percentage of loss less than in the preceding named sea battles. The light cruisers paid a heavier tribute, considering their crews in proportion to other classes of ships.

It is noted that almost all burns were caused by shell explosion or cordite ignition, that there were numerous deaths by fracture, particularly of the skull, and that the number of mortalities by poison gas was small, eleven cases. Among other things, the writer proposes steel helmets for members of all gun-crews.

Boletín del Centro-Naval (Argentina), July-August, 1924.

In this number a portion of the message of the President of Brazil treats of the reorganization of the Brazilian Navy, under direction of the American Naval Commission. High tribute is paid to Rear Admiral Vogelgesang, U. S. Navy, and the Commission with him relative to the administrative and technical reforms realized, which are explained in detail. It is interesting to note that the Bureau of Naval Aviation is made a separate unit, as is that of Instruction, the former under the supervision of the Navy General Staff.

Review By Captain G. A. Moore, Cavalry

Echo de Paris (France).

In a recent edition of the *Echo de Paris* General Cherfils, of the French Army, registers a strong protest against the recent reduction in the number of French Cavalry regiments as a part of the late economy drive in his country and issues a warning as to the results of this tendency.

The indecisive character of the termination of the war against the Central Powers, he says, gave to many uninformed people a very erroneous conception of the efficaciousness of the role of the Cavalry in the World War. Their wonderful campaigns at the beginning of the conflict on the western front in all the armies was obscured by three long and trying years of trench warfare, fought under special conditions of wings resting on impassable barriers. The decisive contributions of the Cavalry in the later stages of the contest, especially in Palestine and Syria, as well as in the Italian campaign against Austria, have not yet sunk into the consciousness of many students of the war and things military.

General Cherfils emphasizes that the failure of the Allies to go on and really end the war when they had the opportunity, besides creating the endless after-war problems we are now struggling with, also robbed the Cavalry of one of their most important reasons for existing, namely, the rout and pursuit of the enemy. The aim of leadership in war—to create the panic in the forces of the enemy necessary to break the bonds of tactical unity—had been accomplished in 1918; at that time was the occasion to use Cavalry. The abrupt ending of the war deprived the Cavalry of their greatest work. The effectiveness of this department of Cavalry's part in war is aptly illustrated by what it did to the Turks in the Holy Land under Allenby.

General Cherfils maintains that the French Cavalry is the victim of a very dangerous economy. He refers to the arm as that of "morale par excellence." Part of the blame is placed on the wave of materialism which has exalted the uncommon development of means of destruction. He argues that maneuver renders less effective these agencies of destruction. This fact was demonstrated many times during the late war.

The general brings to remembrance once again one of the cases in the World War when a commander wished in vain for Cavalry. On the 25th, 26th, and 27th of March, 1918, when a breach of thirty kilometers had been opened between the French and English, if Ludendorff had had available several divisions of Cavalry to throw into this hole, he would have taken Longueau, Amiens, reached the sea, cut off the French from the British, and perhaps won the war. (In this connection we recall the testimony of each and all of the great commanders of the late war on both sides about the need of Cavalry in the future.) At this time all Ludendorff's Cavalry was on the Russian front. If he would have had the use of it, the allies would have been lost. Victory slipped out of his hands because of the lack of Cavalry.

General Cherfils remarks that these facts seem not to have entered into the calculations of the reorganizers of the French army.

The writer praises the dictum of the French General Staff, of date of 3 August, 1919, by the hand of Pétain, that mounted combat by Cavalry is possible and necessary against a Cavalry seeking or accepting this kind of encounter, against infantry surprised or in confusion, and against artillery on the march or placed in a hazardous position. This statement of the employ of Cavalry mounted General Cherfils terms "prudent wisdom."

This article in addition goes into the present French Cavalry organization and the new regulations governing the training and employ of the arm. General Cherfils believes, in variance with the new pronouncement in his country, that mounted combats of Cavalry are possible with large units as well as with small ones. He believes that the element of surprise and the ability to maneuver preserve still the usefulness of large bodies of mounted troops. In this view it is interesting to note that the Italians in their thorough investigations concerning the future of Cavalry following the World War seem fully to concur.

The general closes his illuminating article with the prayer that his countrymen's economies may not open the Bridge of Sighs.

Cavalieristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands), July, 1924.

The Battle of Lavrov (concluded).—Two pieces of artillery, a machine-gun section, a battalion of infantry and 7¼ squadrons of cavalry were under command of General Spannoch, commander of the 13th Uhlan Regiment. About 10 a. m. on October 27 the Russians moved up close to a little piece of woods where the machine-gun section was in line. The unsuspecting Russians made camp and began to prepare a meal, but were suddenly put to flight by the fire of the machine-guns, which were only 800 paces away. The Russians withdrew to some distance and did not attempt to advance until afternoon. In the meantime the dismounted cavalry had dug itself in. About noon small detachments of the 5th Cavalry Division began to come up.

The enemy began firing with several mountain guns at 2 p. m., answered by two pieces of the Austrians. At 3:15 the Russian infantry moved slowly toward a piece of woods. A sudden charge was made by one squadron of the 2d Hussar Regiment and a company of the 39th Infantry Battalion, using saber and bayonet. Eighty Russians were captured and the same number killed; the rest fled. Then the Austrians returned to their positions.

Three squadrons of Hungarian cavalry arrived soon afterward, under command of Colonel Jony, who reported that Lehmann's Cavalry Corps could not engage on the 27th.

At 8 p. m. the enemy again tried to penetrate into the valley. He was driven back by two squadrons of the 13th Uhlan Regiment and pursued as far as Tysowica. Just afterward a battalion of the 101st Infantry Regiment arrived. The enemy remained quiet during the night.

On the following day Spannochi marched into Lavrov, having been relieved by Barbini's Brigade. This was the end of the fighting on the right wing of the 4th Cavalry Division. In the meantime Kopechek had reached Lavrov and was observing the Russians. Some infantry and a few pieces of artillery were stationed on the heights and on October 28 the enemy moved off toward the northeast.

It is doubtful whether the Austrian Second Army could have been rescued from its dangerous situation but for the timely arrival and bold action of the 4th Cavalry Division. An Infantry force of the same strength could not possibly have reached the battlefield in time; it was out of the question to bring up infantry in motor trucks. The work could be done only by a large body of cavalry.

Having the Horse Stretch His Neck, by van Reede.—The writer recommends the use of a regular series of exercises for strengthening the neck muscles and developing the lower part of the neck, upon the proper form and carriage of which so much depends. The horse is to be taught to stretch his neck while standing still, as if grazing, care being taken that the movement is performed in the proper form. Later the horse can be taught to perform the same movement at a walk, then at a trot, and finally at a gallop. This makes a valuable relaxing and suppling exercise. A horse that has been taught to stretch his neck does not arch his back and always has a good carriage.

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands), October, 1924.

Cavalry Combat and Organization of the Arm, by H. Mathon. (Conclusion.) The results of the last maneuvers proved that the cavalry has too few heavy machine guns. The present number should be doubled. Because of the nature of cavalry combat, these machine guns should not be placed under the direct orders of the regimental commander, but assigned to the different squadrons. Another reason for this is that the squadrons are not combined into regiments except during the maneuvers, and have little opportunity to learn how to work together. As there are already two machine gun sections per regiment, it should be possible to form two new sections without increasing the total number of horses for the regiment.

Directions for Cavalry Training, by W. "Directions for Cavalry Training" have recently appeared and to be used temporarily, until new cavalry regulations are issued.

Great emphasis is laid on drill in open order and on the training of small units.

Each platoon is divided into two groups of 11 men under command of a sergeant, each group having a light machine gun. Each squadron has 4 orderlies, 6 signal-men, and a cyclist patrol of 3 non-commissioned officers and 12 privates.

Much attention is paid to avoiding observation from the air.

Instructions are given for changing rapidly from close to open order and vice versa, and for attacking cavalry, artillery or entrenched infantry. Every attack on horseback is to be supported by fire from the light machine guns.

Training in Riding for Troops and Mounted Officers. All subaltern mounted officers of all arms should be given individual training in riding. In addition, all privates and non-commissioned officers of the cavalry should participate in steeplechases and cross-country races. Any cavalry horse should be able to take simple obstacles under any rider.

It does little good to conduct races between a few picked men on the best horses. Real training for war must include all.

The writer considers it valuable training to have the men cover a given distance in a given time, neither more nor less.

Polo

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL

The polo season of 1924 at the Cavalry School opened in the latter part of April. Three School Teams were organized from the permanent personnel, the Special Advanced Equitation Class and selected members of the Advanced Class.

In the middle of May the following team was selected to compete in a two-game match with Fort Leavenworth: Captain C. H. Gerhardt, No. 1; Major C. P. Chandler, No. 2; Major J. K. Brown, No. 3; and Major W. W. Erwin, No. 4. The Leavenworth Team was composed of Captain C. A. Wilkinson, No. 1; Major G. S. Patton, No. 2; Major I. P. Swift, No. 3; and Captain G. E. Huthsteiner, No. 4. Leavenworth won the first game, 9-8, in an extra chucker. The second game was won by the Cavalry School, 14-2.

The team returned to Fort Riley and games between the various School teams and the 2nd Cavalry were played every Wednesday and Sunday afternoon until the end of the School Year, June 10th.

After the graduation exercises, a team composed of: Major C. B. Lyman, No. 1; Captain C. C. Smith, No. 2; Major J. K. Brown, No. 3; and Major J. B. Thompson, No. 4, proceeded to Fort D. A. Russell with twenty-four ponies to compete in a tournament held by the 13th Cavalry. This tournament was a round robin affair, each team playing each other team one game on a handicap basis. The teams represented were: The Cavalry School, Fort Leavenworth, the 13th Cavalry, the 14th Cavalry, and Colorado Springs.

The Cavalry School team won the runner-up cups, being defeated in the final game by the Colorado Springs Team, by a score of 11-10. The Colorado Springs Team was composed of Mr. Carey, No. 1; Mr. J. A. Vickers, No. 2; Mr. Arthur Perkins, No. 3; and Lieut. Colonel Neale, No. 4, with Major C. B. Williams as substitute.

From Fort D. A. Russell, the Cavalry School Team went to Colorado Springs to compete in a tournament held under the auspices of the Broadmoor Hotel. The following teams were represented in this tournament: The Cavalry School, Fort Leavenworth, Fort Sam Houston and Colorado Springs. Three events were played, one championship and two handicap. The Fort Sam Houston Team won all events.

During July and August, polo at the Cavalry School was enjoyed by all the polo-playing personnel who were not on leave or on duty at summer training camps. Games were played every Wednesday and Sunday afternoon between three school teams and the 2nd Cavalry Team.

On September 10th, the Commandant enunciated the following policy with reference to polo at the Cavalry School:

"The mission of polo at the School is first, to further instruction in horsemanship, namely, bold, fearless and skillful riding, and the condition, care and handling of polo ponies before, during and after the game; second, to develop a polo team that can creditably represent the Cavalry School in such tournaments as may be participated in. In accordance with the above, all officers of the permanent garrison are encouraged to play polo. Those field officers whose ability is such that they can make the Cavalry School Team will be authorized to play. The Second Year Class will play polo as it is an important part of their instruction. Unfortunately students of the Troop Officers' Class cannot be allowed to play polo as facilities are not sufficient to accommodate them. All officers of the permanent garrison who play polo will train during the polo season and the succeeding winter months at least one green polo pony."

In answer to the above call, a squad of twenty-five officers turned out and were organized into teams as follows: Black and Gold Team, Red Team, White Team, Yellow Team and Green Team.

It became impossible to mount the above teams from the polo stable, but it was found that many of the horses at the school that had been skillfully trained made fair polo ponies with very little work. A total of eighty horses were used for polo during the season.

During the months of September and October, games were played every Wednesday, Saturday and Sunday afternoon. On Tuesdays and Fridays green ponies were played at "Slow Polo."

At the end of September, a team from the Cavalry School, consisting of Major C. B. Lyman, No. 1; Captain C. H. Gerhardt, No. 2; Captain C. C. Smith, No. 3; and Captain H. R. Gay, No. 4, with Captain Falck as substitute, went to Omaha, to compete in the Ak-Sar-Ben Polo tournament, with the following teams: *Senior*, The Cavalry School, 14th Cavalry, Wakonda Team, 2nd Cavalry; *Junior*, 4th Cavalry, Remount Team, Ak-Sar-Ben Team, 3rd Infantry. Two events were played: One championship event, which the Cavalry School won by defeating the Wakonda Club, 10-7, and the 14th Cavalry, 11-7; the other, a handicap event, which the Cavalry School won, defeating the 4th Cavalry Team in the final game by the score of 15-12.

The team returned to Fort Riley in the middle of October. Polo was continued until November 2nd, when it became necessary to close the season as the field had become too hard. All playing ponies were turned out to pasture and efforts are now being concentrated on perfecting the training of great ponies.

FIRST CAVALRY

There are now enough playing members of the 1st Cavalry Polo Association to make four full teams with plenty of substitutes for each team. The teams are made up as follows:

Senior

1st Lieutenant A. E. Forsythe
Captain Paul H. Morris
Captain L. K. Truscott, Jr.
1st Lieutenant C. E. Feagin

Reds

2nd Lieutenant Paul G. Kendall
2nd Lieutenant Gordon B. Rogers
2nd Lieutenant Richard T. Willson
Major R. B. Patterson
Lt. Col. A. Poillon

Junior

Captain H. C. Mandell
1st Lieutenant G. B. Hudson
Captain Harrison Herman
Captain G. D. Thompson
2nd Lieutenant Eugene L. Harrison

Whites

2nd Lieutenant Lee C. Vance
Captain Harry Foster
Captain Samuel R. Goodwin
Captain Edwin M. Summer
Colonel Charles E. Stodter

Games are played Wednesday and Sunday afternoons, followed by a Polo Tea at the Club. Six new ponies have been added to the string, and are undergoing a thorough course of training before participating in the games.

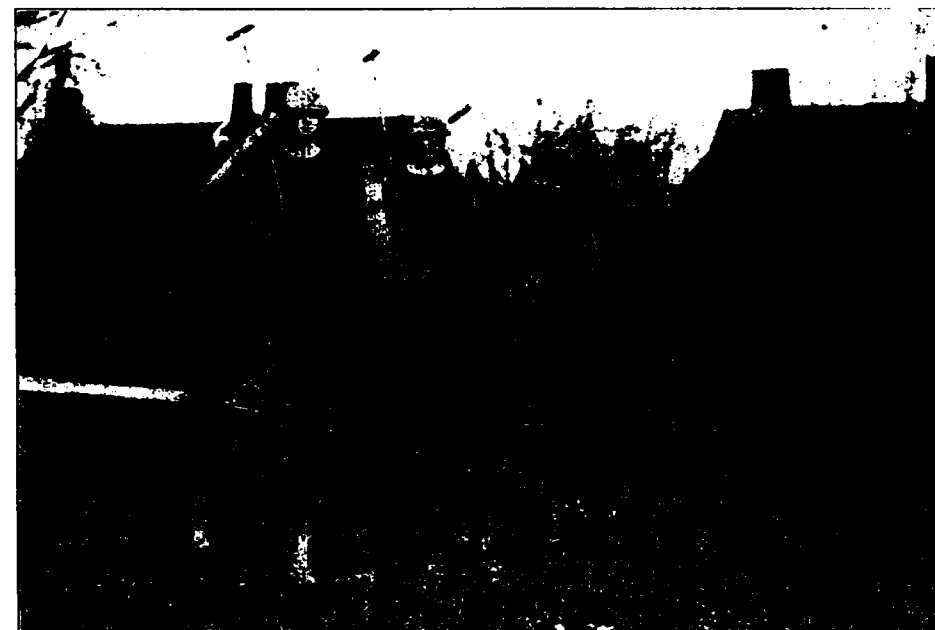
The Eighth Cavalry Polo Team will be our guests for a series of games and a horse show to be held November 27, 28, 29 and 30.

Our field is now in excellent shape, the ponies are in fine condition, and under the able management of Captain L. K. Truscott, Jr., we are getting splendid results. All officers are given a number of playing periods each week and are progressing rapidly. Polo is having a big boom in this Regiment, and with the addition of the new Lieutenants who have recently joined we feel that we have at least as large a playing membership as any Regiment in the Service.

THIRD CAVALRY

It is felt that Colonel Lewis Brown, Cavalry, is largely responsible for the success of the Cavalry Team of Fort Myer in the fall tournament. He gave the team one afternoon for coaching followed by a blackboard lecture which served well towards amalgamating the team and instilling therein more of the spirit of team play.

As an example, a team from Fort Humphreys came to Fort Myer in the summer and in two games beat the Third Cavalry by a ratio of three to one. A little coaching and more experience followed, which made for even a better ratio (this time in favor of the Cavalry) in games played in the tournament. In the High Goal Tournament the Third Cavalry won from Fort Humphreys; Sixteenth Field Artillery lost to the War Department Greens; War Department Whites conquered Fort Humphreys, but then lost to the Third Cavalry. The Third Cavalry then won in the finals from War Department Greens.



The Third Cavalry Polo Team, Fort Myer

Lieut. C. E. Byers, Lieut. A. George, Lieut. H. C. Hine, Jr., Capt. J. H. Irving

The Low Goal Tournament was then lost by the Third Cavalry to the Sixteenth Field Artillery. Contestants were Fort Humphreys, War Department White, Third Cavalry and the Sixteenth Field Artillery.

The team consisted, this year, of the following officers: Lieutenant C. E. Byers, No. 1; Lieutenant George, No. 2; Lieutenant H. C. Hine, Jr., No. 3; and Captain J. H. Irving, Back.

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY

The fine weather prevailing at Fort Ethan Allen since the return of the Cavalry and Field Artillery from Camp Devens in September last has enabled our polo enthusiasts to play at least three times a week, and a very interesting handicap tournament between three teams has been engaged in. A team from Norwich University has been down twice, but in neither instance were they able to hold the Cavalry and Artillery fours opposed to them. Now that the winter has started in the riding hall will be utilized for indoor polo, which will begin the second week in December and will continue, with three games a week, throughout the winter months. Two carloads of young horses have just been received here for the Cavalry and Artillery from among which there offers to be at least a dozen good polo prospects. These latter will be distributed to the Artillery, who are now obliged to borrow most of their polo ponies from the Cavalry.

FOURTH CAVALRY (less 1st Squadron)

When this regiment received orders, about the first part of October, to move from Laredo, Texas, to Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming, we expected that we had seen the last of polo until spring. Upon arrival here, however, we encountered a very pleasant surprise; namely, that the polo season was not nearly over, even this far north.

With few exceptions, we have been able to have every week two individual practices and scrimmages and two practice games with the 13th Cavalry.

The regiment, from the Commanding Officer down, is very enthusiastic over polo. Everything is done to encourage better polo and to interfere as little as possible with practice periods. Being able to play often against another regimental team will develop keen competition, better players and teamwork and greater enthusiasm among both players and non-players.

At this time the regimental team has not been selected as there are quite a few players of about equal ability and it is difficult to determine which are the four best. The squad consists of the following officers: Captains Willoughby, Dobyms, Ball and Haydon, Lieutenants Merrick, Hammond, Hodes, Bunnell, Bromley, Neal and Davison.

The squad feels greatly the loss of their coach and team captain, Captain C. Loyd Stafford, who was ordered to the Philippine Islands before the regiment left Laredo.

Some indoor polo is contemplated for the winter months and by spring we expect to develop two fair teams of about equal strength.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY

The polo team of this squadron participated in the Mid-West Polo Tournament held at Omaha, Nebraska, and proved to be the "dark horse" of the tournament, winning the Junior Championship with ease. This tournament, held during the Ak-Sar-Ben Carnival, was one of the largest polo gatherings ever held in the West, eight different teams participating.

The Fourth Cavalry team was composed of the following players:

No. 1—Lieutenant J. I. Gregg, Jr.;

No. 2—Captain C. S. Kilburn;

No. 3—Lieutenant Chas. H. Noble;

No. 4—Lieutenant J. T. Ward;

Sub.—Captain C. G. Wall.

The teams entered in the Junior Division were: Ak-Sar-Ben, Omaha, Nebraska; Fort Snelling; Fort Robinson, and the 1st Squadron, 4th Cavalry team. In the first game of the Junior Division the 4th Cavalry defeated Fort Snelling, 18 to 1. Lieutenant Gregg led in the scoring for the 4th Cavalry with seven goals. Captain Kilburn

followed closely with six, while Lieutenant Noble scored four and Lieutenant Ward one. Captain J. F. Wharton scored the only goal for Fort Snelling in the sixth chukker.

In the final game for the Junior Championship the 4th Cavalry met the Ak-Sar-Ben team of Omaha, and defeated them to the tune of 17 to 2. The game was hard fought and closer than the score would indicate. Captain Boyer was easily the star of the Ak-Sar-Ben team, scoring both goals for them. The team work of the 4th Cavalry was far superior to that of Ak-Sar-Ben. Captain Kilburn and Lieutenant Gregg, the Cavalry forwards, each scored five goals, and their hard and accurate hitting bewildered the Ak-Sar-Ben defense. Lieutenant Ward and Lieutenant Noble broke up the Ak-Sar-Ben offensive rushes and kept the ball well fed up to their forwards, while they took the offensive at every opportunity. Lieutenant Noble scored four times and Lieutenant Ward three.

By winning the Junior Championship the 4th Cavalry gained permanent possession of the "George Brandeis Trophy," a handsome silver cup, 26 inches high. Individual cups were also presented to the five members composing the winning team.

In an exhibition game the 4th Cavalry was defeated by the crack Cavalry School team, the champions of the Senior Division, by a score of 15 to 12. This game was played under national handicap ratings, the Cavalry School team conceding six goals to their less experienced opponents. The combination of Major Lyman, No. 1; Captain Gerhardt, No. 2; Captain Smith, No. 3, and Captain Gay, No. 4, is thought to be one of the strongest and best mounted army teams ever assembled in the West. It was not until the seventh period that the Cavalry School team succeeded in overcoming their handicap, five periods, or over half the game, were fought on even terms in the number of goals made. This game was one of the hardest fought and most exciting of the whole tournament. Captain Kilburn and Lieutenant Noble each scored two goals for the losers, while Lieutenant Gregg and Lieutenant Ward scored once. Goals for the Cavalry School were as follows: Captain Gerhardt and Captain Smith, four each; Major Lyman three, and Captain Gay two. Two Cavalry School goals were scored by ponies.

FIFTH CAVALRY

There are twenty-two officers engaged in regular polo practice twice each week in the Fifth Cavalry and from this number it is hoped to develop a team that will do credit to the Regiment at the mid-winter tournament of the Eighth Corps Area at San Antonio in February.

During the season of tactical training practice was intermittent, with the result that both senior and junior teams met with defeat at the meeting of the First Cavalry Division. The senior team lost to the Seventh Cavalry and the juniors to the First Machine Gun Squadron, the latter winning the Division junior championship. Notwithstanding these setbacks, several matches of more than ordinary interest have been played.

A team from the regiment was invited to Junction, Texas, on July 12th, to play a team of cowboys from the Watson Divide. Although the series of games played was for instruction of the home team only, it aroused great interest. The people of this section of Texas are eager to learn the game and are paying much attention to the breeding of types of horses suitable for polo use.

As a special feature of the rodeo held at Piedras Negras, Coahuila, October 3rd, a series of games was played with a team of Mexican cavalry officers from the regiment garrisoned at Saltillo. So far as is known, this was the first occasion of international play between American and Mexican military teams, antedating by some months the forthcoming invitation tournament in Mexico City. The Saltillo four are

beginners at polo, but their splendid spirit of sportsmanship was such as to encourage the hope of closer relations and frequent meetings with them.

Some remounts are beginning to arrive at Fort Clark for the regiment and from among them it is expected to find additions to the polo string. A number of likely prospects, meanwhile, have been purchased from neighboring ranchers.

SIXTH CAVALRY

Shortly after the regiment returned from the summer at Camp McClellan, Alabama, a reorganization of the Polo Association was found to be necessary. This was due to the loss of Major Charles W. Foster, former Polo Representative and Field Manager, who was ordered to the Cavalry School at Fort Riley, Kansas, and to the resignation as Assistant Field Manager tendered by Lieutenant Dewey. The latter received "vote of thanks" from the regiment for his long and efficient service in the above capacity.

Upon the next meeting of the Association, the following officers were elected:

Colonel Robert J. Fleming—President.

Major Edwin N. Hardy—Field Manager.

1st Lieutenant Edward H. deSaussure—Assistant Field Manager.

1st Lieutenant William T. Fletcher—Secretary and Treasurer.

Upon recent transfer from the Regiment of Lieutenant Fletcher, 1st Lieutenant Hal M. Rose was elected Secretary and Treasurer to succeed him.

In addition to the above, Major Hardy was also appointed Polo Representative by the Commanding Officer.

The reorganization of the Polo Association having been completed, the next and most important factor to consider was the polo ponies. Practically all were in poor shape due to a hard summer's playing, and a long return march. While at Camp McClellan the 6th Cavalry naturally was the polo center of the Camp, and furnished mounts for teams from the 8th and 22nd Infantry, Camp Headquarters, Freebooters and Anniston Polo Club, besides mounting two regimental teams. From this it can easily be seen that the ponies received the maximum amount of play, changed hands frequently, and were naturally run down upon their return to Fort Oglethorpe.

Consequently, the period from September 12th to October 20th, the ponies were put in pasture four days each week, being played only on Sundays. Playing on Wednesdays and Sundays was resumed on October 20th, the mid-week games being particularly emphasized in the development of new players and ponies. All Sunday games are especially featured in order to attract and keep alive the keen interest in our polo displayed by the civilians of Chattanooga and vicinity. In order that these games be as evenly balanced as possible the opposing players are divided into two teams, the "Cardinals" and the "Yellow Jackets." The teams as divided play a three-game series, at the end of which, if either shows a marked superiority over the other, the players are redivided for the next series, and so on. In this way the spectators have the opportunity of seeing the best polo that can be provided.

In speaking briefly of the polo players in the regiment, there are at present eighteen officers including the Commanding Officer now playing polo, but of this number there are sufficient and experienced players to form an excellent regimental team. On the other hand, the new material is developing rapidly and there are many prospective good players who require only practice and experience.

To indicate the interest being taken by officers of the Regiment in polo, twenty ponies have been selected at Diamond Ranch, and will be shipped to this station in the near future. Another incentive in this respect is due to the recent shipment of remounts to the Post, several of these have been recommended and appear to be excellent polo prospects.

SEVENTH CAVALRY

Polo is attracting a great deal of interest in the 7th Cavalry. There are 17 officers playing. Efforts are being made to replenish the Polo String from the remounts recently received. Some of the remounts recently received have been used on ranches as roping and cutting ponies and will soon make good polo ponies.

Keen competition is being shown for places on the Post Team to play in the Corps Area Tournament to be held at San Antonio, Texas, in January. Major H. M. Estes, Captain D. S. Wood and 1st Lieutenant C. Burgess are candidates from this Regiment.

The First Cavalry Division Senior and Junior Tournaments composed of teams representing the Seventh Cavalry, Eighth Cavalry, Fifth Cavalry, First Cavalry and Division Headquarters in the Senior Division and Seventh Cavalry, Eighth Cavalry, First Cavalry, Division Headquarters, First Machine Gun Squadron, Second Machine Gun Squadron and 82nd Field Artillery in the Junior Division were played at Fort Bliss, Texas, during October. The Eighth Cavalry won the Senior Championship and the First Machine Gun Squadron won the Junior Championship. The game between the Seventh and Eighth Cavalry Senior Teams was especially hotly contested, an extra period being required. The Seventh Cavalry Team was handicapped due to the fact that its members had little opportunity to play together before the Tournament, as two of its members were away from the post on Detached Service and returned to the post a few days before the Tournament. The Senior Team was composed of Captain D. S. Wood at No. 1, 1st Lieutenant C. Burgess at No. 2, 2nd Lieutenant J. H. Walker at No. 3, and Major H. M. Estes at No. 4, and the Junior Team was Captain W. K. Harrison, Jr., at No. 1, 1st Lieutenant S. P. Walker at No. 2, Captain R. Russell at No. 3, and 2nd Lieutenant John B. Cooley at No. 4, with 2nd Lieutenant F. G. Trew substitute.

TENTH CAVALRY

The Tenth Cavalry Polo Team recently made a visit to the Arizona State Fair at Phoenix, where a series of three games was played with the student team from the University of Arizona, with the following results:

First Game—November 10, 1924.

University of Arizona.....	4	Tenth Cavalry	6
----------------------------	---	---------------------	---

Second Game—November 13, 1924.

Tenth Cavalry	7	University of Arizona.....	11
---------------------	---	----------------------------	----

Third Game—November 14, 1924.

University of Arizona.....	2	Tenth Cavalry	10
----------------------------	---	---------------------	----

The line-ups were as follows:

TENTH CAVALRY	POSITIONS	UNIVERSITY OF ARIZONA
Lieutenant B. G. Thayer.....	No. 1.....	Cadet Saunders
Lieutenant J. H. Healy.....	No. 2.....	Cadet Hearon
Captain J. B. Taylor.....	No. 3.....	Cadet Fuller
Lieutenant W. S. Biddle.....	No. 4.....	Cadet Sawyer
Substitute—Captain E. A. Everitt		Substitute—Cadet Schillman

Cadet Schillman played in place of Cadet Fuller in the first game.

The University of Arizona under the able direction of Lieutenant Colonel Ralph M. Parker, Cavalry, until a few months ago Professor of Military Science and Tactics at the institution, has developed collegiate polo to a remarkable degree. The team is now under the direction of Major John B. Johnson, Cavalry, Colonel Parker's successor, assisted by Captains Roy C. Woodruff, Philip R. Upton, and Fenton Jacobs, Cavalry, all experienced players. Further progress in polo may be expected.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY

A team from 11th Cavalry played Santa Cruz at Aptos Field, September 21st, defeating the latter 7-6, after a hard-fought game.

During the Raisin Carnival at Fresno a team, representing the regiment, played a series of three games at the Fair Grounds, defeating the Santa Cruz team 5-3, 3-2 and 4-3.

Polo is played twice each week at the Del Monte Field. The main objects in view are the development of a first team to represent the regiment during the coming matches at Del Monte, and training new players to fill vacancies on the first team.

TWELFTH CAVALRY

The Twelfth Cavalry has been devoting considerable attention to polo during the past quarter. Both the Fort Brown and Fort Ringgold teams have been practicing regularly, with thirteen in the Fort Brown squad, including Captains Putnam, Rathjen, Franklin, Palmer, Miller, Scott, and Dukes; 1st Lieutenants Creel, Stockton, and Wilson; and 2nd Lieutenants Rapp, Burnside and O'Shea; and eight at Fort Ringgold, including Major Bowditch, Captains Blatt and Burt; 1st Lieutenants Rodwell and Buckland; and 2nd Lieutenants Hamilton, Evans and Dugan.

The first tournament of the fall season was conducted at Fort Ringgold, the game on November 7th resulting in a score of 4 to 3 in favor of Fort Brown, and the second game, that on the 9th, being 5 to 4 in favor of Fort Brown. The line-ups were: Fort Brown: Captain Putnam, No. 1; Lieutenant Stockton, No. 2; Captain Dukes, No. 3; Captain Rathjen and Lieutenant Rapp, No. 4. Fort Ringgold: Lieutenant Buckland, No. 1; Lieutenant Hamilton and Captain Burt, No. 2; Lieutenant Rodwell, No. 3; Captain Blatt, No. 4.

The second tournament was commenced at Fort Brown November 30th with a 6 to 5 score in favor of Fort Ringgold. The line-ups were the same as in the previous tournament with the exception that Lieutenant Burnside played 3 on the Fort Brown team.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY

Since the publication of the last Polo notes the 14th Cavalry Polo Team has engaged in two tournaments. The first was for the Wakonda Polo Trophy played September 12th and won by the Wakonda Team, 16 to 9. The 14th Cavalry Team showed very decidedly its lack of practice resulting from the players having been on duty during the month of August with the C. M. T. Camps.

Very little practice was held after this tournament before the regiment started for Omaha, Nebraska, by marching. Four days were available for practice after arriving at Ak-Sar-Ben Field before the Ak-Sar-Ben Polo Tournament started, which was used to such good advantage that the team won its first game from the 2nd Cavalry Team by a score of 9 to 7.

The following team participated in the tournament:

<i>Junior Division</i>	<i>Senior Division</i>
Ak-Sar-Ben	Cavalry School
4th Cavalry, Fort Meade	2nd Cavalry
Fort Robinson	14th Cavalry
Fort Snelling	Wakonda

In the Senior Division the Cavalry School Team defeated the 14th Cavalry, 13 to 9, for the championship.

SECOND MACHINE GUN SQUADRON

The 2d Machine Gun Squadron polo team participated in the Fort Bliss Summer Handicap Polo Tournament from August 3rd to September 8th, 1924. Five teams engaged playing for trophy cup, won in 1923 by the 82d Field Artillery Battalion (Horse).

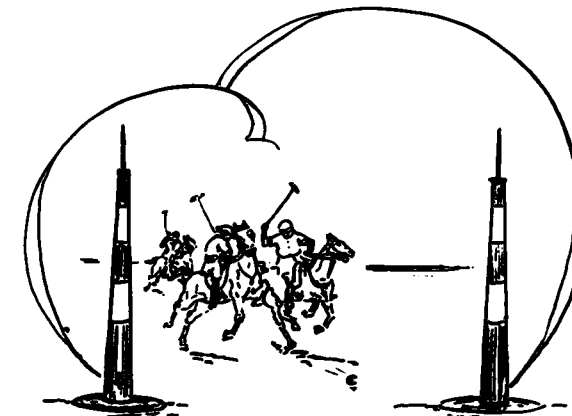
During the 1st Cavalry Division Junior Polo Tournament in September, the Squadron polo team played the second game with the 82d Field Artillery Battalion (Horse), being defeated, score 5 to 1.

At present the team is devoting its activities to training remounts and new players who have recently joined the Squadron.

POLO IN THE 62d CAVALRY DIVISION

With commendable enterprise, the 62d Cavalry Division has organized a polo team which has devoted considerable time to practice during the past fall. The season culminated in a game with the 110th Field Artillery team, which was won by the 62d Cavalry Division by a score of 3 to 0.

The 62d's line-up was as follows: No. 1, Lieutenant William J. Crowe; No. 2, Major Wilfrid M. Blunt; No. 3, Major Alex. C. R. Knight; No. 4, Captain Edward B. Harry. Substitute, Cadet Meredith Cromwell. V. M. I. Referee, Major J. McV. Austin.



The National Guard

THE 103d CAVALRY—National Guard of Pennsylvania

Colonel Arthur C. Colahan, Commanding

On the recommendation of Lieutenant John W. Converse, 103d Cavalry, member of the Radnor Hunt Club of Philadelphia, the Board of Governors of that club has passed a resolution making officers of the Army and Navy stationed in Philadelphia welcome to hunt with the Radnor hounds. The club has also made its stables available for the use of officers of the Army and Navy who desire to keep their mounts at Radnor.

Just before the Defense Test, the Second Squadron, 103d Cavalry, commanded by Major Samuel B. Wolfe, Lewisburg, Pennsylvania, assisted by the 52d Machine Gun Squadron and Battery "D," 107th Field Artillery, conducted a Pony Express Ride. The purpose of the Ride was to advertise the Defense Test and to stimulate interest in the National Guard units located in that section of Pennsylvania, which includes the counties of Northumberland, Union, Lycoming, Clinton, and Center.

Nine mounted organizations participated in the Ride. There were two message carriers from each unit who were accompanied by from two to six other riders. The distance covered was one hundred and ninety-two miles which was traveled in nineteen hours and three minutes, an average of *ten miles per hour*. The trot was maintained continuously with short gallops at intervals. All riders dismounted and led their horses up steep hills. Five minutes rest was taken at the end of each hour, during which period saddles were removed. Mounts were allowed to drink wherever water was available along the course. Horses were inspected at the beginning and at the end of each run. All horses and riders finished their runs without mishap. At the end of the longer relays horses were tired but all quickly recovered their strength.

The only accident of the ride was sustained by Captain Elmer R. Emerick, 107th Field Artillery, who traveled from one relay station to another by automobile to inspect mounts. His car overturned and he received a broken leg and severe scalp wounds.

Wide publicity was given to the Pony Express by all local newspapers. It stimulated recruiting and assisted in making a success of the Defense Test. The riders received valuable instruction in riding and in the care of their mounts. It is proposed to make this an annual event.

104th CAVALRY—Pennsylvania National Guard

Colonel Edward J. Stackpole, Jr., Commanding

The 104th Cavalry, Colonel Edward J. Stackpole, Jr., commanding, has just been made the recipient of an autographed picture of General John J. Pershing, General of the Armies. The picture, which has been hung in the regimental headquarters of the 104th Cavalry at Harrisburg, Pa., was presented in memory of the General's review of the 52nd Cavalry Brigade, of which the 104th is a part, at Mt. Gretna, in July, 1923. At the time of the review, a torrential downpour soaked trooper and reviewing officer alike, and General Pershing won the whole-hearted admiration of the entire brigade by his refusal to postpone the ceremony until the cloudburst had passed over. In fact, he rode the lines while the storm was at its worst, and took his place at the reviewing point with Major General William G. Price, Jr., Commanding General of the 28th Division, while the fury of the storm was unabated. The picture which graces the regimental headquarters room is one of the best likenesses of the general extant, and shows him mounted on one of the 28th Division headquarters chargers.

As a part of the permanent development of the cavalry drill grounds at Mt. Gretna, where the Pennsylvania brigade encamps each summer, the two regiments of the 52nd Cavalry Brigade, the 103d and 104th, have prepared a comprehensive scheme of shade tree planting, and a ceremony attended by officers and men of both regiments will attend the formal planting of these trees early in the spring of 1925. Through this development, in which the State Forestry Department is co-operating, the cavalry encampment will have ample shade trees on both the regimental, troop officers, and troop street lines, and in a very few years this feature will have no inconsiderable bearing on the comfort of all.

Elements of the 104th Cavalry at Harrisburg took part Armistice Day morning in the dedication of a bronze tablet commemorating the work of women in the World War. Following a short parade in which cavalry, infantry, and field artillery participated, the troops were formed facing the memorial and remained in place during the ceremony. At the conclusion, planes from the Middletown Air Station flew over and dropped flowers on the memorial.

Captain Otis Porter, Cavalry, D. O. L., has been conducting a weekly equitation class for officers of the 104th at Harrisburg. Captain Porter, whose detail as instructor to this regiment brought him to it in 1921, has taken a keen interest in the development of horsemanship among both officers and men, and the recently formed class is making progress under his tutelage.

56th CAVALRY BRIGADE (less 111th Cavalry)—Texas National Guard

Brigadier General Jacob F. Wolters, Commanding

According to information from Headquarters 8th Corps Area, the consolidated report of the Fifty-sixth Cavalry Brigade (Texas units) was the first to reach Corps headquarters on Defense Test Day. All units were mobilized in the morning, and reports reaching Brigade headquarters showed that all units were well over war strength. One troop in particular, with war strength of ninety men, reported over four hundred and fifty volunteers, this in a city maintaining two other National Guard units. The speed and efficiency shown by the mobilization was particularly pleasing to the Brigade Commander, General Jacob F. Wolters. All units participated in the local demonstrations. In Houston, Brigade Headquarters and Headquarters Troop led a parade estimated to include eight or ten thousand persons.

Recommendation has been forwarded to the War Department for the selection of Camp Stanley as the permanent camp site of the Texas units of the Brigade. This camp holds a warm spot in the heart of every true Texas cavalryman, being commanded by Colonel S. R. H. Tompkins. It is expected that the next year's camp will find the Brigade in its new home.

The following letter has been received from Headquarters 8th Corps Area:

HEADQUARTERS EIGHTH CORPS AREA,
OFFICE OF THE CORPS AREA COMMANDER.

Subject: Commendations.

To: The Adjutant General of Texas,
Austin, Texas.

1. The following commendatory remarks appear in report of the Inspector General who made the recent inspection of the Fifty-sixth Cavalry Brigade (less 111th Cav.), Texas National Guard, at Camp Stanley:

'VI. COMMENDATIONS.

The appearance and morale of the officers and men were commendable, and the results obtained in so short a training period were considered unusually satisfactory, and

indicated much intelligent effort on the part of the Brigade Commander and the officers under him. Acknowledgment is due Major Victor Foster and his assistants for the excellence of the instruction imparted by them. They manifested the keenest interest in the success of their work and were highly efficient in the performance of their duties.

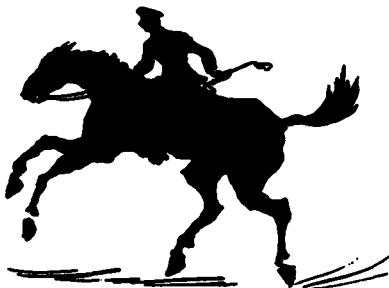
The officers of the brigade are earnest, energetic, and enthusiastic, and appeared to be imbued with the true Cavalry spirit. Several of them are Riley graduates.

At a competitive drill, review and inspection the troops made a very creditable showing, executing movements with precision and smartness. The review of the brigade was exceptionally well conducted at all gaits, and the condition of the command with respect to the grooming of mounts and the careful attention to the many small details which make for smartness in the mounted organizations was most satisfactory.

2. It is requested that this communication be referred to the Commanding General, 56th Cavalry Brigade, for his information and record.

FOR THE CORPS AREA COMMANDER:

John F. Preston.
Chief of Staff."



The Organized Reserves

63rd CAVALRY DIVISION

The annual tour of active duty training at Camp McClellan, Ala., July 9-23, has come and gone. It was a successful camp. The consensus of opinion of the officers and men who attended from the division was that the training given constituted a well-balanced schedule between practical and theoretical work, both indoors and in the open, and that the whole instruction project emphasized those subjects of immediate practical value to the Reserve Officer in fitting him to understand the role he was to play on September 12th.

The instruction was carried out as originally planned. The Reserve Officers were attached to the First Squadron, Sixth Cavalry, and during the first week (July 9-15) received instruction to fit them to become instructors for the Cavalry C. M. T. C. Squadron during the second week (July 16-23), which was done under the supervision of the Regular officers on duty with the Squadron.

Advantage was taken of every opportunity to have the Reserve Officers mounted, and in this way they received much more mounted instruction than previously given them at Camp.

The Executive Officers of the 63rd Cavalry Division were ordered to Camp, attached to the First Squadron, Sixth Cavalry, and assisted in instructing the Reserve Officers.

The members of the Enlisted Reserve Corps were attached to and trained with a C. M. T. C. Troop.

The 310th Cavalry was the unit designated to attend camp. However, due to the fact that it was impracticable to obtain a sufficient number of that unit who could attend, it was necessary to attach officers from other units of the Division to fill our quota, and even then the allotted quota was not filled. This condition was true in every Reserve Division in the Fourth Corps Area, and therefore a certain amount of funds for active duty training of Reserve officers and men for fiscal year 1925 were not used, this no doubt will be used in giving active duty training to a number of Reserve officers and men at some time between now and June 30, 1925.

Under the present law (with certain exceptions) any officer or enlisted man of the Reserve Corps who attended camp during the summer of 1924 is not eligible, inasmuch as the law only allows fifteen (15) days active duty to any member of the Reserve Corps in one fiscal year.

The Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show which took place at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, Saturday, October 25th, was a great success and drew a large crowd. In the special jumping class for National Guard and Reserve Officers, results were as follows:

- 1st—2nd Lieutenant William F. Roth, 310th Cavalry.
- 2nd—1st Lieutenant J. Hubert Taliaferro, 109th Cavalry.
- 3rd—1st Lieutenant David A. Spence, 155th Machine Gun Squadron.

305th CAVALRY—Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

A number of officers of the regiment have established the custom of lunching together on Wednesdays at 12:30 at the roof of the Longacre Hotel.

A very successful practice march, combined with a terrain exercise was held on October 18th and 19th for the officers of the 305th Cavalry. The route traversed was from the Armory of the First Philadelphia City Troop to Fort Washington Inn, Fort Washington, Pennsylvania, and return, a distance of sixteen miles each way. The march was made on a prescribed schedule with a "gait setter" and a time keeper.



Lieutenant Colonel H. R. Smalley Explaining Route of March to Squadron Commanders and Adjutant

On the first day, October 18th, an advance guard terrain exercise was worked out, the regiment with Troop "A," 153d Machine Gun Squadron, being assumed as the advance guard of a larger force. A critique was held after dinner in the evening.

The following officers volunteered to participate in the march: Lieutenant Colonel H. R. Smalley, who commanded the regiment; Major Gardner, Captains Patterson, Young, Bell, Rutan, Groome, Crofut; First Lieutenants Leusch, Livingston, Meade, Chew, Green, Crosson, Patjens; Second Lieutenants Gardner, Chamberlain, Kirk, Stewart, Bodine, Grannis, Mann, McKinley, Brinton, and Town.

Cavalry School Notes

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—Fort Riley, Kansas
Brigadier General Edward L. King, Commandant

The school year 1924-25 started on September 15th with five classes present for instruction as follows: Advanced Class, 28 members, Colonel John D. Long, Class President; Special Advanced Equitation Class, 13 members, Major R. W. Strong, Class President; Troop Officers' Class, 51 members, Captain R. L. Creed, Class President; Advanced National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class, 2 members, Colonel Johnston, Class President; and, Troop Officers' National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class, 27 members, Captain B. E. Fox, Class President. All courses are for nine months this year, except the Advanced National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class which is for weeks and the Troop Officers' National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class which is for 3 months.

Changes in the Instructional Staff are as follows: Colonel L. W. Oliver has succeeded Colonel Guy V. Henry as Assistant Commandant; Colonel George Williams has assumed command of the 2nd Cavalry (School Troops); Lieutenant Colonel Frank Kellar is the new Director of the Department of Tactics; Lieutenant Colonel K. T. Riggs of the Department of General Instruction; and Major B. T. Merchant of the Department of Horsemanship. A new department, to be known as the Department of Correspondence Courses, with Lieutenant Colonel P. J. Hennessey as Director, has been organized with the mission of preparing and revising the necessary courses and special texts pertaining to the correspondence course method of instruction for cavalry.

Prior to his retirement, General Pershing spent an afternoon at the School, inspecting its various activities. He made a short address to the members of the garrison in which he stressed the importance of the military policy embodied in the National Defense Act. General Craig, the new Chief of Cavalry, formerly Commandant of the Cavalry School, spent a week at the post. Other distinguished visitors include Brigadier General Wells, Commandant of the Infantry School; Brigadier General Irwin, Commandant of the Field Artillery School; Lieutenant Colonel Hemphill, Commandant of the Signal School; Captain Wada, of the Japanese Cavalry; Lieutenant Colonel Espallargas and Major Casajus, of the Spanish Army, and Colonel Charlton, British Military Attache at Washington. Several demonstrations and exhibitions were given in honor of these officers with a view to presenting a visual cross-section of the mission of the Cavalry School.

A Cavalry School team was entered this year for the first time in the Western Endurance Ride in Colorado and another in the Eastern Endurance Ride in Virginia. Only two horses, *Wineglass* and *Aline*, proved sufficiently up to type to warrant their entry, but much valuable experience was gained, which should prove of great assistance in case the School decides to enter teams in these events in future years.

The following team was sent from the School to the American Royal Horse Show in Kansas City: Captain Waters (team captain), Major Strong, Captains Fiske and Guenther of the Department of Horsemanship, Lieutenant Colonel Martir and Sergeant Haines of the 2nd Cavalry, Mrs. Coe, Mrs. J. B. Thompson and Miss Helen Herr. The following school horses were taken: *Jack Snipe*, *Miss America*, *Joffre*, *Proctor*, *Dynamite*, *Logical*, *Babe Wortham*, *Anita*, *Tarry Not*, *Sandy*, *John Bunny*, *Moses*, *Raven*, *Barrister*, *Dick* and *Black Boy*, also Colonel Martin's *Dawn of Peace* and *Memo*, Captain Pulling's *Speed Jack*, and the 2nd Cavalry's *Jack* and *William*.

The following places were won during the week of the show: In the triple bar class, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up, was first, and *Joffre*, Captain Guenther up, second. In addition to these two, *Raven*, Captain Guenther up; *Proctor*, Major Strong up; and *William*, Sergeant Haines up, went clean on the first performance, *Jack Snipe* and *Joffre* clean on the first jump off and *Jack Snipe* clean again on the second jump off.

In the 5-foot class, *Proctor*, Major Strong up, was first; *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up, second, and *Joffre*, Captain Guenther up, third. In the open jumping over a 4-foot course, with 36 entries, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up, was first; *Moses*, Captain Waters up, second, and *Dynamite*, Major Strong up, third. In the Hunter's Stake, 25 entries, with \$500.00 added money, divided among six places, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up, was first; *Speed Jack*, Sergeant Haines up, second, and *Miss America*, Captain Guenther up, third, and *Proctor*, Major Strong up, fifth. In the touch-and-out class, with silver plate prizes offered for first, second and third, *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up, was first; *Speed Jack*, Sergeant Haines up, second, and *Miss America*, Captain Fiske up, third. In the military pair jumping, *Sandy*, Captain Waters up, and *Black Boy*, Captain Fiske up, were first; *Jack Snipe*, Captain Waters up, and *Raven*, Captain Guenther up, second; *Babe Wortham*, Captain Waters up, and *Dynamite*, Major Strong up, third, and *Proctor*, Major Strong up, and *Joffre*, Captain Guenther up, fourth. In the Consolation Three-gaited Saddle Class, *Memo*, Lieutenant Colonel Martin up, was third.

In the Ladies' Military Class, *Babe Wortham*, Mrs. Coe up, was third. In the Ladies' Open Jumping, *Moses*, Mrs. Coe up, was first; *John Bunny*, Mrs. Coe up, third, and *Raven*, Mrs. Thompson up, fourth. In the Ladies' Pair Jumping, *Black Boy*, Miss Herr up, and *Sandy*, Mrs. Coe up, were first; *Babe Wortham*, Mrs. Coe up, and *Raven*, Mrs. Thompson up, was fourth.

The team won a total of eight firsts, six seconds, eight thirds, three fourths and one fifth, out of nine events entered, and \$962.50 in money, which was used for entrance fees and to defray the expenses of the team.

Regimental Notes

FIRST CAVALRY—Marfa, Texas
Colonel C. E. Stodter, Commanding

During the past quarter the First has had the honor of several visits by our Brigade Commander, General E. E. Booth. On some of these visits the regiment has worked out various problems in the field, and at other times the regular garrison routine has been followed. The Corps Area Commander made his annual tactical inspection, and stated that the Regiment performed its duties in a satisfactory manner. The new Corps Area Commander, General Summerall, made a brief visit to the camp. This was in the nature of an introduction, as the General had not visited this place before.

The Regiment made a four day practice march in October. Various march problems were worked out, chiefly those of security on the march and in camp, both day and night. The First Squadron made one cross country march, going about twenty-three miles in three hours and forty-five minutes, over hilly and rough country. The march was made under assumed war conditions in hostile territory, and was entirely by map and compass. Neither men nor horses suffered any ill effects.

Several officers and men of the Regiment have taken advantage of the good hunting offered in the Big Bend Country. The open season on deer came in November the

first, and several have been killed by members of the command. Ducks abound in cold weather, and a good many have been killed.

Squadron parades are held weekly, and regimental formations and ceremonies add to the interest of the work.

SECOND CAVALRY (Cavalry School Regiment)—Fort Riley, Kansas

Colonel George Williams, Commanding

During the months of September, October and November the Regiment completed instruction and record courses in rifle, machine rifle, pistol, and saber.

On September 8th, Troop C, Captain Malcolm Byrne in command, returned by marching from Fort Leavenworth, where it had been on duty during the summer training period of the C. M. T. C.

The First Squadron and the Band, with Major Arthur B. Conard in command, took part in the Defense Day Program in Junction City, Kansas, on September 12th leading the Defense Day parade, and later pitching shelter tent camp in the City Park.

On September 13th a Regimental Dinner was given commemorating the participation by the regiment in the St. Mihiel offensive. This was the first of the dinners which are to be held semi-annually on dates of especial interest in the regimental history, and was particularly interesting since Captain Kent C. Lambert, who was with the regiment during the offensive, was present and gave his personal recollections of the action.

Troop B, Captain Benton G. Shoemaker in command, and the Band, marched to Herrington, Kansas, and gave exhibitions of drills, jumping, and mounted gymnastics in connection with the Fall Festival held there in September.

On September 29th the Regimental Band gave a concert for the Reserve Officers of Kansas, who were in convention in Junction City.

On October 26th Troop A and Band, Lieutenant A. G. Olsen in command, marched to Abilene, Kansas, and gave a series of exhibition drills at the Stock Show held there the following day.

On November 10th the Regiment gave a demonstration showing combined action of Cavalry against Infantry for Colonel Charlton, from the British Embassy, at Washington, D. C.

The Tactical Inspection of the Troops of the Post was held on November 24th by the Commandant, Brigadier General Edward L. King. The inspection, which included all School Troops, under command of Colonel George Williams, involved the attack of a river crossing, the establishing of a bridgehead, a march, and a bivouac with outpost.

THIRD CAVALRY (less 1st Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia

Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, Commanding

The Squadron while at Camp Meade, Maryland, following their period of training for the C. M. T. C., made an excellent showing in rifle competition. The Officers qualified 100 per cent. "G" Troop qualified 100 per cent, "E" Troop, 98.1 per cent; "F" Troop, 96 per cent; and Squadron Headquarters Detachment, 100 per cent.

The Bowman Challenge Cup, which becomes the property of the three-times winner, of the Officers' Charger Class at the National Horse Show at New York, was awarded this year to the 3rd Cavalry at Fort Myer after having been won twice by Major G. S. Patton, 3rd Cavalry, on *Allahamande* and lastly by Captain V. L. Padgett, 3rd Cavalry, on *Tango Dance*.

It took an "old soldier," Private Samuel J. Matheson, Troop F, 3rd Cavalry, to

win the American Remount Association's annual five-day endurance ride which was held at Warrenton, Virginia, this year. He rode a troop horse, *Peggy*, a half-bred mare sired by *Ganador*. This is the first time an enlisted man has won first place in these rides. Captain M. S. Daniels, Jr., 3rd Cavalry, owns the mare *Lillian Russel*, ridden by Major K. G. Eastham, from the Office of the Chief of Cavalry, which made third place. This mare was bred by the British Remount Service and imported to this country by General Pershing in 1919. *Goose Girl*, half-bred mare, Troop G, 3rd Cavalry, finished very creditably, ridden by Private Daniel J. McQuaid, Troop G, 3rd Cavalry. This mare won third place last year.

On November 18th, 1924, a tactical inspection of the command was made by Brigadier General S. D. Rockenbach, Commanding General, District of Washington. This consisted of a review of the troops in full pack on the parade ground followed by a problem within four miles of the post, which lasted about three hours.

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont
Lieutenant Colonel Herbert E. Mann, Commanding

The recent march of the 1st Squadron, 3rd Cavalry, from Camp Devens, Mass., to Fort Ethan Allen, Vt., was a memorable one in that it embodied a new phase in the training of Reserve Corps Officers. An entire Reserve Corps Regiment, the 315th Cavalry, from Rhode Island and Connecticut, was attached to this squadron, and under the supervision of the Squadron Commander and his troop commanders, were allowed to exercise tactical command of the troops during the entire march. This experiment proved to be a great success, principally on account of the keen, able leadership of Colonel Herbert R. Dean, commanding the 315th Cavalry, and the interest, enthusiasm and loyalty of his regimental officers, practically all of whom had seen prior service with the National Guard Cavalry on the Mexican Border, and with troops in the late war. It was also made possible by the fine spirit of co-operation shown by every officer and enlisted man of the 3rd Cavalry, who entered into and carried through this experiment in Reserve Corps Training in the most commendable manner.

During the march, which was through a part of the country which had not seen any regular cavalry for over twenty years, this squadron and attached officers were everywhere received with the greatest courtesy. Fine camping sites were obtainable at every stopping place, and full advantage was taken to utilize the march for tactical exercises and field training of every kind. The squadron arrived at Montpelier, Vt., on Defense Day, and took a major part in the parade and patriotic exercises held in that city on that afternoon. The daily length of march, with the exception of the first day, was about twenty-one miles, and while some hard rains were encountered, the weather generally was fair and delightful, and the few spells of bad weather only added to the instruction of the Reserve Officers, in seeing what little effect bad weather has on well disciplined troops. On the last day a march of thirty-nine miles was made, with a short noon-day halt for water and feed of animals, and lunch for men. Every officer, man and animal arrived at Fort Ethan Allen in the best possible condition.

It is believed that this attaching of Reserve Officers to Regular Units is the most practicable, as well as the most interesting and instructive method for their training, providing that the Reserve Corps Officers have received enough previous instruction with troops to admit of their being able to step in and assume tactical command under proper supervision of Regular Officers. It is recommended that this scheme of training be extended to as many of our Reserve Corps units as may be fitted for it and as it may be practicable to attach to Regular Troops during the next training season.

Since its return to Fort Ethan Allen the squadron has finished the Supplemental

Season with the rifle, fired the Record Course for pistol mounted and dismounted and completed the saber record. The results in qualifications in the various arms were very satisfactory, and show more qualified men than ever before. The three lettered troops entered teams for the National Rifle Association mounted pistol match, the result of which has not yet been published. Regimental cups have been offered for special competition on the saber course, and in this squadron the cup was won by Troop "C," this troop also won a silver trophy presented by our late Post Commander, General Harts, for the highest average in a series of weekly troop and battery competition inspections including squad rooms, kitchens and mess halls, stables and blacksmith shops, care of animals and animal drawn transportation, and appearance of men, uniform and personal equipment. These competitive inspections created a great rivalry among all organizations, and have tended to raise the high standard already attained by the garrison of this post. Schedules for a basketball and bowling tournament are now out, and these indoor sports will begin the first part of December. Organization commanders are also replenishing their stocks of skates and skis, in anticipation of those popular sports.

FOURTH CAVALRY (less 1st Squadron)—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyo.
Colonel T. Q. Donaldson, Commanding

Colonel T. Q. Donaldson took command on October 1st, 1924.

Six years of duty on the Mexican Border came to an end on October 20th, when the regiment entrained at Fort McIntosh to take station at Fort D. A. Russell. The move was made by train of three sections, comprised of animals, personnel and freight, and was accomplished without untoward incident. A most cordial welcome awaited the regiment at Fort D. A. Russell, General Jenkins and all members of the 13th Cavalry and 76th Field Artillery doing everything possible for the comfort and convenience of the regiment. Delightful weather enabled the command to get settled speedily and take up again the schedule of training interrupted by the move.

Prior to the departure from Fort McIntosh, Troop E, in command of 2nd Lieutenant A. K. Hammond, and accompanied by the band had marched to Alice, Texas, for the purpose of participating there in the Gulf Coast Fair. The Fair authorities were most appreciative and enthusiastic regarding the exhibitions of drill and riding put on by the troop.

The Baseball Championship of the Regiment was won by Headquarters Troop captained by Staff Sergeant Joseph E. Schullian, after a close struggle with Headquarters Detachment of the 2nd Squadron.

Each organization has entered a team in the Post Bowling Tournament and judging by results so far bid fair to bring home the high percentage for the regiment.

Captain R. E. Willoughby and 1st Lieutenant R. J. Merrick have commenced the development of a riding and jumping detachment with a view to competition in the next Frontier Day and other fairs and horse shows in the vicinity.

Captains Dobyns, Burkett, Haydon, and Lieutenant Hammond comprise the Officers' Bowling Team in a series of matches to be played with the 13th Cavalry.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort Meade, South Dakota
Major Otto Wagner, 4th Cavalry, Commanding

On September 23, 24 and 25, 1924, the 1st Squadron participated in the Meade County Fair, at Sturgis, South Dakota.

On September 23, the first day of the fair, an exhibition Squadron Drill was given, followed by a demonstration of a Squadron acting as an Advance Guard and Rear Guard of a larger force.

On the second day, Troops A and C competed in the following events:

Tent Pitching Contest, Cossack Race, Dressing Race, Mounted Wrestling, Rescue Race, Relay Race.

The above competition was won by Troop C, with five first places out of six events.

On the third day enlisted men's and officers' jumping was held.

The enlisted men's jumping was over a course of four jumps three feet high. First, second and third places, respectively, were won by Private Foster, Troop C; Private Boyer, Troop A; Sergeant Stogsdale, Troop C.

The officers' jumping was held over a series of jumps 3½ feet high, first, second and third places, respectively, being won by Captain C. G. Wall, Major O. Wagner, Lieutenant J. I. Gregg.

Troop B, 4th Cavalry, was at Spearfish during this period participating in the annual Spearfish Fair.

The troops at this station have contributed in no small degree to the success of four annual fairs or exhibitions in this vicinity. In addition to the two mentioned above, Troop A gave an exhibition at the Tri-State Round Up at Belle-Fourche, South Dakota in July, and Troop C participated in the "Days of '76" Carnival at Deadwood in August. In the latter exhibition the troopers acted as an escort to a stage coach and, in another event rescued the "beautiful heroine" from a burning log cabin by driving off a band of "wild" Indians.

On November 4, 1924, the Squadron was given its annual tactical inspection, Major General George B. Duncan, Corps Area Commander, being the inspecting officer.

Lieutenant Colonel C. E. Hathaway, Post Commander, commanded the Squadron during this inspection; Major Wagner having written the problem in conjunction with the G-3 office at Corps Area Headquarters.

On November 5, 1924, the Squadron left Fort Meade on a five-day practice march. The weather was ideal until the evening of the first day when it suddenly turned cold and began to snow. The snow continued during the second day and the thermometer hovered around zero. Sleeping in shelter tents was no luxury during this cold weather, but the health and morale of the command remained excellent throughout the march. The command returned to Fort Meade on November 9th, having marched about 75 miles in the five marching days. Men and horses were in excellent condition.

Lieutenant Colonel C. E. Hathaway, commanding Fort Meade, accompanied the Squadron on this march.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel Wallace B. Scales, Commanding

So absorbing have been the activities in this regiment and post for the past several months that the transition from the old training season just concluded to the new has passed almost unnoticed. Occupations have been incessant. Yet the Fifth has reason to be content.

For judging by such indorsements to reports of the tactical and other inspections of the regiment as have come to hand, the results of all efforts have proved very satisfactory to higher authority. Both the former corps area commander, Major General Ernest Hinds, and his successor, Major General Charles P. Summerall, made during October thorough annual tactical inspections and in their commendations all ranks feel well repaid for their pains and encouraged to greater efforts for the training year just beginning.

The supplementary target season just completed was a proper sequel to an exceptionally successful regular season. The percentages obtained are: Rifle, 97.43%; Pistol, dismounted, 95.83%; Pistol, mounted, 100%. In the total aggregate for both seasons the qualifications were not exceeded by any regiment in the Cavalry, save in

Pistol, dismounted. In this course the Fifth was headed by one regiment by a fraction of one per cent.

The first of a series of post horse shows was held November 28th-29th in Las Moras Park, on the Fort Clark Reservation. The beginning was a ten-mile cross-country ride for enlisted men and concluding, on the afternoon and night of the latter date, with a night reconnaissance ride of thirty miles for officers and non-commissioned officers. This latter event, while not quite so strenuous at the graduation night ride of the Cavalry School, was scarcely second to it in the interest and enthusiasm it aroused. The reconnaissance of country, rather than speed, was made the feature, the course being a triangular one with three stations. It involved country difficult to negotiate after dark. The stages from station to station were strictly limited to maximum and minimum time limits. More than seventy riders faced the starter and so close were a number of competitors to the maximum credits upon the basis of 50% for completeness of reconnaissance report turned in, 30% for time and 20% for condition of mount throughout the course and at the finish, that it was only after forty-eight hours that the judges awarded first place, officers, to Captain Sexton Berg, 1st Machine Gun Squadron; second place to Lieutenant C. E. Snyder, 5th Cavalry, and third place to Lieutenant C. R. McLennan, 1st Machine Gun Squadron. First place, non-commissioned officers, Sergeant Schultz, Headquarters Troop, 5th Cavalry; second, Sergeant Foster, 1st Machine Gun Squadron, and third, Sergeant Peters, 1st Machine Gun Squadron.

It is proposed to hold three months hence a competitive reconnaissance ride of twenty-four hours for organizations under simulated war conditions.

On November 5th Master Sergeant Irving C. Wolters, Headquarters Troop, was retired after thirty years' service, all of which time, with the exception of two enlistments, was passed in the Fifth Cavalry. While with Troop M, 14th Cavalry, Sergeant Wolters was on active service under Major General Leonard Wood in the third and fourth Sulu expeditions. During the action at Paruka Uttick Cotta, May 2 and 3, 1905, he was called upon, after volunteering, to help locate a hostile trench when his unit was caught between two hostile fires. Although his first sergeant was killed by his side, Sergeant Wolters succeeded in carrying out his mission.

At Nogales in 1913, while with the 5th Cavalry, Sergeant Wolters again distinguished himself by recapturing single handed three escaped prisoners after a search of eighteen hours across unknown country.

The regiment was paraded in honor of Sergeant Wolters and the felicitations of the commanding officers, the officers and enlisted men were extended to him in appreciation of his honorable service and well-known retirement.

Although the Texas "border" does not lend itself to football, the post team has had an excellent season. The team from Brook's Field proved rather too formidable, but the 9th Infantry was taken into camp with a score of 14 to 7, and this victory has done much to promote the team's efforts. Both games were characterized by capital sportsmanship on both sides and were highly interesting.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

Colonel Robert J. Fleming, Commanding

During the past quarter many changes have taken place in the officer personnel of the regiment. The losses include Major Charles W. Foster, formerly in command of the 2nd Squadron, who was sent to the Cavalry School at Fort Riley, and 1st Lieutenant William T. Fletcher, who was ordered to Headquarters, Fourth Corps Area, Atlanta, Ga., for duty with the Organized Reserves. Among the gains are Major Edgar W. Taulbee, who recently returned from the Olympic Riding Team; Major Edwin N. Hardy, 1st Lieutenants John R. W. Diehl, Hal M. Rose, E. P. Tompkins, 2nd Lieutenants Raymond D. Palmer and Lawrence K. Ladue.

September 12th, being National Defense Day, was quite a busy time for the troops of the garrison. In the morning the Regimental Commander held a full field inspection and review. In the afternoon the regiment participated in the parade in Chattanooga in which it is estimated that ten thousand people took part.

Following the parade there were exercises in the Memorial Auditorium which were attended by a large audience. Among the principal speakers of the occasion were Mayor Richard Hardy of Chattanooga, Colonel Robert J. Fleming and Colonel J. J. Hornbrook.

On September 12th, Troop "E," Captain Milton H. Patton, commanding, left by marching, for Sweetwater, Tenn., where it participated in the annual Fair exercises held at that place. Upon the return of the troop on September 18th, many complimentary reports were received upon the appearance and soldierly conduct of the members of this troop while at Sweetwater.

During the past quarter, the regiment has lost some of its best and most faithful non-commissioned officers by retirement. Included in this number are Sergeants Dean, Clifford, Reidlinger and Norton.

Headquarters Troop, 1st Lieutenant Leslie D. Carter, commanding, tendered a farewell banquet and smoker in honor of Sergeants Dean and Clifford. On this occasion practically all the officers on the post, including the Commanding Officer, were present. A most sumptuous meal was served, special music being furnished throughout, after which a number of appropriate speeches were made.

On September 27th, Troop "F," Captain Robert R. Maxwell, commanding, left by marching for Rome, Ga., where it took an important part in the Fair week ceremonies. Upon its return numerous commendatory letters were received by the Commanding Officer, praising the appearance and conduct of the troop while there.

On the same day, Troop "G," Captain Wharton G. Ingram commanding, returned by marching from Camp Knox, Ky. Both men and animals were in excellent condition notwithstanding the long march, and since their arrival many commendatory reports have been received praising their efficiency and conduct during the period of the summer training camps. On October 8th the troop was again commended for its soldierly conduct during the stopover in the city of Nashville on the return trip.

On October 17th, the 6th Cavalry Band went to Summerville, Ga., to render a special concert in connection with the Fair being held at that place. Upon its return, most complimentary reports were received concerning its program.

While speaking of the Regimental Band, it is important to mention some of the changes that have taken place within the past quarter. Under the able and efficient direction of Warrant Officer Dennis T. Swihart, the personnel has not only been filled, but the instruction received and the class of music rendered reflects much credit on the regiment. The special Sunday afternoon concerts attract large crowds and much favorable comment from visitors from Chattanooga and vicinity. In addition, Mr. Swihart has a special orchestra in training which provides ample dance music for all occasions.

On October 18th the 1st Squadron, Major Edwin N. Hardy, commanding, returned by marching from the Catoosa Target Range, having completed its target practice.

The Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show, which was held October 25th, was one of the most successful affairs ever staged at Fort Oglethorpe. Under the management of Major Edwin N. Hardy, who was assisted by various committees, the ring was most elaborately constructed and decorated, and all classes were run off with clock-like precision.

As an added stimulus to the many entries, various business houses in Chattanooga offered handsome prizes for first and second places, which made the competition much keener.

Starting at 9.30 in the morning the program extended over the entire day with an intermission between 12 noon and 1.30 P. M., for luncheon, which was served at the Officers Club under the able supervision of Mrs. James M. Troutt.

Upon completion of the regular program, there was an exhibition of novelty jumping staged by Captain Renn Lawrence and Lieutenant John B. Reybold. In this particular class, horses were jumped over a table with men seated around same, over another horse, and lastly through a burning hoop.

One of the most distinguished guests in the Post was Brigadier General E. B. Winans, from Headquarters, Fourth Corps Area, who was the house guest of Colonel Fleming.

In the Garnett Andrews Cup Class, much interest was centered. Miss Betty Fleming having won this trophy for the past two years, but on this occasion Mrs.



John, Troop C, Sixth Cavalry, a Remarkable Jumper
Captain Renn Lawrence Up

Charles G. Hutchinson, riding *Snooks*, captured first place, with Mrs. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr., on *Dodo*, second, and Miss Betty Fleming, on *O Henry*, third.

The grand championship jumping event was won by 1st Sergeant Chester A. Clark, on *John*, with Lieutenant Donald A. Beck, on *Baby*, second, and Lieutenant Davis W. Hale, on *Fagan*, third.

In the officers' pair jumping, Lieutenant T. Q. Donaldson, Jr., on *Betty*, and Lieutenant James M. Rudolph, on *Nigger*, won first place with a perfect score, while Lieutenant Leslie D. Carter and Lieutenant Raymond D. Palmer finished second, and Lieutenant Howard A. Boone and Lieutenant William P. Campbell third.

In the Ladies' and Gentlemen's pair jumping Mrs. Vernon M. Shell and Colonel Richard H. Kimball won first place from Lieutenant and Mrs. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr., after an extra jump off.

On the morning of October 27th, the regiment was reviewed and inspected in full field equipment by Brigadier General E. B. Winans.

That afternoon a tactical problem was executed, and the following morning, schools and training records were inspected. The General and his party departed from the Post by motor car shortly after noon of the 28th, returning to Atlanta.

On November 17th shortly before noon the Assistant Secretary of War, Mr. Davis, paid a short visit to the Post. During his stay, the officers of the regiment were afforded the opportunity of meeting this distinguished visitor.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

In September the Regiment participated in a two-day maneuver with the Second Cavalry Brigade, in which the Regiment acquitted itself with credit. The problem was the defense of El Paso against a strong Red force.

Early in October, Major General Ernest Hinds, Commander of the Eighth Corps Area, visited Fort Bliss on a tour of inspection. The first day's program was a review of the troops and an inspection of the various organizations at drill; while the second day's schedule was an all-day field problem. The Corps Commander and his staff complimented the Regiment on its appearance and performance. The tactical efficiency of the First Cavalry Division was highly praised. The Regiment got favorable mention.

On October 20th, Major General Charles P. Summerall, the new Commander of the Eighth Corps Area, inspected and reviewed the troops of Fort Bliss, and inspected the quarters and stables. He expressed himself as much gratified over the high state of efficiency and the splendid appearance of the command.

The Regiment recently received a complimentary letter from General Summerall congratulating the organization on its splendid showing for the 1924 target season. The results are:

Weapon	No. Firing	No. Qualified	No. Unqualified	Regt. per Cent.
Rifle	529	510	19	96.16
Auto-Rifle	82	81	1	98.80
Pistol (Mounted)	499	498	1	99.83
Pistol (Dismounted)	575	557	18	96.78

The honors for the highest troop qualification in the Regiment went to Troop "E," Captain G. P. Cummings, commanding. The troop fired 65 men and qualified 100 per cent. Colonel Lee presented the troop with a handsome silver cup in recognition of its splendid achievement.

Very satisfactory results were attained also in the other cavalry arm, the saber: Expert Swordsmen, 45; Excellent Swordsmen, 198; Swordsmen, 77; Unqualified, 20.

For the second consecutive year, the Regimental baseball team won the Post League championship. The Post Athletic Association trophy and the Goldsmith Cup were presented to the team by Major General Robert L. Howze, Commander of the First Cavalry Division, on September 19th, at the Post Stadium. A cash prize of \$25.00 for the best all-around player went to Corporal H. O. Strait, Troop "F," while a merchandise prize of \$15.00 for the best hitter went to Corporal William Moll, Troop "B." These latter prizes were offered by an El Paso firm. This team represented Fort Bliss in a three-game championship series at Fort Sam Houston. They suffered a game and gallant defeat at the hands of a picked team from the Second Division. Their hosts treated them royally and a pleasant time was greatly enjoyed. The team traveled by truck and played games en route to and from Fort Sam Houston. On their return, Colonel Lee complimented the team with a banquet. Captain Delmore S. Wood captained and managed the team.

Lieutenant P. M. Martin, of the 7th Cavalry Rifle Team, won the Leech Cup at the national matches at Camp Perry. Lieutenant Martin and Sergeant W. P. Jackson,

Troop "F," also won the Regimental match at Des Moines at the Cavalry team try-outs in July. In the Cavalry individual championship match, and in the 200-yard individual championship match, Lieutenant Martin won second honors. Corporal Jens B. Jensen was among the high shots on the pistol team.

The inter-troop basketball league of the Regiment is now in full swing with Troop "F" leading and Troop "C" a close second. The Regiment will be represented by a strong team in the Post League beginning on December 1st. A picked team of the Regiment played in the El Paso Church League and nearly carried away first honors.

During the quarter the Band played concerts in El Paso and at the Southwestern International Exposition, and has given regular weekly concerts at the Post. A silver cup was given to the Band by the Exposition as a token of appreciation.

With other units of the First Cavalry Division, the Regiment participated in the Southwestern International Exposition, El Paso, September 18-28, with a Regimental exhibit. In addition, the Regiment gave a real feature in the exhibition of its bridle-less and rough-riding squads. The performance of the bridle-less squad and the spectacular, "dare-devil" riding of the other squad, evoked many compliments from spectators. Mayor R. M. Dudley complimented the men in a letter to Colonel Lee. Their performance was repeated at the Post.

On November 19th, the American Federation of Labor delegates, and President Samuel Gompers, were guests of Major General R. L. Howze and the Post, on which occasion the rough-riding squad thrilled the visitors with their spectacular riding and stunts.

"The Garry Owen Trumpeter," the Regimental paper, a weekly publication, is enlarging in popularity and growth. It has proven a morale-building agency. The morale of the Regiment is exceptionally high, and every contented Garry Owen manifests the fact.

The Regiment is now equipped with the Regimental Insignia—a gold horseshoe with seven nails, on which is super-imposed a gauntleted hand holding an old Cavalry saber at "Charge," the point terminating in a light blue scroll bearing the gold letters "Garry Owen."

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Lieutenant Colonel K. T. Riggs, Commanding

During the past quarter the Ninth Cavalry has performed its usual duties as school troops for the Cavalry School.

The regiment, at the present time somewhat reduced in strength, has been authorized to recruit up to a strength of 444 men and recruits are beginning to come in.

During the months of September and October, the regiment lost three men by retirement. In September, Staff Sergeant Frederick Reynolds and 1st Sergeant Joseph Woodfork were retired. Sergeant Woodfork has for many years enjoyed the reputation of being one of the best horse trainers in the army. On October 6th, Master Sergeant Albert Johnson was retired. He was a faithful soldier and an excellent horseman. Information has been received that he will soon take charge of a stable of horses in the Ohio National Guard. These men leave behind them a host of friends in the regiment. A reception and dance was given in their honor. Among the guests was Chaplain Louis A. Carter, formerly with the 9th Cavalry, who came over from Fort Leavenworth, where he is attending the Chaplains' School. 1st Sergeant James Briggs has been promoted to Master Sergeant filling the vacancy made by the retirement of Master Sergeant Albert Johnson.

Many improvements have been made at the 9th Cavalry Farm. Our old herd of grade milk cows has been replaced by pure bred Holsteins. A new milk house has been constructed and the farm now supplies the Regimental Mess with milk and butter.

The number of hogs has increased to about 400. Plans are now being made to put in a large chicken farm.

The Ninth Cavalry Band under the able leadership of Staff Sergeant Morris Brown is in excellent form. On October 2-3 they rendered a concert for the Y. M. C. A. at Wichita, Kansas. The Band went to Topeka, Kansas, on October 15, and participated in a parade and played a concert for the Kansas Industrial Institute. The orchestra is now playing for the officers' hops every Saturday night. On October 12 it increased its ever-rising popularity by broad-casting a program by radio at Milford, Kansas.

The Ninth Cavalry foot-ball team went to Topeka on November 2, and met defeat at the hands of the strong Santa Fe Athletic Club.

In the near future boxing bouts will be resumed at the Ninth Cavalry Club. There is a large field of good fighters who promise to give a successful season.

10th CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona

Colonel James C. Rhea, Commanding

The Tenth Cavalry left its station on September 25, 1924, and proceeded by marching to the Nogales Pumping Station to participate in joint maneuvers with the 25th Infantry. They returned to Fort Huachuca on October 12, 1924. The Corps Area Commander, Major General Ernest Hinds, U. S. A., conducted his annual tactical inspection on October 3-4, 1924.

On October 24-25, the new Corps Area Commander, Major General C. R. Summerall, U. S. A., made a visit of inspection. He expressed himself as being highly pleased and gratified at the standard of training and morale existent in the regiment.

Colonel J. C. Rhea, our regimental commander, suffered an accident September 16, 1924, and was sent to Wm. Beaumont General Hospital. His recovery has been steady and he has recently been transferred to the General Hospital at Hot Springs, Arkansas.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California

Colonel H. J. Brees, Commanding

The past quarter has been crowded with many activities and unusual features. The most outstanding feature from a non-military standpoint was the great oil fire of September 14-15-16. Six 50,000 barrel tanks of the Association Oil Company, whose property adjoins the Presidio, caught fire, causing one of the most destructive and spectacular fires ever witnessed on the Monterey Peninsula. Two soldiers of the Presidio lost their lives while engaged in fighting it—Privates Bolio, Headquarters Troop, 11th Cavalry, and Enstance Watkins, Battery "F," 76th Field Artillery. The forage warehouse was completely destroyed and the major part of fire-fighting equipment destroyed or damaged.

September 19 to 26 the regiment made a practice march to Big Basin, California, the home of the Big Trees. A problem, which proved very instructive to both officers and enlisted men, was worked out on each day of the march. A lay over of one day was made at Santa Cruz and the quarterly regimental dinner was held. Two days were spent at Big Basin among the giant California redwood trees. The march was a great success from both a recreative and instructive standpoint.

Upon returning to the post preparations were made for participation in the Serra Pilgrimage, a celebration staged by the citizens of Monterey. The troops engaged in several pageants and carried off most of the prizes in the rodeo events.

The tactical inspection of the regiment was made October 31 and November 1st by Major General Charles G. Morton, commanding the Ninth Corps Area. A full pack mounted inspection comprised the first days activities. A tactical problem at

the Gigling Military Reservation consumed most of the following day. This is probably General Morton's last inspection of this regiment, as he retires in January.

Following the tactical inspection came the general inspection. Colonel W. C. Short, Ninth Corps Area Inspector, conducted this inspection and expressed himself as being very favorably impressed with the condition of the regiment.

The month of November is being devoted to finishing up the target season with both rifle and pistol.

There have been a number of losses and additions to the regiment in officer personnel in the last few months. Captains Gordon J. F. Heron, John T. Pierce, Jr., Thomas E. Limbocker, Harry A. Buckley, Joe Rodgers and Gersum Cronander left the regiment in August for duty as student officers at the Cavalry School at Fort Riley. Major Clark P. Chandler has departed for Fort Leavenworth, where he will attend the Command and General Staff School. Among the officers joining recently are Major Sloan Doak, who has been assigned to command the 1st Squadron; Lieutenants J. H. Riepe, C. G. Meehan and C. L. Ruffner.

TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Fort Ringgold and Sam Fordyce, Texas

Colonel John M. Morgan, Commanding

The annual tactical and training inspection of the regiment was conducted by the Corps Area Commander, Major General Ernest Hinds, at Fort Brown, September 17th and 18th, and at Fort Ringgold, the 19th and 20th. The program carried out at each station included a review, inspection of various phases of training, inspection of barracks, animals, transportation and grounds, and a tactical problem. General Hinds was accompanied by Lieutenant Colonel Albert S. Williams, General Staff, G-3 of the Eighth Corps Area, Major Edgar L. Field, Infantry, and 1st Lieutenant Eugene McGinley, Field Artillery.

Unusual interest has been manifested in athletics during the past quarter. The final monthly field meet for the 1924 season was conducted November 26th. All organizations engaged in the mounted and dismounted events. Troop A won the greatest number of points during the season and was awarded a large silver cup previously selected by the Athletic Association. Troop C was second, and Troop B third. A new series of monthly field meets will be commenced in December and a cup will be awarded the organization winning the greatest number of points in the meets conducted from December 1, 1924, to November 30, 1925.

The Fort Brown football team closed a successful season on November 30th when it defeated Fort Ringgold on the Fort Brown field. The results of other games played were: Fort Brown, 20—Brownsville, 12; Fort Brown, 6—Weslaco, 7; Fort Brown, 7—Donna, 0; Fort Brown, 0—Weslaco, 0; Fort Brown, 26—McAllen, 0.

A good boxing card entertained fight fans the night of October 25th with twenty-eight rounds of lively scrapping. On Thanksgiving night another card of a like number of rounds proved equally good.

Major General Charles P. Summerall, who recently assumed command of the Eighth Corps Area, visited Fort Brown on November 20th and Fort Ringgold on the 21st, in connection with his first tour of the Corps Area as Commanding General thereof.

At Fort Ringgold several jumping events were conducted during the period of the polo tournament, November 7 to 9th, inclusive. The Officers' jumping, 3 feet 9 inches, was won by 2nd Lieutenant Fred L. Hamilton, 12th Cavalry; Officers' jumping, 3 feet 6 inches, by 1st Lieutenant Daniel P. Buckland, 12th Cavalry; the enlisted men's jumping, 3 foot class, by Sergeant Charles Ystenic, Troop E, 12th Cavalry, and the enlisted men's jumping, 3 feet 3 inches, by Private Sigidio Martire, Troop E, 12th Cavalry.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines**Colonel Frank M. Caldwell, Commanding**

Major F. D. Griffith, Jr., joined at Fort Des Moines on August 8th.

During the month of August, the regiment performed the usual routine duty and special duty in connection with the Cavalry Rifle and Pistol teams and the C. M. T. Camp at Fort Des Moines.

On August 16th General Pershing visited the post and inspected the C. M. T. Camp. Troop G, Captain Peabody, commanding, was selected as escort for the General.

The following named officers and enlisted men were commended in General Orders No. 80, Headquarters Seventh Corps Area, October 10, 1924, for especially meritorious conduct on August 28th at an ammonia tank explosion in the Vallandigham store near Fort Des Moines, in which eleven persons lost their lives.

"Captain Howard C. Tobin, Captain Orland S. Peabody, Sergeant Jack Hennop (Troop G); Sergeant Frederick J. Dunn (Troop G); Sergeant William G. Bankson (Troop G); Corporal Walter J. Rothnie (Troop E); Private Philip Gennovario (Troop G); Private George W. Sweeney (Headquarters Troop); Private John L. Beasley (Headquarters Troop); and Private Harold A. Elliott (Headquarters Troop)."

The officers and enlisted men above mentioned were equipped with gas masks not designed to withstand ammonia fumes in concentration, but despite this fact and without regard for their personal safety, entered the building to assist in the rescue of the victims.

During August, the 1st Squadron was at Camp Custer, Michigan, and Fort Snelling, Minnesota, on duty in connection with the C. M. T. Camp.

It took part in Horse Show held at the County Fair at Kalamazoo, Michigan, on August 19th, 20th and 21st.

Seven Reserve officers were attached to the squadron for fifteen days' active duty.

September 16th, Troop F, Captain Christman, commanding, rejoined regiment by marching from Fort Snelling, Minnesota.

September 19th, the regiment (less 1st Squadron and Troop F), left Fort Des Moines by marching for Omaha, Nebraska, to take part in the Military Exhibition in connection with the Fall Festival of the Knights of the Ak-Sar-Ben. Arrived and established camp on the Ak-Sar-Ben Field September 27th. Total distance marched—1545-10 miles. Tactical Exercises were held en route.

The 1st Squadron left Camp Custer, Michigan, September 6th, for Fort Sheridan, Illinois, by marching, arriving thereat on September 17th. The Squadron (less Troop B) participated in Defense Day Program at Benton Harbor, Michigan, on September 12th.

Troop B participated in Defense Day program at Michigan City, Indiana.

October 2d to 8th, the regiment (less 1st Squadron) participated in the Second Annual Military Tournament, Seventh Corps Area, Ak-Sar-Ben Field, Omaha, Nebraska. Regimental teams were entered in the Field Day, Horse Show and Polo Tournament.

October 9th it left Omaha, Nebraska, by marching and arrived at Fort Des Moines October 16th. Tactical Exercises were held en route.

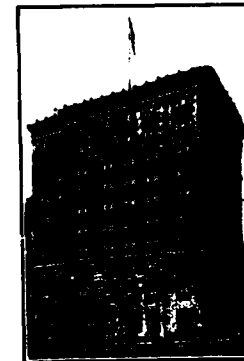
During October the 1st Squadron at Fort Sheridan had range practice with rifle and pistol.

Troop A participated in exercises at the Grant Park Stadium, Chicago, on October 9th, on the occasion of the opening of the stadium.

At Fort Des Moines, Regimental Schools and Winter Training Schools were started November 3d.

On November 9th, the Annual Tactical Inspection was made by Brigadier General Halstead Dorey, 14th Infantry Brigade, representing the Corps Area Commander.

ESTABLISHED 1818
Brooks Brothers,
CLOTHING,
Gentlemen's Furnishing Goods,
 MADISON AVENUE COR. FORTY-FOURTH STREET
 NEW YORK

**Officers' Uniforms**

Agents in the United States
 for the

"Woodrow" Cap

and

Messrs. Peal & Co.'s

"Sam Browne" Belt

Send for Circular

BOSTON PALM BEACH NEWPORT
 LITTLE BUILDING PLAZA BUILDING AUDRAN BUILDING
 Tenth and Bowdoin C. S. R. R. 220 Central Avenue

BROOKS BROTHERS'
 Building, convenient
 to Grand Central, Subway,
 and to many of the lead-
 ing Hotels and Clubs

SECOND MACHINE GUN SQUADRON—Fort Bliss, Texas**Major A. M. Milton, Commanding**

The Squadron had a very successful Regular Target Season for 1924. The Pistol dismounted course, was fired at Fort Bliss, Texas, in conjunction with the 1000-inch Machine Gun firing and course "D" with the rifle. The known distance Machine Gun firing and course "A" (instruction only) with the rifle, was fired at Dona Ana Target Range, N. M. The Machine Gun course was extremely interesting this year, due to the fact that it was the new course as prescribed in T. E. 150-35.

Troop "B" won the inter-troop baseball league cup. The Squadron team did not place as high in the Post League as early prospects indicated. A new team had to be picked and rebuilt after the first game due to the fact that several injuries, furloughs and discharges occurred after the team was well trained. The outstanding feature of their play was their fighting spirit, which was crowned by defeating the strong 7th Cavalry Team in the final game between the units, forcing the 7th Cavalry into a tie for first place.

From the 10th to the 12th of July the Squadron was enthusiastically engaged in activities connected with the Fort Bliss Horse Show. The delayed target season prevented thorough preparations, but despite this handicap the Squadron made an enviable record.

Buster, ridden by Corporal Murphy, Troop "B," won the blue in the enlisted men's jumping and open jumping, receiving a silver cigarette case as a trophy in the latter; *Joe*, a private mount of Captain Walker, won third ribbon in an excellent class for horses suitable to become polo ponies.

In the Light Wagon and Pack Train Mule Classes, both closely contested events. Blue were also won by the Squadron. The Class for the best turned out Machine Gun Squad, furnished particular interest to the Squadron, gave first and second ribbons to Troop "B" and third ribbon going to Troop "A."

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITOR

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry

Copyright, 1925, by

The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association. Editor, Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Baltimore, Md., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

Office of Publication, Baltimore, Md. Editorial Office, Washington, D. C.
\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65c. Foreign Postage, 25c Additional



PEAL & Co.
487 OXFORD ST.
LONDON,
ENGLAND.



MILITARY
POLO
HUNTING
BOOTS
SPURS
WHIPS
CROPS
KIT BAGS
&
CASES

AUTOMOBILE INSURANCE

For Officers and Warrant Officers, ACTIVE AND RETIRED, of the United States Services. Application blanks may be obtained from U. S. Cavalry Association, or

WRITE FOR PARTICULARS
(giving description of your car)

If application sent, enclose \$5.00 Membership Fee to apply on premium. Coverage at cost.

UNITED SERVICES AUTOMOBILE ASSOCIATION
(Formerly U. S. Army Auto Ins. Ass'n)
FORT SAM HOUSTON, TEXAS

HORSE-SENSE AND HORSE-MANSHIP OF TODAY

By Geoffrey Brooke, D. S. O., M. C.

Lieutenant-Colonel 16th/ 5th Lancers,
Chief Instructor, Cavalry Wing, Equitation School, Weedon.

Illustrated

Price, \$5.00

Order from the

U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

Frank J. Krupp

Successor to

Henry Schick & Co.

**Army and Navy
Uniforms**

1421 F STREET NORTHWEST
Washington, D. C.

CIVILIAN DRESS A SPECIALTY

Free Mailing Lists
Will help you increase sales
Send for FREE catalog giving complete
and prices on thousands of classified
mailing lists and prospect lists for
all business, professional, scientific,
educational, and general purposes.
99% by refund of 5¢ each
ROSS-GOULD CO. 222 N. 3rd St. St. Louis

Recommended

The German Cavalry in Belgium and France, 1914.

By Lieutenant-General von Poseck, Inspector General of Cavalry, German Army. Maps, index. (Price, \$4.00). The only COMPLETE story of the very IMPORTANT work of the German Cavalry at the beginning of the World War. How the Cavalry facilitated the rapid advance of the German armies, the concentration, marches, reconnaissances, initial maneuvers, MOUNTED and dismounted fights, CHARGES, services of security and information, meeting engagements, the WHOLE story told in chronological order by units and so tied up and related that one can easily follow it through on the excellent maps. Material for this book came principally from EYE-WITNESSES and is therefore doubly valuable. Read what Cavalry DID.

As to Military Training

Arranged by Major J. F. Wall, U. S. Cavalry. 267 pages. Illustrated maps. (Price, \$2.50). Compilation of IMPORTANT parts of manuals. Handy for saddle pocket. "A handy compendium of useful information well adapted to the needs of the mounted service and which any one entering upon a military career may study with great profit."—W. A. Holbrook, Major-General, U. S. A., Chief of Cavalry.

Horse-Sense and Horsemanship of Today

By Geoffrey Brooks, D. S. O. M. C., Lieutenant-Colonel 16th/5th Lancers, Chief Instructor, Cavalry Wing, Equitation School, Weedon.

Illustrated. Price \$5.00. Commenting on this book, the London Times says:

"This book should be owned and studied carefully by all men who hunt or play polo, or take any active interest in horses." "It should be a text book for even subalterns in a Cavalry or Yeomanry Regiment, and it should also be in the possession of the officers of all the other mounted units of His Majesty's Forces." "It is easily the best work on the subject published in years."

The Journal of the United Service Institution states in part as follows:

"This book is wonderful because, from cover to cover, it is full of good meat easily digestible without a superfluous word. It is valuable, and indeed invaluable, because of its simplicity and sound advice." "The photographs are excellent and deserve careful study."

BOOK DEPARTMENT

U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

1624 H STREET N. W.

WASHINGTON, D. C.

Cavalrymen! Read This!!

YOUR Association is in the magazine business. As a dealer, the Association gets a commission you as individuals cannot get. If every Troop and officer sent their magazine orders through the Association, the profit in a year would pay for the publication of one number of the Cavalry Journal. We guarantee as low prices as can be gotten, meeting all competition.

Send ALL your magazine and book orders through YOUR Association.

SERVICE FOR THE SERVICE

A History of Cavalry

By Colonel Denison. 467 pages. Index, 11 maps. (Price, \$4.20.) The BEST constructed book on our shelves and the ONLY history of Cavalry. Every statement of fact substantiated by reference to the original source. Accurate, vivid, full of information, with pen photos of the great cavalymen of all ages. Shows the development of arms, armor, tactics, organization, the growth of the infantry and artillery along with the Cavalry and the interplay one on the other, and in this sense is a SHORT HISTORY OF WARFARE. All important battles described. SECOND EDITION. No Cavalry library complete without this book.

Horses, Saddles and Bridles

Fourth Revised Edition. Price \$2.75. By Major General William H. Carter, author of Horses of the World; History of the Sixth Cavalry; Old Army Sketches; etc.

Breaking and Riding

with Military Commentaries. By Fillis, former Encuyer-en-chef to the Central Cavalry School at St. Petersburg. 356 pages, index, 70 illustrations. New Edition. (Price, \$7.50.) Horse-lore classic by master with fifty years' horse experience. Not pupil of Baucher, Fillis improved on his method. Fillis taught principle there must always be progression: that horse must be kept up to bit; that horse must always be kept straight. Not equitation manual. Possesses instead GENIUS. Fillis' method of instruction is by relation—instruction in simplest form. Book for practical horseman. Definite, full explanation by master-horseman of how each movement is accomplished. Therein lies Fillis' value.

Equitation

By Bussigny. Photographs: 361 pages. (Price, \$7.50.) The perfectly trained horse, mounted by a perfectly trained rider, is goal of this system of PRACTICAL exercises. After 65 years' horse experience, this pupil of Baucher, an old French campaigner, gives the results of a LIFE'S OBSERVATION of the horse. Careful, DETAILED EXPLANATION and illustration. Scientific.

CONTENTS FOR APRIL, 1925

Vol. XXXIV, No. 159

	PAGE
LETTER TO U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION	135
Marshal Ferdinand Foch.	
THREE CRITICAL DEFEATS OF OUR HISTORY	136
Captain Elbridge Colby, Infantry.	
CO-OPERATION BETWEEN CAVALRY AND AIR SERVICE	147
Major Leo G. Heffernan, Air Service.	
GERMAN IDEAS ON MODERN CAVALRY—Comments and Translation	155
Colonel H. S. Hawkins, 3d Cavalry.	
TRAINING OF CAVALRY RADIO SQUADS	169
Lieutenant Mortimer F. Sullivan, 2d Cavalry.	
MOBILITY, FIRE POWER AND SHOCK	178
Lieutenant Colonel Clarence Lininger, Cavalry.	
SOME TRAINING PRINCIPLES FOR NATIONAL GUARD CAVALRY	182
Captain Kramer Thomas, Cavalry.	
THE INTERNATIONAL POLO TOURNAMENT, MEXICO CITY	185
Captain Edward M. Fickett, Cavalry.	
A WORD AS TO FIELD MAPS	194
Colonel W. C. Brown, United States Army.	
THE SERVICE COAT	197
Major P. R. Davison, Cavalry.	
THE CAVALRY SCHOOL	202
Captain Robert A. Bush, Cavalry, O. R. C.	
THE BOISE IDAHO ENDURANCE RIDE	205
Captain W. R. Kidwell, V. C., 116th Cavalry, Idaho N. G.	
EDITORIAL COMMENT	208
DRESS UNIFORM—INTERNATIONAL ASPECT OF ARMY POLO—ANNUAL DUES—100 PER CENT MEMBERSHIP—THE HORSE—BULLETINS OF RESERVE CAVALRY DIVISIONS—SERVICE TO MEMBERS—NATIONAL GUARD MEMBERSHIP RECORDS—INDEX TO VOLUME XXXIII—CAVALRY FUND—CERTIFICATES OF MEMBERSHIP.	
TOPICS OF THE DAY	212
THE 1925 ENDURANCE RIDE—INFANTRY SCHOOL RECREATION CENTER—THE INTERNATIONAL MILITARY POLO CHAMPIONSHIP—PREPARATION BY ARMY TEAM—THE BRITISH TEAM—R. O. T. C. HORSE SHOW, MICHIGAN AGRICULTURAL COLLEGE—THE RASP—HOLLAND 1925—RELIEF FOR THE REEL CART.	
FOREIGN MILITARY NOTES	218
THE HORSE	219
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED	221
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS	224
POLO	232
THE NATIONAL GUARD	237
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES	240
PROCEEDINGS OF THE ANNUAL MEETING OF THE U. S. CAVALRY ASSN.	242
CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES	248
REGIMENTAL NOTES	250

Check the books you wish and give mailing address below:

Name

Address

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President

Major General MALIN CRAIG, Chief of Cavalry.

Vice-President

Colonel HAMILTON S. HAWKINS, 3d Cavalry.

Secretary and Treasurer

Lieutenant Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel W. J. GLASGOW, Cavalry.

Colonel J. H. REEVES (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel A. C. COLAHAN, 103d Cavalry.

Colonel F. LeJ. PARKER, Cavalry.

Colonel T. A. ROBERTS, Cavalry.

Lieut. Colonel W. P. DRAPER, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieut. Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieut. Colonel W. M. CONNELL (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Lieut. Colonel S. R. GLEAVES, Cavalry.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class I shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$2.50, which includes subscription to the Cavalry Journal, 60% thereof being so designated.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXIV

APRIL, 1925

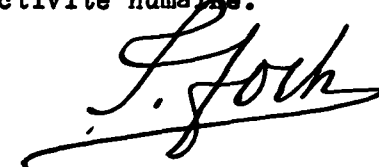
No. 139

LE MARECHAL FOCH Paris, le 24 Novembre 1924

A L'U.S. Cavalry Association,

Je partage entièrement les avis
exprimés par les Grands Chefs de l'Ar-
mee Américaine : les Généraux PERSHING
& HARBORD.

L'entraînement militaire, et notam-
ment celui de la Cavalerie, intelligen-
ment compris, développe particulière-
ment les qualités de discipline, de
maîtrise de soi-même et de décision
qui sont à la base de toute réussite
dans l'activité humaine.



TRANSLATION

To the U. S. Cavalry Association:

I fully share the opinions expressed by the Great Chiefs of the
American Army: Generals **PERSHING AND HARBORD**.

Military training, and notably that of the Cavalry, intelligently un-
derstood, develops particularly the qualities of discipline, of self-control,
and of decision which are at the base of all success in human activity.

F. FOCH.

Ferdinand Foch
Marshal of France

Three Critical Defeats of Our History

BY

Captain ELBRIDGE COLBY, Infantry

BEFORE proceeding with the task of the historian and scrutinizing military engagements and the manner in which our people have waged war, it might be profitable for us to turn for a moment to the Fourth Estate and tear a leaf out of the editorial page of the *Chicago Tribune*, which says:

"American wars have always been children's crusades. We have always trotted into them trustfully enough, armed with a hullabaloo of hoasnnahs and a squirrel rifle, and we have always come out sadder, wiser, but somehow victorious. Long casualty, lists, huge costs in gold and labor, a wrenched and gaping economic organization which profiteers have pilfered, have been a few of the items chargeable to our beatitude. But America will not be denied the luxury of her innocence. Nor can we entirely regret it. And another war, no doubt, will find us, as ever, singing, 'Onward, Christian Soldiers,' without any soldiers."

The following facts of history are not usually emphasized in the patriotic texts prepared by sentimental citizens for use in our schools:

THE DEFEAT ON LONG ISLAND

Our first war we brought upon ourselves. We resisted the attitude and the acts of a British king and frankly preferred conflict to submission. After seeing his troops severely punished at Bunker Hill and being forced to evacuate Boston by the threat of shells from Dorchester Heights, Howe had sailed for Halifax to cure his sick and prepare for the eventual subjugation of the revolting colonies. The line of the Hudson Valley was of great strategic importance. Possession of that line was to be "the great contention and controlling motive of the first three years of the war." Washington guessed correctly that Howe's next objective would be New York, and on June 29, 1776, the general in the red coat arrived at Sandy Hook. On July 3d he moved up to Staten Island, and later in the same month, when his brother joined him with a powerful fleet, he overcame this timidity enough to address himself to *George Washington, Esq.*, as a private citizen, and attempted to put down the revolution with an academic proclamation that all who should lay down their arms and assist in restoring tranquillity would receive the full pardon of George of England. But it was too late. Bunker Hill had stirred the colonists to confidence. The evacuation of Boston had confirmed it. The hiring of German mercenaries against them had roused their wrath. And Thomas Paine, in that pungent pamphlet "Common Sense," which had a circulation that was a phenomenon in the history of printing, had so crystallized popular sentiment that finally the Declaration of Independence put an end to all thought of peaceable solutions or quiet submission.

General George Washington, Commander-in-Chief of the Continental Army, was now fighting for independence. To oppose the 30,000 troops and the ten ships of the line and twenty frigates, with 1,200 guns and manned by 10,000

men, which the Howes had on Staten Island by the end of August, Washington had arrived with 8,000 troops. These he supplemented with short-term volunteers and many amateur officers. Some of the raw troops refused to move onto Staten Island because they had enlisted for service only on the mainland. Volunteer cavalry refused to do fatigue duty and had made no provision for forage; so Washington sent them home and hired mounted scouts at fifty dollars a day. Most of the terms of enlistment were due to expire on December 1. Yet they were good marksmen. Bunker Hill had proved that about the colonists, and Howe's Footguards officers were told to discard spontoons and halberds and dress like privates, so as not to be conspicuous targets.

WASHINGTON'S DIFFICULTIES

The real lessons of Bunker Hill were overlooked; well-laid defenses and well-trained officers of previous experience. The colonists seemed to think patriotism the sole qualification for a soldier's calling. Even the excellent marksmanship was a hindrance, because it led to the formation of "rifle" companies and to the neglect of steady discipline, and of the value of soundly trained troops equipped with musket and bayonet. With a hodge-podge paper strength of 30,000 and a lawyer Adjutant General, who accepted his appointment partially because it gave him an occupation and a salary while the courts of Philadelphia were closed, Washington could not muster an effective strength of more than 20,000, some of whom came without arms, without proper equipment, and often without semblance of a uniform.

Washington was convinced he could not hold New York against his superior and better-trained foe. However, the Continental Congress would not hear of a withdrawal, and General Charles Lee had been busily emplacing batteries all over the water front. Greene was posted in Brooklyn on high ground, which overlooked New York as Dorchester had overlooked Boston, and had been fortifying a strong position there. The American troops were scattered all about the place in order to cover various possible points of enemy entry. The dispositions clearly indicated Washington's frame of mind. He was not concentrating for a decisive battle, which must surely have gone against him. On August 20th he wrote to Congress: "We shall harass them as much as possible, which will be all that we can do."

On August 22d Howe crossed over to Gravesend Bay and made a temporary camp, sending a detachment under Cornwallis as far as Flatbush, which was delayed by Pennsylvania riflemen, who harassed its march and burnt all forage in sight. Howe then spent four days in reconnoitering. The American troops sent out two-regiment detachments to guard the Flatbush and Bedford passes across the wooded line of hills and to guard the road along the edge of the harbor and Gowanus Bay. A tiny detail of riflemen and some hired scouts were assigned to watch the Jamaica road, together with two troops of horse, which the New York Provincial Congress took upon themselves to order upon a cattle-driving game farther east, and the road was inadequately covered.

On August 26th Howe marched at night against the American positions, feinting at the Gowanus Pass, feinting in somewhat greater strength at the Flatbush and Bedford passes, and sending his major force around the comparatively unguarded eastern flank toward the Jamaica road. The guns in the center opened up. Miles's riflemen rushed "to the sound of the guns" and left the Jamaica road uncovered. Howe's movement at the center was purposely slow, to give the flank movement time to get around. Its slowness enabled the outnumbered Continentals to withdraw more or less toward the Brooklyn fortified lines, although many of them were thrown into disorder, many commanders rushed here and there, giving orders on the spot, irrespective of the general situation, and General Sullivan himself, now in command, took refuge in a cornfield, where he was found by Hessians and later was politely treated by Howe. Howe drew his forces up in front of the Brooklyn "lines" and, eschewing the costly methods of Bunker Hill, opened saps against them and started regular siege operations. Washington's force of 9,000 men in Brooklyn was hopelessly inadequate. He started to reinforce it, then wisely changed his mind and saw it ferried across the river in the quiet of the night of the 27th. Yet the principal reason for the withdrawal was not so much tactical or strategic as that their lack of spirit, their demoralized condition, and their lack of disciplinary training rendered them uncertain for the siege operations which would have ensued had he maintained his position.

COMMENTS

A recent commentator on this "Battle of Long Island" has said:

"The British commander might have crushed the Continental Army and brought the war to a close had he vigorously followed up his success. But he did not, and the British at all times carried on the war in a most leisurely fashion. He was a skillful tactician. We owe our independence to his lack of energy."

Bancroft made practically the same charge against Howe in his notorious ninth volume. And yet it appears that these two are mistaken. The "Battle of Long Island" was not a "battle" at all, in the military sense of the word. It was merely an affair of outposts. The Brooklyn troops awaited the enemy approach on a line of observation and were driven behind their fortified lines with some losses, but not decisive losses. They continued their withdrawal and later retreated across New Jersey under slight pressure. The "Battle of Long Island" was not a determining action, because Washington never wished it to be. The real results of the conflict were political rather than military. Enthusiasm in the Colonies had been at its highest after Bunker Hill, the Boston evacuation, and the Declaration of Independence. It died down quickly after Long Island. There was soon an opportunity to distinguish between what the pamphleteer called "the summer soldier and the sunshine patriot" and the real soldier and the enduring patriot, who wintered the hardships of Valley Forge and crashed through the ice across the Delaware. The best statement of the results of the battle are

in the words which Washington wrote to the President of Congress on September 2d, 1776:

"The check our detachment sustained has dispirited too great a proportion of our troops and filled their minds with apprehension and despair. The militia, instead of calling forth their utmost efforts to a brave and manly opposition in order to repair our losses, are dismayed, intractable, and impatient to return. Great numbers of them have gone off—in some instances almost by whole regiments, by half ones, and by companies at a time. This circumstance of itself, independent of others, when fronted by a well-appointed enemy, superior in number to our whole collected force, would be sufficiently disagreeable; but when their example has infected another part of the army, when their want of discipline and refusal of almost any kind of restraint and government have produced a like conduct, but too common to the whole, and an entire disregard of that order and subordination necessary to the well-being of an army and which had been inculcated before, as well as the nature of our military establishment would admit of, our condition becomes still more alarming, and with the deepest concern I am obliged to confess my want of confidence in the generality of the troops."

THE CAPTURE OF WASHINGTON

After the close of the Revolution the newly established United States of America continued to maintain only an extremely small regular army and aimed to depend in time of emergency upon rapidly raised volunteers, though without any concrete plan for organizing or utilizing those volunteers. Although the Federal Government had been created "for the common defense," military control was still left largely in the hands of the governors of the separate States, who were very jealous of their prerogatives as the heads of separate sovereignties.

Then the European conflicts broke out, started in order to suppress the French Revolutionists and concluding with the overthrow of Napoleon. The war was not our concern. Still, in every war, neutral rights are liable to be violated by belligerent nations, and neutrals are often drawn into the struggle to maintain those rights, especially neutrals with extensive commerce on the seas. We had a "limited" war with France in 1799, and later our relations with the other main belligerent became threatening.

Congress in 1807 authorized volunteer increases under volunteer officers, and again in 1812, on the very eve of war, voted regular increases and volunteer forces that were never raised. The war with England began on June 18, 1812, with the United States depending upon twelve-months volunteers raised in the States, two of which refused to furnish their quota, even for local defense, to relieve regulars for other duties. Hull at Detroit, Dearborn on Champlain, and Van Rensselaer at Queenstown had State troops who refused to cross the border because they had enrolled "to resist invasion."

After scattered operations in the center, when training and discipline began to tell, Harrison won the battle of the Thames in 1813, and then let his volunteers go home, like Rennenkampf, in East Prussia, in 1917, who went to bed

as soon as he had forced the Germans to retreat, and failed to push his advantage at the propitious moment. On one occasion "one-third part of the idle men would have saved all." In 1813, after fruitless arguments between the Commanding General and the Secretary of War, 5,000 raw troops started from Lake Champlain for Montreal and met defeat at almost the same moment that the Governor of Vermont recalled the troops from his State which were concentrated in reserve at Plattsburg.

Such was the general manner in which the war was being conducted: much bravery, but also much civil interference and much unsound policy as to the use of raw troops.

CONGRESS IS WARNED

In June, 1814, the President called the attention of Congress to the fact that a British fleet, with about 3,000 troops on board, had been hovering along the shores of the Chesapeake, and that the total number of regular United States troops in Maryland and Virginia was something like 2,208 men, widely scattered at various points from Baltimore to Norfolk. In July, when the treaty of Fontainebleau had been finally signed and Napoleon was safely on his way to Elba with a sick stomach and a broken heart, the British sent veteran troops across the Atlantic. Early in the same month Congress voted 2,000 to 3,000 State troops for the threatened area and 10,000 to 15,000 volunteers, "to be held in readiness to march at a moment's notice." Additional authorizations were made for additional troops, but the States did not respond. Says Upton, quoting Armstrong:

"The command of the new district was devolved upon General Winder, whose selection; according to the statement of the Secretary of War, was based 'not on the ground of distinguished professional service or knowledge,' but simply on a presumption that 'being a native of Maryland and a relative of the Governor, Brigadier Winder would be useful in mitigating the opposition to the war and in giving an increased efficiency to national measures within the limits of the State.'"

On August 18, 1814, word reached Washington that a British fleet at the mouth of the Patuxent was landing troops at Benedict, forty miles from the Capital. Two days later Winder issued his call for citizens *en masse*. They were mustered on August 21st; they were reviewed by the President on August 22d, and on August 24th, when they fought their first battle, they numbered 5,401 in all, of whom 400 were regulars, 600 marines, and 20 sailors, the remainder being raw troops. The Government had foreseen the impending invasion; it had authority to call out forces in advance and to prepare them for the field, and yet it held fast to the old principle of having citizens 'hold themselves in readiness,' and finally sent its defending troops, "suddenly assembled, without organization, or discipline, or officers of the least knowledge of service," into a brief and disastrous campaign.

On August 19th the Secretary of State mounted a horse and rode out to see the enemy, returning later with the information that they were 5,000 to 7,000 strong. On the 22d and again on the 23d detachments went out toward the British,

looked at them, and came running home again. Winder had sent a cavalry colonel "to harass, obstruct, and impede" the British advance; but this was not done, and the invaders marched forty-five miles towards Bladensburg without meeting resistance. Furthermore, on the morning of the 24th, due to the complete and rapid withdrawal of his reconnoitering detachments, Winder was absolutely out of touch with his foe. The Baltimore troops were mostly concentrated at Bladensburg. Winder, with other troops, was near the Eastern Branch bridge at Washington. Suddenly came the news that the British were marching on Bladensburg. Winder rushed in that direction. Stansbury and his Baltimore forces left Bladens-



Courtesy of Mr. George Havens Putnam

burg to join Winder near Washington, but he was met by orders to return and give battle at Bladensburg and by assurances of reinforcement.

THE AMERICAN DISPOSITIONS

He chose to take up a position behind the river and resist the British crossing. He laid his troops across the apex of a road junction, with riflemen and artillery covering the bridge and infantry regiments quite in rear of them. Then came Monroe and made some changes. Then came Winder and said "O. K." and put some recruit regiments up in front, cavalry regiments in a ravine up front, where they could be of no use whatever. Then came the troops from Washington under General Smith, who took advice from Francis Scott Key, who wrote a

song better than he planned a battle. The new arrivals were placed on a line of hills nearly two thousand yards back from the bridge and well out of supporting range of the weapons of those days. Finally, dashing through Bladensburg itself only half an hour ahead of the British, came Beall and his Annapolis boys, who passed through the entire American line and took up a position upon a high and apparently safe hill on the right of the rear line.

The British advanced through the city. Of the 3,500 in their force, only 1,500 pushed to the attack; but these were veterans, and the defenders were soldiers of only a few days' service. The advance American artillery forced the British to make use of the protection afforded by the buildings of the town and to advance across the bridge by bounds and in small groups. But they did advance, drove in the first light line in front of them, and by steady progress through the orchard and many a congrue rocket managed to strike terror in the untrained defenders and put the second line completely to rout. This force ran rapidly to the rear, principally westward, toward Georgetown, and clear of the rear troops, who stood and waited to fight their own little part of the battle. The British attack developed principally on the right of these troops. There was bitter fighting at many points. Barney's marines held their ground splendidly against Wellington's veterans. There was good resistance. But a few steady troops were not enough against 1,500 seasoned fighters who had conquered Napoleon. Beall's Annapolis volunteers fired three or four rounds from their hilltop and retreated in disorder, exposing the whole right flank. Thereupon, without attempting to maneuver into position the many units that had seen no action at all, General Winder ordered a general retreat, which was executed for a time in good order by the troops still remaining. The British did not attempt to pursue, but remained upon the field until evening, when they took up their march toward Washington.

The remainder of General Winder's command fled so far and so fast that it continued right through the Capital and made no attempt to stand after the defeat. The Capital was exposed to the torch of the invader and the public buildings were destroyed by fire. The White House is so called today because it had to be painted over to cover the marks of smoke and soot. Government officials scampered into the Virginia hills and hid in fear until the British withdrew and re-embarked as suddenly as they had landed and attacked. The British losses were 64 killed, 185 wounded, and 249 total. The American losses were 25 killed, 41 wounded, and 66 total. In other words, veteran troops inferior in number suffered 5½ per cent casualties and still wrested a National Capital from superior numbers of hastily raised patriots who fled in confusion after suffering only 1.1 per cent casualties.

Winder had fought for a few months on the northern frontier, yet he displayed appalling incompetence as a tactician, depending too exclusively on his artillery to bear the brunt of the battle: failing to maintain contact and to make definite plans for the action; scattering his troops in depth, but never using them as mobile reserves; and permitting them to be defeated in detail outside of mutual supporting distance. He was, however, no more incompetent than the hastily

raised and untrained volunteers which he had under his command and upon which the Government deliberately tried to depend, hoping to defeat with undisciplined men an invasion by tried soldiers from the continental wars. The Government had the time and the authority to raise and organize forces, yet plainly preferred to defer to State feelings, and to place its reliance on an announcement that all should be in readiness to "march at an instant's notice" instead of upon whatever discipline and instruction might have been imparted in the ten weeks or more that had been available since the 1st of June. Bladensburg is an example of bad military policy as well as of bad military tactics.

THE BATTLE OF BULL RUN

When South Carolina seceded in 1860 and was soon followed by six other States, the Regular Army of the United States numbered only 16,000 men, without experience in operations or maneuvers of any magnitude, or plans for mobilization. Arrangements had not been made to provide for the soldiers to be raised; supplies of war material were principally in the East; and the Ohio and Mississippi States had little more than "altered flintlocks" and "guns unfit for service"—in fact, "nothing but the men; all else was to be created." General Scott suggested the calling of 300,000 troops for three years; McClellan advocated a stronger force, to stay in the field indefinitely; but political conditions were such that Lincoln asked for 75,000 for three months.

The essential frontier was the line of the Potomac, the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad and the Ohio River. West of the mountains, McClellan advanced against West Virginia: General Patterson was charged with holding Harpers Ferry; in and about the Capital came throngs of raw volunteers to protect the Government. A short advance across the Potomac secured Arlington Heights and Alexandria. On June 10th a reconnaissance in force from Old Point Comfort met a disastrous repulse. Patterson maneuvered about fruitlessly against Joseph Johnston at Winchester until his force began to disintegrate with expiring enlistments. The only encouragement came from McClellan, who won trifling engagements and dispersed the Confederates in his front.

A SPECTACLE FOR CONGRESS

The North was hungry for a real victory. It saw the volunteer army sitting idly around Washington, and clamored for action. It wished the short-term men to have a taste of conflict and give the country a glorious victory before they went home. A new call for troops had gone out, and that able soldier, General Winfield Scott, had advised delay until they could be fitted for the field; but the President ruled against him, and General McDowell was ordered to advance against the enemy position at Manassas Junction and provide a battle which Members of Congress might ride out and see, as if it were a gorgeous spectacle. Thus came about the First Battle of Bull Run—a battle which, in the words of R. M. Johnston, was fought "almost wholly by insufficiently trained and organized volunteers and against the judgment of the military authorities."

On July 16, 1861, with brigades and staffs only formed on the eve of the movement, and therefore inefficient and unpracticed, McDowell's columns marched out of Washington and proceeded toward Centerville by extraordinarily slow

stages. Beauregard, opposing him, learned of the movement the next day and straightway notified Richmond. Johnston, in the Shenandoah, deceived the not-too-quick-witted Patterson, screened his movements with active cavalry, and marched post haste to join Beauregard, who had retired from his forward positions and was preparing to defend the untrenched line of Bull Run. In the meanwhile McDowell came on inefficiently, the men straggling off the road to pick blackberries and occasionally to pillage a trifle here and there, and the com-



The Ruined Bridge Over Bull Run

manders fearfully deploying their entire forces at the faintest suspicions of danger ahead.

Unfamiliar with the country and with the enemy position, McDowell nevertheless made elaborate plans in advance, and Beauregard's outposts retired so quickly, in accordance with orders, that they completely lost touch with the advancing enemy. On the night of the 18th McDowell had his entire command packed in and around Centerville. One portion had pushed ahead in a faulty direction, attacked the Confederates at Blackburn's Ford of Bull Run, nearly routed them, and then withdrew without its commander taking the trouble to make a survey of the enemy strength or to maintain the contact established. McDowell spent the next two days in desultory reconnaissance, and so gave Johnston time to come over from the Shenandoah. On the night of the 20th he started out to

attack the enemy's left along uninvestigated roads. On the same night two militia regiments left for Washington because their terms of service had expired, one of these leaving its artillery guns unattended behind it.

A BATTLE OF BLUNDERS

It was near morning before the troops got started, all jammed onto one road in a perfect example of staff inability to calculate road space, and exposing their own flank to a Confederate attack that had actually been ordered, but was not pushed home for want of a word from the confused commander of the Confederates. The Union troops trod on one another's heels. Some of them took the wrong stream crossing; others were peremptorily detached from their division by McDowell, who interfered on the spot; but sooner or later they arrived successively on the Confederate left and attacked, one after another. Beauregard in turn pulled his units out of the positions in which they had been established with the idea of attacking the Union line of communication and sent them over to the left, one after another. So on both sides, all through the day, the action wore on, each outfit going in where and as it arrived, the ascendancy passing from one side to the other. Johnston's troops from Shenandoah did their part, Kirby Smith arriving at almost the last moment by train. For hours Stonewall Jackson held the top of Henry's Hill, until he judged that his enemies had spent their energy; then he ordered a counter-charge that decided the day. The Union troops broke and left the field. The raw volunteers started for home via Washington, and the grand offensive had come to an end. Unseasoned and undisciplined troops, they had marched all night and fought all day; yet all the succeeding night they streamed along the roads and never paused until they reached the Potomac, a disorganized and motley collection of uniformed men. Sherman's regulars alone kept their heads. "The battalion of regular infantry," says Rhodes, "alone obeyed commands. It covered the volunteers' retreat, which became a rout and then a panic."

COMMENTS

The three months' volunteers had fought their battle and finished their terms of service, and the cause of the Union was worse off than before. Gloom settled on the North. Said McClellan:

"Had we been successful in the recent battle, we might have saved the labor and expense of a great effort; now we have no alternative. Their success will enable the political leaders of the rebels to convince the mass of the people that we are inferior to them in force and in courage, and to command all their resources. . . . We may hope for the permanent restoration of a peaceful Union. But, in the first instance, the authority of the Government must be supported by overwhelming force."

The North had a white population of 22,000,000; the South 5,096,000; the North had all the advantages of superior financial and industrial organization and resources; and the North commanded the seas and was able to maintain an effective blockade. The victory at Bull Run, won by wavering raw troops over other wavering raw troops, heartened the South to continue the unequal struggle.

The emergency which had arisen was one clearly contemplated by the Constitution, which gave the President practically full powers to suppress insurrection against the United States. A sudden and effective blow against the newly formed

Confederacy, struck soon enough to prevent the insurgent organization from taking effective form, would have sustained the law of the country. Such a blow could not be struck, because there were neither materials nor methods, for an effective mobilization. Bull Run was our best effort, the natural result of depending upon untrained troops enlisted for short periods, under amateur officers. If our defensive forces had been sufficiently ready to meet such an insurrection, we should have had a remarkably short war and few pensions. Nor was there any excuse for the inadequacy of preparation.

The doctrine of State sovereignty had been a source of trouble for decades, intensified from year to year by the slavery question. A conflict of ideas had become a conflict of laws. A conflict of laws had become a conflict of people, until the forces were clearly divided by a parallel of latitude. The conflict of the two divergent popular opinions finally became a conflict of rifle and cannon. The conflict ceased to be an argument in constitutional law and became an attack upon the law of the land itself and upon its makers and executors. It took armed force to restore the law. As General Sherman later wrote to General Meigs:

"From 1861 to 1865 the Supreme Court was absolutely paralyzed; its decrees and writs were treated with contempt south of the Potomac and the Ohio; it could not summon a witness or send a deputy marshal. War and the armed power of the nation alone removed the barrier and restored to the United States courts their lawful jurisdiction."

Because the law and the Constitution were lacking in efficient, trained, powerful enforcement agents in 1861, and because the United States depended mainly on hastily raised and organized raw troops, the Battle of Bull Run was lost to other hastily raised and organized raw troops, who could have been overcome in short order by efficient forces. Because the Battle of Bull Run was lost, the war dragged on and sapped the man power of the country, but gradually developed troop leaders of the requisite skill and gradually required men for longer and longer terms of service.

THE REMEDY

I began with a quotation. I shall end with one. This one is not from an anonymous editorial writer, but from the words of a man whose chiefest reputation in the future shall rest more upon his work for the preparation for national defense of the future than upon his splendid leadership of the American Expeditionary Forces. These are the words of General Pershing:

"The act of June 4, 1920, lays down for the first time in our history a national policy for the military forces of the United States. . . . Before the World War a definite and comprehensive plan was impracticable. Our military forces were too limited and there was no legal sanction for the development of such a system. Since the World War, with the large number of war-trained officers available, with the initiation of a system for the training of younger men ultimately to replace them, with more adequate sources of military equipment and material, and with a settled legal sanction for the development and training of our traditional citizen army in time of peace, we are able to prepare definite plans for what has aptly been termed 'A National Position in Readiness.'"

Co-operation Between Cavalry and Air Service

BY

Major LEO G. HEFFERMAN, Air Service

IN this article it is intended to cover the operations that have actually been held by the 2nd Division Air Service with the First Cavalry Division, and at the same time present such conclusions and suggestions as are believed applicable as a result of this co-operative training.

Though the present tables of organization do not provide Air Service for a Cavalry Division, nevertheless, the Cavalry Division is the only division of any type in the United States that is actually operating with a Division Air Service. Infantry Divisions are entitled to certain Air Service organizations but, due to various other functions required of the Air Service in peace time, it is necessary that these Air Service units be assigned to stations at points where such functions can be performed, and away from the parent organization, viz: the Infantry Division. For the above reasons, and they are good, the 2nd Division Air Service has been taken away from the 2nd Infantry Division and located at the strategical and tactical post, Fort Bliss, Texas, where it performs the distant border reconnaissance formerly allotted to Cavalry outposts, thereby permitting greater concentration of the 1st Cavalry Division.

COMPOSITION OF DIVISION AIR SERVICE

At this point it might be well to define a Division Air Service. Each Division Air Service consists of one observation squadron, one photo section, and a detachment of Medical Personnel. The entire combined strength of these units is 33 officers and 157 enlisted men. The Observation Squadron has an authorized allowance of 31 officers and 132 men; the Photo Section 1 officer and 20 men, and the attached Medical, 1 officer and 5 enlisted men. Forty-two men and 5 officers of the 2nd Division Air Service are detached at Fort Sam Houston for operation with the 2nd Infantry Division and the Medical Personnel at Fort Bliss consists of only one officer and one enlisted man. In time of actual warfare, balloon companies would be attached as needed to the Division Air Service from the Corps Air Service.

The 1st Cavalry Division has but one brigade in continual operation with the Air Service; the brigade stationed at Fort Bliss. In addition the auxiliary troops, viz: Engineers, Artillery, etc., are stationed with the Headquarters of the Cavalry Division, and have profited by the combined operations.

COOPERATION WITH CAVALRY

Successful co-operation of Cavalry and Air Service demands that each branch on its reconnaissance work be assigned definite missions. To the Air Service in reconnaissance work would fall, in particular, reconnaissance missions from one to three days march to the front of a Cavalry independent command. On the flanks, reconnaissance to a depth of one or two days march

should give sufficient protection.⁶ It is contemplated in time of war that Air Service be assigned to Cavalry only when the Cavalry is acting independently or as Infantry.

Successful co-operation requires successful communication, which may be obtained by use of (a) radio telegraphy, (b) panels, (c) pyrotechnics, (d) projectors, (e) dropped messages and carrier pigeons. The signal plan of operation of Cavalry and Air Service is well covered in the plan of signal communication issued to all units in the 1st Cavalry Division. Occasionally there have been failures in our radio communication and even with improved equipment it is doubtful if such failures can ever be entirely eliminated. For this reason a method of communication independent of mechanical means should be held in reserve, both the air and ground forces being in readiness to put the reserve means into use. Under certain conditions the use of dropped messages from plane to ground, and panels from ground to plane, will be the most desirable means of communication. However, the proper use of panels requires a complete mutual understanding between the observer and the ground unit.

An Air Service unit will accompany an independent Cavalry command on the march, moving its airdromes as the command moves. An Air Service liaison officer should accompany the staff of the Cavalry command to select airdromes and to act as adviser in the employment of the Air Service units.

The types of missions performed by an Air Service unit with Cavalry, are: (a) reconnaissance missions, (b) Artillery missions, (c) liaison missions, (d) contact missions, (e) command missions, and (f) courier missions. As stated before, the airplanes will penetrate to a greater depth when operating with independent Cavalry than when operating with the Infantry Division.

RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS

In reconnaissance missions the object is to gather information of (1) the location, nature, disposition and activities of enemy forces; (2) enemy road and railroad circulation, (3) enemy works, establishments and general defensive and offensive organization, (4) the military topography of the enemy terrain, including the location of good watering places, especially in operations over country similar to the Southwest.

These reconnaissance missions may be either visual or photographic, or a combination of the two. Aerial photography is a necessity in modern warfare and is most useful in operations over poorly mapped territory. A mosaic of the line of march for the succeeding day can be accomplished by a single aerial mission. Photographs taken during the afternoon can be placed in the hands of all units the same evening. Two or three days march could be photographed when desired, thus avoiding the necessity of ground reconnaissances to obtain similar information.

LIAISON MISSIONS

The purpose of liaison missions is (a) to keep the command informed as to the activities of the different friendly units, (b) to observe and transmit signals of the advance elements, (c) to observe and transmit signals from

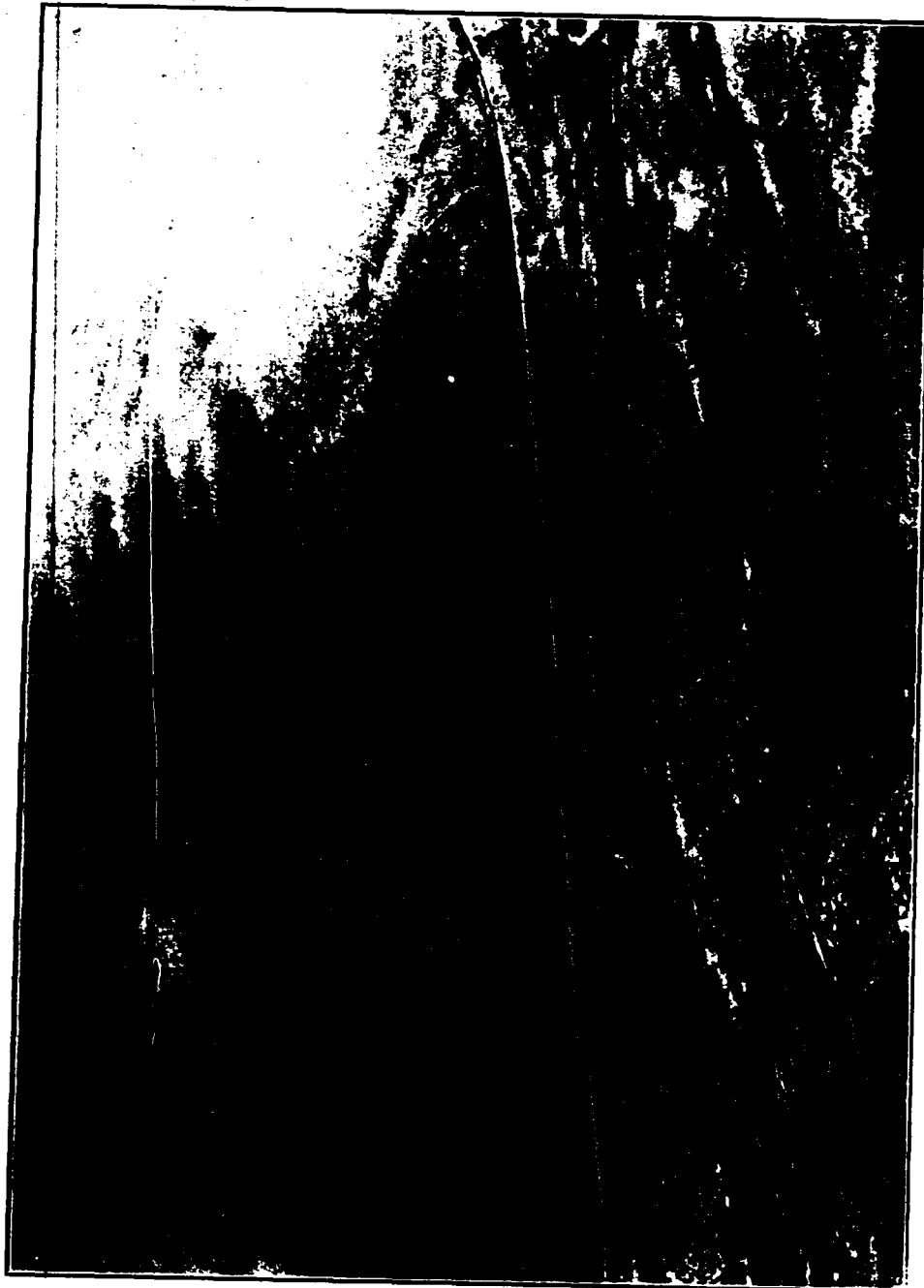


Photo By First Photo Section

Truck Train on the Road

command posts, (d) in general, to assist the Commanding Officer in maintaining communication with his units.

CONTACT MISSIONS

Contact missions serve the purpose (1) of keeping the command informed of the location of the enemy advance elements, (2) of aiding our own attacking troops by (a) informing the friendly advance troops of the location and nature of obstacles, (b) by assisting advance troops in the reduction of such obstacles and (c) preventing surprise enemy concentrations for counter attack. Contact missions are assigned only during active contact with the enemy, otherwise these functions are performed by the liaison observer.

ARTILLERY MISSIONS

Artillery adjustment missions have for their object the observation of artillery fire and are used only when terrestrial observation is impracticable. Further, observation balloons are used for this work whenever the target is not defiladed from them and is within their visible range, the airplane observer conducting all other adjustments. The effectiveness of artillery adjustments using aerial observation is measured by the training and mutual understanding between the aerial observers and the ground details. It is futile to suppose that either can do their work without training. Usually, practice employing the same personnel for a number of problems is the best means of obtaining the desired results. Full cooperation and mutual confidence will make possible the infliction of great damage to even moving targets, provided communication is rapid and reliable, and will allow the artillery to make adjustments otherwise denied to them.

In addition to the adjustment mission, artillery surveillance missions are sometimes employed. This mission is in the nature of a patrol and has for its object the transmission of information in which the artillery is primarily interested, such as reports on barrage or other sustained firing, and the location and adjustment on vulnerable targets.

COMMAND MISSIONS

Command missions are dispatched by the command before or during an action (a) to obtain some particular information, (b) to verify information received from other sources, (c) to observe some particular area or route, (d) or to allow a staff officer to survey the operation or reconnoiter the theatre of operations.

COURIER MISSIONS

Courier missions are for the purpose of delivering orders, dispatches, mail, photographs, maps, and other needed material, when time is an important element, or the usual means of transportation are lacking. The morale of front line troops can often be raised by providing, in this way, such non-essentials as cigarettes, personal mail, newspapers, etc. Courier missions can be accomplished by night as well as by day, and are particularly valuable when roads are poor or congested and when great distances are involved.

CAVALRY, DISMOUNTED

Whenever Cavalry is placed in a line of battle as Infantry, it is assigned

Air Service units on an equal basis with a like strength of Infantry. The missions of the Air Service are as above outlined.

PHOTOGRAPHIC MISSIONS

Aerial photographs, both vertical and oblique, are very valuable when properly used. Such photographs may often do away with the necessity for making road sketches by the tedious and slow methods ordinarily employed. Where no maps are available, suitable mosaics may be made to supply the demand; or routes or areas may be photographed to secure details for existing maps.

In a war of maneuver, troops will be seeking in late afternoon bivouacs or camps for the night; while there still remains sufficient light a photographic mission should be dispatched to locate the main bodies. The bivouacs or camps will not be far from the points photographed. Many times during the Marfa maneuvers the troops were caught by photographs moving into camps.

Photographic missions should be made at every opportunity, not only because of their value in reconnaissance, but also for comparison with previous photographs of the same ground. Such comparison often divulges information which cannot otherwise be obtained. Prior to the holding of the Marfa Maneuvers the entire country over which the maneuvers were held, was photographed and made up into a mosaic, from which all maps were corrected or remade by the Engineers. These maps were very good because the photographs furnished with accuracy all necessary data for supplying detail.

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS

With advance Cavalry there is generally no special Air Service assigned, this is likewise true of flank Cavalry. Any Air Service required by such Cavalry organizations is attached by corps or army orders, depending on the amount of independent work required of the Cavalry command.

The Air Service usually performs liaison missions between the Cavalry and main body. Aerial reconnaissance and reconnaissance by the Cavalry is coordinated by the commander responsible for the employment of both.

The Air Service reconnaissance will more particularly be concerned with forces of larger size than a squadron. Assembled troops numbering one hundred or more men are picked up from the air very readily in most any kind of terrain. In country like that of the Southwest United States it would be hard for an enemy force the size of a troop to remain concealed for any length of time. In operations in open country I believe it is more important for a Division Air Service to be assigned to Cavalry Divisions than Infantry Divisions. The observer on the ground in open country can see very well what is in the immediate front, but the problem of the commander cannot be solved until he knows, in detail, the whole situation within his sphere of action. This requires reconnaissance, to a depth appropriate to the command concerned. Such reconnaissance can be most efficiently performed from the air. In wooded country the Cavalry must do its own close reconnaissance, because the Air Service cannot always discover small detachments under cover of

trees. As large bodies disclose themselves by camps or other concentrations, distant reconnaissance can be accomplished by Air Service in any type of terrain.

In delegating missions of reconnaissance to Cavalry and Air Service the commander and staff must take into consideration the extent of territory that can be effectively covered by each arm. With airplanes available, it is not economical to employ Cavalry patrols to find the camp of the enemy, or the roads on which an enemy is approaching. This is a proper function of the Air Service. Again Air Service should not be called upon to search out small numbers of men in the immediate front of a Cavalry command, when such detachments cannot materially influence the action, and when the airplane thus employed could be more profitably employed giving information of a more general nature.

The Air Service has extended the depths of reconnaissance and, by photographs, visualizes much that is reported by patrols. If used as it should be it will afford a saving in horses and men, thus allowing a commander to conserve his troops for combat.

In territory such as that comprising the southwest portion of the United States, practically all engagements would be fought by Cavalry and Artillery, the reconnaissance falling in large part to Air Service. In case of the taking of strong points or cities, or to accomplish destruction beyond the range of Artillery, the Air Service would assist the combat by bombing.

In any operation it is the duty of the staff and commander to decide what missions can be best accomplished by each arm. Proper missions assigned as the result of proper decisions, with the proper cooperation means a favorable decision for our own troops.

COOPERATIVE TRAINING

The command at Fort Bliss has been very fortunate in having a Signal Officer who has realized the requirements for successful co-operation of Cavalry, Air Service, and auxiliary units. Well instructed panel details and radio sections in the different units are of paramount importance. Without these trained sections there can be no cooperation. An airplane can serve no liaison purpose if radio messages sent down cannot be received, if the panel detail does not know when to display a panel for the reception of dropped messages, or if the panel detail is unable to use panels making known the wants of the troops on the ground. It may be therefore stated as a fact that to secure good results, the headquarters of each unit with which observation Air Service is operating, must have well trained communication sections.

The burden of this training falls on the Division Signal Officer but the co-operation of each unit Signal Officer is essential.

TEST FOR TRAINING

The maneuvers held in the fall of 1923, at Marfa, Texas, furnished a good test of the co-operative training held at Fort Bliss by the Cavalry and the Air Service. These maneuvers first of all proved that Air Service supplies and personnel can be transported along with the main body of marching cav-

Photo By First Photo Section

Cavalry Division in Camp

alry on the poorest of roads. The transportation section of the Air Service made the march from Fort Bliss to Marfa, a distance of 200 miles by road, in two days, following the predetermined schedule. Some of the roads passed over were deep with mud, but still the trucks arrived on scheduled time. The planes made the flight to Marfa in two hours, arriving at Marfa the same day as the truck train. While the cavalry was on the march from Fort Bliss to Marfa, daily liaison and courier missions were dispatched.

At Marfa each problem mapped out for the combatting brigades of cavalry, assigned to the Air Service definite missions of reconnaissance, liaison, photography, or courier. The type of country was open, broken up here and there by small ravines or low mountains, ideal for cavalry action, but poor for concealing movements from the Air Service. All our missions were successful with the exception of one radio telephonic failure on an artillery adjustment mission.

To prevent constant surveillance by the Air Service over the combat sector, each side had a time limit in which aerial reconnaissances were to be made. This time limit was prescribed to simulate opposition by a superior air force. Had not this condition prevailed, the smallest detachments of cavalry could have been kept under constant observation. As it was, the Air Service of each side, was able in the time limit to locate the main body and reserves with no trouble whatsoever, as well as furnish additional detailed information.

These operations left no doubt that movements in open country cannot be concealed by troops when opposed by an active Air Service. Due to the advantage of rapid maneuver, cavalry is the only type of ground troops that could be used effectively in such country. The movement across open country will be facilitated if the cavalry commander knows from Air Service reports that such country is not occupied by enemy forces.

Such open country is not without advantage, however, for as was demonstrated during the Marfa maneuvers, the airplane can at times land near the headquarters of the commander thus enabling the crew to receive explicit instructions direct from the Commanding General or one of his staff.

SUMMARY

Our Army relies upon the offensive and a plan of movement. This means warfare very different from that of the late World War. Of all fighting in the recent war, the campaign in Palestine most nearly approached a real war of movement. In this campaign Cavalry and Air Service brought it to a successful conclusion. However, only Infantry Divisions have been provided with Air Service. This should be changed to provide Air Service units with Cavalry Divisions, in order to accomplish the rapid offensive movements upon which we rely for success. These same units could, if necessary, be used with Infantry Divisions after the Cavalry action had given way to infantry action.

Our Air Service should be used in the rapid gathering and dissemination of information and hence be an aid to the most advance elements viz. the Cavalry; acting as part of the command of the independent cavalry or in conjunction with the Cavalry under corps or army orders.

German Ideas on Modern Cavalry

COMMENTS AND TRANSLATION

BY

Colonel H. S. HAWKINS, 3rd Cavalry

UNDER the heading given above there has appeared in the *Revue de Cavalerie* for September-October, 1924, an article by Captain Brown De Colstoun, French Army, the translation of which follows these preliminary remarks.

This article is of special importance to us now for the following reasons:

a. It expresses the views of the Chief of Staff to General von Posec, who became Chief of Cavalry of the German Army during the World War.

b. It is the first time that we in America have seen in print a European expression of the principles that were emphasized at our Cavalry School upon its foundation in 1919.

c. While these principles were taught at the Cavalry School they were not and, as far as known, are not generally understood in the service. The new Field Service Regulations do not emphasize these principles, and therefore our officers are not being led to comprehend the true role and the true value of Cavalry. Such misunderstanding or misinformation on the part of our future commanders of Army Corps and Armies is a serious matter which should be corrected at once.

d. The principles specially referred to are briefly as follows:

(1) The chief and most important role of modern Cavalry is its participation in the battle of the force to which it is assigned or attached, in order to be utilized as *special troops* to attack or strike at the key point or most sensitive point of the enemy.

(2) Strictly speaking Cavalry is not an auxiliary arm to the Infantry. It does cooperate with Infantry and at some points replaces Infantry. The Cavalry should therefore be regarded as special troops and not auxiliary troops. The artillery is auxiliary to both infantry and cavalry and does not fight separately. This explains the difference between cavalry and artillery, or other corps and branches, in their relation to infantry.

(3) The mounted attack of large as well as small units is quite as important as the dismounted attack. It is the *method* of mounted attack (deployments laterally and in depth instead of close order) that has undergone a change.

(4) In order to carry out its principal role in great and important operations, a division of cavalry operating alone is not sufficient. We must foresee and contemplate cavalry corps and even cavalry armies. Many attempts to use cavalry for this mission have failed due to the weakness of the force employed. A proper appreciation of this principle would undoubtedly have won the World War for the Germans in

1914, and again in the spring of 1918.

(5) It is of great importance that the high commanding generals understand the role of this arm that may form part of their commands, that they spare it as much as possible from the fatigues of accessory roles and save it for its principal role. And finally, that they issue to it definite and precise orders as to its participation in the operations.

In addition to these principles in which American cavalry officers heartily concur, it may be of interest to state that we further believe that the introduction of improved rapid firing weapons will make the mounted advance in extended order, terminating in close combat, mounted or dismounted, a frequent rather than an exceptional occurrence in the attack against hostile foot troops. This is, of course, contrary to the prevailing ideas before the World War. But such action is made possible and even necessary by the fact that rapid movement is the best defense against modern weapons including the menace of gas and airplanes; and the support given during the attack by such weapons in our own hands adds another reason for venturing the quick and decisive results of mounted action. This has an important bearing on the role of cavalry and increases the strength of our belief in the principal role of cavalry as stated above and in the expediency of attempting it.

In connection with the means by which this great mission (to attack the enemy in battle at his most vital spot), may be accomplished, the following prediction is also ventured—a proper and skillful cooperation between cavalry on the ground and airplanes in the air has tactical possibilities that may be of great importance. To bring this about, the air service and the cavalry should understand each other thoroughly, and each should be provided in large numbers. Conversely, the cavalry, through its ability to disperse rapidly into small groups and to advance rapidly across country in such formation, is the arm best able to protect itself against attack by hostile airplanes.

The translation follows:

* * * * *

Under the title "*Studies on Modern Cavalry taken from the experiences of the War*," there has recently appeared in Germany an article by Lieutenant Colonel Brandt, Chief of Staff to the Inspector General of the Cavalry.

These studies are inspired, it is true, especially by the examples and the possibilities of the eastern front, and the author remarks that in Europe the Cavalry becomes more and more valuable as one travels towards the East. But by the spirit of analysis which is there revealed, by the ideas therein exposed, by the historical examples that they illustrate, and finally by a certain evolution which they already indicate as to the post-war German regulations, notably in the matter of exploration and employment of cavalry in great masses, they deserve to retain a moment of our attention.

It appears interesting therefore to make known these ideas to those who, in France also, wish to find out where and how cavalry may find its best utilization in future war.

It is almost a postulate for Lieutenant Colonel Brandt that the missions of cavalry have not changed. "To reconnoiter and observe the enemy, to cover, cooperate toward the decision in battle, to exploit the success or cover the retreat, have been and remain the tasks demanded of this arm. They depend on the employment of the principal equipment of Cavalry—the horse.

But, from time to time, under the influence of the modifications that the perfection of armament and new inventions have brought to the methods of combat of the various arms, the Cavalry has sought its principal employment in the execution of one or the other of its tasks.

What will be the essential mission of modern Cavalry? Such is the question which he proposes to answer.

Covering (Screening):—The reasons which militate in favor of the employment of cavalry in covering duties have an incontestable value. Its mobility permits it to hold wide fronts, to withdraw from difficult situations more easily than cyclists or infantry in trucks could do; then, once this mission is terminated to group itself rapidly at the point where it will find employment. Moreover, the concentration of an army remains by this means longer hidden to the enemy, because the veil will commence to rise for him only when he shall have identified elements other than the cavalry.

It is none the less true that this is only an accessory role of cavalry, that may impose upon it such fatigue that it finds itself prematurely used up.

This was the case in 1914 in regard to certain divisions of German Cavalry, so much that General von Posec has written the following lines concerning three cavalry divisions (7th, 8th, and Bavarian) employed in covering duties in Lorraine:

"The goings and comings had so exhausted the horses that two divisions reported that they were no longer fit for combat by reason of the overworking of their horses. The tasks for which whole divisions of cavalry had been maintained in a restricted zone would have been as well fulfilled by mixed detachments reinforced by regiments of cavalry."

It is in the employment of cyclists, infantry in trucks and special formations for covering duties that Colonel Brandt sees the means of helping out the cavalry as much as possible in this primary phase of a campaign and of thus sparing it from fatigues that may compromise gravely its ulterior activity.

Exploration:—Heretofore, strategic exploration has been one of the principal missions for cavalry. Before the World War it was the principal mission.

Even today one would not know how to do without the cavalry for exploration; aviation, infantry in trucks, cyclists and armored cars may reinforce it, but not replace it.

Aviators, in truth, cannot always fly; if they procure negative information, this has often only a limited value; they do not make prisoners, they do not cover, they do not keep the contact, they do not assure the possession of the terrain.

Cyclists and automobiles lose all value if they have no good roads and Lieutenant Colonel Brandt cites the following example:

"In Rumania, a cyclist brigade was added at Cracow, to the cavalry corps

of von Schmettow. To Bucharest there was a good road, and the weather was dry, so that the cyclists could be often employed. After Bucharest, during the march toward Sereth, there were no longer any good roads. The black mud collected so thickly on the bicycles that they could not run; they could not even be pushed, to say nothing of riding them. The trucks, which carried the machine guns of the cyclists, were also immobilized. There was nothing to do but abandon the bicycles and automobiles and to constitute with the elements of the cyclist brigade two feeble battalions of light foot troops.

"In Lithuania and in Courland, in 1915, it was necessary similarly to abandon the bicycles on account of the bad state of roads.

"In similar countries only the cavalry was utilizable in exploration."

Cavalry remains then indispensable for this role, but this is no longer its essential mission.

In fact, the help that the development of aviation brings to it, the spies and the means of transmission of information permit it to free itself of certain tasks that it had until the present time to assume alone.

The character of exploration is modified to such a degree that, the greater part of the time, it will be for the cavalry hardly a question of distant exploration.

Moreover, the information near and far that was demanded of cavalry has lost its value, because the development of means of transport permits the enemy today to make such rapid movements of forces as to render worthless the intelligence previously gathered and upsets all the old calculations of time and space.

The observation of such movements is incumbent upon aviation.

On the ground, a close reconnaissance will be sufficient, which gains in importance, but which can be assured by corps cavalry suitably reenforced.

"Thus, the boundary between distant exploration and close exploration disappears; reconnaissance of distant objectives, the principal aim of strategic exploration, goes to aviation. Cavalry finds itself freed to this extent in the accomplishment of a mission which, until the present, absorbed the greater part of its strength. It regains thus the liberty to point itself, with much less trouble than formerly, towards its principal destination: to cooperate in battle by intervening in the combat."

However, if it happens that terrestrial exploration must be pushed to several days march from the army, the cavalry alone is fit, thanks to its mobility, to do it well.

For a short distance detachments of all arms can well be employed, but to send them so far that they may not be supported within a day's march by their supporting units, would be to expose them to certain destruction. Their role is always delicate: if they refuse combat they often fail to accomplish their missions; if they become engaged they run the risk of being destroyed.

"In October, 1914, a division of Siberian infantry, pushed in front, was opposed near Grojec, between Radom and Varsovie, to the advance of the 8th German Army in Poland. It engaged in combat, and this decision of its chief was fatal to it. The brave Siberians experienced extraordinarily heavy and bloody

losses, and only the remnants of the division succeeded in escaping to Varsovie. It had barely checked the march of the 8th Army a few hours. Only a mobile force—Cavalry—could have avoided annihilation and done well the mission that was confided to that division: To delay the enemy and reconnoiter his forces."

As to the conception which prevailed on the German side in 1914, to assign to each army one or several divisions of cavalry, to assure the exploration on its front, "it ended only in an unlucky dispersion of the cavalry." Space was lacking between the adverse armies to move the cavalry and there was, so to speak, no exploration. It was there an affair for aviation and for the corps or divisional cavalry, the latter reenforced at need by elements of other arms.

In any case a mission of exploration of this kind must be coupled with a mission of delay which surpasses it in importance.

With the means that cavalry actually has at its disposal, it is an organ of combat much too precious for the high command to deprive itself of or to expend it before the battle in far away missions of purely strategical exploration.

The Cavalry Duel—A primary consequence of the place thus given above to exploration is that combat against the hostile cavalry can no longer be sought as a principle.

Moreover, it is no longer a question of an encounter with the arme blanche that, in a few minutes, must put out of action the enemy cavalry and cause it to disappear.

We are today "under the reign of the machine gun" and an adversary, although weaker, can hold for a long time an assailant under its fire; the decision will often be obtained only after several long and painful hours of effort.

Taking in consideration the fact that the combat against the hostile cavalry is no longer a brief episode, but rather an affair of long duration, the chief will have to decide if his mission permits him to engage the enemy cavalry in the combat so ardently desired.

The experience of the war has moreover proved—even on the eastern front where encounters of cavalry were more frequent—that the opposing cavalry forces do not attract each other, as one supposed, in the manner of two lovers. This would perhaps be true in the case of equal masses, but it is unreasonable that a strong cavalry should attract to it a weak one.

Thus, when at the end of November, 1916, in Rumania the cavalry corps of Schmettow had crossed the Oltu, a division of Rumanian cavalry appeared before him. The arrival of the latter could not be attributed to the attraction that the German cavalry corps might have exercised over it, and we can rather believe that it resulted from its mission, which required it probably to throw back the German cavalry across the river. The instant long awaited of a great battle of cavalry appeared then to have arrived. In expectation of this encounter the two divisions of German cavalry were assembled in close order ready for a common action. But suddenly their power of magnetic attraction disappeared. The division of Rumanian cavalry had probably recognized in time the superiority of the German forces and it disappeared without bringing on a combat.

Schmettow's cavalry corps did not allow itself to be led away by the Rumanian cavalry, because it would have been diverted from its principal mission. It would be useless to discuss the attitude of the Rumanian cavalry division as long as one does not know either its mission or the circumstances which provoked its conduct. But it would have been, during the following days, a troublesome adversary for the German cavalry corps, if it had hung on, which it could certainly have done while avoiding engagement in a decisive affair.

In future wars a battle between the two cavalry forces will not then be an end in itself.

If the received mission leads to an engagement it will be necessary as formerly to go to the limit in order to bring about a quick success.

But a leader of Cavalry will decide to engage it only after mature reflection; he runs in fact the danger of allowing himself to be tied to and fixed in a combat of long duration, in which success lies often with the weaker side that succeeds in turning a greater force from its mission.

Participation in the main battles—We touch here at the heart of the subject.

A cavalry division, says Lieutenant Colonel Brandt, is a unit of combat just like an infantry division. Cavalry is not like other arms an auxiliary to infantry; it can replace infantry.

But it has its peculiarities that the high command must know well in order to know how to employ it usefully and to obtain from it the maximum service.

In fact, upon the orders that it receives depends in great measure its success or non-success.

It is essential to give it its mission with precision, and if it is given several missions, the principal mission must be clearly defined; the execution of the latter must not be endangered by finding itself compromised by others.

If we wish to utilize fully its essential quality, mobility, we must be led to employ the cavalry outside of the armies, and consequently on the wings or in the intervals, since experience has shown that there was no place for it in front.

With the great fronts and the long duration of modern battles it is no longer necessary to maintain the cavalry very near the armies. A cavalry that sticks close to its army rarely attains the sensitive point of the enemy and strikes most often at a front already prolonged. On the contrary, by separating itself boldly it finds the more frequent occasions of putting to profit its power of fire, by surprise, there where the enemy cannot parry the blow at the right time.

To assist in gaining the decision by acting offensively in the main battle at the sensitive point of the enemy,—therein lies the principal task of modern Cavalry. This has been moreover the task of cavalry always; we have simply forgotten it from time to time.

All the wars wherein the importance of this essential mission has been misunderstood mark a period of decline in the history of cavalry. Why, on the contrary, are the wars of Frederick the Second and Napoleon the First, rich in incomparable exploits of cavalry? It is not because the firearms were less efficacious: a frontal attack of cavalry against an unshaken infantry had then as

little chance of success as today. But it is rather that the two great captains saw the principal role of their cavalry in an incessant intervention in battle. Recognizing that a decisive success was obtained only by the action of a very important force, they united the mass of their cavalry under the command of a chief and strove to hurl it by surprise upon the weakest point of the enemy.

There is the law of all times; the means change but the idea remains; it is a question of adapting the means to the idea.

Being given the effectives engaged in a modern war, the intervention in battle of a division of cavalry will be only the exception; the union, for this purpose, of several divisions of cavalry into a cavalry corps and even that of several corps of cavalry will be the rule.

The single experience of the western front can give to this subject false ideas, yet it may be certain that in August, 1914, an army of German cavalry operating on the right wing could have had a decisive action.

And again, the employment of the cavalry army of Buddeny, for example, in the war of the Bolsheviki in 1919-1920, responded to the requirements of the particular situation in the Polish theater of operations.

In Palestine the English had constituted the "Desert Mounted Corps" composed of four divisions of cavalry and a camel brigade. It is to this corps, almost exclusively, that they owe their success.

The modern means of communication make the command of an army of cavalry quite as possible as that of any other army.

But it is not sufficient to unite several cavalry divisions under the same command; it is necessary to effect *surprise*. The idea, very wide spread, "that in war one always has time" would be disastrous for the cavalry.

Mobility, rapidity, skill, are the elements of surprise.

In order to surprise the sensitive point of the enemy it will frequently happen that the cavalry must go far to seek it and that it must for several days make long marches of 40 to 50 miles. It is necessary that it be prepared and that it knows how to make these marches without using itself up; it must also know how to take rests which permits in particular the examination of the shoeing; "this was not always the case for the German cavalry in Lithuania in 1915."

Colonel Brandt thinks that an example of the judicious employment of the cavalry at the beginning of an important campaign is offered by the Polish campaign of 1920 against the Bolsheviki.

In April 1920, a Polish cavalry division advancing in front of the infantry was directed on Koziatyn, a village situated about 160 kilometers behind the Russian front, seat of the Q. G. of a Russian army and an important railway center, with a view of seizing this locality and of maintaining itself there until the arrival of the infantry. The Russian front was thin and presented holes, it had the aspect of a network of advance posts rather than that of a continuous front. The Polish cavalry succeeded without difficulty in breaking through the enemy line. It reached Koziatyn after 38 hours of marching, having had at only one point to engage in a short combat; it seized the village after a combat on foot

of long duration. If found itself thus on the back of the Russians and could render useless the important railway of Kiev. To the material success that the taking of the village represented was added besides, for the Poles, the great moral effect that always accompanies the first success at the beginning of a campaign.

Colonel Brandt draws, further, out of this combat of Koziatyn two lessons in detail.

"The Polish cavalry rested two hours 20 kilometers north of Koziatyn and went from there, at 4 o'clock in the afternoon, directly toward the south in three columns in order to attack the village. The attack was to be made by surprise: it had then been ordered to move at a gallop to the outskirts of the locality and not to dismount until there. Although the surprise of the Bolsheviks was complete and in spite of the order given to advance mounted as long as possible, the regiments dismounted too soon; they had at certain points to proceed more than two kilometers on foot. They thus gave the Bolsheviks time to recover from this first surprise and to organize fairly well a resistance."

"The energetic intervention of a divisional general was necessary to make the best out of this excess of prudence.

"But the time lost could not be regained and the attack miscarried that day. The Poles succeeded only the next day in taking the village after having renewed the attack at an early hour."

If the cavalry wishes to surprise, it must not dismount at the first shots of the enemy. A few shots should not stop its progress if it takes appropriate formations, like infantry, when it enters the zone of hostile fire, opening out even wider so as to permit rapidity of movement.

"At the same time that they attacked Koziatyn, the Poles had cut the railways terminating in the village. As, the next day, the Polish cavalrymen attacked on foot the railway station, they were surprised by the arrival of a Russian armoured train which opened fire against them. This train had repaired the road destroyed the evening before. This incident proves that it is indispensable to guard the destructions made while one fights around a junction of railways."

The question of surprise, realized thanks to long and rapid marches, brings up that of attaching infantry to a cavalry division.

It is not necessary that the mobility of cavalry be diminished thereby: the mounted troops must, in any case, constitute the principal part of the division and be able to separate themselves from the infantry reinforcement while at the same time keeping a sufficient combative strength.

"The strengthening of the fire action of a cavalry division to the detriment of its mobility, as we see it in the various divisions said to be 'light' and born of experience on the western front, will in the future surely appear as an error."

Similar divisions have failed in the operations of cavalry in Lithuania and in Courland, at the battle of Wilna, in Rumania, in Palestine, in the expedition already mentioned of the Poles against Koziatyn and in the running combats with which the Turks fought the Greeks in Asia Minor.

"On bad roads, in bad weather or without communication to the rear, only

cavalry remained mobile and fit for combat."

The best solution, in the mind of Colonel Brandt, consists in maintaining in the division the former number of cavalry regiments, and in reinforcing it by other arms, in particular by infantry with rapid means of transport.

It is necessary, moreover, that the troopers be well led and instructed, the horses trained and fit to resist the fatigue of long marches.

One must in fact reckon with the eventual impossibility of utilizing the railways and great trains of automobile transport, either on account of the poor system of railways or roads, or by reason of the bombardments by aviators or by artillery at long range; the advantage will then be with that one of the adversaries who will have mobile forces able to move rapidly by their own means. "A strong cavalry thus employed will be able in future battle to play the same role as that of the cavalry of Frederick II in Silesia."

From this point of view, the conditions of the eastern front give to cavalry a special value; it finds there the necessary space for its movements. But, at the beginning of a war, there will be portions of the frontier weakly guarded. At these points the cavalry will be able to break through before the armies are put in march, it will hamper the concentration of the enemy and oblige the latter to make dispositions that may upset his plan of operations.

Finally, on the flanks of the enemy, the cavalry corps will find space for its employment: they will menace the communications of the enemy, attack his columns, steal away by night, then appear the next day at a new point, 30 to 40 miles from the first.

Employment as a reserve in the break-through—Before the war we did not admit the idea of keeping cavalry inactive while infantry was fighting; we engaged it even when we knew that there was not much of importance to expect by its intervention.

The continuous fronts of the world war have made of primary importance the question of the employment of cavalry as a general reserve and its utilization in case of a break-through.

The author makes a distinction here between a break-through in a war of movement and a break-through after stabilization.

In war of movement there are intervals or flanks where the employment of cavalry is quite obvious; this happened equally as much on the western front as on the eastern front. Nevertheless, we can see that at the beginning of operations, before the covering force of the enemy had been broken through, or rather when the enemy has closed up the holes in which the cavalry has already been able to operate, the latter may be usefully maintained in reserve.

We could imagine also a cavalry initially reserved in order to be launched at the important point when the situation clears up, with a view to bring about a decision, after the manner of Frederick II and of Napoleon. But a result should be expected only by the intervention of a large mass of cavalry. The world war does not offer us any examples.

Will the future furnish the cavalry with the occasion for such decisive inter-

vention? Nobody knows. Perhaps the very slowing down of infantry by material that renders it still more slow and more dependent on roads will work for us cavalymen. This indicates in any case that the way to develop the power of cavalry is to preserve its mobility.

As to the employment of cavalry in a break-through it may be said that it must be engaged only when the breach really exists. It may then make the most of its rapidity in order to prevent the arrival of enemy reserves, to prevent the breach from closing, or to act against the parties on the enemy front who are still holding out.

The delicate point for the cavalry leader consists in deciding to what place he will push and when he will throw himself towards one or the other of the enemy wings. As a general rule—and so long as the enemy lets him go free—if he seeks a success of great magnitude, he will push far and not engage himself too soon, in order that he may penetrate deeply and gain the rear of the enemy.

In a war of positions, one resolves more easily to keep the cavalry as a reserve. It can then serve in effecting reliefs at various points of the front. But only in case of absolute need and for short periods should the cavalry be maintained on foot on the defensive.

It must be able in one case to oppose itself to a break through by the enemy and in another case to be launched against an enemy in retreat.

"At the time of their attack with Tanks near Cambrai in the Autumn of 1917, the English, after having destroyed the obstacles and having taken possession of the German position, pushed the cavalry into the breach. The same thing happened on the 8th of August 1918, when the left wing of the II German Army was broken. But, in both circumstances, the German Command succeeded in rapidly corking the hole before it was made deeper, because the British cavalry that was employed was too weak to obtain a great success. This shows again that only forces of considerable strength of cavalry can have a decisive influence upon the issue of a battle. At Cambrai the English could have engaged a sufficient force of cavalry, because they had at their disposal five divisions of cavalry in the neighborhood of the breach; but only the fractions of three divisions were used. The reasons for this parsimony are not known."

On the German side, Garnier's Cavalry Corps comprising five cavalry divisions was engaged in the gap made at the battle of Vilna. In the region of Vilkomir, to the north of Vilna, it had at the outset to fight by itself to make the breach. It had to struggle for several days and to throw the Russians towards the east before being able to launch itself to the south in order to take in reverse the Russian corps that were still fighting at Vilna. It succeeded in getting to the rear of the Russians. But as it was obliged at the same time to detach several divisions against the reinforcements coming from the east, its strength was not sufficient to bar for a long time the retreat of the Russian columns. Nevertheless it had brought about a great success and it had really contributed toward gaining the battle."

"In the breaks-through of 1917 in Italy, and in March and May, 1918, in France, there was unfortunately no German cavalry. By reason of the lack of men and horses the German high command had judged it preferable to employ its cavalry as infantry. Numerous passages of French war literature show how the French expected then to see German cavalry appear."

If it is easier to bring cavalry to the point of rupture in a war of positions than in a war of movement, the moment for its engagement remains a delicate matter. In principle its role should consist in penetrating deeply into the enemy in order to interfere with the arrival of his reserves and to render impossible their employment in a counter attack of the whole enemy forces. It is necessary then to avoid having the cavalry suffer in the preliminary combats and to strengthen it with artillery, especially with long range guns permitting it to hold centers of communication (road and railway junctions) under its fire.

To sum up, Colonel Brandt thinks that the combative power of modern cavalry makes it more fit than in the past to be used as a reserve and that this role will become incumbent upon cavalry frequently in the future.

Pursuit and Retreat—The pursuit and the protection of a retreat have always been within the domain of cavalry. Progress in technique will change this very little.

In the pursuit it will be necessary to reckon with the important demolitions which will check the troops transported by mechanical means.

In the retreat it will always be a question of being able to break off the combat rapidly and disappear.

In both cases the cavalry is the arm which is better fitted to these needs.

It is rare that the cavalry may bar the retreat to an enemy who retires without having been completely beaten. The example of Garnier's corps at Vilna shows this. It can however check his flank columns and oblige them to change direction.

But it is quite otherwise with an enemy who has really suffered a defeat. In this case the victorious infantry is not rapid enough to gather all the fruits of its success; the cavalry must be substituted for it.

The ideal would be for the cavalry to envelop the two enemy wings, but it will almost never be adequate for this; its action against a wing by flank attacks and in reverse assures already great successes. This was the case for the 2d and 6th Cavalry divisions and for the corps of Egon von Schmettow in the battle of Schaulen, in July, 1915.

Even a direct pursuit can assure success against an enemy utterly defeated, if one engages cavalry in great force and at a definite point.

But there again a strong cavalry is necessary to realize an enveloping pursuit and to overthrow the detachments that the adversary brings to oppose it. It must also be realized that "in order to gain the head of troops in flight" as Frederick II wished to do, much time will today be necessary.

If it is a question of a routed and demoralized enemy, the cavalry can and must dare all.

Finally, in order to cover a retreat, it is clearly indicated to employ the cav-

alry for the direct protection of the retreat, by reason of its aptitude for disappearing rapidly after having engaged itself in delaying actions, but one must seek also to make it act offensively on the flank of the enemy who pursues. The pursuit will be slackened and rendered prudent by this menace.

"Among all the examples of the last war, it may suffice to cite the success brought about by the 6th and 9th divisions of cavalry covering the retreat of the XXVth Reserve Corps of Brzeziny in November, 1914, and on the opposing side, the employment of the Russian cavalry during the retreat of the 5th Russian Army after the battle of Schaulen in July, 1915."

Raids:—The utility of raids has been much disputed, says Colonel Brandt.

The characteristic principle of a raid, he adds, is that the troops which execute it are deprived of all communication with the rear. But this is the case in all operations in rear of the enemy, such operations not necessarily taking on this account the aspect of a raid. There must then be something else which gives to a raid its own character. By searching carefully one finds that a raid never seeks to obtain only a transitory success, after which the cavalry moves off rapidly, but one which, connected with other operations may assume an importance much greater. "To mark a decisive success, a raid should therefore never be an end in itself, but it must enter into the scheme of grand operations."

Having laid down this definition, von Brandt gives a place apart to those incursions made in the course of a prolonged check of the operations and with a view of disturbing the enemy, and causing him damage in such a way as to develop the spirit of enterprise in the troops.

"It is necessary therefore to take care," he adds, "that the efforts connected with marching that are demanded of cavalry in such like enterprises do not render it unable to fulfill its essential tasks, which will commence only upon the resumption of the operations of the whole army."

There are, according to him, operations to which the term "raid" does not apply, even if they are executed by important forces.

Their chances of success are slim in a cultivated country provided with good roads, good railway communications and a good system for the transmission of information. These chances increase, on the contrary, in those regions where these conditions are not present.

To return to raids properly speaking, Brandt believes that if the cavalry regulations before the war did almost prohibit them, it was because "no one had thought of raids executed in liaison with other operations, like that one made by the Polish cavalry division against Koziatyn in 1920."

He thinks then that, in a future war, raids will be perhaps more frequent than formerly, particularly as a preliminary to an important operation.

Seeking for the best known raids of the Great War, he cites three:

a. That one of the 5th French Cavalry Division executed on the 8th and 9th of September, 1914, in the forest of Villers-Cotterets behind the right wing of von Kluck's army.

Distance: about 30 kilometers.

b. That one of the 1st German Cavalry Corps and of the Bavarian Cavalry Division on the 6th and 7th of May, 1915, in Lithuania, reaching to 25 kilometers to the northeast of Kovno, that is to say, far in rear of the Russian front.

Results: Destruction of the railway station of Zeimy on the line Janow-Schaulen.

Distance: About 60 kilometers.

c. That one of the Russian Cavalry Brigade of L'Oussouri on the 18th and 19th of June, 1915, to the left wing of the Army of the Niemen and reaching to Lukniki and Zorany.

Result: Destruction of a German convoy and the interruption of signal communications and of the supply of rations during several days.

Distance: About 35 kilometers.

"These three raids incontestably caused damage to the enemy," thinks Lieutenant Colonel Brandt, "but they did not have any decisive result, because they were all executed with forces that were too weak."

In conclusion, he finishes with a chapter entitled: *The principal mission of cavalry*, which can be summed up in the following manner:

Exploration, intervention after battles, covering (screening), in spite of their inconvenience for cavalry, remain the missions of this arm. Its utilization as a general reserve will assume a great importance. Raids are by no means out of date.

But these are only accessory tasks. "The principal mission consists in participation in battle, by acting offensively against the most sensitive point of the enemy in order to destroy him."

For this it is necessary to unite a great mass of cavalry under the orders of a single chief: a division of cavalry does not suffice; it is necessary to consider in the future the constitution of cavalry corps and even, in certain circumstances, armies of cavalry.

Such masses having need of time and space, they must be made to act freely separated from other forces in order to seek out the flank and rear of the enemy.

The above leads the author to make some reflections on the organization, instruction, armament, and the command of the cavalry.

The organization of cavalry in divisions is necessary in time of peace. "This principle was misunderstood by Germany before 1914, and the German cavalry was found from this fact in a state of inferiority. After the war, there will be hardly anyone to deny the enormous superiority of a body of troops whose elements have been instructed in common and whose units are not improvised at the time of the mobilization."

In this organization it appears to him that one should not have in view exclusively the combat by fire.

"In certain places efforts are being made to replace cavalry divisions by

divisions called 'light.' That this idea may have many advocates in Italy is not surprising, because this country did not experience, in the course of the last campaign, a war of movement. But the more the various nations have had occasion to recollect the experience of the war outside of France, the more they recognize, in their after-war regulations, the value of cavalry, and the more they proclaim that, even in a future war, mounted attacks will not be excluded. The English regulations go the furthest in this sense. In Poland, where, at the beginning, one accepted blindly the French views based solely on the experience of the western front, voices are also raised now which cast in doubt that the French doctrine, insisting exclusively on combat by fire, is suitable to the Polish cavalry in a country such as that on the Eastern front. And recently, even in France, certain military authors write that, in some circumstances, the cavalry will still be able to fight mounted with the arme blanche; this notion has never been lost by the cavalry arms with the offensive spirit of other armies."

The instruction of fighting on foot in the organization of the division should not entirely replace the maneuver of great units such as they practiced before the war.

The armament of the cavalry must permit it to equal on foot the best infantry, but it must not compromise its mobility.

Finally, upon the High Commander depends in part the rendition of its duties by the cavalry. It is a question here not only of the Commanders of the cavalry units themselves, but of that Commander who gives to them their missions.

As Frederick II demanded in the instructions, that Colonel Brandt recalls, it is indispensable that the infantry generals should understand cavalry so as to know how to employ it properly and judiciously, because it is a more delicate matter to engage cavalry well than it is to engage infantry. Reciprocally, the cavalry generals must well understand infantry, because they often have fractions of it under their orders.

The cavalry will have no reason therefore to lack confidence in the future: inspired by the lessons of the great masters of the past it will still expect in a future war to play a decisive role.



Training of Cavalry Radio Squads

BY

Lieutenant MORTIMER F. SULLIVAN, 2d Cavalry

IN the training of a Radio Squad the first problem that confronts the Regimental Signal Officer is the question of personnel. The selection of men that are capable of receiving training is the most important factor in building up a communication unit.

First of all the men should serve in a line troop for one year before they are assigned to a communication unit. There are three factors to be considered in the selection of suitable men.

First: A man must have sufficient education and intelligence to be trained as an operator.

Second: He must have sufficient physical strength and size to pack a horse and manage his pack horse as well as his own riding horse.

Third: He must have a sense of duty that will make him work hard under difficult conditions and courage enough to follow line troops over difficult ground.

Unless the Signal Officer is fortunate enough to have limitless support from the Regimental Commander, as is the case in the Second Cavalry, where he is allowed to pick his men from the whole regiment, the question of personnel will be a constant cause of worry. With the proper personnel the training becomes mere routine.

THE MECHANICAL SIDE

Numerous pamphlets and training manuals have been written at the Signal School and elsewhere on the technical and electrical side of the training of cavalry communication units. Nothing has been written on the mechanical side, that is the packing and unpacking of the set, and opening and closing station. To insure a speedy transmission of radio messages, which is essential in cavalry units, the mechanical side of the training of the members of the squad as individuals and as a unit must be very highly developed.

Considerable discussion has always existed among interested officers at the Cavalry School and elsewhere, as to whether or not the regimental radio section could set up station and send a short message, and be ready to move out with the column at the conclusion of a ten-minute halt. With a view to testing the practicability of such a procedure several tests were made by the Communication Platoon of the Second Cavalry and some interesting facts have been ascertained from these tests.

Various schemes and methods of training were tried with varying results until finally the scheme herein outlined was evolved. The idea of the two man team proved to be the solution of the problem. To begin with, the men were impressed with the idea that no one man worked alone, but always with his partner. They carried out the aparejo and load, packed the pack horse, and saddled their riding horses at the same time. Men assigned to a pack always worked together on the same pack horse. It did not follow that the same men were always part-

ners, but the men assigned to certain duties always worked together, for example: Horseholder No. 1 and the assistant operator; horseholder No. 2 and the operator; and horseholder No. 3 and the squad chief, were always partners. Then to add to the team idea the squad always marched to all formations as a squad, even to putting their saddles away after arriving at stables. All tests were made with the issue aparejo packs and equipment.

The following methods of training were used with excellent results in preparation for the demonstration which was given before the Commandant of The Cavalry School, the Colonel of the Second Cavalry and the student Officers of The Cavalry School, and which showed the practicability of sending a short message during the ten-minute halt.

ORGANIZATION

Two radio squads were organized as follows:

First Squad.

- 1 Sergeant (Squad Chief).
- 1 Operator.
- 1 Assistant Operator.
- 4 Horseholders.
- 1 Corporal (Operates set SCR 54 A).
- 1 Panel Operator.

Second Squad.

- 1 Sergeant (Squad Chief).
- 1 Operator.
- 1 Assistant Operator.
- 4 Horseholders.

The men were then given general instruction in the art of packing including tying the diamond hitch, after they understood the basic principles of pack transportation. The pack horses were tied on the line and the loads of the respective animals were brought out by each two-man team and placed on the ground on either side of the aparejo just as it is carried (See Illustration). The section was then lined up and each man was taught the name of each article of equipment belonging to the set and pack.

Each horse was then packed individually by the two men assigned to that animal, under the supervision of the squad chief, the rest of the members of the two squads observing and working as their turn came.

The generator is packed as the top load of No. 1 Animal with three mast sections, type M S 2 in each side load.

The set box with parts is on the near side of No. 2 Animal, and the battery box with parts on the off side. Frame, type M-1, is top load.

The tent bag and contents, with three mast sections are on near side of No. 3 Animal, and the antenna bag and contents with two mast sections, a ridge pole and tent pole, on the off side.

Each man was given a slip of paper with his duties assigned in order for unpacking, setting up station, closing station, and packing with instructions to memorize the same. The following are examples:

SQUAD CHIEF:

Halts, dismounts, turns to right about, turns his horse over to Horseholder No. 4.

Unsnaps overload strap and removes tent bag and mast sections from near side of No. 3 animal.

Puts legs in Set Box and opens it up.

Assists Operator in running up mast.

Commands "Tie Down."

Listens in to see if station is calling.

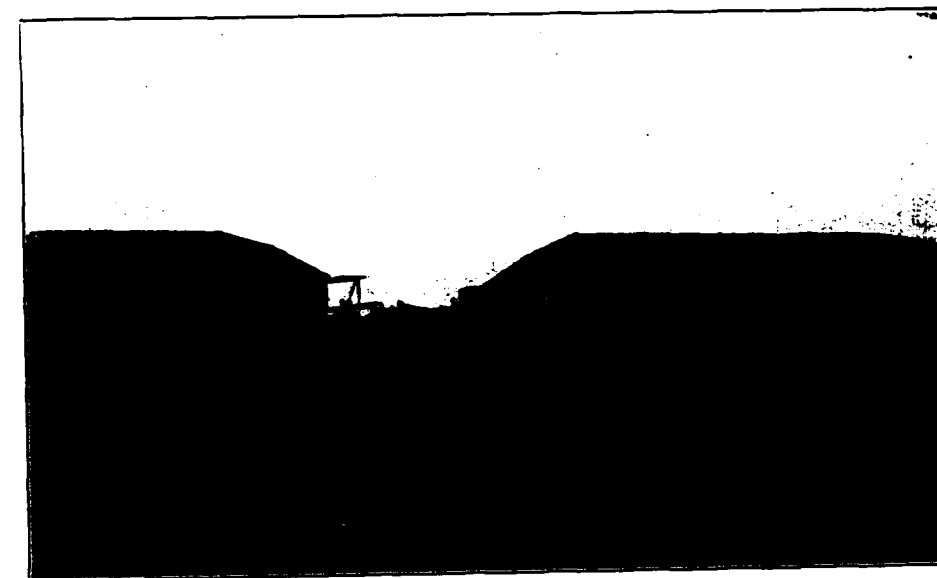
Tests transmission side of set.

Adjusts it to the prescribed wave length.

OPERATOR:

Moves up on left of Horseholder No. 1, halts, dismounts, turns his horse over to Horseholder No. 4.

Removes straps from Set Box.



Arrangement of Equipment Preparatory to Packing

Takes off Set Box placing it where station is to be set up.

Removes Mast Sections from near side and arranges them next to set box.

Places Battery Box in front of set box, attaches battery lead to set box.

Places Antenna Connectors in sockets.

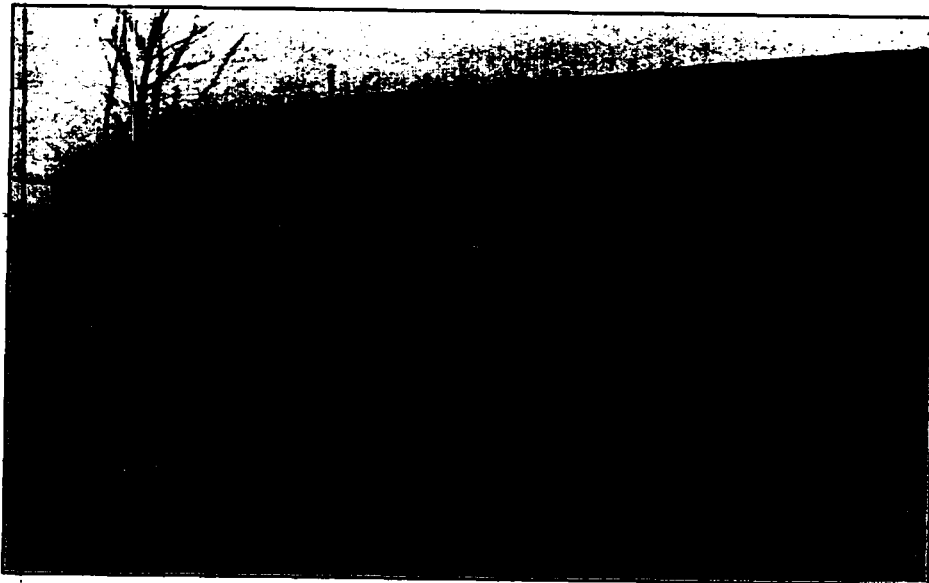
Assists Squad Chief in running up mast.

Keeps Log Sheet.

During this step in training three horses fully packed with a complete SCR 127 set were led out and the men of one squad went through their duties in setting up station by the numbers. The other squad observed, and each man in the observing squad checked up on his job in the working squad. No man was al-

lowed to assist another man except his team-mate, in any way. The idea of the two-man team being emphasized throughout the drill. Absolute accuracy was demanded. The observing squad and working squad then changed places and the drill was repeated, the former now doing the work and the latter watching.

The next stage was without the numbers but still with one squad working and the other observing. After each working squad finished each man was criticized in turn by the corresponding man of the observing squad, that is, the as-



The Squad Mounted

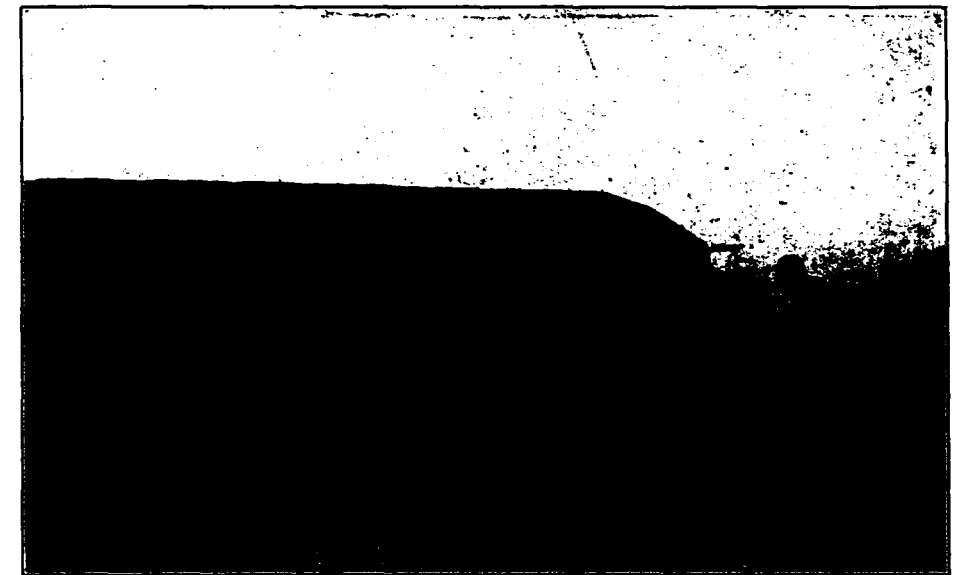
sistant operator of the observing squad made note of all the mistakes of the assistant operator of the working squad, etc.

The squads were then mounted and began to work for speed on about the sixth day of the training period. The drill was timed by a stop watch and each squad checked the other for accuracy. Competition became very keen between the two sections, and the result was that on the day of the test one squad had dots and dashes coming in through a magnavox hooked up to a receiving set in the riding hall two minutes and thirty seconds after the command "Open Station" had been given. After the squad mastered the drill, the horseholders were changed about so that each was familiar with the duties of the others.

In a like manner, the squad chief, operator and assistant operator, changed places, and by this procedure a versatile squad was secured. Nothing is said here about the training of operators. The matter of training operators is fully covered in training manuals and the only thing the regimental signal officer has to do is to follow these manuals. However, in this unit every man is an operator of

more or less skill. Their speed varying from five to thirty words per minute. Signal Corps Manuals on procedure are followed to the letter in all training. For training purposes along this line several Service Buzzers are hooked in a series, each buzzer being assigned a call letter. The N. C. S. then takes over the net just as if it were a radio net and puts through a traffic load. At the end of the problem the results are posted on the bulletin board showing number of messages sent and errors made by each station. The specified blanks are used in all problems.

The training of animals is also an item that must be considered. Quiet horses are essential both for riding and packing. The following methods were used in this troop: The horses were taken on long cross country rides over rough country and up and down steep hills. At first a man only had his riding horse to manage



Squad Unpacking After "Open Station" Has Been Given and Horses Circled

but later he had to manage a lead horse with just an aparejo as a load and finally one with the full radio load. If an unruly horse was found, he was packed up with two sacks of oats and taken out with that load until he became manageable.

Slides including the giant slide at Fort Riley were taken regularly and the squads were taken through wooded ravines to accustom the men and horses to avoiding trees with the packs.

The details of "open station" and "close station" follow:

TO OPEN STATION:

At the command "Open Station" given by the regimental signal officer or on reaching the place designated as the location for the radio station.

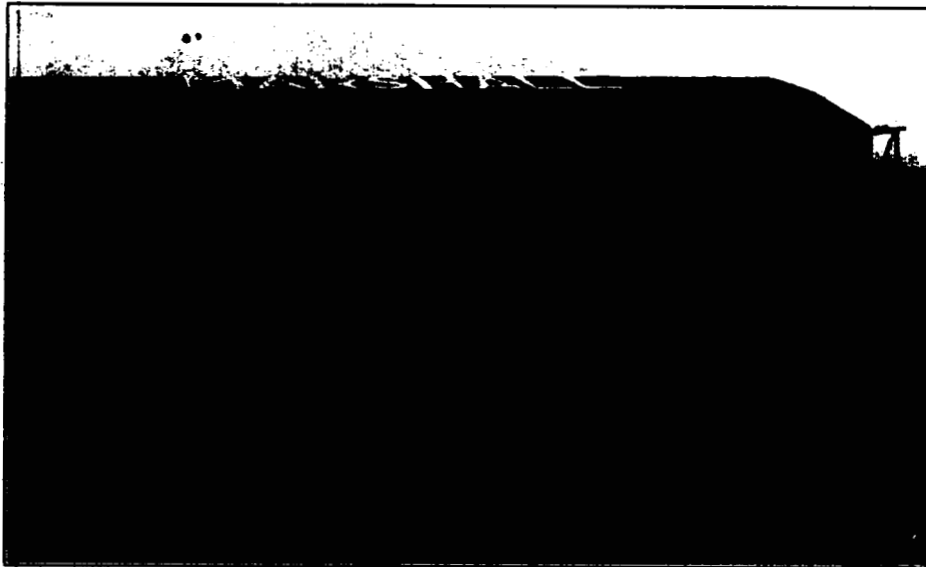
The squad leader commands "Circle Horses" the squad leader and horseholder No. 4 halt, dismount, turn to the right and left about respectively.

Horseholder No. 1 and assistant operator halt and dismount.

Horseholder No. 2 and operator move up on the left of horseholder No. 1, halt and dismount.

Horseholder No. 3 moves up on the right of horseholder No. 1, halts and dismounts. All pass their snaffle reins to horseholder No. 4. Horses are not linked for a temporary set-up.

Assistant operator releases the quarter straps and assisted by horseholder No. 1 removes the mast sections from No. 1 animal placing them on the left of the set box, ferrules to the right and then removes the generator.



The Mast Ready to Go Up, Equipment Unloaded and Arranged as Prescribed

The operator removes the straps from the set box. Horseholder No. 2 removes them from the battery box, leaving straps in the quarter strap rings. The operator and horseholder No. 2 remove set and battery boxes and place them simultaneously where station is to be set up, they then remove the mast sections, placing them on the left of the boxes, ferrules to the right.

The squad leader unsnaps the overload strap and throws it over to horseholder No. 3 who snaps it into the quarter strap ring. The squad leader and horseholder No. 3 then remove tent and antenna bags simultaneously placing them on the ground near the set box. They then return and remove the mast sections and place them alongside the bags.

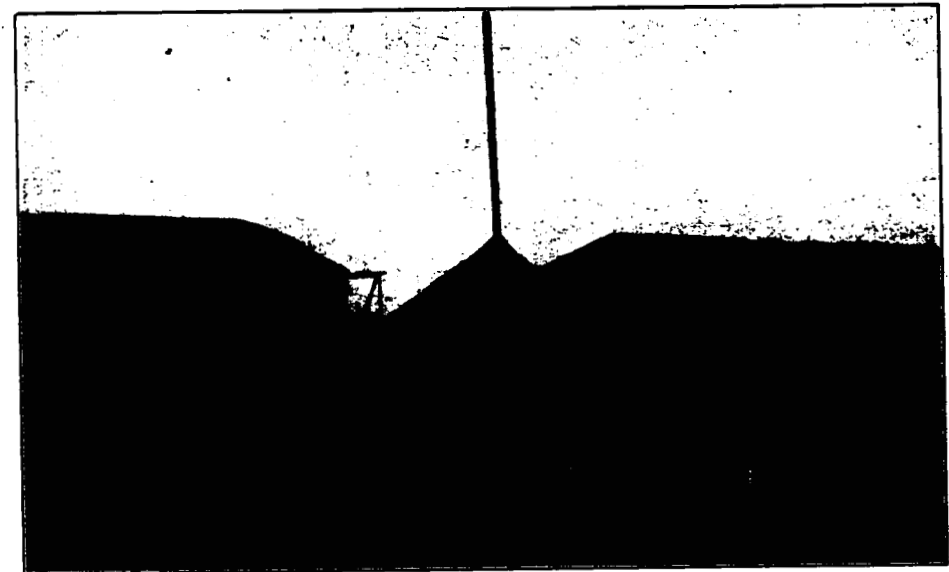
Horseholder No. 4 moves all horses of the squad fifteen yards clear of the set box.

Squad leader sets up and opens set box putting on legs.

The operator places battery box in front of set box, opens it, attaches the battery leads to the set box.

The assistant operator opens the antenna bag and removes reels and ground connecting block.

Horseholder No. 1 removes the generator cover, unwinds the leads and attaches the leads to set box.



The SET All Set Up and Functioning

Horseholder No. 2 arranges the mast sections on the ground, ferrules in one direction, and with top section nearest the place where the mast is to be set up. Horseholder No. 3 opens tent bag, and takes six pins and two hammers out of tool-bag.

The operator places the antenna leads in the connector sockets.

The assistant operator and horseholders Nos. 1, 2, and 3 each take an antenna reel and pin and proceed 90 feet in opposite directions, at a double time, holding the reel in the right hand, drops the reel, holds the wire in his right hand and drives the pin with his heel.

The squad leader and operator put up the mast, the men on the antenna wires giving or taking slack at each other's warning as pole goes up. The squad leader commands "Tie Down" antenna men tie antenna leads to pin with a clove hitch, they then double time back and get the counterpoise leads from the operator who has them connected in the counterpoise lead in block.

The counterpoise is then unreeled directly under the antenna wires.

Where six antenna wires are used for the installation of the set, this would be done where the set is not of a temporary character or where the wind is heavy, horseholder No. 1 and the assistant operator take out the extra leads, and horseholder No. 2 and 3 take out the extra counterpoise wires.

Horseholder No. 1 and No. 2 put crank handles on generator and wait for the squad leader's command to start turning.

The squad leader listens in to see if a station is calling, then tests the transmission of the set, and adjusts it to the prescribed wave length.

The operator keeps the log sheet, the assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 stand by to relieve the men on the generator.

When weather necessitates or when setting up is other than temporary the operator, assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 put up the tent as prescribed below. The operator takes a mast section type MS-2 and inserts ridge pole extension piece, making a complete ridge pole. The assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 each take a mast section type MS-2 and insert a tent adapter making an upright. They then insert the complete upright in the ridge pole. The operator unfolds the tent and pulls it over the complete tent pole with the aid of the assistant operator and horseholder No. 3.

The complete section is then raised and placed over the set box. The set box is not disconnected for this purpose. The operator drives the stakes while the assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 hold the tent upright.

The guy ropes are then tightened. The tent is always erected with the flap towards the generator and to the front of the set. When the tent is pitched, six antenna wires will be used.

CLOSING STATION (With tent up).

At the command "Close Station" the squad leader disconnects the antenna, counterpoise, generator, battery leads, and headsets, then closes the set box. Horseholders Nos. 1 and 2 remove the handles from the generator and secure the generator leads, winding them around the generator, and put the cover on. The squad leader puts the phones, battery leads, etc., in the battery box and closes it. The operator, assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 strike and fold the tent, and disconnect the ridge pole and upright.

The assistant operator, horseholders Nos. 1, 2, and 3 (at the double time) each reel up the counterpoise, then untie antenna guy wires and facing the mast, steady the antenna while the squad leader and operator lower the mast. As the mast is lowered the antenna men take in the slack at each other's warning.

The mast being down, the assistant operator, horseholders Nos. 1, 2, and 3 reel up the antenna wires and place them in the antenna bags. Horseholder No. 4 then leads the pack animals to their respective loads.

Squad leader and operator pack antenna bag, tent bag, and assemble all other equipment for packing. The same equipment is always packed on the

same animals, and by the man who unpacked it, and in the reverse order of packing.

When the tent is not used the 5th and 6th antenna wires will not be run out, so the modification in the above procedure is obvious.

All members of the squad get their riding horse from the horseholder No. 4, and the squad leads into column of twos or threes as directed facing the direction of march at the time the order to open station was given.

PANEL SQUAD.

Consists of:

1 Corporal (Operates 54 A set).

1 Panel Man (Operates panels).

SETTING UP 54A SET.

At command "Open Station," wagon halts and corporal and panel operator halt, and dismount, and turn their horses over to driver of wagon. Panel operator taking a mast section and reel runs out antenna to a distance of 100 feet, inserts antenna connector and insulator in mast, and guys mast to ground. Corporal connects antenna connector to other mast section, attaches antenna leadin to antenna, and hold the second mast section while the operator guys it down. Corporal attaches antenna leadin, ground leads, and phone plugs to set and listens in for a call. Panel operator lays out his identification panels rolled and ready to be displayed on call and identification of a friendly plane.



Mobility, Fire Power, and Shock

BY

Lieutenant Colonel CLARENCE LININGER, Cavalry

IT is said that the object of war is to impose one's will on the enemy. To accomplish this, his resistance must first be overcome. His means of resistance are men, materiel, and methods. To win, one must have more means, better means, or must use one's means with greater intelligence. For example, the enemy may concentrate his forces at a great distance and inaugurate strategical moves of vital importance. It is highly desirable to know of this action. The airplane exists and may be used for the purpose. The air service then is organized and a means of obtaining information at a distance is available. The armies meet. The enemy has field works, masses of men and animals, and materiel that one wishes to destroy. Gunpowder and the cannon are used, artillery is organized, and means for destruction have been provided.

In war tasks exist, and for the performance of such tasks, existing means are used, or new ones are devised. One does not first invent a tool and then find something for it to do. The task for it exists first. Every invention that ever found a place in warfare, found it because there was a task awaiting. Every arm, every branch that survives today, does so because there is a function for it to perform.

CAVALRY TASKS IN WAR

What, then, are the tasks for which cavalry is maintained? In war, whether in operations on a large scale or in those of smaller units situations arise in which time is an important factor. Something must be done quickly. A force is needed without delay to take advantage of an enemy's weakness or mistakes or to check the enemy at some point where he is gaining. Again, the area of operations may be extensive or the distance to the point where interference is needed may be great. Obviously there must be a specially organized force whose chief characteristic is such as to satisfy these needs. Many centuries ago men of war discovered that the horse could carry a burden and move for long distances at a rate moderately faster than a man and for short distances many times faster. They made the burden a soldier and his arms, organized, and had a force for the tasks mentioned above. They found that the soldier could remain on his horse and fight or could dismount and fight, thus greatly increasing his value. In the greatest of all wars, ended but six years ago, it was shown again that masses of horsemen, taking unto their own use modern inventions, performed the missions assigned them with results as marvelous as the world has ever known.

CHARACTERISTICS OF CAVALRY

Mobility, fire power, and shock are the characteristics of cavalry. The greatest of these is mobility, defined as the quality of being rapidly and readily moved about. Without mobility cavalry is of little value. On the other hand,

mobility alone is of little value. Mobility is valuable for what it confers. The value is that of the rapidity and readiness with which fire power and shock can be moved. Fire power and shock win battles but they must be used at the times and places most destructive to the enemy. Mobility makes it possible to use the fire power and shock of cavalry when and where wanted within a reasonable time and within a reasonable distance.

There are two kinds of mobility, or stated differently, mobility is used under two different conditions,—off the battle field and on the battle field.

Mobility off the battle field is expressed in long and rapid marches. It is seen in a situation where a cavalry division, say, is shifted quickly from one point to another in the theater of operations. It is used when a unit on a reconnaissance or security mission covers a great area. A treatise on marches would deal with this kind of mobility except from the strategical or tactical standpoints. It is obtained and preserved by march discipline, care of animals, and methods of marching that retain the freshness and vigor of the horses. It is characterized by long and sustained effort at a moderately fast rate rather than by a short effort at a very rapid rate.

Mobility on the battle field is displayed by rapidity of maneuver before fire power or shock is used against the enemy, and by the mounted charge when shock is used. Mobility on the battle field has too many applications for all to be named here. Among the most important are surprise, suddenness and impetuosity of attack, action against the enemy's weak and sensitive points, avoidance of heavy losses by rapid movement, the unexpected in regard to time, direction, place, and type of attack.

There is mobility of the individual as well as mobility of the mass. Without the former cavalry could not fill the country with a cloud of reconnoitering detachments and patrols, could not maneuver rapidly across country, and could not assume those many formations that allow it to fight in such a variety of methods and that are so productive of surprise.

Mobility is the means to an end, the end being to apply fire power and shock at places most harmful to the enemy. Whether fire power or shock be used, mobility should be employed to place the cavalry at the enemy's place of weakness,—at his throat so to speak. This place is sought out by active reconnaissance; when discovered the cavalry moves against it with great rapidity. Such place may lie along the enemy's front and an attack delivered at that point at once may be more productive of results than one delivered elsewhere a half hour later; but generally the point to be struck is the enemy's flank or rear, and there the cavalry must expect to reap its full harvest.

FIRE POWER OR SHOCK

The point of attack having been decided upon the cavalry commander must next choose between fire power and shock. Shock, in a few minutes, ends what it might take fire power hours to accomplish, and releases the cavalry at once for further missions; but if it fail the losses in men and above all

in horses may be tremendous. There is no rule. Shock should be the first thought of the cavalry leader but he should ask himself,—Have I surprise? Adequate fire support? Can I move at speed in suitable formation? If the answer is yes, the solution is the charge. The rash will always resort to shock; the timid or over cautious will always resort to fire power. The skillful leader will use sometimes one and sometimes the other, selecting the one which offers the greater results.

AN HISTORICAL EXAMPLE

Let us illustrate the uses of mobility and fire power by a familiar historical incident—that of Buford prior to and at Gettysburg. Leaving Middletown on the morning of June 29, 1863 he marched with two of his cavalry brigades via Boonsboro, Cave Town, and Monterey Springs to the vicinity of Fairfield. The next day he followed circuitous routes in order to avoid Confederate infantry with which he did not wish to become engaged and arrived at Gettysburg shortly before noon. He saw the strategical importance of the locality and decided to hold it for the Army of the Potomac, the leading infantry and artillery elements of which could not arrive until the following day. In two days Buford had marched some fifty miles, crossed a mountain range twice, slipped around a hostile force, and seized a locality which was vital to the success of a battle and a campaign,—a brilliant example of the use of mobility off the battle field.

Upon arrival at Gettysburg Buford found Confederate infantry approaching from Cashtown, eight miles to the northwest of Gettysburg. This infantry hurriedly turned back. Buford then sent reconnoitering parties to the northwest, north, and northeast. From them and other sources he heard of heavy infantry forces west of Cashtown, that Ewell's corps was advancing from the north, and rumors of Confederates approaching from the northeast. Receiving reports the following morning from his patrols of the approach of the Confederates from Cashtown, he dismounted his cavalry and placed it and his artillery northwest of Gettysburg astride the road upon which the enemy were advancing. From ten until half past ten in the morning he sustained a heavy infantry and artillery attack; at the latter hour he was relieved by Reynold's Federal infantry. In this action we find fire power used with far reaching results.

The question arises,—might not mobility have been used by Buford on the morning of July 1? The answer is no; the information of the enemy was too uncertain. The cavalry must remain in the vicinity of Gettysburg prepared to meet an attack from any direction except the southeast. But let us alter the situation somewhat and make the force at Cashtown the only enemy within a day's march of Gettysburg. Now Buford may march against this enemy, taking up a position three or four miles from Gettysburg, or better yet attacking the head and flank of the hostile infantry. At ten thirty the enemy would be two or three miles farther from Gettysburg than they were in the

actual case and the cavalry losses no greater and probably less. This would illustrate one of the numerous uses of mobility on the battle field.

Mobility is dependent on condition of animals and training of men and animals. Training and condition permit long marches and make possible rapid changes of pace, of direction, of formation. Without such flexibility cavalry falls a prey to more active enemy cavalry, becomes an easy target for artillery and airplanes, fails to reach the appointed place at the appointed time, and is incapable of effective shock action. It is at best only very poor mounted infantry.

IMPORTANCE OF REGIMENTAL OFFICERS

The regimental officer has little to do with organization or type and amount of equipment. He recommends—higher authority decides. But he has everything to do with the training of his men and the training and conditioning of his horses. His objective should be to obtain and hold fast to the characteristic which called cavalry into being thousands of years ago and made it the weapon with which military commanders from Alexander to Allenby wrought destruction upon their enemies. It is the regimental officer who trains cavalry to make long and rapid marches to the battle field and arrive there capable of further sustained effort. It is he who trains the cavalry to maneuver rapidly over varied terrain, make quick changes of pace, direction, and formation, and at the end act by fire power, shock, or a combination of both. It is he who makes of his organization a highly mobile and flexible unit which suddenly appears and strikes, goes on to gather the fruits of victory, or as suddenly disappears only to renew the attack elsewhere with unlesened violence, acting always with rapidity, activity, and surprise.

THE HORSE

The horse makes cavalry, distinguishes cavalry from foot troops, and gives the arm its characteristic of mobility. Cavalry therefore may operate within the powers of the horse and is held by his limitations. The horse in some respects is a hardy creature and in others a delicate one. He continues to carry his rider though terribly wounded but dies from apparently minor causes. He lives in the greatest extremes of climate but rapidly weakens under exposure. He lives upon almost any vegetable diet but soon falls by the roadside when deprived of his food. Misused, cavalry breaks and shatters. Properly used it produces the most astounding results.

CONCLUSION

To sum up: cavalry acts by fire power and shock. Mobility permits fire power and shock to be employed at the time and place most harmful to the enemy. The value of our cavalry therefore can be measured by the effectiveness of its fire, its skill in shock action, and its capacity for sustained movement off and rapid movement on the battle field.

Some Training Principles for National Guard Cavalry

BY

Captain KRAMER THOMAS, Cavalry

Instructor Wyoming National Guard Cavalry

THE training of National Guard Cavalry is always a difficult task, but most of the difficulties can be overcome and good efficient first-line combat cavalry can be developed if each problem is analyzed and solved in the light of the final mission of the unit. The 115th Cavalry, scattered over the State of Wyoming, presents the usual obstacles to training in intensified form, and a discussion of the methods used to overcome these difficulties should be of interest to all Cavalry officers since each is liable to assignment to National Guard instruction duty.

The 115th Cavalry has no two troops in the same town. Some troops are over five hundred miles from the Regimental Headquarters. The average distance between the Regimental Headquarters and Troops is about two hundred and fifty miles. The Regimental Staff itself is scattered in a triangle, each leg of which is about five hundred miles. For armories the State rents such facilities as the towns afford, although two armories are now being built. The men of the troops often live many miles from the troop station, and extreme cold weather in winter adds to the hardship of training. In planning and conducting the training of a Regiment under such conditions, the following principles have been evolved and successfully followed:

(1) *The program must be progressive.*

Although there is a large annual turnover in strength each year, the Regiment must not be held back in its training. Nor must it be held to elementary work until thoroughly proficient therein. The work must progress and it is better that the Regiment should be reasonably proficient in all phases of Cavalry training than expert in a few. Therefore, the programs for armory and field training have been made increasingly advanced with the result that the Regimental and lower Headquarters can now make sound solutions to ordinary tactical problems, issue good orders, and have the troops carry them out proficiently. This was demonstrated last year at camp in many problems. The remarkable part of this system is that new men quickly pick up and adjust themselves to the state of training of their unit as they find it. No difficulty from new men was experienced. The higher the mark, the higher will the troops aim.

(2) *The monthly schedules must be self-explanatory.*

It has been found that when the schedule prescribes a certain amount of work on "par. — to par. — manual" no one looks it up, and the drill period is devoted to such monotonous and morale killing exercises as Manual of Arms and Calisthenics. Therefore, schedules now issued prescribe in detail the work for each drill, and every new subject is thoroughly covered in an attached paper. Thus, if one hour is prescribed for exercises by the squad and platoon in bringing order out of confusion, a short paper is attached to the schedule

explaining the importance of this training and giving model exercises by which it can be taught. New and interesting things are thus constantly put before the troops, uniformity of training by scattered troops is secured, and interest is maintained. Troop Commanders seldom have time to do much studying in advance for drills, but by the above method, a few minutes spent in reading over the schedule prepares a leader to competently instruct his unit in the prescribed exercises. Thus the line of least resistance in armory drill is to follow the schedule.

(3) *Unit Commanders must thoroughly understand the organization of their commands.*

This is particularly true of the Headquarters Troop, Service Troop and Squadron Detachments, whose makeup is complex. This is facilitated by publishing "Function Charts" of all units. Thus the Headquarters Troop is divided into its platoons and sections, and each is analyzed on a separate sheet showing the rank, number and equipment of the men composing it, what their training should be, and what they should be able to accomplish. With this are furnished all necessary Training Regulations, pamphlets and suggestions. For example—the sergeant in charge of the Intelligence Section of the Regimental Headquarters Troop knows the organization of his Section, what each man should be able to do, what equipment he has for training, etc., and he then actually conducts the training of his Section supervised as necessary by the C. O. Staff Platoon.

(4) *To have complete equipment, required first that Commanders know what they should have.*

To simplify this problem, the equipment tables of the Militia Bureau have been studied and individual tables prepared for each unit showing what articles they should have, to whom issued, and for what purpose. A separate table, including exact allowance of expendable supplies, has been prepared for each type of unit.

(5) *Collateral work for officers.*

A short correspondence course to supplement the routine training is given each officer. It is divided into three sub-courses: Tactics, Animal Management and Cavalry Weapons. This also is progressive from year to year. Thus the officers come to camp with a good idea of many important subjects, which are impossible to cover in armory drill. This course is written and conducted by the instructors since the regular Army Course is too long to be suitable for National Guard.

(6) *Instruction must go through unit leaders.*

This is particularly important at camp. The best methods of handling this feature of training have been found to be:

(a) A school (lecture) for officers conducted by instructors, immediately followed by

(b) NCO School taught by troop officers on the day before a subject is taken up by troops on the field, then.

(c) A demonstration by troops before the Regiment, followed by

(d) Actual practice in the subject by the troops themselves.

For instructors to impart instruction direct to troops lessens the incentive of National Guard Officers to learn and lowers their prestige.

(7) *All demonstrations should be made by National Guard Troops themselves.*

A demonstration requires careful rehearsal (instruction) which may best be given to the National Guard Troops that they may benefit accordingly. Also it increases their self-respect to know that they can do these things rather than have Regular Troops make the demonstration for them.

(8) *Instructors should work unobtrusively.*

If the instructors make proper preparations for each new phase of training as outlined in (6) above, they should not have to go on the field and make corrections before troops. The same principle applies to matters other than training. A National Guard Regiment has within itself everything necessary for its operation. If instructors actually take over any executive or operative function, they are depriving some officer of his proper training. When an instructor solves an administrative or other problem, no one remembers how he did it, but if the Regiment has to figure it out alone, the lesson is well learned.

(9) *Regimental Esprit should be built up.*

In all National Guard Cavalry Regiments, and particularly those which are scattered over considerable territory, every effort should be made to attain a high standard of Regimental spirit and sense of unity. Toward this end the 115th Cavalry has found the following method beneficial:

- (a) Publication of a newspaper.
- (b) Wearing of Regimental Insignia.
- (c) Adoption of a Regimental Motto, "Powder River."
- (d) Regimental Summer Camp.
- (e) Encouraging little Regimental customs and practices, which are exclusively "115th Cavalry."

(10) *The Regimental Staff must function whether scattered or not.*

As an example of how this can be done, the 115th Cavalry was assembled for Summer Camp from its many home stations by the issuing of a Warning Order and a Field Order prepared by the Regimental Staff. These Orders were so complete that the regiment was assembled without a hitch, and no other instructions were sent out. The Regimental Commander sent a "Staff memo" to all Staff Officers calling on each to submit his paragraph for each order. These paragraphs were then coordinated and consolidated into the Warning Order and Field Order, each was issued at the proper time, and no further information was furnished or requested.

The principles given above have been tried and found sound. They have been instrumental in making a good, efficient Cavalry Regiment, which is not only able to "drill" but can march, camp, handle advance guard, outpost and similar duty, fight mounted or dismounted, make a good solution and take effective action on any problem with which it may be faced.

The International Polo Tournament Mexico City, D. F. Mexico

BY

Captain EDWARD M. FICKETT, Cavalry

For a number of years conditions in Mexico have been such as to keep a large part of the United States Army on the border looking over into that country, but prohibited from going over to see what it was like. From the casual contacts that many United States officers have made it seemed as though Mexico should be a very interesting place, and that there were some very interesting and pleasant people there. So much had been said and printed in the United States about the Mexicans being people habitually addicted to turning over in bed and shooting somebody just to keep their hands in, that finding the opposite of such a condition was to the people who experienced it a very pleasant surprise. But there was that everlasting curiosity. What was over there anyway? So said most of us who had been stationed on the border for any length of time. The result was that when Major E. L. N. Glass, Cavalry, now Assistant Military Attache of the Embassy of the United States at Mexico City, and formerly of the 10th Cavalry, was in Fort Sam Houston in December of 1923 during our last Mid-Winter Polo Tournament here, he and a group of polo enthusiasts got together on a scheme to see if an International Polo Tournament in Mexico City could be arranged somewhat along the lines of our own Mid-Winter Tournament in San Antonio. It was thought that the two could be run more or less together since civilian teams coming to San Antonio for the winter would probably be willing to ship to Mexico City for a tournament, and if the scheme could be put over once it would probably be possible for more and more of the teams from the Army to make the tournament.

Despite the fact that at the time the plan was first suggested, a revolution was in progress in Mexico, the idea was well received, and with the decline of revolutionary activities, our hopes grew stronger and stronger. The great thing which had to be overcome was the initial inertia; once that was overcome and things started moving, the project moved forward rapidly. A number of trips were made by Major Glass in the interest of the tournament, and without his energy, and willingness, tact, and ability in overcoming last minute obstacles, it is probable that the arrangements could not have been made. Srs. Eduardo Utrubide and T. Algara of the Mexico City Polo Club came to San Antonio during the summer and explained a great many things to us which were not clear in the discussions as they had been going on. Baron A. von Schroeder, also of the Mexico City Polo Club was invaluable in his assistance in getting the scheme under way. Even with the assistance of all these gentlemen, it appeared up to about three weeks before we would have to leave that the difficulties in the way of the trip were insurmountable. Eventually, however, all difficulties were cleared away and the trip made. The

official story of the tournament as reported to the War Department is as quoted:

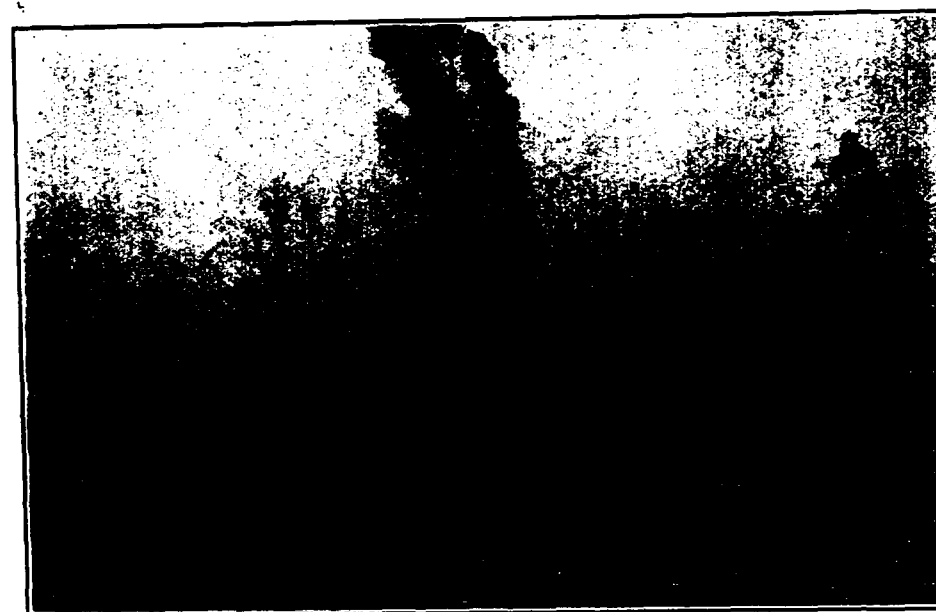
"An invitation was received by the Commanding General, Eighth Corps Area from the Board of Directors of the Polo Club of Mexico to send two Polo Teams from Fort Sam Houston, Texas, to Mexico City to participate in a Polo Tournament between these teams and teams representing the Polo Club of Mexico. At the request of the Corps Area Commander authority was granted by the War Department, under date of November 17, 1924, to send two teams to Mexico City, subject to the condition that the only expense to the United States would be that of commutation of rations for the enlisted men accompanying the teams for a period not to exceed thirty days."

"The official party consisted of Colonel John F. Preston, Chief of Staff; Colonel James F. McKinley, Corps Area Polo Representative; Lieutenant Colonel C. R. Norton, Polo Representative, Fort Sam Houston, Texas; Captain E. M. Fickett, Cavalry, Acting Quartermaster, and the First Team consisting of 1st Lieutenants Guy C. Benson, 12th F.A. (Captain), John A. Smith, 15th F.A., Eugene McGinley, A.D.C., M. McD. Jones, Cavalry, and Captain John A. Hettinger, Cavalry; and the Second Team consisting of Majors John F. Lapham, F.A.-O.R.C., (Captain), Frank M. Andrews, Air Service, C. B. King, 15th F.A., 1st Lieutenants B. M. Fitch, 12th F.A., and J. M. Clark, Air Service; and eighteen enlisted men of the 2nd Division. The official party, with the exception of Captain Hettinger and 1st Lieutenant Guy C. Benson, who accompanied the horses, arrived in Mexico City on December 5th. The horses arrived in Mexico City one week prior to the arrival of the players and when the players arrived the horses had been conditioned to the extent that light practice could be held and within a few days scrimmage was possible. Each day after the arrival of the players, up to and including December 12th, either light workouts or practice games were held."

"In company with Major Glass, Assistant Military Attache, the official party, on December 6, 1924, called on the Secretary of War and was received most cordially. The party received most courteous treatment at the hands of all government officials with whom they came into contact. The only other official call that was made was upon Mr. Sheffield, the United States Ambassador. Mr. Sheffield was sick during the visit of the Polo Teams in Mexico City, but Mrs. Sheffield gave a most delightful tea to the entire party. Major and Mrs. Glass were most cordial and entertained the entire party in their home. A great deal of the credit for the success of the Polo Tournament is due to the untiring efforts of Major Glass."

"The First Team played two games to win the President's Cup. On December 13th, our First Team defeated the Mexican First Team by a score of 9-1. On December 16th our First Team defeated the Mexican First Team by a score of 11-1. No one man on the American First Team stood out above the others. The team as a whole displayed splendid team-work and never was in danger of defeat."

"Our Second Team duplicated the work of the First Team by winning two games straight from the Mexican Second Team on December 15th and 17th. They defeated their opponents by scores of 11-2, and 14-2. The Second Team as a whole displayed excellent team-work. The two out-standing players on the Second Team were Major C. B. King, 15th F.A., and Major J. H. Lapham, F.A.-O.R.C. The line-up for the First Team was as follows: Lieut. Benson at No. 1, Lieut. McGinley at No. 2, Lieut. Smith at No. 3, Lieut. Jones at No. 4, Captain Hettinger, substitute, played at different positions for several periods in the two games. The Second Team had five men in their line-up and played all of them in each game. Two of the players kept their positions throughout their two games, Major King at No. 1, and Major Lapham at No. 4. The other three, Major Andrews, Lieutenants Fitch and Clark, alternated at the other two positions."



The Fort Sam Houston "Yellow Jackets" and the First Team of the Polo Club of Mexico
Left to Right: Mr. Manuel Campero, Mr. Eduardo Iturbide, Mr. Miguel Parada, Mr. Jorge Parada, Major E. L. N. Glass, Umpire, Lt. G. C. Benson, Lt. E. McGinley, Jr., Capt. J. A. Hettinger, Lt. M. McD. Jones.

"On December 18th an exhibition game was played by two teams, each composed of two American players and two Mexican players taken from their respective first teams. The line-up for the White team was Lieutenants Smith and Jones of the American Team, and General Iturbide and Mr. Campero of the Mexican First Team. The Yellow team was composed of Lieutenants Benson and McGinley of the American First Team and Mr. George Parada and Mr. Miguel

Parada of the Mexican First Team. Both teams apparently were of equal strength and the final outcome was a victory for the White Team by a score of 7 to 5. The game was a fast one and strongly contested.

"On December 19th an exhibition game was played by the two Mexican teams, strengthened by two American players, namely, Captain Hettinger and Major Andrews who played on opposing sides. There was a noticeable lack of teamwork in the game; however, the individual players rode hard and were most ag-



The Mexican Second Team

Reader's Left to Right: Mr. Archibaldo Burns, Major E. L. N. Glass, U. S. A., Mr. Miguel Parada, Mr. Antonio Pliego.

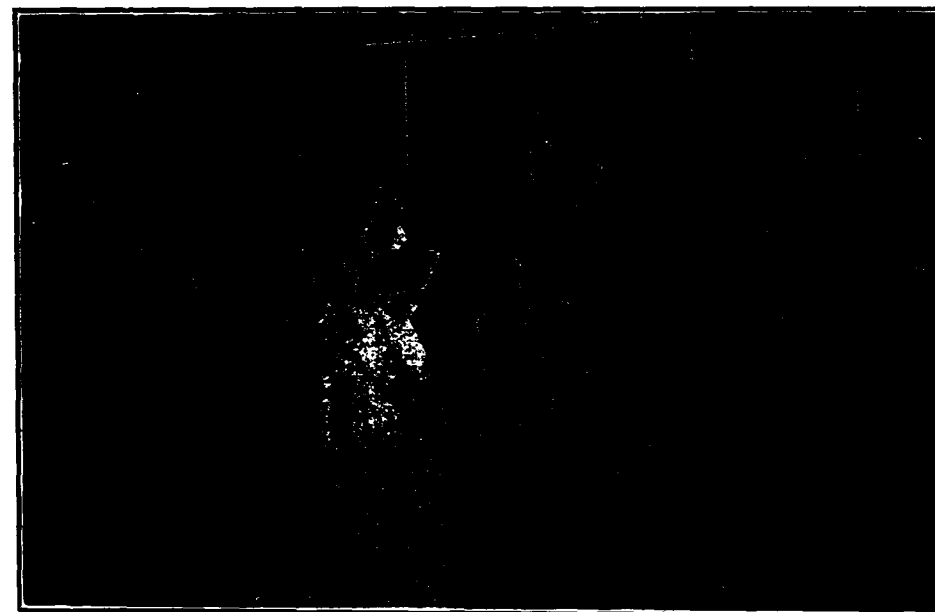
gressive at all times. From the standpoint of the spectators it was an interesting game.

"The only other scheduled game in the tournament in which the Americans took part was the Final Exhibition Game between the two American Teams. Lieutenant Jones played on the Second Team in place of Lieut. Fitch who played on the First Team. This game was looked upon as a game between our First and Second Teams. It was an exceptionally fast game, bitterly contested, and a thriller throughout. The final outcome was a victory of 7-6 for the Second Team.

"There are two fields in Mexico City at the present time. The practice field is very hard and should not be used for fast playing. It is very trying on the feet and legs of the animals. The second field belongs to the new Polo Club of Mexico.

Within a year it will be an excellent field when it becomes thoroughly covered with grass which is now very thin.

"From the experience of our teams in Mexico City it is believed that ten days is necessary to accustom our horses to the change in altitude; one week is sufficient for the players. During the tournament the teams experienced no trouble from the horses not being in condition as they had been in Mexico a sufficient length of time to get used to the altitude. From the standpoint of the care of

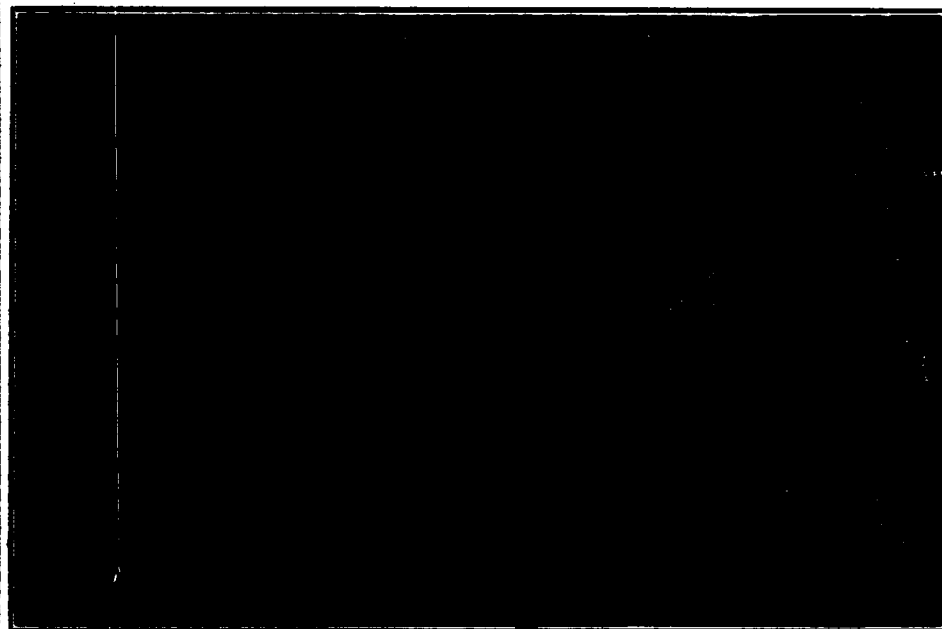


Senora Manuel Campero, Presenting the Polo Club Cup to Major Lapham at Cafe Chapultepec, December 18, 1924

animals, the most important thing about the climate of Mexico is the rapid evaporation which occurs there. Under no circumstances should grooms be allowed to sponge down the horses after playing; they should be covered with blankets and walked slowly until dry. During the winter months blankets should be used from about 4:00 o'clock in the afternoon until the sun fully comes up the following morning. Colds are easily contracted and due to the high altitude are most difficult to throw off.

"The fine spirit, and the gentlemanly and sportsmanlike manner in which the members of the two Mexican teams conducted themselves were at all times most noticeable; even though the teams were unevenly matched, individual members of both Mexican teams gave numerous exhibitions of hard riding aggressiveness. The players on both Mexican teams invariably played as hard during the last chukkers of each game as they did at the commencement of the game. Their splen-

did spirit and clean playing throughout the tournament was commented on by each and every member of the American teams. It is a fact that the actual playing of the Mexicans improved a great deal during the tournament. With the exception of two or three players it was their first experience of either seeing fast polo or taking part in it. Many of their horses were finely bred and fast, but with very few exceptions had not the best of polo training. It is apparently very difficult for them to get competent trainers and farriers in Mexico City. It is believed that within a couple of years the Mexicans will have some excellent polo teams; they have plenty of money to buy good ponies and will not rest until they have won back the challenge cup which was presented to the Polo Club of Mexico by General Calles, the President of the Republic.



Presenting the President's Challenge Cup at the Cafe Chapultepec, December 18, 1924.
General Carrillo Representing President Calles Presenting the Cup to Colonel J.
F. Preston, Representing the Commanding General, 8th Corps Area.

"The Mexican players are most anxious to improve their game and have extended invitations to a number of our First Team players to spend their vacations in Mexico City as their guests; they are anxious to have some of our good American players play with and coach their teams.

"The press was very liberal in their write-ups of the American players and the games. All of the papers carried stories, pictures and cartoons of the games. It is a fact that all the Mexicans with whom the official party came into contact

did everything in their power to make the visit of the Americans pleasant. No stone was left unturned by them to make the trip a memorable one."

Our hosts arranged many pleasant social events which afforded an opportunity to become better acquainted with the Mexican people, and to appreciate their generosity and sportsmanship in arranging this tournament. The party given by the Polo Club of Mexico at the Cafe Chapultepec in honor of the visiting polo players is one that stands out from many of the less formal affairs. The President's Challenge Cup, the cup of the Polo Club of Mexico, and the individual trophies were presented at this party with suitable ceremonies. The President's Cup was presented by General Carrillo, Chief of Staff of General Amaro, Secretary of War, in the name of, and representing President Calles who was unable to be present. A very gracious speech was interpreted by General O'Neill, Assistant Chief of Air Service, and was replied to by Colonel Preston, representing Major General Summerall, the Corps Area Commander.

The Polo Club of Mexico Cup was presented by Mrs. Campero, wife of the President of the Polo Club and the star number 1 of the Mexican team, and was accepted in the name of the Corps Area Commander by Major J. H. Lapham, the captain of the "Whips." Individual trophies were presented to each of the players on each team, after which appropriate dedication ceremonies were held.

The Mexico City Country Club also gave a beautiful party in honor of the polo players which was thoroughly enjoyed by everybody. On this occasion our hosts again came forth with an additional set of trophies, presenting silver cigarette cases to the Chief of Staff, Col. Preston, and the members of the two teams. This was a fancy dress party, the principal idea being polo; the result was that two of the fine horses of the Mexican string were occupying places of honor in box-stalls alongside the dance floor.

The "Fronton" and the bull-fights took hold of the American players and we all enjoyed them very much. The "Fronton," by the way is a kind of a glorified hand-ball court, with stone floor, end walls, and one side wall. The other side is open to a great hall seating probably 2,000 persons, but separated by a wire netting. Here they play the game of "pelota" with a small hard rubber ball about the size of a billiard ball, and a fiber basket tied to the wrist. The basket looks a little like a lacrosse racquet. The game is fast, difficult and interesting, but it is no game for a beginner or a novice as some of the boys found out when a private game was arranged one morning. The ball has a bad habit of sliding out of the basket and running up the arm, kissing one gently on the cheek, and other such pleasant tricks. And as the Mexicans say when one asks them if it is dangerous, "Oh yes, every once in a while some one gets killed." The bull fights, too, were a great subject of conversation and argument.

Interest became so keen in the bull-fighting that our friends arranged a private bull fight or "noveada" for us, so that we might have an opportunity to see and judge for ourselves just what kind of a sport it was to be in the ring with an infuriated bull. The only trouble was that the fight was arranged for the morning after the party at the Cafe Chapultepec where the cups were presented. The two

The Mexican and American Teams After Presentation of Cups

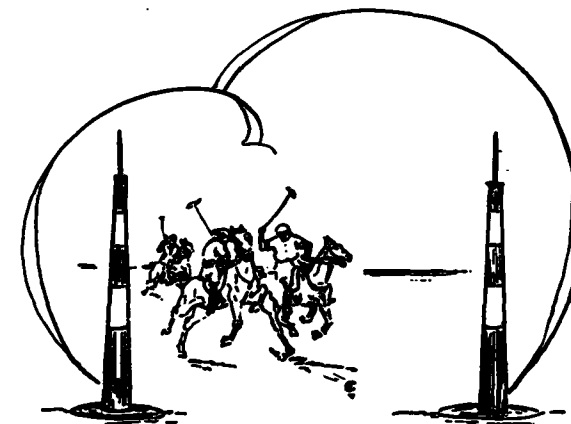
Left to right, sitting: Capt. J. A. Hettinger, Lt. J. A. Smith, Lt. E. McGinley, Jr., Lt. G. C. Benson, Col. J. F. Preston, G. S., Major J. H. Lapham, Col. J. F. McKinley, Major F. M. Andrews, Major C. B. King, Lt. B. M. Fitch, Lt. J. M. Clark. Standing: Mr. Nacho Orvanllanos, Mr. Tito Algarra, Mr. Jorge Parada, Mr. Eduardo Iturbide, Mr. Manuel Campero, Major E. L. N. Glass, U. S. A., Capt. E. M. Fickett, U. S. A., Mr. Julio Mueller, Mr. Archibaldo Burns, Mr. Antonio Pilego, Mr. Henry Lacey.

INTERNATIONAL POLO TOURNAMENT

193

toreadors were Tito Algarra and Julio Mueller, both of the second team and seasoned amateur fighters. The balance of the "cuadrilla" were supposed to be Americans, but as the hour approached, a number found that they were very ill, or otherwise unable to take part. However, four of our players discovered how fast a peevish bull could move and one, who had some preconceived ideas as to bull-fighting, found out that his idea was all wrong. After testing it three times, and the bull, having won two out of the three falls, he left the field to the bull.

The result of the tournament and of the entire trip is believed to have been of great value to both the countries. The friends made, the friendly feeling established, the sportsmanship of the players and the spectators demonstrated, and the mutual feeling of understanding and cooperation founded are believed to be real and definite contributions to a new era in the relations between the people of Mexico and the United States. Everywhere the Americans went they found the greatest desire to help them in their difficulties with the language, and customs of the country. The people of all classes were much interested in the tournament, and as a result of the tournament are taking a stronger and stronger interest in polo. It is thought that this tournament is not only the fore runner of many similar tournaments in Mexico, but that Mexican teams will soon be coming to the States and competing in our tournaments. They have already signified their intention of challenging for the President's Challenge Cup next year.



A Word As To Field Maps

BY

Colonel W. C. BROWN, U. S. Army

NO class of line officer has greater need in the field of good maps than the Cavalry officer, and this is true whether he be a lieutenant commanding a small reconnoitering patrol, or a Colonel in command of an independent column.

To supply these maps is of course one of the functions of the staff, but in the past they have not always been successful in producing the goods when wanted, as the writer has had the misfortune to experience.

The following examples are taken from actual personal experience.

In an Indian campaign in middle Idaho in 1879 *no maps* were supplied, for the very good reason that the government maps of that day marked our theatre of operations as "UNEXPLORED."

When the Spanish War came on the War Department essayed to do better, so the officers down to the grade of Captain and probably others, were issued a map of Cuba compiled shortly previous and which therefore embodied practically all that was known of Cuba at that time. The map which I received comprised 9 sheets, each 27" x 42", on a scale of 1" = 4 miles, the whole weighing a full pound. None of us knew where we were to land in Cuba so it was necessary to carry the whole big roll of sheets, but when we landed at Daiquiri, and it was known that Santiago was our objective, the writer cut out from the appropriate sheet a piece 6" x 8" which covered all and even more of the Cuban terrain which had any interest for us. But even this scrap was of *paper* and required unusual care in the torrential rains to which we were exposed to prevent its being disintegrated to a pulp.

In the Philippine Insurrection we fared worse, for the old Spanish maps supplied us were printed on paper almost as fragile as eggshells, and required the greatest care in handling to prevent their being torn. Some, compiled hurriedly in Manila, were blue printed from tracings but were lacking in detail.

In 1916 came the Punitive Expedition and the map of Northern Mexico supplied was printed on very thin paper and on a scale of 1" = 16 miles,—not much better than a sketch map,—and abounding in inaccuracies.

Conditions there were such that the commander of a column was obliged to refer constantly to the map, not an easy matter in high winds and occasional rain storms. The reader will ask, "Why not use a map case?" This is all very well but it adds just one more article to one's personal equipment. In Cuba we were afoot and officers carried everything, rations and all, on their backs. In Mexico we were mounted but with no transportation for officers' rolls so that, as *all impedimenta* had to be carried on the back of the horse, even a light leather map case made just one extra article to carry.

MAPS ON CLOTH

When I returned to the United States I determined to have a map *on cloth* affected by neither rain or wind, which after its being consulted could be stuffed back into one's pocket or saddle bags with no more care than one would take with a handkerchief.

After some investigation and experiments we find that there are several kinds of cloth maps which have varying degrees of merit, some very easily and quickly made, others which require more technical skill, but none difficult.

Blue print cloth is a commercial article, and with it an ordinary blue print (white on blue) can be made by direct print if the map to be reproduced be on thin transparent paper, as is the case of our General Staff Map of Northern Mexico, or a blue on white can be secured by first making a Van Dyke print or reversed negative as described below.

METHODS OF PREPARATION

Both of these are as tough as ordinary tracing linen, but in both cases the sizing in the linen gives us an article somewhat lacking in pliability—it is the same in this respect as ordinary tracing linen, no more and no less. To secure a map on a softer material with the pliability of a handkerchief, one must prepare his own sensitized blue print cloth, which is fortunately easily done by using the following formula:

- | | | |
|----|----------------------------------|--------|
| I | Citrate of Iron and Ammonia..... | 1¼ oz. |
| | Water | 8 oz. |
| II | Red Prussiate of Potash..... | 1⅞ oz. |
| | Water | 8 oz. |

Dissolve and filter each separately.

Select a fine meshed cotton material—100 meshes to the inch or finer. It should have some "body" and not be too thin. Such material can be had at from 50c to 75c per yard.

Stretch with thumb tacks on a clean board.

Mix equal parts of I and II in a saucer and, in a dimly lighted room, apply with a soft sponge to the cloth, going over it back and forth and crossways until thoroughly coated, then place in the dark to dry, and after the cloth is dry *keep in a dark place*.

If no facilities other than a printing frame be available and the map to be copied be on thin paper, an ordinary blue print copy on cloth (white lines on blue ground) can be secured by direct printing.

A step in advance of the above giving blue lines on a white background may be obtained at a photostat establishment, making what is known as a Van Dyke print or negative by placing the map (which must have no printing on the back) face to face against a sheet of sensitized Van Dyke negative paper, which when developed gives a *reversed* white on brown print to be used as a negative.

This latter is now used as a negative by placing it in the printing frame, face to face with the sensitized cloth. The resulting print is washed and dried, the same as in making ordinary blue prints.

Better results, however, are obtained by making a wet plate negative, enlarging or reducing as may be desirable, using a prism in the lens when photographing. If, however, the photographer is not equipped with a prism, the negative can be restripped on another piece of glass, making it a reverse negative. Place the negative over the sensitized cloth. Make the exposure in the sunlight, experimenting first with small scraps to determine the length of time of exposure required. This will give a blue line print with white background. For details of this latter method the writer is indebted to the Clason Map Company of Denver, Colorado.

In all the above prints the blue may be intensified by immersing for a few seconds, after the first thorough washing, in a 4% solution of hydrochloric acid, when it is again thoroughly washed.

These several methods are described because the facilities for one kind may be available but not the other.

It is desirable, of course, to get as clear a negative as possible, and the same negative should suffice for the purposes of printing all the copies of a given map required in any Corps Area.

Since the above was written, attention has been called to reproduction by Planography, which is applicable in the present instance, the details of which have been supplied by the Washington Planograph Company of Washington, D. C.

In this process a wet plate negative is first made, which is then printed onto a flat zinc plate which has by the use of chemicals been sensitized. The printing is done from the zinc plate on cloth giving a permanent beautiful black on white.

This process, it will be seen, is more technical than the others but appears more suitable for producing maps in large quantities.

Editor's Note—Samples of maps on cloth prepared by the methods described in the above article by Colonel Brown have been examined and the results are quite remarkable. Their legibility is at least equal, and possibly superior, to that of maps on paper, and their superior durability is unquestionable.



The Service Coat

BY

Major P. R. DAVISON, Cavalry

THERE is no stigma attached to, or criticism made of, an officer who expresses himself, verbally or in writing, concerning armaments or organization. In fact, he is encouraged to experiment and endeavor to develop ideas which tend to increase the efficiency of the fighting forces of the United States. Weapons are constantly undergoing a change. Some changes minute and unnoticed unless one be of a technical turn of mind and studies the mechanism carefully. Other changes outstanding. Marked revolutions in both design and use.

PROGRESS MADE THROUGH CHANGES

Saddlery has undergone radical changes, with the result that we have at present highly successful saddles for different purposes. I invite the attention of the reader to the fact that I mention saddles in the plural. The officers' field saddle, the enlisted men's modified McClellan and the training saddle. Each designed and used for a particular purpose. No attempt being made to establish one as an ever-ready for all occasions. It was found necessary to use a different type for the officer and the enlisted man. One saddle not being satisfactory for both usages, we improved the McClellan and very commendably adopted outright two French models. The officers' field saddle and the training saddle. On the training saddle, most of the riding at the Cavalry School and most of the riding for pleasure throughout the service, is done. It is strictly a non-military model, but fits into our scheme of training excellently. In the adoption of the above we have lost no part of our nationalism, individualism or of our self respect. To the contrary we pat ourselves on the back for being smart enough to be able to pick the best and put it to our service. It makes absolutely no difference to the horseman who designed the saddle he uses, so long as it is suitable to the work at hand and does not injure the horse.

Should we adopt a policy of, "we will adopt nothing new unless it be of distinctly American invention, design or manufacture," as an efficient fighting machine our army would be doomed. There are brilliant inventive geniuses in other countries. Other countries do not fail to take from us that which is good and successful.

Why should it be considered indiscreet for a junior officer to even so much as harbor the thought that he would like a change in the uniform? Why should he feel that by voicing an opinion he is hurting himself officially or incurring the wrath of the powers on high? Is not, and I hold most vehemently that it is, the uniform a very important part of our equipment? Why then should not this subject be open to development and improvement, and suggestions encouraged. If nature had seen fit to clothe us as the bear or wolf

there would be no need of argument. Since this is not the case the subject is herewith opened and certain views expressed. These views are not the views of any solitary officer but are the collective thoughts of the vast majority of the junior officers in my branch of the service and a goodly number of the other branches, among the few with whom I have had the good fortune to have been thrown. At any social gathering, any place where two or more officers are present, with no official duties to perform, you will hear, sooner or later, the matter of the uniform enter the conversation.

THE SERVICE COAT UNSATISFACTORY

The premise to start with is that the present service coat is unsatisfactory. This statement requires arguments to prove it. Statements of advantages and disadvantages. In the military hospital in which I took my annual physical examination I noticed that all of the medical officers were either in shirt sleeves or in operating gowns. Upon questioning I found that the gowns and shirt sleeves were not worn principally for sanitary reasons, but because the service coat was too uncomfortable to work in. That, in work more of a mental than a physical nature. The opinion was also expressed by a medical officer of considerable experience, that due to the standing collar the service coat is unsanitary. It is a primary cause of boils around the neck. The tight standing collar does not allow for the body heat to escape and causes profuse perspiration. The collar quickly becomes damp and when the exercise is stopped, and the person cools off, the damp collar helps the wearer to contract a cold. The standing collar is only the major bone of contention in the uniform.

Change the collar on the service coat from the standing type to a collar with lapels, similar to the collar on the British field coat.

The contents of his pocket book is one of the chief worries of an officer of the army. He must scratch around quite a bit to make both ends meet. The present uniform does not help him in his problem. The coat costs in the neighborhood of \$65.00 and is not an economical garment. If it is cut to fit so that a smart appearance will result. The coat is too snug for service requiring physical exertion. This snugness is necessary because the coat is entirely built around the collar and not the collar put on the coat. Any good tailor will claim that he could make a good uniform if he could cut the collar. It takes a specially trained expert to do that. After a short period of wear that collar will break down if the garment is worn during our many forms of mounted exercise that require great freedom of the arms, head, neck and shoulders. Shoulder seams burst at the slightest provocation when mounted. Once the coat has been ruined by mounted wear it cannot be assigned to the second string and used for dismounted wear only. Dismounted wear requires a better turn out and a snappier appearance than while mounted. A broken coat has no place left for it to go except to the rag-bag. As we now dress, field work and target practice, are done in flannel shirts. Should we have to wear coats for this duty, as we did during the war, we would have to keep on

hand a coat of large and sloppy dimensions especially for this work. In a very short time an officer has on hand several half worn coats. The material is good and shows little wear. They are broken down and of no further use. If they had been made in a comfortable, useful model, the maximum wear could have been secured from them. This leads to the conclusion that a dress and service uniform combined is more expensive than two separate types would be. That is not the question we are arguing at this time, so nothing further will be said on the matter. It is something to consider however. It is easy to see that we are traveling on a tangent of false economy.

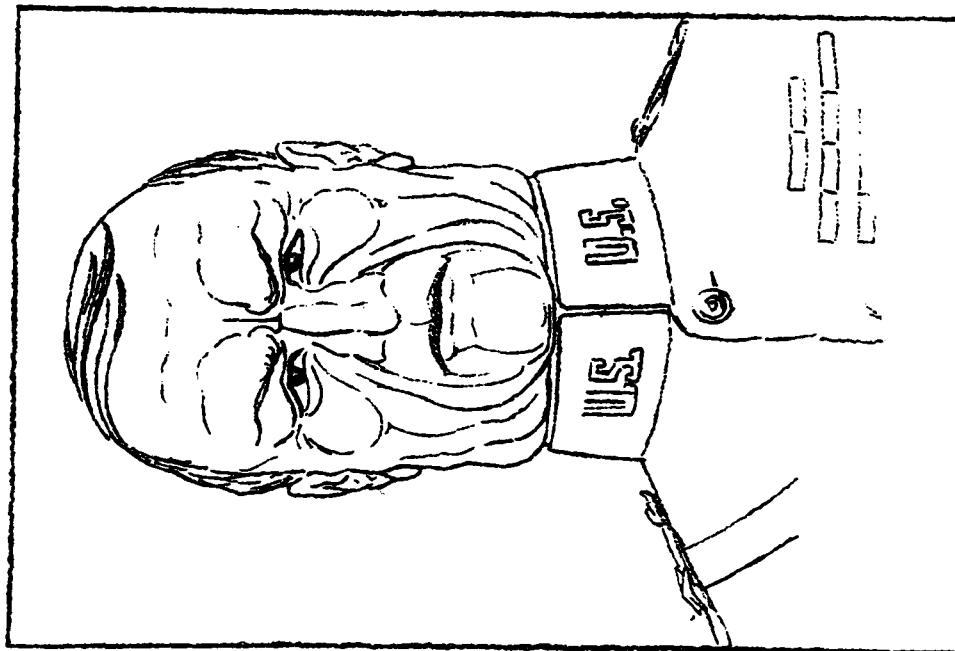
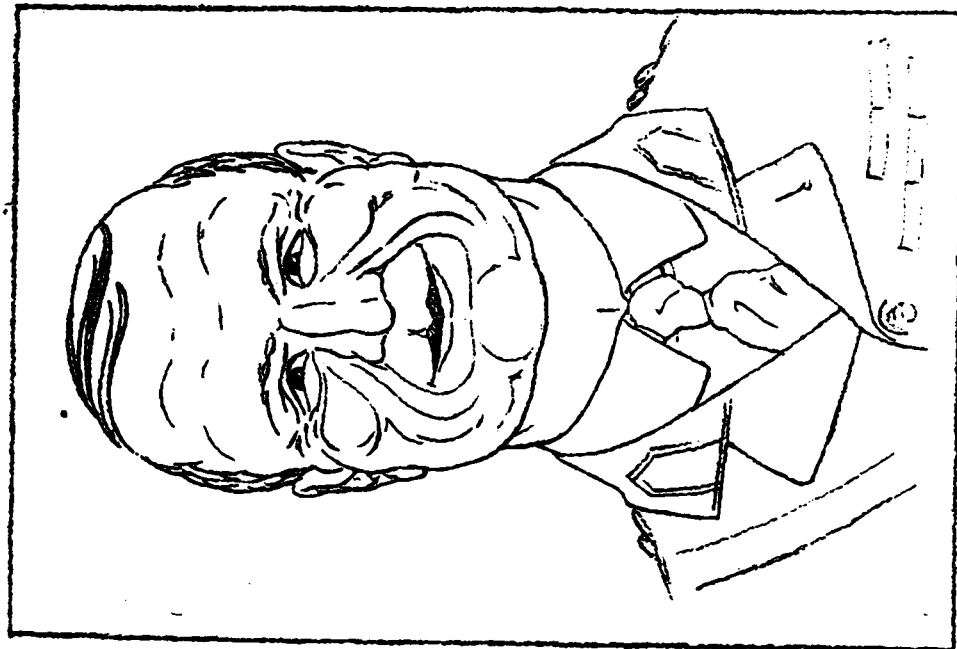
THE ACME OF DISCOMFORT

Dismounted, when a person has to wear a pack or even the belt, with equipment on it, over the coat with the present collar, the torture is like that of the damned. The front of the collar takes great delight in crowding the Adam's Apple toward the back of the neck. In consequence, the collar is left unhooked and the net result, a most sloppy appearance. Did you ever stop to consider what we have around our necks when we are fully dressed in the cold weather? A white linen collar, a coat collar hooked tightly, an overcoat collar hooked tightly. The head, neck and chin are in a set position as though set in concrete. The discomfort can be slightly overcome if the collar is loose and low but no particular, self respecting officer can afford to wear sloppy clothes with the standards as now set.

Air service officers are particularly strong in their objections to the standing collar and I notice, regardless of regulations, that they rarely fly with the coat on. This is somewhat of an argument in itself.

In an office, or class room, it might be thought, by those who are permitted to wear civilian clothes, that the standing collar would not be uncomfortable and that no argument could be raised against it. To those of us that are performing office and class room duty and are required to wear the uniform continually, on duty at the several service schools for example, the matter is of serious consideration. We suffer tortures unimaginable. We have a nasty, raw, red mark around our necks and who can blame us for dashing off our coats and climbing into something comfortable. Sitting around the house in the evening in a poly-garb, half uniform and half civilian. Dashing up the back stairs, in case visitors come, to get back into the torture coat in case the visitors should be of superior rank. Changing again on their departure. Shaving over the raw collar mark is just one of the many discomforts of the day. You cannot keep your mind open and concentrate on the work before you when you are in physical agony because of the garb you are wearing.

The only argument that I have ever heard put forth against the adoption of the lapel collar is that it does not present a military appearance. It is a question in the minds of many officers as to just what constitutes a military appearance when in uniform. Shall we say that the Scotch Highlander is unmilitary in appearance simply because he wears kilts? They do not detract



A Contrast in Expression

one iota from the military appearance of a Scottish regiment on parade or in battle. Greek Guardsmen wear bed room slippers and ballet skirts yet I have never heard them called unmilitary. Some British regiments wore knee pants such as our boy scouts wear. They were no laughing matter and fought with considerable zest. It can be seen that the whole matter of military appearance is one of personal opinion and not a matter of what's what. Let's snap out of our lethargy and give our soldiers a chance to perform their duties with some comfort. We copied the present coat from the Germans, let's copy a new one from some one else.

For summer wear officers may wear a light weight wool coat and cotton breeches. The combination is not unsightly and the garment that requires the most washing and gets the most wear is of a washable material. The cotton coat fits the wearer only once—before it is washed for the first time—after that it is a terribly ill fitting affair. Most officers have ceased to wear the cotton coat entirely. An open collared coat of light wool material would remedy the matter completely.

ECONOMY

I have talked with several first class uniform tailors and am informed by them that a coat could be turned out in less time, better fitting and at a lower cost to the officer if the lapel collar was adopted. There are plenty of tailors who can build a coat with a lapel collar. Those who are able to set the standing collar are experts and few and far between. These same tailors inform me that they can alter the present coat with little difficulty and at an expense of from \$3.00 to \$5.00 depending on the material.

Why not secure a vote of the service on the matter of the change? The ballot of two years past was started and counted in the wrong manner. There were too many items upon which to ballot. The differences in each change slight and misunderstood. The phrases: roll collar, turn down collar, civilian collar or no change, all drew their proportion of the vote and a majority was not secured. The matter dropped. The questionnaire should not be sent to Corps Area commanders to canvass their districts and then give their own opinion. It should be handled direct from Washington. The questionnaires sent out in the same manner that the Statement of Preference is sent out. The questionnaire so worded that the answer required would be yes or no. The matter should be attended to before it is necessary for officers to purchase new uniforms for next winter's wear.

It is difficult to get a matter of this nature before the authorities that are able to take action without its being killed en route. The matter is a sore and much debated subject to subordinates and it is hoped that this will be read in the spirit in which it is written, an argument for a much wished for reform and not a growl in a spirit of bolshevism.

The Cavalry School

BY

Captain ROBERT A. BUSH, Cavalry, O. R. C.

HONOR, education, pleasure, these three things, more or less desired by every officer of the military service, are given to one so fortunate as to be detailed for a course of instruction at the Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kansas.

Honor, because no greater recognition of a Cavalryman's desires could be accorded than a period of training at this institution, which lives, breathes, and is, the true spirit of Cavalry.

Education, for no matter how much, or how little, one who is detailed to the School may know about his Arm, the facilities and opportunities for learning, together with the untiring efforts and patience of instructors, will send any officer forth from the School with a wealth of knowledge concerning the capabilities and requirements of Cavalry.

Pleasure, derived from association with our army's greatest Cavalrymen and their ladies, who, from the arrival of the student officer at the Cavalry School, until his departure therefrom, do everything in their power to make his stay a pleasant period of his military career.

The student, upon his arrival, is very quickly convinced that Fort Riley, so far as he is concerned, means very little, but that the Cavalry School is to be his world. He learns that punctuality and regular attendance at classes, with a *speaking* knowledge of the text being studied, are essentials to his personal happiness. If he is of a mind not readily convinced, interviews with instructors followed by a short conference with the Commandant, will fully convince the student that *time, place and an approved solution* will all require a great amount of consideration on his part.

COURSE OF INSTRUCTION

The course of instruction at the Cavalry School, based upon sound military principles, is the peak of efficiency and training. Every facility which will help the student in any manner is placed at his disposal. Weapons, horses and equipment allotted to his use are of the highest order. The course for the Reserve Officer, necessarily crowded because of lack of time, is nevertheless thorough, and given by instructors who not only know the subject they teach, but also know how to convey that knowledge to the student. The Departments of Horsemanship and Tactics consume the greater number of hours during the course, and although every subject and hour of the course is of interest and value, undoubtedly these two departments are to the average student the best of the School.

The Departments of Cavalry Weapons and General Instruction, each having decidedly important subjects, are hampered by the shortness of the Reserve Officers' course. In all departments the student feels the thoroughness and interest which marks the teaching of every subject, and cannot help but derive some good from every minute of instruction received.

Since the World War it has frequently been the policy of officers, especially of other Arms, to speak in a disparaging manner concerning the Cavalry. The



Over the Fence With the Reserve Officers

Cavalry does not need to apologize to any other branch of service for its existence, and a careful study of the uses and deeds of Cavalry during the World War will quickly dispel any ideas of this nature. Without disparaging the Air Service, the Cavalry is still the eyes of the army. The use of the Cavalry by the Germans in their advance across Belgium, in the early days of the war, furnish ample proof of the above statement. That Cavalry is a protector of the less mobile arms in many instances, is demonstrated by the use of Cavalry in delaying actions when the Allied Armies were retreating toward Paris. That Cavalry has mobility, fire and shock power unequalled by any other arm of the service, is shown in the use of Cavalry by the British in Palestine, when this achieved successes which seemed well nigh impossible, and with a loss of men, horses and equipment which was almost negligible.

THE SABRE AND PISTOL

Cavalry officers disagree to some extent as to the relative value of the sabre and pistol. However, the sabre enthusiasts seem to have the best of the argument, for the sabre is always loaded, and in the hands of men well trained in its use, it is a formidable weapon, giving to the Cavalryman the same dash and spirit that the bayonet gives to the Infantryman. One fortunate enough to witness the demonstration of a mounted attack by well trained troops, armed either with the pistol or sabre, will readily realize that mounted troops, well disciplined and trained in the use of their weapons are extremely efficient, and their effect upon an enemy, both in loss of life and morale, is great. Foot troops, no matter how well trained and disciplined, will be shaken by a mounted charge. A solid line of troopers coming toward one, even though you realize that they are going to stop

before they strike you, will give a thrill never to be forgotten, and will cause even the stoutest of hearts to want to move from the "zone of action."

THE CAVALRY BOARD

The Cavalry Board, on duty at the Cavalry School, is constantly bringing forth revisions in equipment and training, which will improve the Cavalry. Assisted by the school staff, and the troops on duty at the School, which are used for demonstration purposes, the Board is readily acquainted with the feasibility and usefulness of any new equipment or plan for training. The practical demonstration of all phases of instruction at the Cavalry School show the student just what well trained cavalymen are capable of doing, and present to him pictures of the theoretical work he has had, or will have during the course.

GENERAL "A"

The alphabet of the School proves to be confined chiefly to the letter "A," and it is surprising to note what a stumbling block this letter is to the student. Actions and orders of the "A's," from Corporal "A" to General "A" are ever with you, and the many tactical errors and omissions which these models of military tactics are guilty of is readily proven by their bold signatures, appearing on the papers of each student as he gropes his way to victory, or, as is more often the case, defeat, so far as the approved solution of the situation is concerned.

Gettysburg-Antietam and the Kansas-Republican Rivers have been the scenes of many combats which would make such famed soldiers as Hannibal and Napoleon stand awestruck, could they behold the boldness and cunning which mark the engagements and battles fought in these great theatres of war.

The reservation surrounding the School furnishes a variety of terrain which is replete with hazards giving to the most daring horseman any excitement that he may crave. To the uninitiated, Magazine Canyon, Cemetery Slide, Republican Point and Twenty-second Battery Hill are mere names. To those who find these names familiar come memories of thrills, repeated alibis and much writing in the Police Book. Temptations to caress Mother Earth are ever looming in the path of the Cavalry School student.

RESERVE OFFICERS' COURSE

The course for the Reserve Officer is entirely too short, therefore he does not derive full benefit from the instruction and training offered at the School. Toward the end of the course inclement weather curtails parts of the course which are very essential to a well-trained Cavalryman, thereby working a hardship not only on the student, but on instructors as well. If the course could be lengthened the value received would far exceed the expenditure in money. The aim of every Reserve Officer should be to have provisions made for an increase in appropriations for the training of Reserve Officers at the Cavalry School, which would in turn permit a longer course for Reserve Officers, a greater number of officers being detailed to take the course, and it is hoped, a greater opportunity for the graduate of the School to pass along knowledge gained to his brothers.

Too much praise or credit cannot be given to the Commandant and the Staff of the Cavalry School for their efforts in the instruction of, and their courtesy to the student officers. It is to be hoped that every Cavalry Officer of Reserve status may be permitted at some time to have the privilege of attending the Cavalry School.

The Boise, Idaho Endurance Ride

BY

Captain W. R. KIDWELL, V.C., 116th Cavalry, Idaho N. G.

BOISE, Idaho, staged its first Annual Endurance Ride the week of September 14th, 1924. It was held under the sponsorship of the Boise Chamber of Commerce, The Gymkhana Association, and the Adjutant General of the Idaho National Guard.

The judges were Captain L. R. Shafer, 13th Cavalry, U. S. A., Dr. H. E. McMillan of Filer, Idaho and Dr. W. R. Kidwell of Boise, Idaho.

On Monday morning, September 15th, all entrants were weighed. The horses were weighed, pulse, respiration, and temperatures were recorded. Measurements were taken of the chest or heart girth and abdominal girth in the region of the flank. A thorough physical examination was given each animal, special attention being given to any blemish, unsoundness, or abnormalities. The gaits of the various mounts were observed, with riders up, and notes made while moved at a walk, trot, and canter.

Each horse had to carry 200 pounds weight, including the rider. If the rider weighed 155 pounds or more when stripped, he had to carry one pound additional dead weight for every two pounds of live weight over the 155 pounds.

The course was sixty miles, extending from Boise Barracks to Caldwell, a town located about 25 miles from Boise. Here all entrants stopped for the noon rest, fed and watered their mounts, and had a light lunch themselves. They were checked in by the Route Master on arriving and checked out again upon resuming the ride. From Caldwell the route extended to Meridian, and thence into Boise. The requirements were that the horse must complete the sixty miles in not less than 9 hours nor more than 11 hours. This included any stops made to water, feed, rest, or to replace lost or loose shoes. The entrant had to ride the entire distance.

Sergeant George Gatlin, horse shoer of Headquarters Troop, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard, carried his emergency equipment to reset or replace loose or lost shoes. He rode the entire distance each day, in a car with one of the judges and only replaced shoes on the road under the direction of a judge.

Each morning the rider was weighed out with his full equipment, including saddle, bridle, blankets or pads, and any weights that he carried and weighed in each night on completion of the day's ride. An accurate record of all grain or forage fed was kept by the Route Master, Mr. L. M. Davidson of Boise.

The first morning out 27 entrants and aspirants started, including one woman. All finished the sixty miles in the prescribed time, though some came in quite lame. The second day 22 entrants started with one dropping out

enroute. The third day 17 started with two dropping out on the road. The fourth day 11 started with seven finishing, while on the fifth and last day seven started with two being eliminated on the road. The remaining five finished within the prescribed time, as hereinafter stated.

Each morning the judges carefully examined each horse and observed them under the saddle at a walk, trot, and canter to note any lameness or weakness which might have developed during the night. If any were noted the horse and rider were eliminated and not allowed to start the day's ride.

On the morning following the fifth and final day's ride, the judges met at the stables and each horse was carefully examined before the owners or riders were permitted in to care for their mounts. The pulse, temperature, and respiration were again recorded. The riders were then permitted to enter the stables and attend to their horses for a period of fifteen minutes. The horses were then weighed and measured as on the preceding day of the ride, after which they were tried out with riders up, to determine the character of their gaits and to note any weakness. One horse was eliminated, as he was too lame to go on the road. The judges then retired to a private office where all notes and records were carefully gone over to determine the winners.

The winning horse, No. 11, owned and ridden by A. F. Feamster of Nampa, Idaho was a three quarter bred Saddle Horse of *Red Squirrel* breeding. His time for the three hundred miles was 47 hours and 44½ minutes. This horse consumed 51¾ pounds of oats and 102 pounds of hay during the five days, and lost 15 pounds in weight. He gained ¾ inch in heart girth and lost 1¾ inches in flanks.

The horse which was awarded second place was No. 20; owned and ridden by Earl Coleman of Meridian, Idaho. This animal was a three quarter Morgan horse. His time was 48 hours and 53 minutes. He consumed 48 pounds of oats and 92 pounds of hay; losing 20 pounds weight in the five days. He also lost 1½ inches in heart girth and 3 inches in the flanks.

The horse which was placed third was No. 10; owned by the U. S. Government, and assigned to Troop C, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard, at Grace, Idaho. He was ridden by Sergeant E. R. Cox of that Troop. His total time was 48 hours and 32¾ minutes. He consumed 51½ pounds of oats and 105 pounds of hay. He lost 40 pounds in weight. His heart girth was 2 inches and his flank measurement was 4 inches less than when he entered the race. This mount, while making slightly better time than the one placed second did not finish in as good condition. He was continually troubled by interfering behind, which counted greatly against him. This rider also received a cash prize of \$25.00 for showing the best horsemanship during the contest.

The fourth horse, No. 22, was owned by the U. S. Government and assigned to Service Troop, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard at Caldwell, Idaho. He was ridden by R. J. Lonkey of that Troop. His time was 49 hours

and 23 minutes. This animal consumed 47½ pounds of oats and 100 pounds of hay. He lost 20 pounds in weight as well as 1 inch in heart girth and 1¾ inches in the flanks.

No. 6, the fifth horse that finished, was owned by the U. S. Government and assigned to Headquarters Troop, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard at Boise, Idaho. He was ridden by the Commanding Officer of that Troop,—Capt. J. F. Coonan. His time was 48 hours and 27½ minutes, which was the second best time made. This horse consumed 51½ pounds of oats and 113 pounds of hay, losing 40 pounds in weight. He gained ¾ inch in heart girth and lost ¾ inch in the flanks. While this horse was not placed within the money, he deserves favorable mention and praise. It was unfortunate that this animal did not place, because of his wonderful spirit and stamina which was shown throughout the ride. The spirit and horsemanship of his rider who was untiring in his efforts to care for his mount, were no less conspicuous. It is safe to say that Captain Coonan gave more attention to his mount than any other rider, while on the road. However, on the morning of the final judging, this horse could scarcely be moved from his stall: his left hind leg being so swollen and sensitive that it was with difficulty that he was moved at all. This condition, of course, eliminated both the horse and rider. Suffice to say, that Captain Coonan was given the consolation prize which was subscribed by his friends and admirers.

In conclusion, will say that the ride was a success from every angle, especially so, when one considers,—(1) that this was Boise's first attempt at staging an affair of this nature; and (2) that no horses were permanently injured or died as a result of this grueling contest. It demonstrated that blood and breeding counts when it comes to endurance. Also one might be led to believe that the environment and climatic conditions of Idaho, under which these horses lived, are conducive to producing the highest quality of stamina and staying power, which is so much desired in horses of this type. From the interest and enthusiasm shown, the indications are that there will be more and better blooded horses entered for the 1925 Ride than there were last year.



Editorial Comment

DRESS UNIFORM

At the present time, in view of decisions by the War Department, discussion of the subject of dress uniform would appear to be profitless. Nevertheless, the matter is deemed worthy of attention.

It is believed that the blue dress uniform should be revived for both officers and enlisted men. The main objection to such an action, is of course, expense, but for officers it can be demonstrated that two types of uniform are no more expensive than one type for wear on all occasions. As for enlisted men, the additional funds required could not be expended to better advantage in accomplishing an improvement in the morale and contentment of the enlisted personnel. A few years ago millions were spent in enterprises which had this for their object.

It has been found desirable to prescribe for formal occasions, the wearing of full dress blue uniform by the aides to the President. This is appropriate and reasonable. At the nation's Capitol most official functions are under the critical observation of the representatives of foreign countries, and it is proper that the Staff of our Chief Executive should be attired in a manner befitting the dignity of the office.

It is fully as important and for similar reasons that our military attachés abroad and troops on duty in foreign countries should be provided with a dress uniform.

Is it not as important, if not more so, that the army should be so attired as to inspire upon all occasions the respect of our own fellow citizens?

The service uniform was originally the working and field garb of our army. Drab color is associated in all minds with the idea of work—manual labor. And while manual labor is honorable, there is a time and a place for the habiliments thereof. It does not follow that because a plasterer does his eight hours daily task in overalls that he should wear overalls to a social function at night, even though he does change into a clean suit.

It is generally acknowledged that after the day's work is done a change from working clothes to others is desirable from the standpoint of comfort, health and morale. It may be said, "Why not change from one service uniform to another?" The above reference to the plasterer applies here.

A man's dress is reflected in his attitude toward himself and others. The great influence which our attire exercises in affecting our behavior, establishing self-confidence, and contributing to our success in life, is universally acknowledged. As a builder and sustainer of one phase of morale a neat, attractive, well-fitting dress uniform has no equal.

The appearance of our soldiers on occasions of ceremony has been very unfavorably commented upon, and especially in comparison with the Marine Corps. Such a state of affairs must certainly react to the detriment of the self-

respect of the soldier and of the respect in which the uniform is held by civilians.

Much of the criticism of the untidy appearance of enlisted men on pass in the streets of cities and the necessity for the issue of frequent and drastic orders with a view to the correction of such irregularities, is due to the authorization of but one type of uniform for all occasions.

We speak of a uniform, but as conditions are at present, it is at times a mis-nomer, for nothing could be more un-uniform than a gathering of officers with a dozen or more variations in color and material of the service coat and breeches.

INTERNATIONAL ASPECT OF ARMY POLO

The great development of army polo during the last few years is evidenced, among other things, by its present international aspect. A Canadian team has recently been playing at the Coronado Tournaments. Army teams from Camp Lewis and Fort Snelling exchange visits with neighboring Canadian teams. Army teams at Manila line up against their British friends from Hongkong.

Last December two teams from the Eighth Corps Area made a successful trip to Mexico City. And, as a fitting climax, a picked team of the Army is en route to England to defend our title to the International Military Championship of the World.

These events, aside from their interest as sporting contests, are of great value, for the resulting associations with our neighbors to the North and the South, and with the Mother Country across the Atlantic are bound to do much toward the promotion of international understanding and good feeling.

ANNUAL DUES

The proposed amendments to the constitution which were published in the October CAVALRY JOURNAL, and copies later furnished to all members, were adopted at the recent annual meeting. It will be recalled that the purpose of these amendments is to return to the system of payment of annual dues in place of subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL as the monetary requirement for membership in the Cavalry Association.

In order to comply with the Postal laws, the Executive Council has provided that 60% of the \$2.50 prescribed as annual dues shall be designated for subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. There will be no increase in the amount heretofore paid.

Organizations, and individuals not eligible for membership, may as heretofore, subscribe to the JOURNAL at \$2.50 per year.

100 PER CENT MEMBERSHIP

The Fifth Cavalry and the 1st Machine Gun Squadron have a 100 per cent membership in the Cavalry Association.

THE HORSE

There are numerous articles appearing throughout the country in newspapers, periodicals and service journals on the use and improvements of mechanical transportation. These articles naturally attract attention and do a great deal of good in the improvement of various machines and promote their general use. Yet on the other hand, such articles lead many people, both in and out of the Army, to false conclusions as to the old reliable, indispensable means of transportation—the horse and the mule.

The horse (and the mule), within a certain sphere, perform work which could not otherwise be done. They are in reality just as much a commercial and military asset now as they have ever been in the past. The CAVALRY JOURNAL realizes the above facts and proposes in the future to devote a certain amount of space under the heading "THE HORSE" to horse activities, including their use for commercial and military purposes, their production, etc., and we hope, in this effort, to keep the value of the horse before the public and before the Army, that we shall be assisted by all horse associations, as well as individuals interested in both their production and use.

BULLETINS OF RESERVE CAVALRY DIVISIONS

Very commendable enterprise is indicated by the attractive and interesting Bulletins published from time to time by the Reserve Cavalry Divisions.

The Bulletins of the 62d and the 63d Cavalry Divisions, the Arrowhead of the 64th, and The Chevalier of the 65th are worthy of special mention. Their attractive make up and variety in subject matter show that much time and thought are devoted to them.

The Chevalier, published at Chicago by the 65th Cavalry Division Association, is particularly meritorious, and in its printing, half tones, and subject matter compares very favorably with any publication.

SERVICE TO MEMBERS

Are you interested in the latest books on military and other subjects? Are you studying some subject concerning which insufficient information is available at your station?

Is there any matter which you would be interested in looking up if you were in close proximity to facilities afforded by the War Department and its records, the Library of Congress, and other institutions in Washington?

If so, do not hesitate to make your wants known to the Secretary. It will be a pleasure to be given an opportunity to furnish such service to members.

NATIONAL GUARD MEMBERSHIP RECORDS

Attention is invited to the fine records of membership in the Cavalry Association made by the following National Guard organizations:

- 1st Squadron, 106th Cavalry, Michigan National Guard—11 members.
- 2d Squadron, 106th Cavalry, Illinois National Guard—10 members.

115th Cavalry, Wyoming National Guard—16 members.

The above records which compare very favorably with those of regular Cavalry organizations, and are far ahead of other National Guard organizations, speak well for the cavalry spirit and professional zeal of the personnel of the organizations concerned.

Much of the credit for this fine showing is due to the enthusiastic support of the following instructors:

1st Squadron, 106th Cavalry—Major H. T. Aplington, Cavalry.

2d Squadron, 106th Cavalry—Captain J. K. Colwell, Cavalry.

115th Cavalry—Captain Kramer Thomas, Cavalry.

INDEX TO VOLUME XXXIII

The Index to Volume XXXIII of the CAVALRY JOURNAL has been printed and is available for distribution to all who may desire it.

CAVALRY FUND

Since the last report the Tenth Cavalry, the Twelfth Cavalry, and the Thirteenth Cavalry have joined the 100% contributors to the Cavalry Fund.

CERTIFICATES OF MEMBERSHIP

Beginning January 1, 1925, all new members have been and will be furnished an embossed certificate of membership. It was hoped that a similar certificate could be furnished all members, old and new, but this was found to be impracticable as the membership records prior to 1920 are not sufficiently complete to enable dates of enrollment to be ascertained.



Topics of the Day

THE 1925 ENDURANCE RIDE

In view of the excellent showing made by Cavalrymen in the 1924 Endurance Ride, it is hoped that the number of service entries for the 1925 Endurance Ride will be as great and if practicable, greater than last year.

This year the Ride will be held in Vermont from the 19th to the 25th of October. The exact location will be determined and announced later.

Several changes in the conditions of the Ride were decided upon at the meeting of the Board of Sponsors, January 19, 1925.

Questions of eligibility will be determined by the management instead of by the judges as heretofore.

The following section relative to Control Stations has been added:

"Control stations shall be established at approximately every fifteen miles. At these stations every horse must be stopped a sufficient length of time to allow for an examination by at least one of the judges. A record of the time required for this examination shall be kept and shall be deducted from the horse's time for that day, and shall not count against him. This shall not be construed in any way so that the time for lunch at noonday shall be deducted from the horse's time on that day."

The final judging will take place on the day following the completion of the Ride instead of on the second day following.

The minimum weight to be carried has been reduced from 225 to 200 pounds.

The officials of the Ride are as follows:

Chairman, Albert W. Harris; Secretary and Treasurer, C. C. Stillman; Judges, Albert W. Harris, Major Henry Leonard, Dr. W. W. Townsend; Recorder, Lennox D. Barnes; Route Master, Major C. A. Benton; Assistant Route Master, H. H. Reese.

The Ride is under the direction and management of the Board of Sponsors, made up of one representative from each of the following organizations: American Remount Association, Arabian Horse Club of America, Horse Association of America, The Kentucky Jockey Club, The Morgan Horse Club, Thoroughbred Horse Association, U. S. Cavalry Association.

The prizes this year are as follows:

\$500.00 to the *rider* of the horse whose score for condition is the highest at the end of the Ride, without regard to his position at the finish.

\$100.00 in gold to the *rider* who shows the best horsemanship during the Ride, without regard to his position at the finish.

First prize, \$600.00, the Mounted Service Cup, Arabian Horse Club Medal, The Morgan Horse Club Medal, The Morgan Horse Club gold link cuff buttons; second prize, \$500.00, The Morgan Horse Club gold link cuff buttons; third prize, \$400.00, The Morgan Horse Club gold link cuff buttons; fourth prize, \$300.00; fifth prize, \$200.00; sixth prize, \$100.00.

INFANTRY SCHOOL RECREATION CENTER

Many letters have been received concerning the contribution of \$1,000.00 by the Cavalry to the Infantry School Recreation Center Fund as a memorial to our comrades of the Infantry who lost their lives during the World War.

Of these letters, the following are especially noteworthy:

202 Hillcrest Avenue,

Orlando, Florida, January 31, 1925.

President United States Cavalry Association,

1624 H Street, Washington, D. C.

My dear General:

I am just in receipt of a letter from General B. H. Wells, informing me of his receipt of a check for \$1,000.00 from the secretary of your association as a subscription for a bay in the Doughboy Stadium, at Fort Benning. I understand that this bay is to be dedicated by the Cavalry to their comrades of the Infantry who lost their lives during the World's War.

On behalf of the Infantry, I wish to express appreciation of the fine spirit of comradeship which prompted this splendid action. To the Infantry, it means much more than simply a thousand dollars towards the accomplishment of a cherished objective. It is an assurance of the continued growth of the one army spirit which has been in evidence for the past four years. It is an expression of approval of a project that has been very dear to the hearts of most infantrymen. It will have an effect that will reach far into the future, much beyond the mere building of a recreational center or even of a Memorial Stadium. Coming as it did, uninvited and entirely unexpected, it means more to the Infantry than I can express.

Please extend these expressions of heartfelt appreciation to the Chief of Cavalry and the Commandant of the Cavalry School, and their fine assistants who I feel sure must have had an active part in developing the Cavalry spirit that prompted this contribution.

Very Cordially yours,

C. S. FARNSWORTH,

Major General, Chief of Infantry, U. S. Army.

The Infantry School,

Fort Benning, Georgia, January 19, 1925

Lieut. Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry,

Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association,

1624 H Street, Washington, D. C.

Dear Colonel Morris:

I was very much surprised and naturally greatly pleased with your note of January 15 inclosing a thousand dollar check as a contribution from your association to The Infantry School Recreation Center Fund.

The thousand dollars, of course, means much to us, but the feature that

pleases us most and to which we give a value that cannot be measured in money is the one that concerns the interest and sympathy you extend to our efforts by your unsolicited and spontaneous action and the regard and respect your association has manifested for your Infantry comrades who lost their lives in the World War.

Please convey our official and my personal gratitude to your Executive Council and say that we accept the contribution in the spirit in which it is made. Our Recreation Center Board has reserved a bay in Doughboy Stadium which will belong to the Cavalry Arms in perpetuity. The Cavalry colors will fly from the parapet wall above your bay at all times when the field is dressed for pomp, for ceremony or for gala occasions.

At a later date when we have determined the size and quality of pennants and flags, you will be asked to indicate your desires with reference to the Cavalry.

Sincerely yours,

B. H. WELLS,

Brigadier General, U. S. A., Commandant.

THE INTERNATIONAL MILITARY POLO CHAMPIONSHIP

In April 1923 the U. S. Polo Association initiated the idea of bringing together polo teams representing the British Army and the American Army. As a result, on May 1, 1925, General Pershing wrote to General, The Earl of Cavan, Chief of the Imperial General Staff, British Army, as follows:

My dear General:

The American Polo Association, through its Chairman, is arranging for a special polo match this Autumn between teams representing the British and American Armies.

I have gladly accepted for the American team, feeling that such a contest is the logical outcome of two friendly, horse-loving countries engaged in developing certain of its men for mounted work in the National Defense.

I sincerely hope you will accept for the British Army in order not only to further the development of polo in our respective Armies but to foster and extend the pleasant relations between the Nations.

Yours most sincerely,

JOHN J. PERSHING,

General of the Armies,

Chief of Staff.

In reply to General Pershing's letter, accepting the invitation, General Cavan said, in substance: I am delighted with your wonderfully hospitable proposition for an Army International Polo Match. Speaking entirely on my own behalf, as one friend to another I am anxious that this matter should set an example to all the world for clean sportsmanship. I therefore strongly advocate:—

- (1) That the teams be strictly confined to officers on the active list of our regular forces.
- (2) That the ponies should be the bona fide property of the officer on the active list of the Regular Army, or the actual property of the War Department.

General Cavan ended by saying "how very deeply we all appreciate the generosity of your offer, and how keenly we welcome such an opportunity of inaugurating under your lead a competition that should tend to make our respective soldiers even more friendly and intimate than they are already".

The above letters from two great polo enthusiasts put in operation the machinery which organized the first International Military Polo Tournament, which was played at Meadow Brook on September 12, 15 and 18, 1923. The American Army won the first and third games, and the title of Military Polo Championship of the World.

There was a tacit understanding that the title was to be played for every two years, and alternately in America and England. Accordingly, on June 19, 1924, a cable was received from the Hurlingham Committee inviting the U. S. Army polo team to visit England as their guests during the Summer of 1925 to play a return match with the English Army. A reply was cabled accepting the invitation.

In the selection of the Army team, previous War Department policy has been to concentrate on the development of a few men. As a result, great advances in Army polo have been made as evidenced by the winning of the Junior Championship in 1922 and 1923, and the Military Championship in 1923. Practically the same officers made up the team in all three events.

The War Department has decided it is not safe to depend upon these same men, nor is it desirable, and it is the policy now to look for new and promising material. With this in mind, the Army Central Polo Committee acted upon a large list of candidates highly recommended, and from which six officers have been selected who will represent the U. S. in England in 1925.

The team will assemble at Fort Myer, Va., about March 10th, where final arrangements will be completed, and it is expected sail for England March 28th, where, after a series of practice games with selected teams, the Military Championship Tournament will be played at Hurlingham, the middle of June.

The Army team at present is composed of:

Major Louie A. Beard, Q.M.C., Captain.

Major A. H. Wilson, Cav.

Captain Peter P. Rodes, F.A.

Captain Charles H. Gerhardt, Cav.

1st Lieut. Eugene McGinley, F.A.

1st Lieut. John Andrew Smith, Jr., F.A.

Thirteen enlisted men and twenty-five first class ponies complete the team.

PREPARATION BY ARMY TEAM

Since January 24, 1925, and until March 7th, the Army team was having intensive practice at the Flamingo Polo Club at Miami where it had had excellent preparation through playing against well-mounted teams, some of the members of which were among the country's best players. Expert observers report that the individual and team work of the army players has reached a high standard. While comparisons are difficult reports indicate that the team will be as strong as that which won the title in 1923.

Major Beard reports great enthusiasm on the part of everyone at Miami as to the team's prospects. A fund of \$15,000, which was raised by enthusiastic supporters of army polo, will be utilized for the purchase of a number of first class ponies.

Major Beard during a game had the misfortune to fracture his right thumb, but fortunately it occurred near the end of the team practice at Miami and he will be able to play again when the team arrives in England.

THE BRITISH TEAM

No information has been received as to the make-up of the British Army Team, but six of the seven players who constituted the British team in the matches last year for the International Cup will be eligible to play in the International Military Match, namely, Major V. N. Lockett, Lieut. Col. T. P. Melville, Major Geoffrey H. Phipps-Hornby, Major T. N. Kirkwood, Major E. G. Atkinson, and Major F. B. Hurndall. It is probable that some of these will be on the four which the Army team will meet at Hurlingham in June.

Of the above players, Major Lockett, Colonel Melville and Major Atkinson all played in the International Military Match of 1923.

R. O. T. C. HORSE SHOW—MICHIGAN AGRICULTURAL COLLEGE

Under the direction of Lieutenant Colonel T. L. Sherburne, Cavalry, the third annual R. O. T. C. Horse Show of the Michigan Agriculture College will be held at East Lansing, Michigan, May 29 and 30, 1925.

Last year a very successful two days show of eighteen classes was held with entries from all over Michigan, including the Kent Saddle Club of Grand Rapids and the following clubs of Detroit: The Grosse Pointe Hunt Club, The Detroit Riding and Hunt Club, and the Bloomfield Hunt.

This year there will be eighteen classes with \$1,000.00 in cash prizes in addition to cups or plate and ribbons for each class.

The show is sponsored by the Corps of Cadets at the Michigan Agricultural College, to foster the interest in horses of the general public in this state of the motor car.

Additional information may be obtained from Captain William C. Chase, Cavalry, Secretary-Treasurer, The Horse Show Committee, East Lansing, Michigan.

THE RASP

The 1925 RASP, the annual publication of the Cavalry School is now well under way and will go to press in June. This year's volume will be

bigger and better than ever and will contain a complete series of pictures depicting the activities of the school year from start to finish.

For those who expect to be at the Cavalry School next year, THE RASP will contain much valuable information. For those who have been there it offers an opportunity to renew old acquaintances and to learn why Aggie Austin no longer carries the mail; to see what friends have struggled with Funston, Brookline and Chamberlain and just who appears on the Honor Roll.

For the members of the National Guard and Officers Reserve Corps, the RASP will give an interesting picture of the Cavalry School, the heart of the Cavalry Service.

HOLLAND 1925

The preliminary prize list of the International Horse Show "Holland 1925" has been received with a cordial invitation for the participation of competitors from this country. It will include the following competitions:

1. International Horse Show at Hilversum (near Amsterdam) to be held on June 6th and 7th.
2. International Championship for riding horses at Hilversum, on June 8th, 9th and 10th, to be held under the same conditions as will obtain in the Olympic Games of 1928.
3. International Race Meeting at the Hague on June 11th.
4. International Horse Show at the Hague on June 12th, 13th and 14th.

RELIEF FOR THE REEL CART

Firing the wire by means of a projectile attachment is a new method being worked out by First Lieutenant Fred Canfil, of the 66th Cavalry Division, for laying telephone wire in the field. If present experiments are successful a trial will be given under field service conditions.

It is claimed for this method that wire consolidation can be made in a very short time, a close touch with advance elements can be maintained with but little labor, and, that new wire can replace, in a few moments, that cut by shell fire.

Very little change has to be made in present equipment and the added features are compact and light in weight.

Foreign Military Notes

FURNISHED BY THE MILITARY INFORMATION DIVISION, G. S.

FRANCE

Superior War Council: A French decree of January 6, 1925 publishes the composition of the Superior War Council for the year 1925. It is composed of the six Marshals of France and eight Major Generals who have commanded large units or have held the post of Chief of Staff of the Army.

Following are the members: Marshals Joffre, Foch, Petain, Lyautey, Franchet d'Esprey and Fayolle; Major Generals Gouraud, Berthelot, Guillaumat, Mangin, Debeney, Dupont, Degoutte and Weygand.

Marshal Petain has been appointed Vice-President of the Council which signifies that he would command the French armies in war. He is the permanent inspector of troops, services and military schools and is responsible for the "center of advanced military studies" and the Ecole Superieure de Guerre. He has authority over the Major Generals who are members of the Council and makes all the necessary proposals to the Minister of War concerning them in the matter of the allocation of commands in peace and war. The General Staff of the Army is under the control of the Vice-President of the Council.

The Minister of War is by virtue of his office the President of the Superior War Council.

General Weygand was recently relieved as French High Commissioner in Syria by General Sarrail, who has been in retirement since his relief from command of the Salonica Armies in December, 1917. He has now been reinstated and is now given an important command.

General Weygand will assume the post of Commandant of the Center Higher War Studies on his return from Syria.

Marshals and General Officers: The active list of general officers of the French Army is as follows:

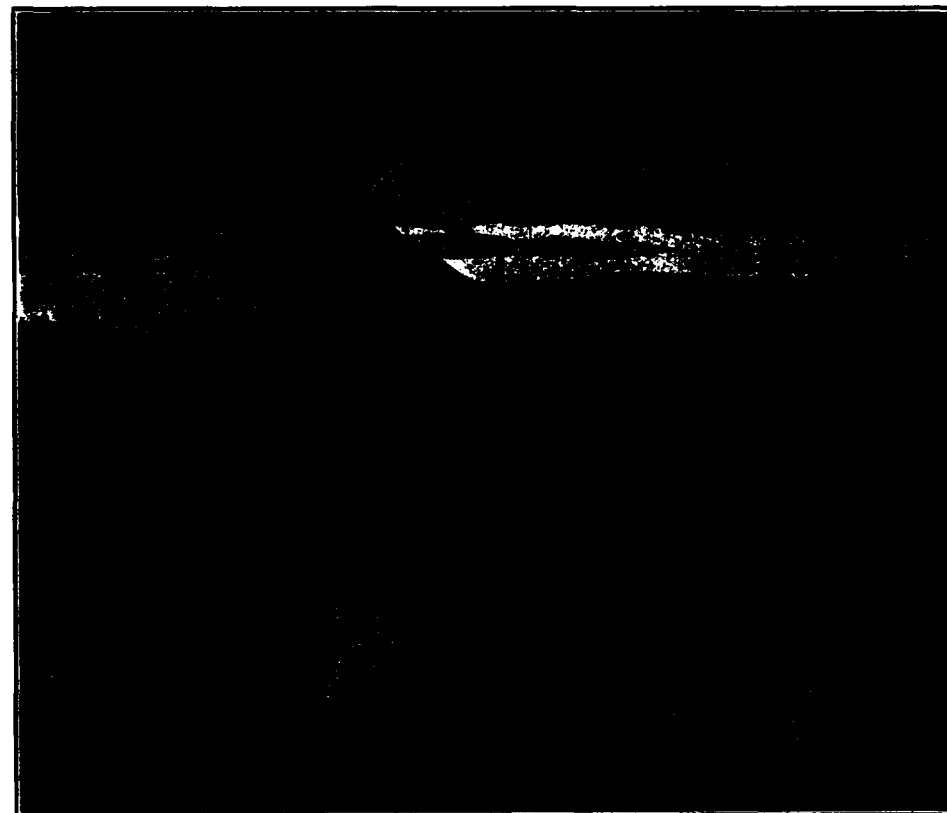
- 6 Marshals of France,
- 3 Major Generals (Castlenau, Sarrail, and Guillaumat) who remain on the active list for life,
- 1 Major General (Berthelot) who is held on the active list until reaching the age of 65 years,
- 1 Major General (Peltier), detached,
- 117 Major Generals, of whom 15 are with colonial troops,
- 233 Brigadier Generals, of whom 32 are with colonial troops.

The Senior general officer is General Gouraud followed by Generals Mangin and Debeney, in order.

The Horse

INCREASED POPULARITY OF HORSEBACK RIDING

Detailed surveys were made by representatives of The Horse Association of America during the past summer in Los Angeles, Detroit, Boston and Chicago. In all of these cities riding has increased very greatly within the past four years and in Chicago the number of riders has quadrupled within that time. There



Imported ABU ZEYD, Pure Bred Arabian, Owned by W. R. Brown, Berlin, N. H.

are now 40 riding stables, academies and clubs with over 1,750 horses kept exclusively for riding and more than 8,175 separate individuals participating in the sport each week throughout the riding season.

Most important of all, the interest which has developed in Chicago in the past four years caused men of wealth and influence to take the lead in building the finest riding club in the world, which is virtually completed and will be ready to open about January 1, 1925. The ground and buildings alone cost more than

a million dollars and the club, fully equipped, will cost around one and a half million. It contains the largest indoor riding arena of any club in the world. It will accommodate 452 horses and will have every appointment for the convenience of its members that the finest athletic clubs in America possess. The development of such a club is indeed significant, for it shows conclusively that leaders in the business world appreciate the great value of horseback riding for themselves and the members of their families.—(*From annual report of Horse Association of America.*)

HORSE AND MULE IN MODERN WARFARE

In many articles you see a comparison of horse and mule transportation to motor transportation. None of these articles distinctly defines the sphere of operation of either the animal or the motor. Their sphere of operation is quite distinct and is based on obvious reasons, if we take the trouble to study them. The motor, for instance, we all admit has taken over the work of the horse and mule where good roads are available and where they are not subject to destruction by shell fire. On the other hand, where the work has to be done across country and under fire, the horse and mule are still supreme.

We agree that the motor delivers various supplies to the front, as far as the road permits, and also to division supply points. What then completes the delivery to the troops on the firing line? Such roads as exist are under fire, and delivery to the firing line must necessarily be made off the roads and across country. There has never yet been a mechanical appliance that could replace the pack horse, the pack mule, or light, movable carts or wagons. Tables of organization of all modern armies require the horse and mule to do this work. The need for greater supplies causes greater methods of transportation, and the supplies required for a modern army is enormous. The mechanical vehicles are taxed to their limit to deliver these supplies near the front, and the proportion of animals to men still remains great in order to make the final connecting link to the firing line. A man in the Civil War could carry all the ammunition he would need for a day or possibly a week. Now a soldier can shoot up all that he can carry in a few moments. Ammunition carts, pack outfits, rolling kitchens, water carts, etc., must all be operated up to the firing line and this work must be performed by the horse and mule. They do it, too, heroically, quietly, patiently, and efficiently.—(Major C. L. Scott, in *The Quartermaster Review*.)

EXIT THE HORSE (?)

According to the Phoenix Horse Shoe Company of Chicago there are today in the United States, 27,283,413 horses and mules. Twenty years ago we had 300,000 less horses and 2,370,000 less mules.

New Books Reviewed

Napoleon: An Outline. By BRIG.-GEN. COLIN R. BALLARD, C. B., C. M. G. D. Appleton & Co., New York.

For the past century the career of Napoleon Bonaparte has been the subject of more discussion and the inspiration of more writers than that of any other character of our times. Apart from his military genius when at the zenith of his powers, and concerning which all agree, writers on Napoleon are generally violent partisans for or against him.

In this latest Napoleonic work which is written by the Professor of Military History at the English Staff College, the subject is treated with an unusual impartiality, as well as being presented in a novel and interesting manner.

The author divides Napoleon's career into three phases:

First Phase, up to the year 1800, Napoleon the Adventurer, with nothing to lose and everything to gain.

Second Phase, from 1800 to 1809. Napoleon the Man of Destiny, with everything won.

Third Phase, from 1809 to the end. Napoleon the Man against Destiny, with nothing to win and everything to lose.

Some space is devoted to a discussion of Napoleon's change in policy or of character sometime between 1800 and 1810 as evidenced by the renewal of war with all Europe, the execution of D'Enghien, and the annexation of Northern Italy, all bellicose facts in contrast to his constructive statesmanship prior to that time. General Ballard attributes this change to the British Navy which had thwarted Napoleon on three of the four occasions on which he had encountered it, namely: at the Battle of the Nile, at Acre, and at Malta. Napoleon widened his hatred of the Royal Navy to a hatred of the nation. This apparently influenced many of his future policies and resulted eventually in his downfall.

An interesting and unusual viewpoint is indicated by the statement that, broadly speaking, Napoleon fought twelve wars, in six of which he was successful, whereas the others ended in complete disaster, in the last five of which he suffered losses far greater than any he had ever inflicted.

After disposing of the theory that Napoleon's decline was the result of physical disease, the author discusses and emphasizes the distinction between the strategist, the tactician, and the leader of men. "A great general need not be, and rarely is, all three." After stating that no man has combined the strategist, tactician and leader better than Napoleon in his first campaign, it is admitted that events showed that he retained his genius as a leader and a tactician to the end. His failure is attributed to a decline in the strategist, which was caused by his strategy being based not upon knowledge, but upon ignorance. Three causes are given for this ignorance: First, he had so overawed his household that no one dared to give him even good advice, much less any contradiction. Second, he was overworked; and Third, self-deception. He used against himself the power of deceiving others which he knew so well how to wield. He had grown accustomed to find his wishes become law; he now began to regard them as facts."

As the title indicates, the book is an outline and does not pretend to give a detailed account of the Corsican's life. It does, however, present the man himself and the history and strategy of his campaigns in such a way as to be easily understood by the general reader. It enjoys the rare distinction among historical works in being of such interest that after beginning its perusal one is loath to lay it aside until it is completed. Twenty-six sketch maps specially drawn for the volume add greatly to its value.

The Genesis of the War. By the RIGHT HONORABLE HERBERT HENRY ASQUITH, Prime Minister of England, 1908-1916. George H. Doran Co., New York. (Price, \$6.00 net.)

The period since the World War has been enlivened by many Memoirs, Personal Recollections, etc., of prominent actors, both military and political, in this epochal event. Many of them have been chiefly devoted to confessions, vindications and demonstrations that this, that, or the other country (other than that of the author) was responsible for the War.

In "The Genesis of the War" Mr. Asquith very effectively "knocks the props" from under the platform of German innocence so laboriously erected by the two Chancellors, Prince von Bulow and Herr von Bethmann-Hollweg, and the Ex-Kaiser. He begins his narrative with a discussion of the Chancellorships of Caprivi (1890-1894) and Hohenlohe (1894-1900) through that of Prince Bulow which in 1900 marked the effective beginning of Weltpolitik. In 1904, during this regime, was begun the development of the Entente.

With the appointment as Chancellor of von Bethmann-Hollweg in 1908, began the intensive naval expansion of Germany which was its reply to the offer of Great Britain to reduce the competition in naval armaments.

The author goes quite fully into this phase and follows with a brief discussion of the effect on international relations of the Morocco question and the *Panther* incident.

Pre-war preparation of Great Britain is discussed under the three headings of first, the Financial Aspect; second, the Committee of Defense, and third, the Dominions in Council.

In the discussion of the period immediately preceding the war, it is indicated that Germany had such a war in mind at all times, that she was seeking to gain time until quite ready, and that when the storm broke in July, 1914, the time was considered propitious.

In addition to her satisfactory state of military and naval preparedness, Germany appears to have considered the political situation in the three Entente countries to be favorable for the long looked for clash. In Russia there was much industrial trouble and disorganization of public services. In France there was an era of ministerial instability and reports of alleged deficiencies in the equipment of the Army. In Great Britain the Irish question had reached an acute stage. That Germany placed undue reliance on these conditions is a matter of history.

Mr. Asquith's narration of the diplomatic exchanges and other events following the tragedy at Serajevo (28th June, 1914) leads one to the conclusion that the nations of the Entente were constantly striving for a peaceable settlement of the matter, and that Germany was working against such a settlement. The narrative closes with an interesting character sketch of the Kaiser with an analysis of his war preparation charges and a discussion of his claims to scholarship.

The value of this book is much enhanced by the author's intimate knowledge, by virtue of his office, of British policy and international politics during the period of which he writes, together with his having access to confidential state papers, from which many facts are disclosed for the first time. It is one of the most important, if not the most important book on the War.

Horses, Saddles and Bridles. By MAJOR GENERAL WILLIAM HARDING CARTER. Fourth Edition. The Lord Baltimore Press, Baltimore, Md. (Price, \$2.75.)

Much water has gone over the wheel since the first edition of "Horses, Saddles and Bridles" was prepared as a text book for the Infantry and Cavalry School. Its use was later extended to include examinations for promotion, and had much to do with the interest awakened in the subject of "hippology," a word created by the army

to comprehend the details of knowledge concerning horses expected of all officers who in the course of their official duties would have charge of public animals. Notwithstanding the efforts of the War Department to provide information on military matters in pamphlet form, and eliminate the necessity of officers purchasing private publications, the advantage arising from having technical subjects treated from the standpoint of personal experience by one who has devoted a lifetime to the subject, and embraced in a single volume, is very great.

That General Carter's interest in the horse is still keen is evidenced by the popularity of his latest book, "Horses of the World," of which 900,000 were published by the National Geographic Society.

The Fourth revised edition of "Horses, Saddles and Bridles" is now for sale and is commended to those who desire information in a somewhat different form from the official pamphlets.

Armaments Year-Book of the League of Nations. 844 pp. Sole American Agents, World Peace Foundation, Boston. 1924. (Price \$4.00, postage extra.)

This is the first annual publication of a comprehensive character on this subject. It gives, in considerable detail, much statistical information concerning the land, sea and air armaments of thirty-two nations, together with their budget expenditures on National Defense. In addition, considerable space is devoted to organization and administrative details. For any one making a study of the subject, either world wide or with reference to any specific nation, the work should be of great value.

Training Schedule for National Guard Rifle Companies; Training Schedule for National Guard Howitzer Companies; Training Schedule for National Guard Battalion and Brigade Headquarters Companies. By CAPTAIN DAVID P. LIVINGSTON, Iowa National Guard. Quartermaster Association, Washington, D. C. (Price, \$.50 each.)

The volumes complete the series of which *TRAINING SCHEDULE FOR NATIONAL GUARD MACHINE GUN COMPANIES* was the first volume.

The need of a complete National Guard training schedule and training guide in compact form has long been felt. The above set of four schedules, prepared by a National Guard company commander, with the assistance of other National Guard organization commanders and Regular Army Instructors at The Infantry School, were designed to meet this need. These *TRAINING SCHEDULES* are punched to fit the regulation size loose-leaf binder and may, therefore, if desired, be filed for convenient reference with War Department pamphlets.

Foreign Military Journals

The Cavalry Journal (British) January, 1925.

In this number *An Affair of Outposts*, by Captain J. G. W. Clarke, M. C., 16th/5th Lancers, deals with operations carried out by the 16th Lancers on August 28 and 29, 1914, during the retreat of the British Expeditionary Force after the battle of Le Cateau, with a view to preventing the crossing by the enemy of the Crozat Canal which connects the Somme and Oise Rivers. The necessity for changes in position from day to night outposts is brought out, together with the fact that a rear guard, boldly handled, does much to stop any incautious advance by an enemy.

Curiously enough, almost four years later, on March 21 and 22, 1918, the 16th Lancers found themselves at the same spot and carrying out a similar mission, when the Fifth British Army was driven back over the same ground.

Major E. G. Hume, 18th (K. E. O.) Cavalry, in *Notes on Modern French Cavalry*, gives an interesting description of the organization, equipment and training of the French Cavalry.

In *The Action of Kassala on July 17, 1894*, Major T. M. Carpendale, 3d Cavalry, I. A., describes a cavalry action between the Italian forces and the Dervishes. A remarkable feature of this action was the taking of the Italian Squadron in flank by a Dervish force in ambush at the moment that the Squadron started to charge the body on which the main attack was directed. It resulted in a *melée*, in which the crush was so great that sabers could not be effectively used although the Baggara horsemen made good use of their javelins and "jabbing spears." The Italians were greatly outnumbered, and were finally compelled to withdraw.

The Canadian Defence Quarterly January, 1925.

In an article entitled *The Regular Army and Tobacco*, the unpopularity of the Regular Army in England is attributed to its use in the Seventeenth Century in enforcing the laws prohibiting the growth of tobacco in England in competition with the Colonists in America. This is on a par with the suggestion of prohibition enthusiasts that the Regular Army in this Country be employed in the enforcement of the Eighteenth Amendment.

An article on *Japan and Her Army* by the author of *The Military Side of Japanese Life*, reviews the development of the Japanese Army from the *samurai* of feudal days to the present modern military establishment. Some space is devoted to the economic and political differences between the United States and Japan and the probabilities of a future conflict between the two nations.

Marlborough's Strategy Preceding Blenheim deals with the campaign of 1704 preceding the battle of Blenheim.

Two Great Captains: Jenghiz Khan and Subutai, reprinted from Blackwood's Magazine, is an intensely interesting and instructive article dealing with the campaigns of the great Mongol leader and his principal lieutenant.

The Journal of the United Service Institution of India

January, 1925.

In *The Course of Future Wars*, by Major General Sir W. E. Ironsides, K. C. B., C. M. G., D. S. O., there is depicted the probable course of future wars between states separated by a land frontier. The author admits the possibilities of national destruction by air forces, but believes that the probable effect upon morale has been overestimated. A judicious combination of the action of land and air forces, with close co-operation between the two appears most likely.

Protection on the March, Mountain Warfare, by Colonel C. A. Milward, C. I. E., D. S. O., deals with various security methods while on the march which are necessitated by the special conditions of mountain warfare. Much of the discussion is based upon actual campaign experience in the mountain districts of India.

In *The Tactical Withdrawal by Night* a description is given of the British evacuation of the Gallipoli Peninsula in December, 1915, and January, 1916, which has been characterized by a German writer as a "hitherto unattained masterpiece." In the face of predictions that such a withdrawal was unthinkable and could not be made without heavy losses, the British feat of accomplishing it with but a few men wounded is extraordinary. The main reason for the success of this operation appears to have been the complete deception of the Turks which was facilitated by their poor combat intelligence system.

Journal of the Royal United Service Institution (British) February, 1925.

An Outline of the Rumanian Campaign, 1916-1918, which is continued in this number, covers the Austro-German attempt to break through into Rumania, including the first and second battles of Targujui, and the events in the Dobrudja from the 10th of October to the 10th of November, 1916, together with the German advance through Western Wallachia and the crossing of the Olt (November 21st-26th).

Major C. T. Tomes, D. S. O., M. C., in his lecture on *Old Military Customs Still Extant*, goes back to the beginnings of such customs as the various forms of the Salute, Sentry Duties, Funeral Exercises, Trooping of the Colours (Escort of the Colors), Officers' Messes, Military Bands, and the nomenclature of military ranks. In speaking of the salute, the lecturer states, "An integral part of the modern salute is to turn the head and eyes toward the officer saluted. In medieval days no serf was allowed to raise his eyes or look in the direction of his lord. He was expected to slink to the side of the path and avert his face when that privileged being passed by. The soldier, the man-at-arms, was no serf, but a free man, and as such had every right to look his superior straight between the eyes." This is commended to civilians and others who have construed the salute as a menial gesture.

Colonel G. M. Orr, C. B. E., D. S. O., Indian Army (Retired), gives a discussion of *Operations on Interior Lines in Bush Warfare*, based upon the Campaign in German East Africa, June to October, 1917. The British plan of campaign against the German force under command of General Von Lettow consisted in one force's moving south while another moved westward from the coast. This plan gave Von Lettow many opportunities to operate on interior lines. In five months he carried out seven distinct operations of this nature, in but one of which was he successful in changing the course of operations to his advantage. In commenting on this fact Von Lettow says, "The operation at Narungombe (where he was too late to effect anything) was a further proof of how difficult it is in the unknown African bush and in the face of uncertainty of communications, even if other circumstances are favorable, to carry through an operation in which several columns are taking part so as to secure the necessary unity of action on the battlefield. . . . My belief was strengthened that if I wanted to use different bodies of troops in one operation it was necessary to secure the closest concentration first."

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands) November, 1924.

Cooperation Between Reconnaissance Forces in the Air and on the Ground. By H. Mathon. A short article based on the 1924 Combat Regulations.

It is important for both airplanes and cavalry to be informed of each other's movements and of any intelligence that either may pick up.

Airplanes are to get a general view of the enemy's movements; the cavalry reconnaissance detachments learn the details. Before starting out, the commanders of

cavalry reconnaissance detachments should be summoned to headquarters for a consultation with the commander of the air forces attached to the brigade or division.

Communication should be maintained by wireless. One automobile and two motorcycle wireless stations are assigned to the Light Brigade. Experience has shown that the cavalry detachment, not being confined to hard-surfaced roads, can easily leave the radio vehicles behind. The station then can be used for transmitting, orderlies being sent back to it by the commander of the reconnaissance detachment. What the cavalry reconnaissance detachment needs is a radio outfit that can be taken wherever the detachment goes and can be used for both sending and receiving.

Flanking Light Machine Gun Positions. By Tielens. The use of flanking fire in defensive operations is discussed at some length in this article, which is illustrated by several drawings and photographs.

The author considers flanking fire much superior to frontal fire, although it does not allow the machine gunner as wide a field of fire.

The chief means of attacking machine gun positions are: artillery fire, shell from infantry guns, hand and rifle grenades, flanking fire from machine guns, and enveloping. Artillery fire is of little effect. No country has yet found an infantry gun that is entirely satisfactory. Hand grenades have to be used at short range. If the attacker uses flanking fire from machine guns, it may interfere with the advance of parts of his own units. If the machine gun positions of the defender are selected so that they flank each other and cover all hollows, etc., that the enemy might try to use for infiltration, it will be hard for the attacker to envelop them. All machine gun positions should also afford protection for the gunners from frontal fire.

Organization in depth is another important factor.

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands) December, 1924.

Radio in the Cavalry. By R. Wirix. A very interesting article about a field radio outfit constructed by the writer; illustrated by two photographs.

The whole outfit weighs 9 kilograms and easily be carried by two troopers or even by one if necessary. The radio apparatus itself is contained in a wooden box 30 x 35 x 16.5 cm. Variable mica condensers and milliwatt double grid tubes are used, so that the A and B batteries can be made very light.

Messages have been received from an airplane 100 kilometers away, under rather unfavorable conditions.

The outfit can be set up or packed for transportation in about 2½ minutes. No aerial is used, but the wires are stretched on the ground.

Operation is extremely simple and the apparatus is built according to the plan followed by the majority of Dutch radio amateurs; consequently no long course of instruction is required. It can be used for wireless telephony as well as telegraphy.

The box is so strongly constructed that the same tubes could be used throughout the maneuvers of the Light Brigade in September, 1924.

The batteries will last for twenty-four hours and are of a type that can be procured in any village.

Small tools and an instruction book are carried in the box.

The total cost was about 150 florins (sixty dollars).

As this little receiving set has turned out so well, attempts are now being made to develop a sending outfit that can also be transported by cavalry.

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands) January, 1925.

The Work of Reconnaissance. By Capt. H. W. C. E. Mathon. The failure of the French to have their cavalry conduct proper reconnaissance in 1914 cost them dear. Their postwar regulations aim to avoid this mistake. Both the French and the Germans feel that, despite the great development of aviation, the cavalry can still do

good work. Proof of this was given in Poland in 1920, when the Polish air service, which was quite efficient, could not lift one corner of the veil that the 15,000 troopers of Budyenni held before the organizations of his army.

The postwar cavalry regulations of the French and the German armies are presumably based on experience gained during the World War by the compilers of the regulations. They differ fundamentally in one respect: the French reconnaissance detachments are to be given pretty definite instructions and are to follow the route mapped out for them; the German detachments are given much more liberty.

For the small Dutch army, no extensive cavalry movements can be contemplated; the French idea is more likely to be followed than the German one. Patrols should not be sent out very far ahead of the main cavalry detachment and the commander of the detachment should be careful not to weaken it too much by dividing his forces.

The Cyclist Patrol of the Squadron. By Captain J. de Waal. Each squadron of cavalry has a cyclist detachment consisting of one sergeant, two corporals and twelve privates.

In the opinion of the writer, this detachment should be used as a whole, instead of weakening it by allowing several members to be detailed as orderlies, etc.

When the squadron is marching as an independent unit, the cyclist patrol can be sent ahead as a billeting detachment; if contact with the enemy is likely, the patrol forms the point of the advance guard. When the cavalymen dismount to fight on foot, the cyclists can act as horseholders; in case of combat on horseback, the patrol acts as a covering party. If the squadron is marching in column with other organizations, the cyclist patrol forms an excellent means of liaison between different parts of the column. In case an airplane appears, the cyclists can dismount and open fire more quickly than men on horseback.

The Regimental Liaison Detachment and that of the Light Brigade. By 1st Lieut. G. F. Imminck. In the future, the liaison detachment of the regiment is to consist of: the telephone section, the radio section, the optical section and the orderly section, all under the command of the liaison officer. In the Light Brigade, the liaison detachment is made up as follows: detachment headquarters (1 supply truck, 1 baggage truck, 1 ration truck with rolling kitchen); 1 radio section (1 motor truck carrying a high-power radio outfit, 2 motorcycles with sidecars, carrying a low-power radio outfit); 1 optical section (2 lamps for signalling to great distances, and 1 sergeant, 1 corporal and 6 signalmen on bicycles); 1 telephone section (2 passenger automobiles, 2 cable trucks, 1 telephone switchboard, 6 telephone instruments, 16 km. of heavy field cable).

As most of the members of the above mentioned sections will be taken from cavalry organizations, more attention will have to be paid to training in telephony, lamp signalling, etc., than heretofore.

The writer considers a small flag much better than a lamp for signalling in daytime. For night use, he recommends the German "Perlux" lamp. He considers German telephone and radio equipment the best to be had.

Reviews by Major Harold Thompson, Cavalry

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish) November, 1924.

In this number appears an article by Captain Ramon Climent, Spanish Artillery, entitled *Evolution of the Cavalry*. The writer opens his theme with a strong arraignment of those who would do away with the Cavalry Arm or delegate to it secondary or unimportant rôles. Admitted that the fire power of modern weapons prohibit the massed, boot-to-boot cavalry charges of the past, is no reason that Cavalry as an Arm should disappear or leave its complete rôle to Aviation or any other Arm. On the contrary, he says, evolution which is a natural law, is applicable in every sense to the

employment of Cavalry and here the author agrees thoroughly that there must be a change.

In the first place the Cavalryman must cease considering the horse as an arm, instead of a means toward a definite end. Mobility with increased fire power must be given the most serious consideration and to this end, he would do away with the lance. [There are eight Lancer regiments today in the Spanish Cavalry.] Not so the saber, for although its use may be very limited, the ease with which it can be carried and its lightness together with its possible use, design that it should be used by the Cavalry when opportune. Mobility is again and again emphasized, and in few but positive words the writer strives to impress upon the reader that one of the most important factors here toward attaining mobility is to lighten the load on the Cavalry mount, rations and ammunition being reduced to the minimum consistent with the mission planned.

At another point the Captain vehemently disclaims advocacy of the Mounted Infantryman, for evidently he fears that his statement "the principle being accepted that the horse is a means of transportation," will be so construed. On the contrary Cavalry is and will be always the Arm of opportunity and surprise and for this reason its essential characteristics, mobility and fire power, must not be interfered with by such a hybrid product as mounted Infantry.

Many passages would appear to be identical with our own conceptions of the employment of Cavalry, such as Cavalry and Aviation in the different phases of operations before combat, Aviation forces with Cavalry in distant reconnaissance in force, and many others. The various illustrations offered are based upon Cavalry both in the offensive and defensive. It is interesting to note that the writer believes that Cavalry should be endowed with heavy fire-power, both machine guns and machine rifles, as well as hand-grenades. For the Cavalry division he advocates light and fast armored cars with 37 mm. guns and machine guns, as well as a unit of cyclist Infantry. The uses or employment of machine guns in side-cars and armored cars that are recommended, coincide identically with those suggested at the Cavalry School.

As of interest, it is recommended that the light type of armored car, similar to one employed by the French be adopted, three or four cars to a group, two or three groups forming a combat section. A command car (armored) and a motorcycle to be added for liaison purposes.

All personnel for the Cavalry armored car sections should come from the Arm, should be trained at the various Cavalry training centers (Cavalry School of Fire and Cavalry Demonstration Unit) and then at the Specialists' Training Center. To be successful armored car soldiers, the men must come from the Cavalry, where the Cavalry spirit and all it implies, is engendered and fostered.

Sheridan's Raid, 27th February-25th March, 1865, is continued, the article apparently having created a great deal of interest. After discussing each phase of the operations, conclusions are drawn, based upon the principles illustrated.

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish) December, 1924.

Captain Ramon Climent, Royal Spanish Field Artillery, continues his article, *The Evolution of the Cavalry*, from the November number.

Certain deductions are made as to the best ways of employing armored car sections with Cavalry units, these being, for reconnaissance on the march, with the advance guard, so as to make rapid trips ahead of the column, and reconnoitering cross-roads and villages, always with a reserve car or element held out. For combat reconnaissance, such cars should be able to break the resistance of lines holding up the advance, employing short and rapid bursts of fire at close range. For strategic pursuit where parallel roads exist armored cars with Cavalry should more than prove their value, due to their mobility, fire power and protected parts.

Additional missions such as transmitting messages under fire and bringing up ammunition for troops in combat are suggested. For independent Cavalry, from large units to the squadron, armored cars would prove of the greatest value.

Having Cavalry endowed with additional fire power by incorporating elements such as horse artillery, light truck artillery, automobile machine guns, cyclist infantry and light armored cars, the true employment of Cavalry will be found in acting on the flanks or toward the enemy rear by large enveloping movements; raids along the lines of communication, feints, mobile reserve, the break through, pursuit and exploitation, screening and reconnaissance in force.

The writer finds still another employment for the Cavalry, particularly the Divisional Cavalry, armed and equipped as the Independent Cavalry with automatic material, grenades and carbine, which would appear to be to hold such Cavalry close to the enemy front, yet protected from Artillery fire and ready to take advantage of a propitious moment—rupture, sudden withdrawal or over-extension of the line. —(Continued.)

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish) January, 1925.

In this issue, Captain Ramon Climent, Spanish F. A., concludes his remarks on the *Evolution of Cavalry*. After a brief statement of the former conception of the rôle of Cavalry in retreat, he presents his idea of how Cavalry, with its Artillery and Machine Guns should be employed in the case. Normal action will be by short but violent fire fights with rear guard elements, while the maneuvering mass strikes at the flank or flanks, rapidly and in succession. Perhaps here the opportunity will occur for the mounted charge, but it will be most successful if undertaken by small units. The disorder, confusion and moral depression of the mounted charge are not underrated; however, the menace of machine guns and machine rifles is to be remembered. Such attack should be made in line of forages and with good intervals.

In the retreat, the rôle of Cavalry is still brilliant. Uppermost should be the thought of gaining time, by means of mobility, such as rapidly breaking off an action in order to hold a succeeding delaying position, and by actions embracing short and sudden bursts of fire to force enemy deployment. The use of the light armored cars and auto machine guns is here described and the necessity for the closest liaison by the Cavalry columns with such units. This also involves the Aviation forces with the Cavalry.

The first part of the article by Captain Francisco Ramos, Cavalry (Mehal-la of Larache, Africa) appears in this number. This brilliant Cavalry officer was killed at Megaret in September, 1924.

Spanish and French Cavalry in Morocco.

The organization of the Cavalry forces of both countries in the Moroccan zone is as follows:

SPAIN

Two Peninsular regiments, 14th and 28th Chassuers, of six squadrons, and the 29th Chasseurs of seven; four demi-regiments, Moorish Horse, of four squadrons each; the Mehal-la, a squadron of three mfas (100 horse each) and various irregular units of Native Constabulary, Guides and tribesmen (in groups called Harkas).

FRANCE

Six regiments of chasseurs d'Afrique of five squadrons each; four regiments of Algerian Spahis, and the organized "Guma," smaller native units, number and composition varying.

In comparing units, the personnel of the Spanish Chasseur regiments does not differ from regular Peninsular units, whereas the Chasseurs d'Afrique are real

Colonial troops. These have their permanent stations in Algeria, but may serve in any part of the French dominions or protectorates.

In regard to the native forces of Cavalry, both French and Spanish contingents are similar in character and composition. They differ in two characteristics, in system of recruiting, and in organization. In the Spanish units, Cavalry and Infantry are together in one group, while the French keep their Cavalry units separate from the Infantry.

The remaining forces of both nations have little in common. The native police, Spanish is excellent, practically equal to the native soldiery. The *Gums* (French) which have contributed so well to the pacification of the French protectorate, are raised by levies from one or more tribes, and are commanded by their own tribal chiefs. Note, too, that the French always employ the *Gums* thus raised against rebel tribes who are widely separated from the former, or employ such *Gums* against the latter's tribal enemies. In service, they form a light curtain of horsemen who precede the other troops (action at Setat, 1908); again, they may fight both mounted and dismounted, forming a part of the regular native Cavalry, Chasseurs or Spahis (action at Kaiva, 1913).

The Spaniards have already formed a group of *Gums* in the Melilla zone, but it is too early yet to appraise their value.

The Harkas (irregular groups of friendly tribesmen, not organized) leave much to be desired. In fact, the past has frequently proved their undesirability except for a small moral effect. Those composed exclusively of Cavalry have a real latent value.

The mountain country of the Riff, Yebala and Beni-Snassen (Spanish protectorate) have never furnished even small contingents of enemy horsemen, whereas in the French zone, the French have had to deal almost exclusively with the horsemen of the plains country.

The tactics employed by the Moorish horsemen have ever been the same. Here he quotes Heefer, "Essentially it consists in approaching to some seven hundred yards from the enemy, a sudden deployment in thin lines at full gallop and an abrupt halt at the limit of short range, when the Moors fire their pieces, mounted, turn to the rear and fall back in small groups still at the gallop, and return and repeat. Certainly not dangerous for steady troops, and if our Cavalry advances with sabre at the charge the Moorish lines disappear like mist."

However, in the rugged mountain region even the French have had their difficulties and in proof, surprise attacks by the Moorish horse against convoys for example, it took the genius of General Lyautey to end the resistance of the powerful Beni-Snassen tribesmen.

Recently, too, when General Poemyrau occupied Uazzan, the French forces had to lament considerable casualties, and at that the columns included all arms, including light armored cars. Again, and with the same column, endowed with equally great fire power and mobility, the French had eighteen killed and one hundred and seventy-four wounded. This was at Beni-Mestaran, when two thousand tribesmen attacked the convoy, with a fifteen per cent loss to the French.

Where the Spanish forces operated over the plain country of Garet, Guerra and Metassa, against the tribesmen who at times numbered eight thousand, four and five to one, the losses on the part of the Spaniards were very slight, analogous to those of corresponding French operations.

There is no doubt in the mind of the writer that operations in the rugged, mountainous country of the Riff and Yebala have been difficult and that losses have been and will be large. Certainly the experience of the Spaniards in Northern Morocco since 1909 proves his belief.

(To be continued)

Revista Militar (Argentina) November, 1924.

First Lieutenant Leopoldo Ornstein, Argentine Cavalry, presents an article in this number titled *Field Fortification for the Cavalry Service*. A detailed study is made of the movements of the Cavalry Corps of von Richthofen and von Marwitz, together with those of the British Cavalry divisions in the opening phases of the World War, coupled with a brief discussion of Mobile Defense, Delaying Action, Defensive Screen and Protection by the Cavalry during retreats.

The Lieutenant's deductions, based upon the opinions he has formed, are, in so far as they apply to the Cavalry Arm of the Argentine Army:

That the defensive missions of the Cavalry are more readily carried out by employing certain forms of hasty field fortification;

That the Cavalry should be in position to equally develop a mobile defense or a tenacious form of defense;

That the great extension of probable Argentine theatres of operation, and their physical characteristics, demands that the Cavalry develop both forms of defense (as above), to a degree greater than developed in Europe;

That Cavalry personnel be well-instructed in hasty construction defense, bridge demolition and road obstruction;

That Cavalry officers thoroughly understand the best methods of field fortification;

And that Cavalry units be equipped with certain kinds of field fortification material.

And as a caution, he adds that the above must in no way be understood as to imply any checking of the essentially characteristics of Cavalry, the offensive spirit.

From the military information chapter is taken the following, relating to the newly organized unit of Mounted Infantry (Brazilian Army):

The new Mounted Infantry battalion of the Infantry Brigade (Rio Grande del Sul) is composed of three companies (rifle), one machine gun company, and a reserve squad of ten men. The company has 122 effectives, the machine gun company, 86 men. Total, in the battalion, 463 officers and men.



Polo

THE SECOND ANNUAL MID-WINTER POLO TOURNAMENT

San Antonio, Texas

BY

Captain EDWARD M. FICKETT, Cavalry

For many years San Antonio has been a great polo center, and for many more years a center of military activities in the Southwestern States. The border troubles of 1911 to 1920 brought of great many troops into this region, and inasmuch as San Antonio—Fort Sam Houston,—was also Department Headquarters, it seemed only natural that it should become the army polo center of this section of the country. At the same time under the able guidance of "Bill" Meadows, "Jack" Lapham, Mr. Drury, and others, civilian polo was developing. After the war, efforts were made from time to time to get polo teams from all over the Corps Area to come here for the annual tournaments with greater or less success until 1923 when the First Mid-Winter Polo Tournament was held. This was such a great success that no one gave thought to anything but that it would be an annual meeting.

The 1923 tournament was such a success that when the Chamber of Commerce of San Antonio was approached on the subject of assisting again in the staging of the second tournament, they raised a fund of \$3,200.00 to be used in bringing the teams here. Other public-spirited firms and individuals subscribed largely, making it possible to bring a large and representative group of teams to the tournament.

The fact that the weather here is ideal for all 'round the year polo, and that when the teams in the north are limited to riding hall work and indoor polo, outdoor polo and fast polo at that, is possible in San Antonio is coming to be more and more generally accepted throughout the United States. Teams from Detroit, Chicago, and Des Moines, and other northern points have found that weather conditions, fields, competition, and accommodations are such as to make attendance at such a tournament exceptionally attractive and pleasant. In addition it affords them an opportunity to get in condition for the spring, summer, and fall tournaments in the north and east without having to rush the conditioning of their ponies.

Three tournaments were made possible this year. The low handicap tournament for the Texas Cups is a regular part of the Mid-Winter Tournament. The South Western Circuit Tournament was moved up from its usual time in the early spring so that it could be held as a part of the larger meeting. The fact that the United States Polo Association announced an elimination tournament to be held in each Circuit to select a team to represent the Circuit in the Inter Circuit Tournament to be held in the northeast some time this summer provided the opportunity for the third tournament.

Due to the fact that play for the Texas Cups was limited to teams of not more than six goals handicap, many of the competing teams brought both low and high goal teams, that is, enough low handicap men so that a team could be entered in the low goal events and at the same time, by the substitution of other men place a strong team in the field for the Southwestern Circuit and Elimination events.

The results of games for the TEXAS CUPS were as follows:

First Round—Detroit 14-15th Field Artillery 8; Camp Marfa 10-Kelly Field 5; Fort Sill 10-2d Division, Infantry, 8; Austin 8-Fort Clark 6.

Second Round—Fort Bliss 20-Detroit 4; Camp Marfa 8-Fort Sill 6; San Antonio 10-Fort Brown 9; Hdqrs., 8th Corps Area 10-Austin 8.

Semi-Finals—Fort Bliss 13-Camp Marfa 7; San Antonio 16-Hdqrs., 8th Corps Area, 7.

Finals—Fort Bliss 17-San Antonio 4.

Play throughout the tournament was hard and fast, especially in the later brackets. The semi-final game between Fort Bliss and Marfa was one of the best of the Texas Cup event. The final score is no index of the actual closeness of the game. Both teams rode hard and hit well, but the excellent team play of the Fort Bliss Cavalrymen gave them the edge. The game between the 8th Corps Area Headquarters and San Antonio was hard fought, but the Corps Area was outmounted, and outplayed. The final game of the tournament between Fort Bliss and San Antonio was an easy victory for Fort Bliss. Captain Wood and Captain Huthsteiner at the ends of the team were a combination that San Antonio could not beat. Line-ups follow:

Fort Bliss	Camp Marfa	San Antonio	8th C. A. Hdqrs.
No. 1—Capt. Wood	Capt. Herman	Mr. J. Chittim	Capt. T. W. Hasty
No. 2—Lt. Col. Holliday	Capt. Morris	Mr. C. Armstrong	Lt. Col. E. Swift
No. 3—Lt. D. Burgess	Capt. Truscott	Lt. B. M. Fitch	Maj. A. H. Jones
No. 4—Capt. Huthsteiner	Capt. Thompson	Mr. W. D. Meadows	Lt. Col. Tompkins

The results of games of THE SOUTHWESTERN CIRCUIT CUPS were as follows:

First Round—Fort Clark 15-Detroit 10; San Antonio 20-15th Field Artillery 12; Fort Bliss 13-Hdqrs., 8th Corps Area, 7; Fort Sam Houston 16-Kelly Field 12; Austin 13-2d Division, Infantry, 7.

Second Round—Fort Clark 15-Fort Sill 9; Camp Marfa 13-San Antonio 5; Fort Sam Houston 9-Fort Bliss 8; Austin 15-Fort Brown 8.

Semi-Finals—Camp Marfa 13-Fort Brown 6.

Finals—Camp Marfa 15-Fort Sam Houston 12.

In the semi-final game between Fort Clark and Marfa, Fort Clark put up an excellent fight but lacked the team-work and organization of the Marfa team, and despite the fact that they put up a game fight against heavy odds were defeated. The final game was a complete upset to all the "dope." It was felt that the Fort Sam Houston "Yellow Jackets" were easy favorites, although a good game was expected. When Marfa came out, and by hard riding and driving, and team play such as has seldom been seen here, defeated Fort Sam Houston by a score of 15 to 12, just the difference in the handicaps, it was a complete surprise. It was a beautifully fought, hard, fast game. The defensive work of both backs was excellent, and the rest of both teams were equally good. The smooth, machine-like functioning of the Marfa team was simply too much for the Fort Sam Houston men.

Line-ups follow:

Camp Marfa	Fort Clark	Fort Sam Houston
No. 1—Lieut. Forsyth	Capt. Berg	Major King
No. 2—Capt. Morris	Capt. Tully	Lieut. Jones
No. 3—Capt. Truscott	Capt. Barnhart	Lieut. Smith
Back—Lieut. Feagin	Capt. Daniels	Capt. Hettinger

The results of games for THE SOUTHWESTERN ELIMINATION CUPS were as follows:

First Round—Fort Clark 11—Detroit 5; Fort Sill 18-Hdqrs., 8th Corps Area, 5.

Second Round—Camp Marfa 13-San Antonio 5; Fort Bliss 24-2d Division, Infantry, 4; Fort Clark 10-Kelly Field 3; Fort Sam Houston 19-Fort Sill 7.

Semi-Finals—Fort Bliss 9-Camp Marfa 4; Fort Sam Houston 15-Fort Clark 10.

Finals—Fort Bliss 11-Fort Sam Houston 7.

The three strong teams in this tournament were Fort Bliss, Fort Sam Houston, and Camp Marfa, although Fort Clark was showing greater and greater strength each day they played. Opinion was fairly evenly divided as to the final outcome of the event, with each team holding its strong supporters. The preliminary games were a little one-sided, but showed quickly that there would probably be not more than four contenders for the final cups. As the tournament neared its end, and other

teams were eliminated from competition, the matter of rest between games for the teams still remaining in became a vital one, so that Marfa was of necessity required to play Sunday, March 8th, and again on Tuesday, March 10, it became a question of which game they could best afford to loose. An even worse condition faced Fort Sam Houston. Playing Sunday against the tough Marfa team, they then met Fort Clark on Tuesday, and on Thursday Fort Bliss for the final events. At the same time Fort Bliss had two hard tournament games in two days, and Fort Clark the same. The result was that all the horses were a little tired.

The Fort Bliss-Marfa game played Tuesday, March 10, was a hard-fought battle from the first whistle to the last bell. Horsemanship, hitting, and team work marked the play of both teams. The excellent work of Captain Wood at Number One for Fort Bliss, and of Major Chamberlin, who replaced Lt. Col. Holliday, was a great help in piling up the score, although the size of the score gives no idea of the fierceness of the game.

Fort Clark gave Fort Sam Houston a real thrill in the second game played the same day at Harbord Field when they held the "Yellow Jackets" to the small end of the score with the aid of a six-goal handicap until the fifth period, when Fort Sam Houston got going and finally defeated Fort Clark 15 to 10. Captain Daniels, of Fort Clark, was invaluable to his team.

The bitterest and hardest-fought battle seen here in many a day was the final game between Fort Bliss and Fort Sam Houston. Both teams were anxious to win due to the fact that the winners were to be selected to represent this Circuit in the Inter-Circuit Tournament to be held in Philadelphia this summer. The game was fast from the very beginning, Bliss, however, did not get into its stride until the fourth period when they stepped out and started scoring. In the meantime the "Yellow Jack-ets" had made up the handicap of three goals which they had to give away and were going strong. About that time, however, Major King got a fall in a bit of slippery going near one end of the field and was a little shaken up. Then the Fort Sam Houston horses began to show the strain of three hard games in six days, and the Cavalymen got their steam roller oiled up and working. From that time on the game was the personal property of the crew from Fort Bliss. The "Yellow Jackets" staged a momentary rally in the sixth Chukker, but were unable to catch up. It is hard to say that any one man stood out or was responsible for the winning or the losing of the game. Both teams were functioning as teams exceptionally well. The forwards naturally made most of the goals, but the defensive work of both sets of backs was probably the best that has been seen in this vicinity for a long time. The most thrilling incident of the game was when Captain Wood, of Fort Bliss, was hit square in the face by a long backhander that came back so fast that it had hairs on it. No one saw that he was hit, though he called for time. The whole play, including the umpires, passed him by, with Wood just barely able to hang on to his horse. After a number of seconds he managed to get himself together and rejoin the play. Shortly thereafter he pushed through another goal.

In addition to the Polo Tournament, there was held as a part of it, and in connection with it, an excellent Horse Show and Gymkhana at the Remount Station. Major A. H. Jones, in addition to his other duties, found time to put on one of the best shows seen around here in many years. Competition was keen and the show was attended by an extraordinarily large crowd of both army people from Fort Sam Houston and the visiting polo teams, and also by a large crowd of people from San Antonio and vicinity.

Altogether the Second Annual Mid-Winter Polo Tournament is and was a very satisfactory event, both from the standpoint of teams entered, the class of polo, and the financial results.



Eighth Cavalry Team, Senior Champions, 1st Cavalry Division
Lieutenant Collier, Lieutenant Bosserman, Major Chamberlin, Captain Huthsteiner.

POLO IN ALABAMA NATIONAL GUARD

The Birmingham Sabers (Headquarters Troop, 23d Cavalry Division, Alabama National Guard) have moved into their new quarters. They are now at Roberts Field, home of the 106th Observation Squadron, Alabama National Guard. This new arrangement affords an ample field for polo and about 250 acres of good riding country.

During the greater part of the year polo practice is held twice a week, and Sunday afternoon a practice game is played on the new regulation size field.

The officers of the 106th and the members of The Birmingham Sabers, together with other enthusiasts, have formed a Polo Association. The greatest handicap to be overcome is horses. At present there are 32 issued by the government for training purposes, and practically all of these are used, together with some three or four private mounts.

Last Summer at Camp McClellan the Birmingham Sabers team was selected to play the Governors Horse Guards from Atlanta on Governors Day. These two teams had, by a process of elimination, been selected to meet in this final match. The Governors Horse Guards from Atlanta won by a close score.

Plans are being made to have similar matches this year at the annual encampment which will be held at the home of the 6th Cavalry at Fort Oglethorpe. The officers of the 6th Cavalry have made practically all the mounted officers of the National Guard in the Southern States polo enthusiasts in the past three years. This regiment helped to instruct and hold matches at the annual encampments and, at times, participated in matches with the Guardsmen.

Thanksgiving and the Saturday following of this year, The Birmingham Sabers had the Anniston Polo Association in Birmingham for two games. These games were close and enjoyed by the crowds that witnessed them. First Lieutenant Charles M. Hurt, Cavalry (DOL), Instructor, Cavalry, is the polo instructor and manager of the Birmingham Association.



1st Machine Gun Squadron Team, Junior Champions, 1st Cavalry Division
Lieutenant Chittim, Lieutenant Carleton, Captain Berg and Captain Baylies.

INDOOR POLO IN BOSTON

The first season of the Boston Indoor Polo League proved a greater success than had been anticipated even by the most confirmed optimists. Six teams, three service and three civilian, fought hotly for the title and gave some excellent exhibitions of fine riding and stickwork.

A year ago several polo teams were formed around Boston and played a number of games, but it was not until the autumn of 1924 that the league was definitely formed, being composed of the 110th Cavalry, and the 101st Field Artillery, both of the Massachusetts National Guard, the Instructors of the Harvard R. O. T. C., the Harvard University Polo Team, and the Essex and Norfolk Club teams. These last two were made up of members of the Myopia and Dedham outdoor teams. Not only was the interest strong among the players and other members of the organizations concerned, but there was also much interest shown by the public in general, giving promise that in future years indoor polo will hold a strong place among the winter sports supported by public interest.

Honors this year were carried off by the 110th Cavalry trio, with four games won and only one lost. A very marked improvement was noticeable on the part of the Cavalry over last year both in team work and in stick work. In addition, several games were played by the 110th Cavalry with teams not in the league, notably with the Rhode Island Cavalry.

The National Guard

SERVICE MEDALS FOR TEXAS CAVALRY

In view of the special circumstances connected with the organization and service of the two brigades of Texas Cavalry organized under authority of the War Department dated December 8, 1917, and also on account of their not being entitled to Victory medals under the law, Congress has recently authorized the issuance of Service medals to the officers and enlisted men of these two brigades.

After the 36th Division was called into service in 1917 the State of Texas was authorized to organize two National Guard Cavalry Brigades of three regiments each with a total of approximately 350 officers and 7,900 enlisted men. This was for the purpose of relieving the Regular Army regiments doing Mexican Border duty, in order that these regiments might be available for overseas duty.

On September 18, 1917, arrangements were made for the officers of these brigades to attend a training camp of four months duration. Non-commissioned officers and enlisted specialists were also to attend non-commissioned officers' and specialists' schools. The attendance of both officers and enlisted men was voluntary.

It was decided that the two brigades would be drafted into Federal service on January 2, 1919. The signing of the Armistice stopped the draft of these regiments, but officers and enlisted men voluntarily agreed to continue their courses until completion, December 8. During the time the officers and enlisted men were at these schools the remainder of the regiments were being drilled almost every day at the home rendezvous.

NEW PRESIDENT, ADJUTANTS GENERAL ASSOCIATION

At a special meeting of the Adjutants General Association held in Washington on March 10, 1925, Brigadier General Frank D. Beary, Pennsylvania, then Vice President, was elected President, to fill the vacancy caused by the retirement of Brigadier General Harry B. Smith, Indiana. Brigadier General Hartley A. Moon, Alabama, was elected to fill the unexpired office of Vice President.

104th CAVALRY—Pennsylvania National Guard Colonel E. J. Stackpole, Jr., Commanding

Officers of the regiment are watching with sympathetic interest the development of plans for an encampment of the 21st Cavalry Division, of which the 104th Cavalry is a unit, being worked out by officers of the Militia Bureau and staff officers of the 27th, 28th and 29th National Guard divisions, to which units of the cavalry division are attached for training and discipline. This encampment will bring together for the first time in their history the units of the 21st Cavalry Division, and it is the estimate of the officers of all regiments concerned that such an encampment would be invaluable. A question of costs, it is said, is the only obstacle to such a plan.

The proposed camp would see the 51st Cavalry Brigade, composed of the 51st Machine Gun Squadron and the 101st Cavalry, both of New York state; the 102nd Cavalry, of New Jersey; the 52nd Cavalry Brigade, including the 52nd Machine Gun Squadron, the 103rd and 104th Cavalry regiments, and Company "A," 125th Mounted Engineers, all of Pennsylvania, together. It is understood that Sea Girt, the New Jersey National Guard camp, has been suggested for the site of the cavalry maneuvers.

Plans for a large military ball, to be held during February in Harrisburg, Pa., regimental headquarters of the 104th Cavalry, are being made and Regular Army, National Guard and Reserve Corps officers from all parts of the State will be invited. The 104th Cavalry band will alternate with an orchestra for the dancing, and the regimental standard, troop guidons, sabres, and the lances of the Governor's Troop at Harrisburg, will be a part of the decorative scheme.

The 104th's band, which last year was heard in a dozen states when it broadcast from station WBAK, the Pennsylvania State Police station at Harrisburg, is preparing another program to be sent out from the same station.

Motion pictures will have a large part in the training of the regiment's recruits, following the purchase of a machine and projector. Pictures will be taken of the elementary drills, proper methods of saddling and biting, mounting and jumping, as well as the use of arms, mounted and dismounted. These will be shown at troop drills. In addition, pictorial records of the summer camps of the regiment will be made.

FIRST SQUADRON, 105th CAVALRY—National Guard, Wisconsin ANNUAL OUTDOOR SHOW

The dismounted season of the 1st Squadron, 105th Cavalry, was brought to a successful climax on Saturday, March 7th, at the Shorewood Armory. In accordance with the custom, the Officers Club arranged a party and dance for the squadron, following exhibition work. One of the largest crowds ever handled at the Armory was in attendance.

The event of the evening was the crack platoon competition, dismounted, between selected platoons of the three troops. These outfits have been rehearsing on Sundays for several months, and each produced twenty minutes of exhibition drill involving everything in the regulations. Leather boots were worn throughout, and an excellent appearance was presented.

The platoons representing Troop C, led by 2nd Lt. E. P. Beyer, won the decision and with a year's custody of the Instructors Trophy. Lt. Col. R. M. Barton, Cavalry; Captain Wm. T. Haldeman, Cavalry, and Lieutenant A. H. Norton, Cavalry, all of the Regular Army, acted as judges.

Between events in the competition, fencing and broadsword exhibitions were presented by selected officers.

After the exhibition trophies were given to the various winners of the recent Guard-Collegiate Shoot, St. John's Military Academy being on hand to receive the principal awards.

The results of the final examination and grading for the winter of the non-commissioned officers' school students were announced. Diplomas were issued, the five leaders being given special certificates of proficiency, to be filed with their records and considered during the next examinations for commissions. They were as follows:

Sergeant Roland E. Zache, Troop B,	97%
Sergeant F. G. Patterson, 1st Sq. Det.,	96%
Sergeant P. H. Jacobs, Troop C,	96%
Sergeant W. Bubboltz, Troop "C,"	95%
Corporal Frank Rupnik, Troop A,	94%

In addition Sergeant Zache won the "Non-com's plaque" for his winter's work. General Charles King, U. S. A. (Ret.), made the presentations.

SECOND SQUADRON, 106th CAVALRY

Officers of the 2d Squadron, One Hundred Sixth Cavalry, met at the Hotel Orlando, Decatur, Illinois, and inaugurated a series of quarterly banquets to be held by executives to discuss cavalry problems peculiar to the National Guard.

Following dinner the mounted service was discussed from different angles by the squadron commander, Major Kenneth Buchanan, and by Captain J. K. Colwell, D. O. L., cavalry instructor on duty with the unit.

Major Buchanan stressed the need of regular physical exercise within the command and basketball games between the troops were arranged. A squadron gymkhana at the coliseum of the Illinois State Fairgrounds will be another feature in the near future. All officers who had not already become members of the Cavalry Association were ordered to do so.

Following Major Buchanan's talk, Captain Colwell urged troop commanders to use the "Lentz" system of dismounted drill and explained its manifest advantages over other methods.

Letters from the Adjutant General of the State, and General Foreman were discussed in which the squadron was highly commended for its appearance and discipline during the inaugural ceremonies in January, when the mounted unit was selected over the entire 33d Division for the guard of honor.

During summer camp in 1924 the 2d Squadron One Hundred Sixth Cavalry won a number of trophies from the division for appearance, efficiency and the riding qualities of its troopers.

117th CAVALRY—Colorado National Guard, at the Western National Horse Show, Denver, Colorado—January 19-24, 1925

Squadron Headquarters and Headquarters Detachment and Troop "B," 117th Cavalry (Colorado), successfully participated in the Western National Horse Show at Denver, Colorado, winning two first prizes, one second, one third, and four fourth, against strong competition from the entries of the 13th U. S. Cavalry, Fort D. A. Russell, Wyo., Dr. Walter Venn of Chicago, Bruce Robinson of Des Moines, Iowa, Country Club Heights Stable of Denver, Colorado, A. C. K. Palmer and E. A. Phinney of Golden, Colorado, and C. F. Cusack of Denver, Colorado.

On January 19th in the Heavy and Middle Weight Hunter Class with 15 entries, 4th place was won by Sergeant R. E. Noe on *Tony*, No. 17, of Troop "B."

On January 22d in the Triple Bar Jump class with 23 entries brought out the keenest competition of the show, the 13th Cavalry having five entries and Troop "B" six. Sergeant R. E. Noe rode *Tony*, No. 17, to win and *Colonel* to third place. Actual measurement of the winning jump showed a spread of 22 feet 6 inches, the high bar being 4 feet 6 inches. The splendid horsemanship exhibited by Sergeant Noe received the highest commendation from Officers of the 13th Cavalry as well as from the other competitors and the spectators.

On January 23d in the Pairs and Hunters class with 10 entries, Captain L. N. Scherf and Sergeant R. E. Noe rode *Tony*, No. 17, and *Stump* to second place, and Sergeants Hamrock and Appledorn on *Tony*, No. 24, and *Cappy* rode to fourth place.

In the Officers' Chargers class with 15 entries 4th place was won by First Lieutenant C. E. Richardson, Commander of Headquarters Detachment, 1st Squadron, 117th Cavalry.

On January 24th in the Consolation for Hunters and Jumpers class with 13 entries, the blue went to *Colonel*, ridden by Sergeant R. E. Noe.

All entries by the 117th Cavalry were Government horses issued to the National Guard in 1921, and the officers and enlisted men of the regiment are entitled to the

highest commendation for the excellent work done in training and developing them. Every one of the thirty mounts in the hands of this unit will freely take a three foot jump.

The organization acknowledges the splendid instruction and assistance rendered by Lieutenant Colonel James E. Shelley, Q. M. C., Commander of Trains, 103d Division O. R. C., and appreciates that the Cavalry suffered the loss of a real horseman when Colonel Shelley transferred to the Quartermaster Corps.

The Organized Reserves

SIXTY-FOURTH CAVALRY DIVISION

The 64th Cavalry Division, with headquarters at Louisville, Ky., Colonel Kirby Walker, Cavalry (DOL), Chief of Staff, has been holding monthly conferences at the Armory of the 138th Field Artillery, Kentucky National Guard. The average attendance at these conferences has been over fifty Reserve officers, who are very much interested in a series of lectures being given by Colonel Walker on "The Palestine Campaign."

Twice weekly, Reserve officers of the Division living in Louisville and vicinity meet at the Riding Hall, 138th Field Artillery, for classes in equitation, with Lieutenant Stanton Higgins, Cavalry (DOL), as instructor. Interest is keen and all officers are working to perfect themselves in horsemanship with a view to putting over a horse show in the Spring.

A polo team has been made up of 64th Cavalry Division officers who meet the 138th Field Artillery team twice a week in practice games. Officers composing the former team are Captains George I. Smith, W. E. Barott and Lieutenant Stanton Higgins, all Cavalry (D. O. L.).

63d CAVALRY DIVISION

During the past three months Division Headquarters has been actively engaged in conducting Tactical Schools and Equitation Classes for National Guard and Reserve Officers of Chattanooga.

The Headquarters of the Division being located at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, the home station of the 6th U. S. Cavalry, and only nine miles from the City of Chattanooga, it is particularly fortunate in being able to offer the training facilities of an excellent Cavalry Post to all Officers of the Army of the United States, who wish to take advantage of same.

The Tactical School is held in Chattanooga semi-monthly, and through the courtesy of the Y. M. C. A. we have secured an excellent room in which to conduct the class. The attendance, though not as large as desired, is satisfactory. Many students are so interested in these classes, that they have been present for each session since the school began last November.

The problems deal with the use of combined arms, the students being divided into small tactical groups, according to their rank and branch, each group being given certain tactical requirements to solve.

Similar schools are being conducted in all the larger cities throughout the Fourth Corps Area.

The riding class, held Sunday mornings at Fort Oglethorpe, began last December as a semi-monthly affair with an attendance of only five or six Reserve Officers.

However, the rides soon became so attractive, that frequent requests were made for more riding. Accordingly, the class is now held every Sunday morning, and has

increased to such an extent that the average attendance is about twenty (20) officers each ride.

The duration of each class is about two hours, the first hour being devoted to intensive instruction in the riding pen, the second hour the class has a flock ride through Chickamauga Park. Beginners are given McClellan saddles, the more advanced students using the flat saddle. Horses are furnished by the 6th Cavalry.

The war strength (58) commissioned personnel of one (1) cavalry regiment of this Division is to be ordered to active duty for fifteen (15) days at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, April 5-19th.

The 309th Cavalry has been selected by the Chief of Staff, 63rd Cavalry Division, as the regiment to report. Programs and schedules for the training of this regiment have been drawn up and approved.

Clay pigeon traps have been set up and a gun club organized at Fort Oglethorpe. All officers of the Army of the United States are eligible to join. Regular shoots are held on each Saturday afternoon and Sunday morning. Several Reserve Officers have taken advantage of this opportunity and are showing their skill, or the lack of it, on the flying clay targets.

It is contemplated organizing a Reserve Officers' Team to compete in the tournaments, which will be held from time to time during the year.

322nd CAVALRY

Approval has been officially granted the following design for the regimental insignia of the 322nd's Cavalry: Shield, "Or, a Sioux warrior in war bonnet brandishing a spear in dexter hand and mounted on an Indian pony courant all proper."

The Motto, as approved, is: "Audacter et Strenue," which was adopted from the motto of the family coat-of-arms of Colonel H. H. Polk, of Des Moines, Iowa, the first and present commanding officer of the 322nd Cavalry.

The 322nd Cavalry is a component of the 66th Cavalry Division: is allotted to states of Iowa, Minnesota and Nebraska with the officer personnel largely from the cities of Des Moines and Minneapolis. The regimental area is old Sioux country. Regimental headquarters is located in Des Moines. The Executive Officer is Captain Joseph L. Phillips, Cavalry, (D. O. L.).

During the absence on leave of Captain Joseph L. Phillips, Cavalry, (D. O. L.), Executive Officer, 322nd Cavalry, from Des Moines, the equitation class for reserve officers at Fort Des Moines, has been conducted by Captain Luther L. Hill, a graduate of the Military Academy, now Plans and Training Officer of the 322nd Cavalry.



Proceedings of the Annual Meeting of the United States Cavalry Association

Washington, January 14, 1925.

The meeting which was held at the Army and Navy Club, Washington, D. C., this date, was called to order at 8:05 P. M. by the President. There were fifty-five members present in person and 813 represented by proxies, a quorum.

Upon motion it was voted to dispense with the reading of the minutes of the last annual meeting.

The annual report of the Secretary-Treasurer-Editor was read as follows:

Washington, January 14, 1925.

To the United States Cavalry Association.

Gentlemen:

I present herewith, as required by the Constitution, the following financial statement for the year ending December 31, 1924, and a report of the activities of the United States Cavalry Association for the same period.

FINANCIAL STATEMENT OF THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION FOR THE YEAR ENDING DECEMBER 31, 1924.

RECEIPTS

Cash on hand January 1, 1924	\$809.43
Advertising	1649.05
Book Department	3238.61
Cavalry Journal	4827.35
Interest	618.53
Magazine Department	5337.52
Marquis Saddle Equipment	1111.50
Postage, Stationary and Incidentals	.90
Rent	274.90
Telephone	45.87
Wetmore Legacy	489.01

\$18402.67

DISBURSEMENTS

Advertising	\$34.78
Book Department	1815.59
Cavalry Journal	3671.50
Draper Prize Fund	200.00
Investment	914.97
Magazine Department	4489.84
Marquis Saddle Equipment	857.25
Office Equipment	120.48
Outstanding Checks	69.08
Postage, Stationary and Incidentals	704.87
Rent	710.00
Salaries	2256.80
Telephone	127.04
Cash Balance, December 31, 1924	2430.47

\$18402.67

ASSETS

Cash in bank, December 31, 1924	\$2410.13
Petty Cash	20.84
6 Liberty Bonds at Market Value	6082.80
Accrued Interest on Liberty Bonds	60.18
1 Real Estate Note	1000.00
Accrued Interest on Real Estate Note	24.15
1 Real Estate First Mortgage Certificate	1000.00
Accrued Interest on First Mortgage Certificate	27.50
5 Southern Railway 4% General Mortgage Bonds, at Market Value	3687.50
Accrued Interest on Southern Railway Bonds	50.00
2 American Water Works Bonds, \$500.00 each, at Market Value	925.00
Accrued Interest on American Water Works Bonds	12.50
Stock on hand, books at cost	981.18
Stationery and Office Supplies	89.00
Office Equipment	284.15
Credit at Post Office for Mailing	14.97
Credit with Register of Copyrights	6.00
Accounts Receivable	1946.03

\$18621.43

LIABILITIES

Credits due Customers	\$152.69
Due Authors from Accounts Receivable	1.25
Outstanding Checks, Manufacturers National Bank	32.04
Printing and Engraving, January Cavalry Journal	800.61
Net Assets December 31, 1924	17634.84

\$18621.43

Net Assets December 31, 1924

Net Assets December 31, 1923

\$17634.84

15018.48

Net Gain for 1924

\$ 2616.36

Washington, January 5, 1925.

We, the undersigned, appointed by the President of the United States Cavalry Association, to audit the accounts of the Treasurer of said Association, for the year ending December 31, 1924, do hereby certify that we have examined the books of account, vouchers, and the foregoing statement, covering said fiscal year, and that the same are correct and true.

W. J. GLASGOW,
Colonel, Cavalry.

JAMES H. REEVES,
Colonel, General Staff.

LEON B. KROMER,
Colonel, Cavalry.

As evidenced by the foregoing statement, the Association is financially in a healthy condition. Exclusive of a final payment of \$489.01 from the William B. Wetmore legacy, the Association gained during the past year \$2127.35 in net assets, notwithstanding the charge against this year's income, of getting out five issues of the CAVALRY JOURNAL instead of four.

As in the past, Advertising in the CAVALRY JOURNAL as a source of income has been the greatest problem, as it is likely to be in the case of any periodical with a limited circulation. We have lost no ground in this respect but the most earnest and

persistent effort has failed to increase our income from this source. Our principal dependence apparently must be upon members and friends of the Association who by means of personal solicitation or otherwise, are in a position to help us.

The Book Department has continued to be a profitable enterprise and a means of service to members. Our stock of old books has been materially reduced, and the supply of a few works practically exhausted. The only increment in stock during the year was 350 copies of "As to Military Training" which were received through the generosity of Major J. F. Wall, the author, with the proviso that 60% of the proceeds should go to the Cavalry Fund and 40% to the Association.

The Magazine Department has continued its success of last year and has been the greatest single source of income. Troops, headquarters detachments, officers' clubs, and some individual members have been liberal in giving us their business and at this time seventy-five troops and seven headquarters detachments are obtaining their periodicals through the Association. It is hoped that all cavalry organizations not on our lists at present will eventually give the Association this very material support.

The continued popularity of the Marquis equipment shows that officers appreciate the value of first class saddle equipment. About one thousand dollars worth of this equipment was sold during the year. Although the profit made by the Association is very small, it is believed that the enterprise is fully justified by the service rendered to members.

The various securities in which the surplus funds of the Association have been invested have been a consistent source of income.

The fact that the market values of all our bonds are well above what they were at the time of purchase indicates the wisdom of the investments.

A final payment of \$489.01 from the William B. Wetmore Legacy was received in June, \$3042.08 having been received in 1923.

The income from subscriptions to the CAVALRY JOURNAL has increased during 1924 and the paid circulation on December 31 stood at the highest mark in its history.

This is largely due to the co-operation and loyal support of commanding officers, regimental representatives and officers on duty with the National Guard and Organized Reserves.

The following analysis of subscriptions and membership may be of interest:

Cavalry R. A., active and retired, and General Officers, 895 (gain of 3.9%).
Cavalry Reserve Corps, 375 (gain of 34.8%).
Cavalry National Guard, 158 (loss of 21.5%).
Miscellaneous (Officers of other Arms, Libraries, Clubs, etc.), 332 (gain of 2.1%).
Exchange 23, Complimentary 1, Life 4, Honorary 3, 31 (loss of 32.9%).
Organizations, R. A., 131 (gain of 11%).
Organizations, N. G., 8 (loss of 37.5%).
Total, 1930 (gain of 5.7%).

While the increase in membership in the Regular Army and Organized Reserves is gratifying, we are not satisfied. It is felt that there should be many more than 158 members out of 716 National Guard Cavalry Officers and more than 375 members out of 3217 Reserve Cavalry Officers. And it is especially disappointing that 233 (22%) regular cavalry officers out of a total of 1050 on the active list should be non-members of the Association of their branch of the service.

There may be various reasons for this state of affairs. That it indicates on the part of non-members a lack of interest in their profession and their Arm, we are loath to believe. Rather it is thought that outside of some cases of neglect, the situation is largely due to a lack of education in the history and purposes of the Association.

If the history of the accomplishments of the Association, its purposes, and its meaning were thoroughly understood, it is believed that in but few cases would the response be unfavorable. It is difficult to do this at long range—much work, many

quarts of ink and reams of paper have been devoted to it—and with some success, but it has been our experience that the place for the most effective missionary work for the Association, is in squadrons, regiments, posts, brigades and divisions, and by those on duty with, and in more or less intimate contact with our fellow cavalry officers in the National Guard and the Organized Reserves. Many loyal members serving in various capacities with the three components of the Army have done yeoman service for the Association during the past year and it is desired at this time to express to them our appreciation of their valuable assistance in increasing the membership.

THE CAVALRY FUND

Pursuant to the action of the Association at its last annual meeting, the Cavalry Fund and the support of various activities were continued this year. The financial statement of the fund follows:

FINANCIAL STATEMENT OF THE CAVALRY FUND FOR THE YEAR ENDING DECEMBER 31, 1924

RECEIPTS	
On hand January 1, 1924.....	\$588.95
Received from Officers and Organizations.....	964.03
	<hr/>
	\$1552.98
DISBURSEMENTS	
Entrance fee for Cavalry School Team, Colorado Endurance Ride.....	\$40.00
1924 Endurance Ride	500.00
Medals for Cavalry Rifle-Pistol Team.....	176.50
Engraving-Cavalry Engineer Trophy	7.50
On hand in bank, December 31, 1924.....	828.98
	<hr/>
	\$1552.98

Washington, January 5, 1925.

We, the undersigned, appointed by the President of the United States Cavalry Association, to audit the Cavalry Fund account for the year ending December 31, 1924, do hereby certify that we have examined the books of account, vouchers, and the foregoing statement, covering said fiscal year, and that the same are correct and true.

W. J. GLASGOW,
Colonel, Cavalry.
JAMES H. REEVES,
Colonel, General Staff.
LEON B. KROMER,
Colonel, Cavalry.

On the basis of a contribution of \$3.00 from each field officer and \$1.50 from each officer below field grade it was thought that probably \$1500.00 out of a maximum of \$2000.00 would be collected, which would permit laying aside each year a substantial amount for the Olympic Team and a reserve for the Fund. As shown by the statement but little more than half of the amount expected has been collected. The disbursements from the fund have been limited as indicated in the statement, and there are no obligations outstanding.

The next call for disbursement from the fund will be about June 1, 1925, when our contribution of \$500.00 toward the 1925 Endurance Ride is due. It is hoped that before that time many officers and organizations that have not contributed as yet may find it possible to assist in augmenting the fund.

It is believed that the solution, as in the case of membership, is in educating them at close range as to the advantages accruing to the Cavalry as a whole, and the indirect individual benefit to be derived from our support of the various enterprises to

which the Cavalry Fund may contribute.

As a result of the Prize Essay contest of 1924 an enthusiastic Cavalry Reserve officer who believes that the value of Cavalry is largely measured by the prompt decision and aggressiveness of the leaders of its small units, has donated \$1000.00 to be utilized in prizes for a competition in the Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units.

The President of the Association appointed a committee consisting of Colonel J. H. Reeves, General Staff; Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, 3d Cavalry, and Lieutenant Colonel Robert Mc. Beck, Jr., Cavalry, to prepare a plan for the competition.

After a thorough study of the subject, the committee submitted its recommendations, which have been approved. In general, the two essentials of the plan are as follows:

First, that field sports, or feats involving nerve and endurance, form an integral and important part of the competition.

Second, that technical problems should be brief, simple, and settled when possible by concrete evidence (e. g., hits in fire problems and condition of horses after a march problem).

The test is to be in two phases; the first phase to be such as to test the individual military capacity bearing upon leadership of the officer and enlisted man, and will determine who will compete in the second phase; the second phase to be such as to test the ability of the officer to lead a unit, and also the teamwork of the men composing the unit.

The test is to be held at the Cavalry School during the year 1925, the details to be determined by the Commandant of the School.

The fund in question has been deposited as a separate savings account, and has been verified by the Auditing Committee appointed by the President of the Association.

Captain G. A. Moore, to whom is due much credit for the sound financial condition of the Association, he having been Acting Secretary, Treasurer, and Editor during the first half of 1924 and Managing Editor for the past three years, ceased to function as such September 25, 1924, as he was assigned, upon return from a leave of absence, December 5, to duties in the office of the Chief of Cavalry which require his entire time.

On December 1, Major Kenna G. Eastham was, in addition to his other duties, assigned to duty in the office of the Association, and has rendered material assistance to the Secretary and Treasurer.

Upon motion, the report was accepted.

The following officers and members of the Executive Council were unanimously elected:

President: Major General Malin Craig.

Vice-President: Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, 3d Cavalry.

Members of the Executive Council:

Colonel W. J. Glasgow, Cavalry.

Colonel J. H. Reeves (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel A. C. Colahan, National Guard of Pennsylvania.

Colonel F. Le J. Parker, Cavalry.

Colonel T. A. Roberts, Cavalry.

Lieutenant Colonel W. P. Draper, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieutenant Colonel John Philip Hill, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieutenant Colonel W. M. Connell (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Lieutenant Colonel S. R. Gleaves, Cavalry.

General Craig, the newly elected President, took the Chair.

The following amendments to the Constitution proposed by five members of the

Association three months before the meeting and submitted to the members one month before the meeting, all in accordance with Article VIII of the Constitution, were adopted by unanimous vote:

In Article III, Section 2, erase the words "and at such subscription price" and the words "which may be subscribed for by any person or organization," so that the section will read:

"In furtherance of its aim and purpose, the Association shall publish with such frequency as may be determined from time to time by the Executive Council, a professional and scientific journal to be known as the CAVALRY JOURNAL, and conduct a book department for the sale to its members and the public, of books, maps, and periodicals."

In Article IV, Section 2, to erase the words "for at least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL," substituting therefor the words "of at least one year's dues, the amount of which shall be determined from time to time by the Executive Council"; also erase the words "date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced," so that the section will read:

"Any person desiring to become an active or associate member, shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility, and be accompanied by the payment of at least one year's dues, the amount of which shall be determined from time to time by the Executive Council, and the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership."

In Article IV, Section 3, erase the entire section and substitute for it the following:

"All active and associate members shall receive the JOURNAL without other cost than the annual dues."

In Article IV, Section 4, erase the words "renew the annual subscription to the JOURNAL," substituting therefor the words "renew through payment of annual dues," so that the section will read:

"Any member may withdraw from the Association at the end of any current year by tendering his resignation; and membership shall lapse, ipso facto, by failure to renew through payment of annual dues; but such withdrawal or lapse shall not operate to relieve such member from liabilities to, or as a member of the Association, incurred prior thereto."

To Article IV add the following section:

"Section 6—Any person or organization may become a subscriber to the CAVALRY JOURNAL upon the payment of a subscription price equivalent to the annual dues of the Association, and all such as are not regularly admitted and entered as active, associate, or honorary members, shall be considered as subscribers merely."

Upon motion, it was unanimously voted to contribute, on behalf of the Cavalry, one thousand dollars to the Infantry School Recreation Center Fund as a memorial to our comrades of the Infantry who lost their lives during the World War.

Major General Willard A. Holbrook, at the request of the members, made a brief address on the achievements of Cavalry and its future.

The President addressed the meeting briefly.

Upon motion it was unanimously voted to extend to Major General Willard A. Holbrook the thanks and appreciation of the Association for his valued and efficient services as President during the past four years.

There being no further business, the meeting adjourned.

W. V. MORRIS,
Lieutenant Colonel, Cavalry,
Secretary

Cavalry School Notes

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—Fort Riley, Kansas
Brigadier General E. L. King, Commandant

Graduation exercises of the National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class of 1924 were held on December 12-13, 1924.

A night ride of about 25 miles was started at the West Riding Hall at 7:30 P. M., on the evening of the 12th. The course extended via Clark's Creek, West Gate, Cedarville Ranch and Ogden. Each contestant was required to go over the course at a rate of 8 miles per hour reporting at each station at the finish. Penalties were incurred for failure to report and for over and under time at any station. Horses were required to be in serviceable condition at the finish. The winner was Captain Mott, O. R. C.; second, Captain Philip, Texas N. G.; third, Lieut. Bradley, O. R. C., and Lieut. Dundon, O. R. C., tied.

On the morning of the 13th, each member of the class was "cited in orders" by the President of the Class for some feat "above and beyond the call of duty", such as "policing", "carrying the mail", etc., performed during the course. Following this was a ride by the whole class which included the following movements: slow trot, form line, trot, threes by the right flank, half turn in reverse, three by the left flank, half turn, by threes right oblique, gallop depart in circle, suppling exercises, jumping through the chute and jumping. The Commandant, General King, then made a short address, in which he stressed the importance to all components of the Army of the United States of the provisions of the National Defense Act, following which he presented prizes for the night ride and certificates of graduation.

The following were the members of the class: Lieutenant Colonel de Hermida, O. R. C.; Majors Baxter, Bell and Carrico, O. R. C.; Captains Bierwirth, Michigan N. G.; Blackledge, Wyoming N. G.; Bush, O. R. C.; Durant, Connecticut N. G.; Fox, Kansas N. G.; Gillispie, Louisiana N. G.; King, Alabama N. G.; Leonard, O. R. C.; Mott, O. R. C.; Philp, Texas N. G.; Stitt, Texas N. G., and Timmons, New Mexico N. G., and Lieutenants Barber, Kentucky N. G.; Bercaw, O. R. C.; Bradley, O. R. C.; Cain, New Mexico N. G.; Dundon, O. R. C.; Hlavas, O. R. C.; McKenney, Rhode Island N. G. Monroe, Kansas N. G.; Mozley, Alabama N. G.; Sawyer, O. R. C., and Sheldon, New York N. G.

Distinguished visitors to the post included General George H. Cameron, formerly Commandant of the Cavalry School, and General Snow, Chief of Field Artillery, who was accompanied by Major Lester. Exhibitions were given in their honor in the West Riding Hall, which included pair jumping by the Special Advanced Class in Equitation, a ride of schooled horses by the instructors of the Department of Horsemanship, special drills by troops of the 2nd Cavalry and exhibition driving by Battery "A", 9th Field Artillery.

A holiday horse show was given in the West Riding Hall on the evening of December 19, 1924. Zero weather failed to cool the enthusiasm of the contestants and spectators. A jumping contest for troop officers over a course of eight 3½ foot jumps was won by Captain Carpenter; Captain Neilson, second; Captain Cox, third, and Captain Ligon, fourth. The first Platoon, Captain Coe, Instructor, won the ribbon for the highest aggregate score. A class for teams of three jumpers from any organization to be shown in column over a course of seven 3½ foot jumps was won by the team from the Department of Cavalry Weapons, consisting of Colonel Lippincott, Captain Falck and Major T. K. Brown. Prizes consisted of a piece of plate presented by "The Standard" and three hunting snaffles presented by Captain C. C. Smith. Second place went to the First Platoon and third place to the Second Platoon. The Advanced

Class jumping over eight 3½ foot jumps was won by Major Rayner, with Major Millikin; second, Lieutenant Colonel Gordon Johnston, third; and Major Foster, fourth. The open jumping class, over a very difficult course of eight jumps, 4 feet high and better, without wings, was won by Captain Fiske, with Captain Maddox, second; Lieutenant Comfort, third, and Lieutenant Holbrook, fourth. The Ladies' Jumping Class was won by Mrs. J. B. Thompson, with Mrs. Coe, second; Mrs. Truxes, third, and Miss Lillian Whitside, fourth. A potato race for enlisted men resulted in a tie between 1st Sergeant Harris, Troop "F", 2nd Cavalry, and Private Engel, Battery "A", 9th Field Artillery. A novelty event for grooms was won by Private Van Dyke, Stables No. 4. After the show, coffee and "hot dogs" were served by the School for Bakers and Cooks.

The February Horse Show was held in the West Riding Hall on the evening of February 6, 1925. The bucking barrel class was won by Private Autry, Transportation Stables, who was dislodged from the barrel only after 1 minute and 7 seconds. The class for cow ponies, open only to civilians, was won by Mr. Chard. The ladies' jumping class was won by Miss Lillian Whitside, with Mrs. Creed, second, and Mrs. Truxes, third. The enlisted men's jumping class was won by Private Lovesee, 2nd Cavalry, with Corporal Starkey, 9th Engineers, second, and Sergeant Rembe, 2nd Cavalry, third.

The Troop Officers' Jumping Class resulted in a tie between Captain Pierce, Captain Ramey and Captain Creed, all of whom had clean performances. In the jump off, they were placed as listed above. Lieutenant Puncett of the Cuban Army was fourth. The Second Platoon, Captain Coe, Instructor, won the platoon phase of this event. The jumping class for officers on duty with school troops, was won by Lieutenant Reinberg, with Lieutenant Jennings second, Lieutenant Wofford third, and Major Conard fourth. The jumping class for staff officers and instructors resulted in a tie between Captain Beeman and Major Lyman, who were placed in that order in the jump off. Captain Stevens was third and Captain Weeks fourth. The Advanced Equitation Class pair jumping was won by Major Strong and Captain Gay, with Captain Lambert and Lieutenant Holbrook second, and Captain Grow and Captain Maddocks third.

The team jumping class, for the Standard Plate and three hunting snaffles, donated by Captain Waters, was won by the 1st Platoon of the Troop Officers' Class, Captain Roffe, Instructor, with a team composed of Captain Creed, Captain Maher and Captain Pierce. The Post Headquarters team, composed of Lieutenant Waddell, Captain Weeks and Captain Washburn, was second and the 2nd Cavalry team composed of Lieutenant Reinburg, Lieutenant Thornburg and Captain Monahan, third.

The whole Cavalry School was given over to the Army Relief on Friday afternoon and Saturday, February 27th and 28th. The program included a circus in the West Riding Hall on Friday afternoon, a cabaret Friday night and an air circus Saturday afternoon.

The circus started off with a grand parade of all the performers around the post. The side shows of ringing live ducks, throwing tennis balls at boxes, fortune telling and an exhibition of the smallest dog in the world garnered many dollars in small change. The Ladies' Costume Ride to music by 32 members of the Ladies' Riding Class was a well executed and charming performance. A stirring holdup of the Deadwood Coach followed. The cow pony class was won by Mr. Chard. The Medicos, in a gruesome autopsy on a live victim, caused uproarious laughter. The bareback riding, including a "Fred Stone Rope Act," rivalled anything that Barnum ever put on. Members of the Troop Officers' Class enacted a stirring Jousting event between Queen Arthur and Mrs. Launcelot for the hand of the Virgin Knight and the Special Advanced Equitation Class gave a ludicrous burlesque of an Instructor's School Ride. Other events were the covered wagon, a Buckling Barrel Contest and a Greased Pig Contest. Boy Scouts sold crackerjack and peanuts and the Bakers' and Cooks' School coffee and sandwiches.

The cabaret was jammed to the doors and a good time "was had by all." The hits of the evening were the Sally chorus, led by Mrs. Neilson, and the Black and White Ballet, led by Captain Millholland. It is rumored that Mr. Ziegfeld made several flattering offers after the show. The Equitating Balletiers and Bud's Tanbark Tooters were side splitting acts, the former a classic dancing act and the latter a German brass band. Miss Lillian Whitside and Captain Mallan gave a lovely exhibition waltz and Mr. Fletcher Sargent of Junction City gave a seductive oriental dance. Other attractive acts were a radio concert by Lieutenant Pride, a vocal solo by Mrs. Neilson and a musical fanfare by the 2nd Cavalry Drum and Bugle Corps and the 9th Cavalry Band. At the end of the performance, opportunity tickets for many beautiful gifts donated by the merchants of Junction City, were drawn.

The air circus started with formation flying and an aerial review, and included machine gun and bomb attacks, stunt flying by Captain Bock and a parachute jump by Private Snyder. Aerial photographs were made by the 9th Photo Section and sold for a small sum. Tickets were raffled off to civilians for three airplane rides and the ladies of the post reaped a small harvest selling tags.

In all, a total of over \$3,000.00 was made for the Army Relief.

Regimental Notes

THIRD CAVALRY (Less First Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia
Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, Commanding

The winter season opened on December 5th with a pay ride in the riding hall for the benefit of the Army Relief Society. In spite of the very disagreeable weather that we had on that day the hall was filled.

The program was a very good one; consisting of a rough riding exhibition by Troop F, Roman riding by Troop G, a Squadron Drill, and an Officers' School ride led by Colonel Hawkins. There was also a class for the best trooper's mount, and a civilian and an officers' jumping class.

Since this first date there has been a ride given every Friday afternoon. Troop F has specialized in rough riding. Troop G, in Roman and bare-back riding, Troop E, in school riding. At various times the program has been changed by a drill given by the entire Squadron, a drill by the 1st Battalion 16th Field Artillery, an officers' or a non-commissioned officers' jumping class, a drill by one of the Batteries and an officers' school ride led by Colonel Hawkins. These Friday afternoon programs have become so popular that on February the twenty-seventh at the drill given in honor of the Chief of Staff there were over twelve hundred and forty tickets given out.

For the second time since being stationed at Fort Myer, the Regiment (less the 1st Squadron) participated in the Inaugural parade as a guard of honor to the President and the Vice-President.

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont
Lieut. Colonel Herbert E. Mann, Commanding

During the past three months the post has experienced some of the coldest weather, and the heaviest snow storm, that has been seen around here for many years. The mounted work out of doors has been restricted mainly to horse exercise, while the Post Riding Hall has been constantly in use for equitation purposes, and for the training of remounts which were received here last December. Another car-load of particularly high grade remounts were received by the Cavalry in February, and training has commenced on these.

From the 20th of January to the 8th of February the entire garrison was engaged in its annual task of cutting, hauling, and storing ice.

On February 21st the Post in conjunction with the University of Vermont, held an Ice Carnival. Entries were made from the garrison, the University of Vermont, and other civilians; appropriate cups and prizes being presented by the Post and the

Chamber of Commerce of Burlington, Vermont. Unfortunately the skating events had to be omitted on account of the thawing of our ice rink, but the skiing, skijoring, snow shoeing, obstacle races, etc., went off well. This Squadron won the most points for the Army, with Troop "B" in the lead.

The troops are going in strong for gallery practice this winter. The first indoor gallery competition was held between the various organizations, the competitors being men who fired last year and failed to qualify. This competition was won by Headquarters Detachment, and will be followed by competitions between marksman, sharp-shooter, and experts from the different troops.

An exciting and closely contested Basketball Tournament has been in progress since December 16th, the outcome of which is still in doubt.

Our string of polo ponies have had a good rest for the last two months, and are now fit and ready to start in strenuous training for the coming season.

On Saturday, February 28th, the garrison was startled by the unusual sensation of an earthquake, which was quite severe in this locality.

FOURTH CAVALRY (less 1st Squadron)—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming
Colonel Osmun Latrobe, Commanding

Colonel Osmun Latrobe took command on January 3rd.

The Post Bowling Championship was won by the 4th Cavalry Officers' team consisting of Captains R. E. Willoughby, C. W. Burkett, P. S. Haydon, and Lieutenant A. K. Hammond.

March 3rd, being the 70th anniversary of the organization of the regiment, was declared a holiday. The day was celebrated by appropriate exercises and a Horse Show. The program of the exercises was:

Explanation of assembly by Regimental Commander.

Prayer by Chaplain.

Reading of short history of regiment.

Presentation of new men to colors.

Short talk to new men by Regimental Commander.

Address by Brigadier General J. J. Jenkins.

National Anthem.

The Horse Show events and place winners were:

CLASS 1. Officers mount, Private or Government owned. 1st Place: Captain R. E. Willoughby. 2nd Place: Captain T. A. Dobyns. 3rd Place: Lt. H. I. Hodes.

CLASS 2. Non-commissioned Officers Jumping. 1st Place: Sgt. John S. Maras, Troop G. 2nd Place: Sgt. Daniel F. Murphy, Hq. Troop. 3rd Place: Sgt. Clarence Jones, Troop E.

CLASS 3. Privates Jumping. 1st Place: Pvt. Arthur B. Carlton, Hq. Troop. 2nd Place: Pvt. Norbert E. Tuck, Troop G. 3rd Place: Pvt. Steve Fernick, Troop E.

CLASS 4. Officers Jumping. 1st Place: Lt. A. K. Hammond. 2nd Place: Captain T. A. Dobyns. 3rd Place: Captain P. S. Haydon.

CLASS 5. Enlisted Mens' Equitation. 1st Place: Pvt. Bundy Penegar, Service Troop. 2nd Place: Sgt. John J. Donegan, Hq. Troop. 3rd Place: Pvt. Andrew Wescott, Hq. Det. 2nd Sq.

CLASS 6. Recruits, full field equipment. 1st Place: Pvt. James Pratt, Hq. Troop. 2nd Place: Pvt. Fred Hartman, Hq. Troop. 3rd Place: Pvt. James Brown, Troop T.

CLASS 7. Escort Wagon Class. 1st Place: Pvt. Ellis M. Mitchell, Service Troop. 2nd Place: Pvt. Anton D. Jurgatis, Service Troop. 3rd Place: Pvt. Marvin E. Hunt, Service Troop.

CLASS 8. Radio Set Class. 1st Place: 2nd Squadron Detachment.

CLASS 9. Mule Jumping, Bareback. 1st Place: Pvt. Arthur Briscoe, Service Troop. 2nd Place: Pvt. Wasil Kozol, Service Troop. 3rd Place: Pvt. Joe Karaniczyz Service Troop.

CLASS 10. Special Officers' Jumping. 1st Place: Lt. C. C. Blakeney, 76th F. A. 2nd Place: Lt. W. C. Stout, 76th F. A. 3rd Place: Capt. L. A. Shafer, 13th Cavalry.

The Troop winning the largest number of points was, Headquarters Troop, commanded by 1st Lieutenant E. E. Cox, 4th Cavalry.

Many guests from Cheyenne and the other regiments stationed at the post were present for the Horse Show.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort Meade, South Dakota

Major Otto Wagner, 4th Cavalry, Commanding

There have recently been received three carloads of remounts from the Remount Depot at Fort Robinson, Nebraska. These replacements were badly needed as the average age of horses of this squadron is between 12 and 15 years. Most of the young horses received promise to make excellent troopers' mounts and some of them can probably be developed into good polo ponies.

The squadron has received 43 recruits since January 1st, 1925. A large part of the present training is devoted to recruit instruction and training of remounts.

The Advanced Course in Tactics, for officers, under the direction of Major Otto Wagner and Captain C. G. Wall has been an excellent one and has been strictly carried out according to the original schedule. A short course in Public Speaking has been recently incorporated in this course. Officers have chosen the following subjects for their lectures:

Major Wagner—"Preparation of Addresses."

Captain Kilburn—"Early History of U. S. Army."

Captain Wall—"The Present Day Army."

Lieutenant Ward—"Progress of War Settlements."

Lieutenant Gregg—"The Chaotic Condition of European Finance."

Lieutenant Stone—"Muscle Shoals."

Captain Barnum—"The Paris Peace Conference, 1919."

Lieutenant Noble—"General Mitchell's Campaign for a United Air Service."

Lieutenant Sells—"Premier Mussolini."

Major Wagner—"Events Leading Up to the World War."

The Enlisted Men's Dance Committee has been giving one dance a month. These dances are popular and well attended. As there is no band at this post the expense of Officers' and Enlisted Men's dances must be borne by the individual. Due to the isolation of the post the cost of transporting and engaging dance orchestras is high and therefore dances have been few.

The Squadron Basketball League, composed of teams from Troop A, B and C, has been playing some exciting and fast basketball during the winter months. The teams are evenly matched and the race is very close.

The individual stars of the league are Lieutenant Gregg, 4th Cavalry; Sergeant Dyer, Troop A; Corporal Morris, Troop C; Private Hendricks, Troop B.

The present standing of the three teams is as follows: Troop A won 5, lost 3; Troop B won 3, lost 5; Troop C won 4, lost 4.

The Post Team is composed of the following players: Sergeant Dyer, Forward; Private Hendricks, Forward; Corporal Morris, Center; Lieutenant Gregg, Guard; Corporal Szpienski, Guard. To date the Post Team has competed in two outside games with the following results: Fort Meade 11, Spearfish 14; Fort Meade 20, Deadwood 19.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel Wallace B. Scales, Commanding

During the month of February the regiment engaged in record saber practice, in which 158 qualified as Experts, 156 Excellent, 7 Swordsman, and 10 were Unqualified. Percentage qualified—96.9.

There are still about twenty officers and enlisted men to take the course; all are expected to qualify, thereby raising the percentage.

On March 3rd the regiment celebrated the seventieth anniversary of its organization. Following is the program of the exercises for the day:

(a) Salute to the Standard—Band playing National Anthem.

(b) Reading of G. O. No. 2, Hq. 5th Cavalry, February 6th, 1920.

(c) Address—History and achievements of regiment.

(d) Address by regimental commander.

(e) Regimental March by the band.

(f) Reminiscences by Master Sergeant Bovee, oldest soldier in point of service with the regiment.

(g) America—by the band.

This was followed by an officers' polo game in the afternoon and an enlisted men's dance at night.

Due to the recent death of Lieutenant Colonel R. R. Love, the Executive Officer of the regiment, the officers did not have their customary dinner and dance on Organization Day.

The First Squadron and Headquarters Troop started range practice with the rifle on March 1st. The Second Squadron and Service Troop started range practice with the pistol on March 1st. Although we set a high standard in qualifications attained last year in all arms we are out to surpass those marks this year.

Due to pressure of business and a shortage of officers, the regiment did not send a polo team to Fort Sam Houston, Texas, for the mid-winter tournaments. A team from Fort Clark, is now at Sam Houston, engaged in the tournaments and is composed of Captains J. M. Tully, F. H. Barnhart, and E. M. Daniels of the regiment and Captain S. Berg, of the 1st Machine Gun Squadron. The team has been successful to date, having won three out of four games played.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Ga.

Colonel Robert J. Fleming, Commanding

On January first the annual presentation of trophies and medals to individuals and organizations was made. Troop "C," Captain Renn Lawrence commanding, was again awarded the Guidon streamer for attaining the highest average in Military Proficiency during the year 1924 and the cup presented to the troop securing the highest number of points in the annual horse show. Troop "F," Captain Robert R. Maxwell commanding, was awarded the banner for the highest average in Military Administration, while Troop "G," Captain Wharton G. Ingram commanding, won all first place awards for the highest percentage obtained in Rifle, Automatic Rifle, Pistol dismounted and Pistol mounted practice for the year, qualifying 100 per cent in each record practice. Troop "G" also won the cup offered in the Troop Rifle Competition with an average score of 312.3.

Monthly field days were held in January and February. The events in February showed a decided improvement over previous months, especially in pair jumping and novelty jumping, the winners winning with a clean performance.

The Chief of Staff of the Army, Major General John L. Hines, visited the Post on February second and third. A review followed by a tactical inspection was held on the morning of the third, while in the afternoon Post Schools, Headquarters, Barracks and Stables were inspected. The General's visit was the occasion for a very delightful Hop at the Officers' Hop Room. He expressed himself as well pleased with the condition of the Regiment.

A review by the Commanding Officer on February thirteenth was used to present streamers to which the Sixth is entitled to bear on its standard. Twenty-two streamers bearing inscriptions of Indian Wars, Civil War, Spanish-American War, China

Relief Expedition, Philippines Insurrection and the World War campaigns and engagements were placed on the standard.

During February the Officers and Ladies of the Post gave a County Fair and the entire Post gave a Carnival for the benefit of the Army Relief Society. A total of \$545.67 was raised and forwarded as a result of these entertainments.

A Gun Club has been organized by the Officers and Ladies of the Post, together with a number of enthusiastic civilians from Chattanooga. All equipment has been installed and regular meets are held three times a week. The Higgins Trophy is being competed for at the present time and real competition has developed.

The Baseball season has started with the prospect of developing the fastest team we have had in several years. We are a member of the City League of Chattanooga which assures us strong competition and a regular schedule of three games a week throughout the season.

Captain W. G. Simmons has been ordered to duty with the Organized Reserves with station at Knoxville, Tennessee, and Captain W. C. Steiger has been ordered to the Philippines. Lieutenant W. P. Campbell is attending the Chemical Warfare School at Edgewood Arsenal.

The Regiment reached its authorized strength during February with 133 recruits now in training with the Recruit Detachment. It is expected to complete all Recruit Drill in time to return all recruits to duty to take part in the summer training camps to be held here this summer for the CMTC, ROTC, ORC and National Guard.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

In December the Regiment completed the training of the individual soldier, tests of which the Brigade Commander, Brigadier General Joseph C. Castner, conducted soon thereafter and pronounced creditable. Recently the training squad and the platoon was satisfactorily finished.

During January and February the Regiment, with the exception of a few men in the Hospital, fired the Pistol Qualification Course, mounted and dismounted. Out of the total firing, only four men were lost. A high percentage is anticipated for the Regiment when the final results shall be tabulated, which will be in keeping with the excellent record of last year.

The saber qualification course has just been completed with the excellent result of 98.7 per cent. for the Regiment.

During the quarter officers have been attending schools in Tactics, Equitation, and Field Service Regulations.

On account of favorable weather, interest in athletics has not waned. The Regimental Basketball Team made a creditable showing in the Post League, but did not achieve first honors. The Team played in the league at El Paso and gave the winners a hard fight for first place. Two days, December 23rd and 24th were devoted to a Regimental field meet embracing mounted and dismounted events. Prizes were awarded to Troops and individuals. Presentation was by Colonel Fitzhugh Lee.

The baseball season for the Regiment opened on February 15th with an appropriate speech from Colonel Lee, the band playing "Garry Owen," and Service Headquarters Troops crossing bats. The inter-troop league is now well under way. The Regimental Team has promising players, and its prospects for championship of the Post League are good. The Post League Pennant won by this Regiment for two consecutive years, waves over the grandstand challenging the players to make it theirs for a third consecutive year. Lieutenant A. B. Clark is coaching and managing the Team. Sergeant W. W. Morrison is assistant, and is very active in all athletic affairs of the Regiment.

The Regimental Band, conducted by Warrant Officer C. B. Price, began the

spring concert season on Sunday afternoon, February 15th. The concerts are welcomed by the personnel of the Post, and are attended regularly by a large audience from El Paso.

During the past quarter the Non-commissioned Officers' Club of the Regiment, has promoted successfully a few dances, several masquerades, radio concerts, smokers, and sociables. An auxiliary to the Club has been organized among the wives of the Non-commissioned Officers. The auxiliary has proven a valuable aid in entertainments. The Club is active and prosperous.

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel S. McP. Rutherford, Commanding

Results of the recent mounted pistol competition between five-man teams from each cavalry troop of the army show the Eighth Cavalry in the three top places. Troop "F" took first place—total score, 147; Troop "G," second, 146, and Troop "E," third, 145. A letter has been received from the Brigade Commander congratulating the regiment on this remarkable record. That one squadron should take all three places in a competition entered by all troops of the army is considered more than phenomenal.

The members of the Troop "F" team were awarded gold medals and a bronze medal for highest regimental score. These medals were presented at Regimental Inspection on February 28th, by the Regimental Commander.

This year's pistol firing has been completed, with gratifying results. About 86.75 per cent qualified dismounted, and about 97.1 per cent mounted. Both E and F Troops qualified all men mounted.

This regiment's organization day is November 23rd. It was desired to celebrate the event, but the celebration had to be deferred until December 30th on account of the rush of activities during November. The celebration took the form of a field meet, opened by an address by the Regimental Commander on the history and achievements of the regiment. The field meet, comprising both mounted and dismounted events, was won by Troop F. It is intended to hereafter make the celebration of organization day an annual event.

The Brigade completed saber practice on February 25th. Of the officers and enlisted men of this regiment running the course 89.67 per cent qualified. Troops "A" and "E" qualified all officers and enlisted men.

The facilities afforded by the new area service club have greatly stimulated interest in basket-ball. During the winter just past an inter-troop league was formed, and after many good games Service Troop carried away the honors. The regimental team is on top in the post league and its winning the title is almost assured.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Lieut. Colonel Kerr T. Riggs, Commanding

The Ninth Cavalry Club boasts one of the finest Enlisted Men's Club Houses in the service. Fully equipped in every detail to furnish comfort and recreation to the men of the regiment, their wives and friends, it has been the center of attraction during the winter months. In addition to the regular weekly hops, and the moving pictures, a number of special entertainments have attracted large social gatherings. At all of these joyful festivities, Sergeant Clyde Andrews' Jazz Orchestra thrills the veterans of six or seven "hitches" with the spirit of gallant youth.

The elimination boxing bouts on February 12th drew a large crowd of patrons of the "Manly Art." Four fast and furious bouts furnished an enthusiastic audience with plenty of excitement.

An innovation to furnish amusement and entertainment for the members of the regiment and their friends, entertainments consisting of both mounted and dismounted events are held periodically at the West Riding Hall. These events are held at night so as to permit everyone to attend and are officially known as "NINTH CAVALRY

NIGHTS." Music is furnished by the band, and refreshments are served following the contests. The troop winning the highest number of points is presented with a banner. "NINTH CAVALRY NIGHT" on January 28th included the following events: Caterpillar Race, Potato Race (Mounted), Three-legged Race, Mounted Wrestling and a Relay Race. Troops finished as follows: First, Troop G, 11 points; second, Headquarters and Service Troop, 10 points; third, Troop F, 7 points; fourth, Troop C, 6 points. "NINTH CAVALRY NIGHT" on February 11th was won by Troop A with 13 points; second, Headquarters and Service Troop, 10 points; third, Troop B, 8 points; fourth, Troop G, 7 points. The program included the following events: Mounted Boxing, Greased Pig Chase (open to married men only, winner gets pig), Pie-eating Contest, Pillow Fight and Mounted Wrestling.

The Army Relief Benefit on February 27-28th was a huge success. The Ninth Cavalry took an active part in the numerous entertainments that were held to raise funds.

As the basketball season draws to an end the regimental baseball team is commencing its spring practice. Several very promising players have been acquired who will bring added strength to the very formidable aggregation of last year.

On February 18th a retirement party was given in honor of First Sergeant Richard L. Wilson and Staff Sergeant Miles Terry.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California Colonel H. J. Brees, Commanding

On December 12 and 13 the regiment entered a team in the 30th Infantry Horse Show, which was held at San Francisco. Under the direction of Major Sloan Doak this team brought back several cups and ribbons. Cups were won by the following entrants: Colonel H. J. Brees, Clift Hotel Cup; Captain W. J. Redner, Fairmont Hotel Cup; 1st Lieutenant Sol M. Lipman, Cup presented by Major General Chas. G. Morton, Corps Area Commander; 1st Lieutenant P. A. Noel, Hotel Plaza Cup; Sergeant T. P. Farrell, Troop B, The Mecchi and Company Cup; Private Dahlstrom, Headquarters Troop, winner of two cups presented by the 30th Infantry. The Regiment considers it acquitted itself admirably considering that it was in competition with some of the best civilian horseman and horses on the Pacific Coast.

The month of January was devoted to completing the saber course of 1925. Practically every man in the regiment was put through the course and almost 100% qualified. February and the first week in March was allotted to pistol practice dismounted. The remainder of March will be used for mounted pistol practice. It is intended to finish all target practice before the summer training camps begin. The results to date are very gratifying.

During the month of January one and two-day marches were made by all troops which greatly facilitated the field training. The weekly parades are still continuing. Regimental parade being held on the first Thursday of the month and squadron parades the remaining Thursdays. These parades are of much interest to the civilian population, all being well attended by people from Monterey, Del Monte, Pacific Grove and Pebble Beach.

Two members of the regiment have been cited by the Secretary of War in War Department General Orders for heroic conduct on September 14, 1924, during the destructive oil fire which occurred at that time. The two heroes are Sergeant Herbert A. Pederson, Headquarters Troop, 11th Cavalry, and Private George Bolio, Headquarters Troop, 11th Cavalry, who was cited posthumously, he having lost his life in the fire.

Athletics have been progressing satisfactorily. The regiment participated in a post dismounted field meet on February 25, winning a fair share of first places. A boxing card was held at the Post Gymnasium on February 26th, in which the regiment was well represented.

Preparations are being made for the summer training camps, Troop B, Captain James M. Adamson, commanding, having been designated to go to Camp Lewis, Washington, in June, to participate in training at that station, while Troop C, Captain D. C. Hawley, commanding, will go to Camp Del Monte, California.

TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Fort Ringgold and Sam Fordyce, Texas Colonel John M. Morgan, Commanding

The entire regiment will engage in rifle practice, automatic rifle practice and musketry problems at Fort Ringgold this year, due to the lack of range facilities at Fort Brown and the excellent terrain at Fort Ringgold. One-half of the Fort Brown command, with Lieutenant Colonel Edmund A. Buchanan, 12th Cavalry, in charge, left Fort Brown March 5th for Fort Ringgold, the itinerary calling for a five-days' march. When this contingent has completed firing and has returned to Fort Brown, the other half of the Fort Brown command will go to Fort Ringgold.

The completion of saber record practice, regular season, at Fort Brown in February, shows satisfactory progress in the training in this arm. Among the enlisted men, sixty-two qualified as expert, one hundred and eighty-six as excellent and twenty-three as swordsmen, making a total of two hundred and seventy-one qualified. The qualifications total sixty-nine more than are required to run the course, these being authorized but not required to demonstrate their ability in the saber. Fort Ringgold has not completed saber practice, having taken up rifle practice first in order to be able to turn the class A range over to the Fort Brown troops in March.

Athletics held the interest of the command throughout the past quarter. The basketball series consisted of 15 games with five organization teams competing. The series was completed February 11th, and Headquarters Troop awarded a loving cup for first place. Service Troop took second place. Field meets, including dismounted and mounted events, were conducted on January 31st and February 23rd. Good boxing cards entertained fight fans on the nights of December 29th, February 6th and March 3rd with five bouts each night. An inter-troop baseball league has been organized for the 1925 season. The official series will begin in May and will consist of a "once-around" round robin, each team playing each other team once.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming Colonel John J. Boniface, Commanding

During the past three months weather conditions have been exceptionally good in comparison with the usual Wyoming winters. The 13th Cavalry has thus been allowed, for the most part, to proceed without interruptions with its program of training. Frequent regimental practice marches, tactical inspections, and weekly mounted and dismounted parades are nearly always held as scheduled. The regiment is fortunate in having received 117 new horses, about one-third of which have completed their remount training and have been assigned for duty; the remaining remounts are progressing very satisfactorily under the supervision of Captain Selby and the personnel of Troop "E".

The 13th Cavalry Annual Horse Show, which was held on January 30, was complimentary to the Commanding General, Fort D. A. Russell and to the Governor and State Legislature of Wyoming. The seating and standing capacity of the riding hall would scarcely accommodate the spectators. A tea was given at Post Headquarters after the show to welcome the Wyoming Legislature, in session at that time.

A riding team, composed mainly of 13th Cavalry entries, participated in the National Western Horse Show in Denver during January. Fourteen ribbons were won in the nine classes entered. The most valued ribbons won were first places in the five-foot class and in the pairs of hunters; both of these classes were won on 13th Cavalry horses.

Nine officers of the 13th Cavalry have recently purchased horses either in Colorado or Wyoming. Practically all officers are now mounted on private mounts, there being 22 private mounts in the regiment.

In addition to our equitation classes, a cross country ride of about ten miles is held on each Thursday afternoon. All officers take this ride, which is led by Colonel Boniface. Twice this ride terminated at the Regimental Commander's quarters where tea and sandwiches were served by Mrs. Boniface.

The regiment has bright prospects for a good season of polo. Fourteen officers are training new ponies selected from the remounts just received in the regiment. Plans are being made for a local tournament in July, during the Cheyenne Frontier Days Celebration.

The 13th Cavalry Regimental Dinner was given at the Plains Hotel in Cheyenne on February 18th. This monthly affair is normally given in the Officers' Club, but the change to a new orchestra and dancing between courses made a pleasant innovation.

At a regimental dismounted parade on December 12, decorations, awarded by competent authorities, were formally presented by Brigadier General John M. Jenkins to the following officers and enlisted men of the 13th Cavalry for meritorious and conspicuous service: Colonel John J. Boniface, Major Mack Garr, Captain H. C. Minuth, Sergeant Alex Lager, Sergeant John May, and Corporal J. V. A. Kruas.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa, and Fort Sheridan, Illinois Lieutenant Colonel A. H. Davidson, Commanding

Troop A returned to Fort Sheridan on December 1st from St. Louis, Mo., after participating in the St. Louis Horse Show. This troop was one of the main attractions at the Horse Show and received many favorable notices.

The regimental training during this period has consisted of schools for officers and enlisted men and mounted and dismounted drills.

On January 5 the regiment (less 1st Squadron) received 22 remounts from Ft. Robinson, Nebraska. These remounts together with those received earlier in the year are being trained daily in the officer's and non-commissioned officer's equitation classes.

Lieutenant Colonel A. H. Davidson took command of the regiment on January 18, Colonel Caldwell having been promoted on that date to the grade of Brigadier General.

General Caldwell left Fort Des Moines on February 13 for Fortress Monroe.

On February 18 Lieutenant Colonel H. J. McKenney joined from sick leave, having been attached to the regiment by War Department Orders.

A great deal of interest has been shown by all organizations in the various competitions scheduled for the winter season.

The post football championship was not decided as both games between Troop G and Troop F to determine the winner resulted in a tie.

The bowling schedule which ended on February 20 resulted in a tie between the Service Troop and the Quartermaster Corps team, each having won nine games and lost one. The tie will be played off on March 3.

The winner of this event will receive a cup donated by Argonne Post No. 60, American Legion of Des Moines.

In the Indoor Pistol Competition the teams at the top at the present time are:

Headquarters Troop, 14th Cavalry	4680
Service Troop, 14th Cavalry	4664
Troop F, 14th Cavalry	4442

The post basketball championship was won by the Combat Train, 9th Field Artillery, with eight straight victories. Troop G, 14th Cavalry was second, having won seven games and lost one.

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas Colonel George Williams, Commanding

During the month of December this regiment gave two demonstrations as follows: December 3—Headquarters Troop Demolition Sections and December 5 the 1st Squadron in an advance guard problem.

In January each troop of the regiment was assigned periods in the riding halls for the preparation of exhibition rides to be given on Saturday morning during the winter. On January 17th an exhibition drill was given by Troop G, demonstrating all phases of platoon drill. The following Saturday the Communication Platoon Headquarters Troop gave an exhibition drill showing the speed of setting up radio stations and establishing communication. Troop F also gave a drill showing the training of troopers' mounts in combat which included rifle fire, pistol and saber.

On January 26, Troop G gave an exhibition drill for the Chief of Field Artillery. Troop F acted as mounted escort on the departure of Chief of Field Artillery from this post on January 26th.

Troop C and the Service Troop gave exhibition drills on February 21. The former demonstrated close order drill, mounted, and the latter gave an excellent driving exhibition.

A class in equitation and jumping under Captain Wharton and Captain Duke is being conducted during the winter months for all the officers of the regiment.

The middle of February saw the second of a series of School Horse Shows. The School Troops open jumping being won by Lt. Reinburg, 2nd Cavalry, with Lt. Jennings second and Lt. Wofford third. In the team jumping for entire school the 2nd Cavalry Team, Lt. Reinburg, Lt. Thornburgh, Capt. Monihan, took third place.

ESTABLISHED 1818

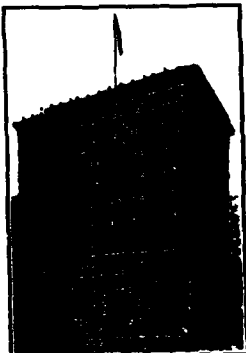
Brooks Brothers,
CLOTHING,
Gentlemen's Furnishing Goods,
MADISON AVENUE COR. FORTY-FOURTH STREET
NEW YORK

Officers' Uniforms

Agents in the United States
for the
"Woodrow" Cap
and
Messrs. Peal & Co.'s
"Sam Browne" Belt

Send for Circular

BOSTON PALM BEACH NEWPORT
LITTLE BUILDING PLAZA BUILDING AUGER BUILDING
Tenth and Broadway C O R D E R 220 Broadway Avenue



BROOKS BROTHERS'
Building, convenient
to Grand Central, Subway,
and to many of the lead-
ing Hotels and Clubs

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITOR

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry

Copyright, 1925, by

The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association. Editor, Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Baltimore, Md., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

Office of Publication, Baltimore, Md. Editorial Office, Washington, D. C.
\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65c. Foreign Postage, 25c Additional



PEAL & Co.
487 OXFORD ST.
LONDON,
ENGLAND.



MILITARY
POLO
HUNTING
BOOTS
SPURS
WHIPS
CROPS
KIT BAGS
&
CASES

AUTOMOBILE INSURANCE

For Officers and Warrant Officers, ACTIVE AND RETIRED, of the United States Services. Application blanks may be obtained from U. S. Cavalry Association, or

WRITE FOR PARTICULARS
(giving description of your car)

If application sent, enclose \$5.00 Membership Fee to apply on premium. Coverage at cost.

UNITED SERVICES AUTOMOBILE ASSOCIATION
(Formerly U. S. Army Auto Ins. Ass'n)
FORT SAM HOUSTON, TEXAS

HORSE-SENSE AND HORSE-MANSHIP OF TODAY

By Geoffrey Brooke, D. S. O., M. C.

Lieutenant-Colonel 16th/ 5th Lancers,
Chief Instructor, Cavalry Wing, Equitation School, Weedon.

Illustrated

Price, \$5.00

Order from the

U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

Frank J. Krupp

Successor to

Henry Schick & Co.

**Army and Navy
Uniforms**

1421 F STREET NORTHWEST
Washington, D. C.

CIVILIAN DRESS A SPECIALTY

Free Mailing Lists
Will help you increase sales
Send for FREE catalog giving complete
and prices on thousands of classified
mailing lists and prospect lists for
all business, professional, scientific,
educational, and general purposes.
99% by refund of 5¢ each
ROSS-GOULD CO. 222 N. 3rd St. St. Louis

Recommended

The German Cavalry in Belgium and France, 1914.

By Lieutenant-General von Poseck, Inspector General of Cavalry, German Army. Maps, index. (Price, \$4.00). The only COMPLETE story of the very IMPORTANT work of the German Cavalry at the beginning of the World War. How the Cavalry facilitated the rapid advance of the German armies, the concentration, marches, reconnaissances, initial maneuvers, MOUNTED and dismounted fights, CHARGES, services of security and information, meeting engagements, the WHOLE story told in chronological order by units and so tied up and related that one can easily follow it through on the excellent maps. Material for this book came principally from EYE-WITNESSES and is therefore doubly valuable. Read what Cavalry DID.

As to Military Training

Arranged by Major J. F. Wall, U. S. Cavalry. 267 pages. Illustrated maps. (Price, \$2.50). Compilation of IMPORTANT parts of manuals. Handy for saddle pocket. "A handy compendium of useful information well adapted to the needs of the mounted service and which any one entering upon a military career may study with great profit."—W. A. Holbrook, Major-General, U. S. A., Chief of Cavalry.

Horse-Sense and Horsemanship of Today

By Geoffrey Brooks, D. S. O. M. C., Lieutenant-Colonel 16th/5th Lancers, Chief Instructor, Cavalry Wing, Equitation School, Weedon.

Illustrated. Price \$5.00. Commenting on this book, the London Times says:

"This book should be owned and studied carefully by all men who hunt or play polo, or take any active interest in horses." "It should be a text book for even subalterns in a Cavalry or Yeomanry Regiment, and it should also be in the possession of the officers of all the other mounted units of His Majesty's Forces." "It is easily the best work on the subject published in years."

The Journal of the United Service Institution states in part as follows:

"This book is wonderful because, from cover to cover, it is full of good meat easily digestible without a superfluous word. It is valuable, and indeed invaluable, because of its simplicity and sound advice." "The photographs are excellent and deserve careful study."

BOOK DEPARTMENT

U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

1624 H STREET N. W.

WASHINGTON, D. C.

Cavalrymen! Read This!!

YOUR Association is in the magazine business. As a dealer, the Association gets a commission you as individuals cannot get. If every Troop and officer sent their magazine orders through the Association, the profit in a year would pay for the publication of one number of the Cavalry Journal. We guarantee as low prices as can be gotten, meeting all competition. Send ALL your magazine and book orders through YOUR Association.

SERVICE FOR THE SERVICE

A History of Cavalry

By Colonel Denison. 467 pages. Index, 11 maps. (Price, \$4.20.) The BEST constructed book on our shelves and the ONLY history of Cavalry. Every statement of fact substantiated by reference to the original source. Accurate, vivid, full of information, with pen photos of the great cavalymen of all ages. Shows the development of arms, armor, tactics, organization, the growth of the infantry and artillery along with the Cavalry and the interplay one on the other, and in this sense is a SHORT HISTORY OF WARFARE. All important battles described. SECOND EDITION. No Cavalry library complete without this book.

Horses, Saddles and Bridles

Fourth Revised Edition. Price \$2.75. By Major General William H. Carter, author of Horses of the World; History of the Sixth Cavalry; Old Army Sketches; etc.

Breaking and Riding

with Military Commentaries. By Fillis, former Encuyer-en-chef to the Central Cavalry School at St. Petersburg. 356 pages, index. 70 illustrations. New Edition. (Price, \$7.50.) Horse-lore classic by master with fifty years' horse experience. Not pupil of Baucher, Fillis improved on his method. Fillis taught principle there must always be progression: that horse must be kept up to bit; that horse must always be kept straight. Not equitation manual. Possesses instead GENIUS. Fillis' method of instruction is by relation—instruction in simplest form. Book for practical horseman. Definite, full explanation by master-horseman of how each movement is accomplished. Therein lies Fillis' value.

Equitation

By Bussigny. Photographs: 361 pages. (Price, \$7.50.) The perfectly trained horse, mounted by a perfectly trained rider, is goal of this system of PRACTICAL exercises. After 65 years' horse experience, this pupil of Baucher, an old French campaigner, gives the results of a LIFE'S OBSERVATION of the horse. Careful, DETAILED EXPLANATION and illustration. Scientific.

CONTENTS FOR APRIL, 1925

Vol. XXXIV, No. 159

	PAGE
LETTER TO U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION	135
Marshal Ferdinand Foch.	
THREE CRITICAL DEFEATS OF OUR HISTORY.....	136
Captain Elbridge Colby, Infantry.	
CO-OPERATION BETWEEN CAVALRY AND AIR SERVICE.....	147
Major Leo G. Heffernan, Air Service.	
GERMAN IDEAS ON MODERN CAVALRY—Comments and Translation	155
Colonel H. S. Hawkins, 3d Cavalry.	
TRAINING OF CAVALRY RADIO SQUADS	169
Lieutenant Mortimer F. Sullivan, 2d Cavalry.	
MOBILITY, FIRE POWER AND SHOCK	178
Lieutenant Colonel Clarence Lininger, Cavalry.	
SOME TRAINING PRINCIPLES FOR NATIONAL GUARD CAVALRY.....	182
Captain Kramer Thomas, Cavalry.	
THE INTERNATIONAL POLO TOURNAMENT, MEXICO CITY.....	185
Captain Edward M. Fickett, Cavalry.	
A WORD AS TO FIELD MAPS	194
Colonel W. C. Brown, United States Army.	
THE SERVICE COAT	197
Major P. R. Davison, Cavalry.	
THE CAVALRY SCHOOL	202
Captain Robert A. Bush, Cavalry, O. R. C.	
THE BOISE IDAHO ENDURANCE RIDE	205
Captain W. R. Kidwell, V. C., 116th Cavalry, Idaho N. G.	
EDITORIAL COMMENT	208
DRESS UNIFORM—INTERNATIONAL ASPECT OF ARMY POLO—ANNUAL DUES—100 PER CENT MEMBERSHIP—THE HORSE—BULLETINS OF RESERVE CAVALRY DIVISIONS—SERVICE TO MEMBERS—NATIONAL GUARD MEMBERSHIP RECORDS—INDEX TO VOLUME XXXIII—CAVALRY FUND—CERTIFICATES OF MEMBERSHIP.	
TOPICS OF THE DAY	212
THE 1925 ENDURANCE RIDE—INFANTRY SCHOOL RECREATION CENTER—THE INTERNATIONAL MILITARY POLO CHAMPIONSHIP—PREPARATION BY ARMY TEAM—THE BRITISH TEAM—R. O. T. C. HORSE SHOW, MICHIGAN AGRICULTURAL COLLEGE—THE RASP—HOLLAND 1925—RELIEF FOR THE REEL CART.	
FOREIGN MILITARY NOTES	218
THE HORSE	219
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED	221
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS	224
POLO	232
THE NATIONAL GUARD	237
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES	240
PROCEEDINGS OF THE ANNUAL MEETING OF THE U. S. CAVALRY ASSN.	242
CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES	248
REGIMENTAL NOTES	250

Check the books you wish and give mailing address below:

Name

Address

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President

Major General MALIN CRAIG, Chief of Cavalry.

Vice-President

Colonel HAMILTON S. HAWKINS, 3d Cavalry.

Secretary and Treasurer

Lieutenant Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel W. J. GLASGOW, Cavalry.

Colonel J. H. REEVES (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel A. C. COLAHAN, 103d Cavalry.

Colonel F. LeJ. PARKER, Cavalry.

Colonel T. A. ROBERTS, Cavalry.

Lieut. Colonel W. P. DRAPER, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieut. Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieut. Colonel W. M. CONNELL (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Lieut. Colonel S. R. GLEAVES, Cavalry.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class I shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$2.50, which includes subscription to the Cavalry Journal, 60% thereof being so designated.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXIV

APRIL, 1925

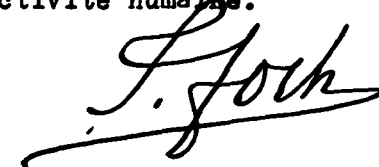
No. 139

LE MARECHAL FOCH Paris, le 24 Novembre 1924

A L'U.S. Cavalry Association,

Je partage entièrement les avis
exprimés par les Grands Chefs de l'Ar-
mee Américaine : les Généraux PERSHING
& HARBORD.

L'entraînement militaire, et notam-
ment celui de la Cavalerie, intelligen-
ment compris, développe particulière-
ment les qualités de discipline, de
maîtrise de soi-même et de décision
qui sont à la base de toute réussite
dans l'activité humaine.



TRANSLATION

To the U. S. Cavalry Association:

I fully share the opinions expressed by the Great Chiefs of the
American Army: Generals **PERSHING AND HARBORD**.

Military training, and notably that of the Cavalry, intelligently un-
derstood, develops particularly the qualities of discipline, of self-control,
and of decision which are at the base of all success in human activity.

F. FOCH.

Ferdinand Foch
Marshal of France

Three Critical Defeats of Our History

BY

Captain ELBRIDGE COLBY, Infantry

BEFORE proceeding with the task of the historian and scrutinizing military engagements and the manner in which our people have waged war, it might be profitable for us to turn for a moment to the Fourth Estate and tear a leaf out of the editorial page of the *Chicago Tribune*, which says:

"American wars have always been children's crusades. We have always trotted into them trustfully enough, armed with a hullabaloo of hoasnnahs and a squirrel rifle, and we have always come out sadder, wiser, but somehow victorious. Long casualty lists, huge costs in gold and labor, a wrenched and gaping economic organization which profiteers have pilfered, have been a few of the items chargeable to our beatitude. But America will not be denied the luxury of her innocence. Nor can we entirely regret it. And another war, no doubt, will find us, as ever, singing, 'Onward, Christian Soldiers,' without any soldiers."

The following facts of history are not usually emphasized in the patriotic texts prepared by sentimental citizens for use in our schools:

THE DEFEAT ON LONG ISLAND

Our first war we brought upon ourselves. We resisted the attitude and the acts of a British king and frankly preferred conflict to submission. After seeing his troops severely punished at Bunker Hill and being forced to evacuate Boston by the threat of shells from Dorchester Heights, Howe had sailed for Halifax to cure his sick and prepare for the eventual subjugation of the revolting colonies. The line of the Hudson Valley was of great strategic importance. Possession of that line was to be "the great contention and controlling motive of the first three years of the war." Washington guessed correctly that Howe's next objective would be New York, and on June 29, 1776, the general in the red coat arrived at Sandy Hook. On July 3d he moved up to Staten Island, and later in the same month, when his brother joined him with a powerful fleet, he overcame this timidity enough to address himself to *George Washington, Esq.*, as a private citizen, and attempted to put down the revolution with an academic proclamation that all who should lay down their arms and assist in restoring tranquillity would receive the full pardon of George of England. But it was too late. Bunker Hill had stirred the colonists to confidence. The evacuation of Boston had confirmed it. The hiring of German mercenaries against them had roused their wrath. And Thomas Paine, in that pungent pamphlet "Common Sense," which had a circulation that was a phenomenon in the history of printing, had so crystallized popular sentiment that finally the Declaration of Independence put an end to all thought of peaceable solutions or quiet submission.

General George Washington, Commander-in-Chief of the Continental Army, was now fighting for independence. To oppose the 30,000 troops and the ten ships of the line and twenty frigates, with 1,200 guns and manned by 10,000

men, which the Howes had on Staten Island by the end of August, Washington had arrived with 8,000 troops. These he supplemented with short-term volunteers and many amateur officers. Some of the raw troops refused to move onto Staten Island because they had enlisted for service only on the mainland. Volunteer cavalry refused to do fatigue duty and had made no provision for forage; so Washington sent them home and hired mounted scouts at fifty dollars a day. Most of the terms of enlistment were due to expire on December 1. Yet they were good marksmen. Bunker Hill had proved that about the colonists, and Howe's Footguards officers were told to discard spontoons and halberds and dress like privates, so as not to be conspicuous targets.

WASHINGTON'S DIFFICULTIES

The real lessons of Bunker Hill were overlooked; well-laid defenses and well-trained officers of previous experience. The colonists seemed to think patriotism the sole qualification for a soldier's calling. Even the excellent marksmanship was a hindrance, because it led to the formation of "rifle" companies and to the neglect of steady discipline, and of the value of soundly trained troops equipped with musket and bayonet. With a hodge-podge paper strength of 30,000 and a lawyer Adjutant General, who accepted his appointment partially because it gave him an occupation and a salary while the courts of Philadelphia were closed, Washington could not muster an effective strength of more than 20,000, some of whom came without arms, without proper equipment, and often without semblance of a uniform.

Washington was convinced he could not hold New York against his superior and better-trained foe. However, the Continental Congress would not hear of a withdrawal, and General Charles Lee had been busily emplacing batteries all over the water front. Greene was posted in Brooklyn on high ground, which overlooked New York as Dorchester had overlooked Boston, and had been fortifying a strong position there. The American troops were scattered all about the place in order to cover various possible points of enemy entry. The dispositions clearly indicated Washington's frame of mind. He was not concentrating for a decisive battle, which must surely have gone against him. On August 20th he wrote to Congress: "We shall harass them as much as possible, which will be all that we can do."

On August 22d Howe crossed over to Gravesend Bay and made a temporary camp, sending a detachment under Cornwallis as far as Flatbush, which was delayed by Pennsylvania riflemen, who harassed its march and burnt all forage in sight. Howe then spent four days in reconnoitering. The American troops sent out two-regiment detachments to guard the Flatbush and Bedford passes across the wooded line of hills and to guard the road along the edge of the harbor and Gowanus Bay. A tiny detail of riflemen and some hired scouts were assigned to watch the Jamaica road, together with two troops of horse, which the New York Provincial Congress took upon themselves to order upon a cattle-driving game farther east, and the road was inadequately covered.

On August 26th Howe marched at night against the American positions, feinting at the Gowanus Pass, feinting in somewhat greater strength at the Flatbush and Bedford passes, and sending his major force around the comparatively unguarded eastern flank toward the Jamaica road. The guns in the center opened up. Miles's riflemen rushed "to the sound of the guns" and left the Jamaica road uncovered. Howe's movement at the center was purposely slow, to give the flank movement time to get around. Its slowness enabled the outnumbered Continentals to withdraw more or less toward the Brooklyn fortified lines, although many of them were thrown into disorder, many commanders rushed here and there, giving orders on the spot, irrespective of the general situation, and General Sullivan himself, now in command, took refuge in a cornfield, where he was found by Hessians and later was politely treated by Howe. Howe drew his forces up in front of the Brooklyn "lines" and, eschewing the costly methods of Bunker Hill, opened saps against them and started regular siege operations. Washington's force of 9,000 men in Brooklyn was hopelessly inadequate. He started to reinforce it, then wisely changed his mind and saw it ferried across the river in the quiet of the night of the 27th. Yet the principal reason for the withdrawal was not so much tactical or strategic as that their lack of spirit, their demoralized condition, and their lack of disciplinary training rendered them uncertain for the siege operations which would have ensued had he maintained his position.

COMMENTS

A recent commentator on this "Battle of Long Island" has said:

"The British commander might have crushed the Continental Army and brought the war to a close had he vigorously followed up his success. But he did not, and the British at all times carried on the war in a most leisurely fashion. He was a skillful tactician. We owe our independence to his lack of energy."

Bancroft made practically the same charge against Howe in his notorious ninth volume. And yet it appears that these two are mistaken. The "Battle of Long Island" was not a "battle" at all, in the military sense of the word. It was merely an affair of outposts. The Brooklyn troops awaited the enemy approach on a line of observation and were driven behind their fortified lines with some losses, but not decisive losses. They continued their withdrawal and later retreated across New Jersey under slight pressure. The "Battle of Long Island" was not a determining action, because Washington never wished it to be. The real results of the conflict were political rather than military. Enthusiasm in the Colonies had been at its highest after Bunker Hill, the Boston evacuation, and the Declaration of Independence. It died down quickly after Long Island. There was soon an opportunity to distinguish between what the pamphleteer called "the summer soldier and the sunshine patriot" and the real soldier and the enduring patriot, who wintered the hardships of Valley Forge and crashed through the ice across the Delaware. The best statement of the results of the battle are

in the words which Washington wrote to the President of Congress on September 2d, 1776:

"The check our detachment sustained has dispirited too great a proportion of our troops and filled their minds with apprehension and despair. The militia, instead of calling forth their utmost efforts to a brave and manly opposition in order to repair our losses, are dismayed, intractable, and impatient to return. Great numbers of them have gone off—in some instances almost by whole regiments, by half ones, and by companies at a time. This circumstance of itself, independent of others, when fronted by a well-appointed enemy, superior in number to our whole collected force, would be sufficiently disagreeable; but when their example has infected another part of the army, when their want of discipline and refusal of almost any kind of restraint and government have produced a like conduct, but too common to the whole, and an entire disregard of that order and subordination necessary to the well-being of an army and which had been inculcated before, as well as the nature of our military establishment would admit of, our condition becomes still more alarming, and with the deepest concern I am obliged to confess my want of confidence in the generality of the troops."

THE CAPTURE OF WASHINGTON

After the close of the Revolution the newly established United States of America continued to maintain only an extremely small regular army and aimed to depend in time of emergency upon rapidly raised volunteers, though without any concrete plan for organizing or utilizing those volunteers. Although the Federal Government had been created "for the common defense," military control was still left largely in the hands of the governors of the separate States, who were very jealous of their prerogatives as the heads of separate sovereignties.

Then the European conflicts broke out, started in order to suppress the French Revolutionists and concluding with the overthrow of Napoleon. The war was not our concern. Still, in every war, neutral rights are liable to be violated by belligerent nations, and neutrals are often drawn into the struggle to maintain those rights, especially neutrals with extensive commerce on the seas. We had a "limited" war with France in 1799, and later our relations with the other main belligerent became threatening.

Congress in 1807 authorized volunteer increases under volunteer officers, and again in 1812, on the very eve of war, voted regular increases and volunteer forces that were never raised. The war with England began on June 18, 1812, with the United States depending upon twelve-months volunteers raised in the States, two of which refused to furnish their quota, even for local defense, to relieve regulars for other duties. Hull at Detroit, Dearborn on Champlain, and Van Rensselaer at Queenstown had State troops who refused to cross the border because they had enrolled "to resist invasion."

After scattered operations in the center, when training and discipline began to tell, Harrison won the battle of the Thames in 1813, and then let his volunteers go home, like Rennenkampf, in East Prussia, in 1917, who went to bed

as soon as he had forced the Germans to retreat, and failed to push his advantage at the propitious moment. On one occasion "one-third part of the idle men would have saved all." In 1813, after fruitless arguments between the Commanding General and the Secretary of War, 5,000 raw troops started from Lake Champlain for Montreal and met defeat at almost the same moment that the Governor of Vermont recalled the troops from his State which were concentrated in reserve at Plattsburg.

Such was the general manner in which the war was being conducted: much bravery, but also much civil interference and much unsound policy as to the use of raw troops.

CONGRESS IS WARNED

In June, 1814, the President called the attention of Congress to the fact that a British fleet, with about 3,000 troops on board, had been hovering along the shores of the Chesapeake, and that the total number of regular United States troops in Maryland and Virginia was something like 2,208 men, widely scattered at various points from Baltimore to Norfolk. In July, when the treaty of Fontainebleau had been finally signed and Napoleon was safely on his way to Elba with a sick stomach and a broken heart, the British sent veteran troops across the Atlantic. Early in the same month Congress voted 2,000 to 3,000 State troops for the threatened area and 10,000 to 15,000 volunteers, "to be held in readiness to march at a moment's notice." Additional authorizations were made for additional troops, but the States did not respond. Says Upton, quoting Armstrong:

"The command of the new district was devolved upon General Winder, whose selection; according to the statement of the Secretary of War, was based 'not on the ground of distinguished professional service or knowledge,' but simply on a presumption that 'being a native of Maryland and a relative of the Governor, Brigadier Winder would be useful in mitigating the opposition to the war and in giving an increased efficiency to national measures within the limits of the State.'"

On August 18, 1814, word reached Washington that a British fleet at the mouth of the Patuxent was landing troops at Benedict, forty miles from the Capital. Two days later Winder issued his call for citizens *en masse*. They were mustered on August 21st; they were reviewed by the President on August 22d, and on August 24th, when they fought their first battle, they numbered 5,401 in all, of whom 400 were regulars, 600 marines, and 20 sailors, the remainder being raw troops. The Government had foreseen the impending invasion; it had authority to call out forces in advance and to prepare them for the field, and yet it held fast to the old principle of having citizens 'hold themselves in readiness,' and finally sent its defending troops, "suddenly assembled, without organization, or discipline, or officers of the least knowledge of service," into a brief and disastrous campaign.

On August 19th the Secretary of State mounted a horse and rode out to see the enemy, returning later with the information that they were 5,000 to 7,000 strong. On the 22d and again on the 23d detachments went out toward the British,

looked at them, and came running home again. Winder had sent a cavalry colonel "to harass, obstruct, and impede" the British advance; but this was not done, and the invaders marched forty-five miles towards Bladensburg without meeting resistance. Furthermore, on the morning of the 24th, due to the complete and rapid withdrawal of his reconnoitering detachments, Winder was absolutely out of touch with his foe. The Baltimore troops were mostly concentrated at Bladensburg. Winder, with other troops, was near the Eastern Branch bridge at Washington. Suddenly came the news that the British were marching on Bladensburg. Winder rushed in that direction. Stansbury and his Baltimore forces left Bladens-



Courtesy of Mr. George Havens Putnam

burg to join Winder near Washington, but he was met by orders to return and give battle at Bladensburg and by assurances of reinforcement.

THE AMERICAN DISPOSITIONS

He chose to take up a position behind the river and resist the British crossing. He laid his troops across the apex of a road junction, with riflemen and artillery covering the bridge and infantry regiments quite in rear of them. Then came Monroe and made some changes. Then came Winder and said "O. K." and put some recruit regiments up in front, cavalry regiments in a ravine up front, where they could be of no use whatever. Then came the troops from Washington under General Smith, who took advice from Francis Scott Key, who wrote a

song better than he planned a battle. The new arrivals were placed on a line of hills nearly two thousand yards back from the bridge and well out of supporting range of the weapons of those days. Finally, dashing through Bladensburg itself only half an hour ahead of the British, came Beall and his Annapolis boys, who passed through the entire American line and took up a position upon a high and apparently safe hill on the right of the rear line.

The British advanced through the city. Of the 3,500 in their force, only 1,500 pushed to the attack; but these were veterans, and the defenders were soldiers of only a few days' service. The advance American artillery forced the British to make use of the protection afforded by the buildings of the town and to advance across the bridge by bounds and in small groups. But they did advance, drove in the first light line in front of them, and by steady progress through the orchard and many a congreve rocket managed to strike terror in the untrained defenders and put the second line completely to rout. This force ran rapidly to the rear, principally westward, toward Georgetown, and clear of the rear troops, who stood and waited to fight their own little part of the battle. The British attack developed principally on the right of these troops. There was bitter fighting at many points. Barney's marines held their ground splendidly against Wellington's veterans. There was good resistance. But a few steady troops were not enough against 1,500 seasoned fighters who had conquered Napoleon. Beall's Annapolis volunteers fired three or four rounds from their hilltop and retreated in disorder, exposing the whole right flank. Thereupon, without attempting to maneuver into position the many units that had seen no action at all, General Winder ordered a general retreat, which was executed for a time in good order by the troops still remaining. The British did not attempt to pursue, but remained upon the field until evening, when they took up their march toward Washington.

The remainder of General Winder's command fled so far and so fast that it continued right through the Capital and made no attempt to stand after the defeat. The Capital was exposed to the torch of the invader and the public buildings were destroyed by fire. The White House is so called today because it had to be painted over to cover the marks of smoke and soot. Government officials scampered into the Virginia hills and hid in fear until the British withdrew and re-embarked as suddenly as they had landed and attacked. The British losses were 64 killed, 185 wounded, and 249 total. The American losses were 25 killed, 41 wounded, and 66 total. In other words, veteran troops inferior in number suffered 5½ per cent casualties and still wrested a National Capital from superior numbers of hastily raised patriots who fled in confusion after suffering only 1.1 per cent casualties.

Winder had fought for a few months on the northern frontier, yet he displayed appalling incompetence as a tactician, depending too exclusively on his artillery to bear the brunt of the battle: failing to maintain contact and to make definite plans for the action; scattering his troops in depth, but never using them as mobile reserves; and permitting them to be defeated in detail outside of mutual supporting distance. He was, however, no more incompetent than the hastily

raised and untrained volunteers which he had under his command and upon which the Government deliberately tried to depend, hoping to defeat with undisciplined men an invasion by tried soldiers from the continental wars. The Government had the time and the authority to raise and organize forces, yet plainly preferred to defer to State feelings, and to place its reliance on an announcement that all should be in readiness to "march at an instant's notice" instead of upon whatever discipline and instruction might have been imparted in the ten weeks or more that had been available since the 1st of June. Bladensburg is an example of bad military policy as well as of bad military tactics.

THE BATTLE OF BULL RUN

When South Carolina seceded in 1860 and was soon followed by six other States, the Regular Army of the United States numbered only 16,000 men, without experience in operations or maneuvers of any magnitude, or plans for mobilization. Arrangements had not been made to provide for the soldiers to be raised; supplies of war material were principally in the East; and the Ohio and Mississippi States had little more than "altered flintlocks" and "guns unfit for service"—in fact, "nothing but the men; all else was to be created." General Scott suggested the calling of 300,000 troops for three years; McClellan advocated a stronger force, to stay in the field indefinitely; but political conditions were such that Lincoln asked for 75,000 for three months.

The essential frontier was the line of the Potomac, the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad and the Ohio River. West of the mountains, McClellan advanced against West Virginia: General Patterson was charged with holding Harpers Ferry; in and about the Capital came throngs of raw volunteers to protect the Government. A short advance across the Potomac secured Arlington Heights and Alexandria. On June 10th a reconnaissance in force from Old Point Comfort met a disastrous repulse. Patterson maneuvered about fruitlessly against Joseph Johnston at Winchester until his force began to disintegrate with expiring enlistments. The only encouragement came from McClellan, who won trifling engagements and dispersed the Confederates in his front.

A SPECTACLE FOR CONGRESS

The North was hungry for a real victory. It saw the volunteer army sitting idly around Washington, and clamored for action. It wished the short-term men to have a taste of conflict and give the country a glorious victory before they went home. A new call for troops had gone out, and that able soldier, General Winfield Scott, had advised delay until they could be fitted for the field; but the President ruled against him, and General McDowell was ordered to advance against the enemy position at Manassas Junction and provide a battle which Members of Congress might ride out and see, as if it were a gorgeous spectacle. Thus came about the First Battle of Bull Run—a battle which, in the words of R. M. Johnston, was fought "almost wholly by insufficiently trained and organized volunteers and against the judgment of the military authorities."

On July 16, 1861, with brigades and staffs only formed on the eve of the movement, and therefore inefficient and unpracticed, McDowell's columns marched out of Washington and proceeded toward Centerville by extraordinarily slow

stages. Beauregard, opposing him, learned of the movement the next day and straightway notified Richmond. Johnston, in the Shenandoah, deceived the not-too-quick-witted Patterson, screened his movements with active cavalry, and marched post haste to join Beauregard, who had retired from his forward positions and was preparing to defend the untrenched line of Bull Run. In the meanwhile McDowell came on inefficiently, the men straggling off the road to pick blackberries and occasionally to pillage a trifle here and there, and the com-



The Ruined Bridge Over Bull Run

manders fearfully deploying their entire forces at the faintest suspicions of danger ahead.

Unfamiliar with the country and with the enemy position, McDowell nevertheless made elaborate plans in advance, and Beauregard's outposts retired so quickly, in accordance with orders, that they completely lost touch with the advancing enemy. On the night of the 18th McDowell had his entire command packed in and around Centerville. One portion had pushed ahead in a faulty direction, attacked the Confederates at Blackburn's Ford of Bull Run, nearly routed them, and then withdrew without its commander taking the trouble to make a survey of the enemy strength or to maintain the contact established. McDowell spent the next two days in desultory reconnaissance, and so gave Johnston time to come over from the Shenandoah. On the night of the 20th he started out to

attack the enemy's left along uninvestigated roads. On the same night two militia regiments left for Washington because their terms of service had expired, one of these leaving its artillery guns unattended behind it.

A BATTLE OF BLUNDERS

It was near morning before the troops got started, all jammed onto one road in a perfect example of staff inability to calculate road space, and exposing their own flank to a Confederate attack that had actually been ordered, but was not pushed home for want of a word from the confused commander of the Confederates. The Union troops trod on one another's heels. Some of them took the wrong stream crossing; others were peremptorily detached from their division by McDowell, who interfered on the spot; but sooner or later they arrived successively on the Confederate left and attacked, one after another. Beauregard in turn pulled his units out of the positions in which they had been established with the idea of attacking the Union line of communication and sent them over to the left, one after another. So on both sides, all through the day, the action wore on, each outfit going in where and as it arrived, the ascendancy passing from one side to the other. Johnston's troops from Shenandoah did their part, Kirby Smith arriving at almost the last moment by train. For hours Stonewall Jackson held the top of Henry's Hill, until he judged that his enemies had spent their energy; then he ordered a counter-charge that decided the day. The Union troops broke and left the field. The raw volunteers started for home via Washington, and the grand offensive had come to an end. Unseasoned and undisciplined troops, they had marched all night and fought all day; yet all the succeeding night they streamed along the roads and never paused until they reached the Potomac, a disorganized and motley collection of uniformed men. Sherman's regulars alone kept their heads. "The battalion of regular infantry," says Rhodes, "alone obeyed commands. It covered the volunteers' retreat, which became a rout and then a panic."

COMMENTS

The three months' volunteers had fought their battle and finished their terms of service, and the cause of the Union was worse off than before. Gloom settled on the North. Said McClellan:

"Had we been successful in the recent battle, we might have saved the labor and expense of a great effort; now we have no alternative. Their success will enable the political leaders of the rebels to convince the mass of the people that we are inferior to them in force and in courage, and to command all their resources. . . . We may hope for the permanent restoration of a peaceful Union. But, in the first instance, the authority of the Government must be supported by overwhelming force."

The North had a white population of 22,000,000; the South 5,096,000; the North had all the advantages of superior financial and industrial organization and resources; and the North commanded the seas and was able to maintain an effective blockade. The victory at Bull Run, won by wavering raw troops over other wavering raw troops, heartened the South to continue the unequal struggle.

The emergency which had arisen was one clearly contemplated by the Constitution, which gave the President practically full powers to suppress insurrection against the United States. A sudden and effective blow against the newly formed

Confederacy, struck soon enough to prevent the insurgent organization from taking effective form, would have sustained the law of the country. Such a blow could not be struck, because there were neither materials nor methods, for an effective mobilization. Bull Run was our best effort, the natural result of depending upon untrained troops enlisted for short periods, under amateur officers. If our defensive forces had been sufficiently ready to meet such an insurrection, we should have had a remarkably short war and few pensions. Nor was there any excuse for the inadequacy of preparation.

The doctrine of State sovereignty had been a source of trouble for decades, intensified from year to year by the slavery question. A conflict of ideas had become a conflict of laws. A conflict of laws had become a conflict of people, until the forces were clearly divided by a parallel of latitude. The conflict of the two divergent popular opinions finally became a conflict of rifle and cannon. The conflict ceased to be an argument in constitutional law and became an attack upon the law of the land itself and upon its makers and executors. It took armed force to restore the law. As General Sherman later wrote to General Meigs:

"From 1861 to 1865 the Supreme Court was absolutely paralyzed; its decrees and writs were treated with contempt south of the Potomac and the Ohio; it could not summon a witness or send a deputy marshal. War and the armed power of the nation alone removed the barrier and restored to the United States courts their lawful jurisdiction."

Because the law and the Constitution were lacking in efficient, trained, powerful enforcement agents in 1861, and because the United States depended mainly on hastily raised and organized raw troops, the Battle of Bull Run was lost to other hastily raised and organized raw troops, who could have been overcome in short order by efficient forces. Because the Battle of Bull Run was lost, the war dragged on and sapped the man power of the country, but gradually developed troop leaders of the requisite skill and gradually required men for longer and longer terms of service.

THE REMEDY

I began with a quotation. I shall end with one. This one is not from an anonymous editorial writer, but from the words of a man whose chiefest reputation in the future shall rest more upon his work for the preparation for national defense of the future than upon his splendid leadership of the American Expeditionary Forces. These are the words of General Pershing:

"The act of June 4, 1920, lays down for the first time in our history a national policy for the military forces of the United States. . . . Before the World War a definite and comprehensive plan was impracticable. Our military forces were too limited and there was no legal sanction for the development of such a system. Since the World War, with the large number of war-trained officers available, with the initiation of a system for the training of younger men ultimately to replace them, with more adequate sources of military equipment and material, and with a settled legal sanction for the development and training of our traditional citizen army in time of peace, we are able to prepare definite plans for what has aptly been termed 'A National Position in Readiness.'"

Co-operation Between Cavalry and Air Service

BY

Major LEO G. HEFFERMAN, Air Service

IN this article it is intended to cover the operations that have actually been held by the 2nd Division Air Service with the First Cavalry Division, and at the same time present such conclusions and suggestions as are believed applicable as a result of this co-operative training.

Though the present tables of organization do not provide Air Service for a Cavalry Division, nevertheless, the Cavalry Division is the only division of any type in the United States that is actually operating with a Division Air Service. Infantry Divisions are entitled to certain Air Service organizations but, due to various other functions required of the Air Service in peace time, it is necessary that these Air Service units be assigned to stations at points where such functions can be performed, and away from the parent organization, viz: the Infantry Division. For the above reasons, and they are good, the 2nd Division Air Service has been taken away from the 2nd Infantry Division and located at the strategical and tactical post, Fort Bliss, Texas, where it performs the distant border reconnaissance formerly allotted to Cavalry outposts, thereby permitting greater concentration of the 1st Cavalry Division.

COMPOSITION OF DIVISION AIR SERVICE

At this point it might be well to define a Division Air Service. Each Division Air Service consists of one observation squadron, one photo section, and a detachment of Medical Personnel. The entire combined strength of these units is 33 officers and 157 enlisted men. The Observation Squadron has an authorized allowance of 31 officers and 132 men; the Photo Section 1 officer and 20 men, and the attached Medical, 1 officer and 5 enlisted men. Forty-two men and 5 officers of the 2nd Division Air Service are detached at Fort Sam Houston for operation with the 2nd Infantry Division and the Medical Personnel at Fort Bliss consists of only one officer and one enlisted man. In time of actual warfare, balloon companies would be attached as needed to the Division Air Service from the Corps Air Service.

The 1st Cavalry Division has but one brigade in continual operation with the Air Service; the brigade stationed at Fort Bliss. In addition the auxiliary troops, viz: Engineers, Artillery, etc., are stationed with the Headquarters of the Cavalry Division, and have profited by the combined operations.

COOPERATION WITH CAVALRY

Successful co-operation of Cavalry and Air Service demands that each branch on its reconnaissance work be assigned definite missions. To the Air Service in reconnaissance work would fall, in particular, reconnaissance missions from one to three days march to the front of a Cavalry independent command. On the flanks, reconnaissance to a depth of one or two days march

should give sufficient protection.⁶ It is contemplated in time of war that Air Service be assigned to Cavalry only when the Cavalry is acting independently or as Infantry.

Successful co-operation requires successful communication, which may be obtained by use of (a) radio telegraphy, (b) panels, (c) pyrotechnics, (d) projectors, (e) dropped messages and carrier pigeons. The signal plan of operation of Cavalry and Air Service is well covered in the plan of signal communication issued to all units in the 1st Cavalry Division. Occasionally there have been failures in our radio communication and even with improved equipment it is doubtful if such failures can ever be entirely eliminated. For this reason a method of communication independent of mechanical means should be held in reserve, both the air and ground forces being in readiness to put the reserve means into use. Under certain conditions the use of dropped messages from plane to ground, and panels from ground to plane, will be the most desirable means of communication. However, the proper use of panels requires a complete mutual understanding between the observer and the ground unit.

An Air Service unit will accompany an independent Cavalry command on the march, moving its airdromes as the command moves. An Air Service liaison officer should accompany the staff of the Cavalry command to select airdromes and to act as adviser in the employment of the Air Service units.

The types of missions performed by an Air Service unit with Cavalry, are: (a) reconnaissance missions, (b) Artillery missions, (c) liaison missions, (d) contact missions, (e) command missions, and (f) courier missions. As stated before, the airplanes will penetrate to a greater depth when operating with independent Cavalry than when operating with the Infantry Division.

RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS

In reconnaissance missions the object is to gather information of (1) the location, nature, disposition and activities of enemy forces; (2) enemy road and railroad circulation, (3) enemy works, establishments and general defensive and offensive organization, (4) the military topography of the enemy terrain, including the location of good watering places, especially in operations over country similar to the Southwest.

These reconnaissance missions may be either visual or photographic, or a combination of the two. Aerial photography is a necessity in modern warfare and is most useful in operations over poorly mapped territory. A mosaic of the line of march for the succeeding day can be accomplished by a single aerial mission. Photographs taken during the afternoon can be placed in the hands of all units the same evening. Two or three days march could be photographed when desired, thus avoiding the necessity of ground reconnaissances to obtain similar information.

LIAISON MISSIONS

The purpose of liaison missions is (a) to keep the command informed as to the activities of the different friendly units, (b) to observe and transmit signals of the advance elements, (c) to observe and transmit signals from

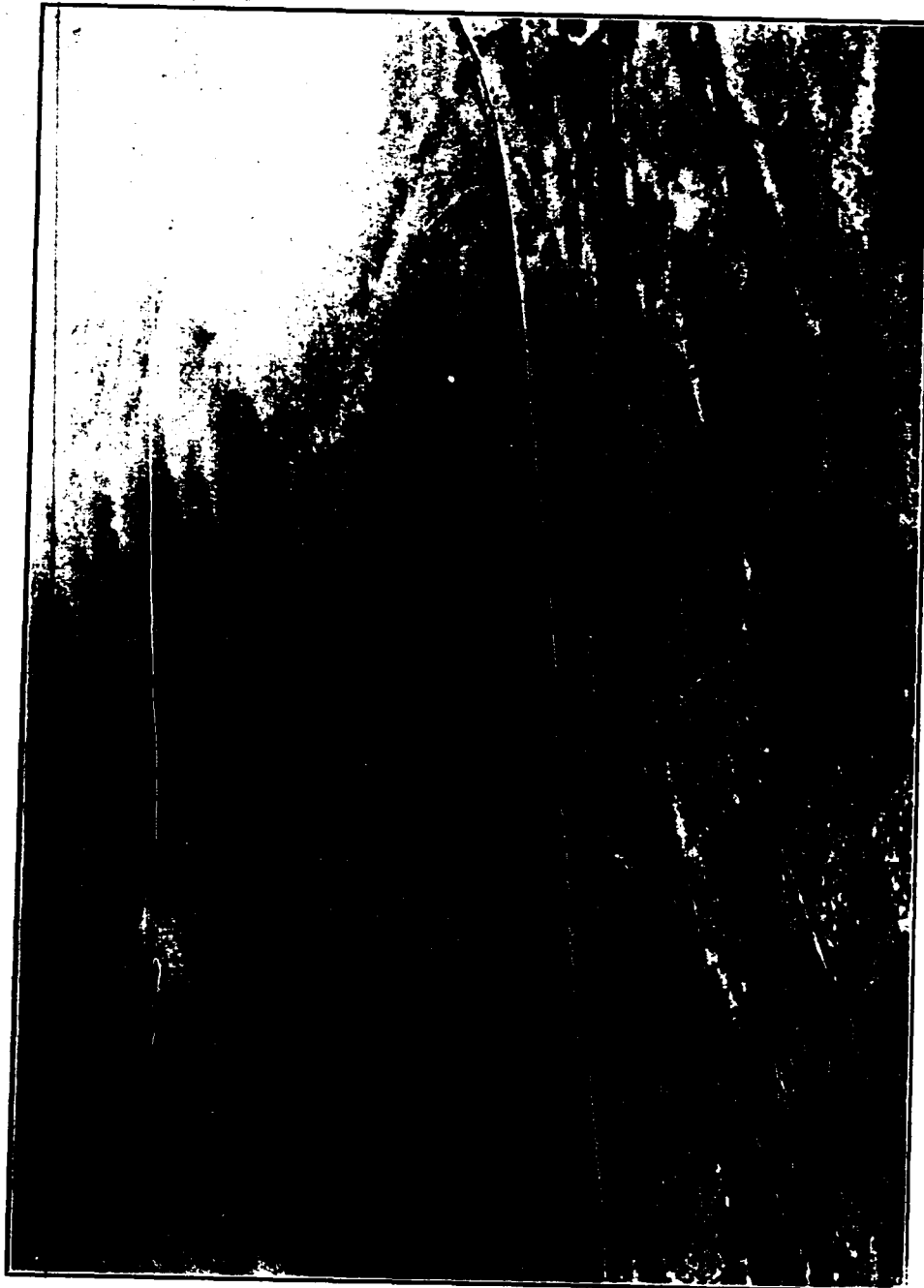


Photo By First Photo Section

Truck Train on the Road

command posts, (d) in general, to assist the Commanding Officer in maintaining communication with his units.

CONTACT MISSIONS

Contact missions serve the purpose (1) of keeping the command informed of the location of the enemy advance elements, (2) of aiding our own attacking troops by (a) informing the friendly advance troops of the location and nature of obstacles, (b) by assisting advance troops in the reduction of such obstacles and (c) preventing surprise enemy concentrations for counter attack. Contact missions are assigned only during active contact with the enemy, otherwise these functions are performed by the liaison observer.

ARTILLERY MISSIONS

Artillery adjustment missions have for their object the observation of artillery fire and are used only when terrestrial observation is impracticable. Further, observation balloons are used for this work whenever the target is not defiladed from them and is within their visible range, the airplane observer conducting all other adjustments. The effectiveness of artillery adjustments using aerial observation is measured by the training and mutual understanding between the aerial observers and the ground details. It is futile to suppose that either can do their work without training. Usually, practice employing the same personnel for a number of problems is the best means of obtaining the desired results. Full cooperation and mutual confidence will make possible the infliction of great damage to even moving targets, provided communication is rapid and reliable, and will allow the artillery to make adjustments otherwise denied to them.

In addition to the adjustment mission, artillery surveillance missions are sometimes employed. This mission is in the nature of a patrol and has for its object the transmission of information in which the artillery is primarily interested, such as reports on barrage or other sustained firing, and the location and adjustment on vulnerable targets.

COMMAND MISSIONS

Command missions are dispatched by the command before or during an action (a) to obtain some particular information, (b) to verify information received from other sources, (c) to observe some particular area or route, (d) or to allow a staff officer to survey the operation or reconnoiter the theatre of operations.

COURIER MISSIONS

Courier missions are for the purpose of delivering orders, dispatches, mail, photographs, maps, and other needed material, when time is an important element, or the usual means of transportation are lacking. The morale of front line troops can often be raised by providing, in this way, such non-essentials as cigarettes, personal mail, newspapers, etc. Courier missions can be accomplished by night as well as by day, and are particularly valuable when roads are poor or congested and when great distances are involved.

CAVALRY, DISMOUNTED

Whenever Cavalry is placed in a line of battle as Infantry, it is assigned

Air Service units on an equal basis with a like strength of Infantry. The missions of the Air Service are as above outlined.

PHOTOGRAPHIC MISSIONS

Aerial photographs, both vertical and oblique, are very valuable when properly used. Such photographs may often do away with the necessity for making road sketches by the tedious and slow methods ordinarily employed. Where no maps are available, suitable mosaics may be made to supply the demand; or routes or areas may be photographed to secure details for existing maps.

In a war of maneuver, troops will be seeking in late afternoon bivouacs or camps for the night; while there still remains sufficient light a photographic mission should be dispatched to locate the main bodies. The bivouacs or camps will not be far from the points photographed. Many times during the Marfa maneuvers the troops were caught by photographs moving into camps.

Photographic missions should be made at every opportunity, not only because of their value in reconnaissance, but also for comparison with previous photographs of the same ground. Such comparison often divulges information which cannot otherwise be obtained. Prior to the holding of the Marfa Maneuvers the entire country over which the maneuvers were held, was photographed and made up into a mosaic, from which all maps were corrected or remade by the Engineers. These maps were very good because the photographs furnished with accuracy all necessary data for supplying detail.

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS

With advance Cavalry there is generally no special Air Service assigned, this is likewise true of flank Cavalry. Any Air Service required by such Cavalry organizations is attached by corps or army orders, depending on the amount of independent work required of the Cavalry command.

The Air Service usually performs liaison missions between the Cavalry and main body. Aerial reconnaissance and reconnaissance by the Cavalry is coordinated by the commander responsible for the employment of both.

The Air Service reconnaissance will more particularly be concerned with forces of larger size than a squadron. Assembled troops numbering one hundred or more men are picked up from the air very readily in most any kind of terrain. In country like that of the Southwest United States it would be hard for an enemy force the size of a troop to remain concealed for any length of time. In operations in open country I believe it is more important for a Division Air Service to be assigned to Cavalry Divisions than Infantry Divisions. The observer on the ground in open country can see very well what is in the immediate front, but the problem of the commander cannot be solved until he knows, in detail, the whole situation within his sphere of action. This requires reconnaissance, to a depth appropriate to the command concerned. Such reconnaissance can be most efficiently performed from the air. In wooded country the Cavalry must do its own close reconnaissance, because the Air Service cannot always discover small detachments under cover of

trees. As large bodies disclose themselves by camps or other concentrations, distant reconnaissance can be accomplished by Air Service in any type of terrain.

In delegating missions of reconnaissance to Cavalry and Air Service the commander and staff must take into consideration the extent of territory that can be effectively covered by each arm. With airplanes available, it is not economical to employ Cavalry patrols to find the camp of the enemy, or the roads on which an enemy is approaching. This is a proper function of the Air Service. Again Air Service should not be called upon to search out small numbers of men in the immediate front of a Cavalry command, when such detachments cannot materially influence the action, and when the airplane thus employed could be more profitably employed giving information of a more general nature.

The Air Service has extended the depths of reconnaissance and, by photographs, visualizes much that is reported by patrols. If used as it should be it will afford a saving in horses and men, thus allowing a commander to conserve his troops for combat.

In territory such as that comprising the southwest portion of the United States, practically all engagements would be fought by Cavalry and Artillery, the reconnaissance falling in large part to Air Service. In case of the taking of strong points or cities, or to accomplish destruction beyond the range of Artillery, the Air Service would assist the combat by bombing.

In any operation it is the duty of the staff and commander to decide what missions can be best accomplished by each arm. Proper missions assigned as the result of proper decisions, with the proper cooperation means a favorable decision for our own troops.

COOPERATIVE TRAINING

The command at Fort Bliss has been very fortunate in having a Signal Officer who has realized the requirements for successful co-operation of Cavalry, Air Service, and auxiliary units. Well instructed panel details and radio sections in the different units are of paramount importance. Without these trained sections there can be no cooperation. An airplane can serve no liaison purpose if radio messages sent down cannot be received, if the panel detail does not know when to display a panel for the reception of dropped messages, or if the panel detail is unable to use panels making known the wants of the troops on the ground. It may be therefore stated as a fact that to secure good results, the headquarters of each unit with which observation Air Service is operating, must have well trained communication sections.

The burden of this training falls on the Division Signal Officer but the co-operation of each unit Signal Officer is essential.

TEST FOR TRAINING

The maneuvers held in the fall of 1923, at Marfa, Texas, furnished a good test of the co-operative training held at Fort Bliss by the Cavalry and the Air Service. These maneuvers first of all proved that Air Service supplies and personnel can be transported along with the main body of marching cav-

Photo By First Photo Section

Cavalry Division in Camp

alry on the poorest of roads. The transportation section of the Air Service made the march from Fort Bliss to Marfa, a distance of 200 miles by road, in two days, following the predetermined schedule. Some of the roads passed over were deep with mud, but still the trucks arrived on scheduled time. The planes made the flight to Marfa in two hours, arriving at Marfa the same day as the truck train. While the cavalry was on the march from Fort Bliss to Marfa, daily liaison and courier missions were dispatched.

At Marfa each problem mapped out for the combatting brigades of cavalry, assigned to the Air Service definite missions of reconnaissance, liaison, photography, or courier. The type of country was open, broken up here and there by small ravines or low mountains, ideal for cavalry action, but poor for concealing movements from the Air Service. All our missions were successful with the exception of one radio telephonic failure on an artillery adjustment mission.

To prevent constant surveillance by the Air Service over the combat sector, each side had a time limit in which aerial reconnaissances were to be made. This time limit was prescribed to simulate opposition by a superior air force. Had not this condition prevailed, the smallest detachments of cavalry could have been kept under constant observation. As it was, the Air Service of each side, was able in the time limit to locate the main body and reserves with no trouble whatsoever, as well as furnish additional detailed information.

These operations left no doubt that movements in open country cannot be concealed by troops when opposed by an active Air Service. Due to the advantage of rapid maneuver, cavalry is the only type of ground troops that could be used effectively in such country. The movement across open country will be facilitated if the cavalry commander knows from Air Service reports that such country is not occupied by enemy forces.

Such open country is not without advantage, however, for as was demonstrated during the Marfa maneuvers, the airplane can at times land near the headquarters of the commander thus enabling the crew to receive explicit instructions direct from the Commanding General or one of his staff.

SUMMARY

Our Army relies upon the offensive and a plan of movement. This means warfare very different from that of the late World War. Of all fighting in the recent war, the campaign in Palestine most nearly approached a real war of movement. In this campaign Cavalry and Air Service brought it to a successful conclusion. However, only Infantry Divisions have been provided with Air Service. This should be changed to provide Air Service units with Cavalry Divisions, in order to accomplish the rapid offensive movements upon which we rely for success. These same units could, if necessary, be used with Infantry Divisions after the Cavalry action had given way to infantry action.

Our Air Service should be used in the rapid gathering and dissemination of information and hence be an aid to the most advance elements viz. the Cavalry; acting as part of the command of the independent cavalry or in conjunction with the Cavalry under corps or army orders.

German Ideas on Modern Cavalry

COMMENTS AND TRANSLATION

BY

Colonel H. S. HAWKINS, 3rd Cavalry

UNDER the heading given above there has appeared in the *Revue de Cavalerie* for September-October, 1924, an article by Captain Brown De Colstoun, French Army, the translation of which follows these preliminary remarks.

This article is of special importance to us now for the following reasons:

a. It expresses the views of the Chief of Staff to General von Posec, who became Chief of Cavalry of the German Army during the World War.

b. It is the first time that we in America have seen in print a European expression of the principles that were emphasized at our Cavalry School upon its foundation in 1919.

c. While these principles were taught at the Cavalry School they were not and, as far as known, are not generally understood in the service. The new Field Service Regulations do not emphasize these principles, and therefore our officers are not being led to comprehend the true role and the true value of Cavalry. Such misunderstanding or misinformation on the part of our future commanders of Army Corps and Armies is a serious matter which should be corrected at once.

d. The principles specially referred to are briefly as follows:

(1) The chief and most important role of modern Cavalry is its participation in the battle of the force to which it is assigned or attached, in order to be utilized as *special troops* to attack or strike at the key point or most sensitive point of the enemy.

(2) Strictly speaking Cavalry is not an auxiliary arm to the Infantry. It does cooperate with Infantry and at some points replaces Infantry. The Cavalry should therefore be regarded as special troops and not auxiliary troops. The artillery is auxiliary to both infantry and cavalry and does not fight separately. This explains the difference between cavalry and artillery, or other corps and branches, in their relation to infantry.

(3) The mounted attack of large as well as small units is quite as important as the dismounted attack. It is the *method* of mounted attack (deployments laterally and in depth instead of close order) that has undergone a change.

(4) In order to carry out its principal role in great and important operations, a division of cavalry operating alone is not sufficient. We must foresee and contemplate cavalry corps and even cavalry armies. Many attempts to use cavalry for this mission have failed due to the weakness of the force employed. A proper appreciation of this principle would undoubtedly have won the World War for the Germans in

1914, and again in the spring of 1918.

(5) It is of great importance that the high commanding generals understand the role of this arm that may form part of their commands, that they spare it as much as possible from the fatigues of accessory roles and save it for its principal role. And finally, that they issue to it definite and precise orders as to its participation in the operations.

In addition to these principles in which American cavalry officers heartily concur, it may be of interest to state that we further believe that the introduction of improved rapid firing weapons will make the mounted advance in extended order, terminating in close combat, mounted or dismounted, a frequent rather than an exceptional occurrence in the attack against hostile foot troops. This is, of course, contrary to the prevailing ideas before the World War. But such action is made possible and even necessary by the fact that rapid movement is the best defense against modern weapons including the menace of gas and airplanes; and the support given during the attack by such weapons in our own hands adds another reason for venturing the quick and decisive results of mounted action. This has an important bearing on the role of cavalry and increases the strength of our belief in the principal role of cavalry as stated above and in the expediency of attempting it.

In connection with the means by which this great mission (to attack the enemy in battle at his most vital spot), may be accomplished, the following prediction is also ventured—a proper and skillful cooperation between cavalry on the ground and airplanes in the air has tactical possibilities that may be of great importance. To bring this about, the air service and the cavalry should understand each other thoroughly, and each should be provided in large numbers. Conversely, the cavalry, through its ability to disperse rapidly into small groups and to advance rapidly across country in such formation, is the arm best able to protect itself against attack by hostile airplanes.

The translation follows:

* * * * *

Under the title "*Studies on Modern Cavalry taken from the experiences of the War*," there has recently appeared in Germany an article by Lieutenant Colonel Brandt, Chief of Staff to the Inspector General of the Cavalry.

These studies are inspired, it is true, especially by the examples and the possibilities of the eastern front, and the author remarks that in Europe the Cavalry becomes more and more valuable as one travels towards the East. But by the spirit of analysis which is there revealed, by the ideas therein exposed, by the historical examples that they illustrate, and finally by a certain evolution which they already indicate as to the post-war German regulations, notably in the matter of exploration and employment of cavalry in great masses, they deserve to retain a moment of our attention.

It appears interesting therefore to make known these ideas to those who, in France also, wish to find out where and how cavalry may find its best utilization in future war.

It is almost a postulate for Lieutenant Colonel Brandt that the missions of cavalry have not changed. "To reconnoiter and observe the enemy, to cover, cooperate toward the decision in battle, to exploit the success or cover the retreat, have been and remain the tasks demanded of this arm. They depend on the employment of the principal equipment of Cavalry—the horse.

But, from time to time, under the influence of the modifications that the perfection of armament and new inventions have brought to the methods of combat of the various arms, the Cavalry has sought its principal employment in the execution of one or the other of its tasks.

What will be the essential mission of modern Cavalry? Such is the question which he proposes to answer.

Covering (Screening):—The reasons which militate in favor of the employment of cavalry in covering duties have an incontestable value. Its mobility permits it to hold wide fronts, to withdraw from difficult situations more easily than cyclists or infantry in trucks could do; then, once this mission is terminated to group itself rapidly at the point where it will find employment. Moreover, the concentration of an army remains by this means longer hidden to the enemy, because the veil will commence to rise for him only when he shall have identified elements other than the cavalry.

It is none the less true that this is only an accessory role of cavalry, that may impose upon it such fatigue that it finds itself prematurely used up.

This was the case in 1914 in regard to certain divisions of German Cavalry, so much that General von Posec has written the following lines concerning three cavalry divisions (7th, 8th, and Bavarian) employed in covering duties in Lorraine:

"The goings and comings had so exhausted the horses that two divisions reported that they were no longer fit for combat by reason of the overworking of their horses. The tasks for which whole divisions of cavalry had been maintained in a restricted zone would have been as well fulfilled by mixed detachments reinforced by regiments of cavalry."

It is in the employment of cyclists, infantry in trucks and special formations for covering duties that Colonel Brandt sees the means of helping out the cavalry as much as possible in this primary phase of a campaign and of thus sparing it from fatigues that may compromise gravely its ulterior activity.

Exploration:—Heretofore, strategic exploration has been one of the principal missions for cavalry. Before the World War it was the principal mission.

Even today one would not know how to do without the cavalry for exploration; aviation, infantry in trucks, cyclists and armored cars may reinforce it, but not replace it.

Aviators, in truth, cannot always fly; if they procure negative information, this has often only a limited value; they do not make prisoners, they do not cover, they do not keep the contact, they do not assure the possession of the terrain.

Cyclists and automobiles lose all value if they have no good roads and Lieutenant Colonel Brandt cites the following example:

"In Rumania, a cyclist brigade was added at Cracow, to the cavalry corps

of von Schmettow. To Bucharest there was a good road, and the weather was dry, so that the cyclists could be often employed. After Bucharest, during the march toward Sereth, there were no longer any good roads. The black mud collected so thickly on the bicycles that they could not run; they could not even be pushed, to say nothing of riding them. The trucks, which carried the machine guns of the cyclists, were also immobilized. There was nothing to do but abandon the bicycles and automobiles and to constitute with the elements of the cyclist brigade two feeble battalions of light foot troops.

"In Lithuania and in Courland, in 1915, it was necessary similarly to abandon the bicycles on account of the bad state of roads.

"In similar countries only the cavalry was utilizable in exploration."

Cavalry remains then indispensable for this role, but this is no longer its essential mission.

In fact, the help that the development of aviation brings to it, the spies and the means of transmission of information permit it to free itself of certain tasks that it had until the present time to assume alone.

The character of exploration is modified to such a degree that, the greater part of the time, it will be for the cavalry hardly a question of distant exploration.

Moreover, the information near and far that was demanded of cavalry has lost its value, because the development of means of transport permits the enemy today to make such rapid movements of forces as to render worthless the intelligence previously gathered and upsets all the old calculations of time and space.

The observation of such movements is incumbent upon aviation.

On the ground, a close reconnaissance will be sufficient, which gains in importance, but which can be assured by corps cavalry suitably reenforced.

"Thus, the boundary between distant exploration and close exploration disappears; reconnaissance of distant objectives, the principal aim of strategic exploration, goes to aviation. Cavalry finds itself freed to this extent in the accomplishment of a mission which, until the present, absorbed the greater part of its strength. It regains thus the liberty to point itself, with much less trouble than formerly, towards its principal destination: to cooperate in battle by intervening in the combat."

However, if it happens that terrestrial exploration must be pushed to several days march from the army, the cavalry alone is fit, thanks to its mobility, to do it well.

For a short distance detachments of all arms can well be employed, but to send them so far that they may not be supported within a day's march by their supporting units, would be to expose them to certain destruction. Their role is always delicate: if they refuse combat they often fail to accomplish their missions; if they become engaged they run the risk of being destroyed.

"In October, 1914, a division of Siberian infantry, pushed in front, was opposed near Grojec, between Radom and Varsovie, to the advance of the 8th German Army in Poland. It engaged in combat, and this decision of its chief was fatal to it. The brave Siberians experienced extraordinarily heavy and bloody

losses, and only the remnants of the division succeeded in escaping to Varsovie. It had barely checked the march of the 8th Army a few hours. Only a mobile force—Cavalry—could have avoided annihilation and done well the mission that was confided to that division: To delay the enemy and reconnoiter his forces."

As to the conception which prevailed on the German side in 1914, to assign to each army one or several divisions of cavalry, to assure the exploration on its front, "it ended only in an unlucky dispersion of the cavalry." Space was lacking between the adverse armies to move the cavalry and there was, so to speak, no exploration. It was there an affair for aviation and for the corps or divisional cavalry, the latter reenforced at need by elements of other arms.

In any case a mission of exploration of this kind must be coupled with a mission of delay which surpasses it in importance.

With the means that cavalry actually has at its disposal, it is an organ of combat much too precious for the high command to deprive itself of or to expend it before the battle in far away missions of purely strategical exploration.

The Cavalry Duel—A primary consequence of the place thus given above to exploration is that combat against the hostile cavalry can no longer be sought as a principle.

Moreover, it is no longer a question of an encounter with the arme blanche that, in a few minutes, must put out of action the enemy cavalry and cause it to disappear.

We are today "under the reign of the machine gun" and an adversary, although weaker, can hold for a long time an assailant under its fire; the decision will often be obtained only after several long and painful hours of effort.

Taking in consideration the fact that the combat against the hostile cavalry is no longer a brief episode, but rather an affair of long duration, the chief will have to decide if his mission permits him to engage the enemy cavalry in the combat so ardently desired.

The experience of the war has moreover proved—even on the eastern front where encounters of cavalry were more frequent—that the opposing cavalry forces do not attract each other, as one supposed, in the manner of two lovers. This would perhaps be true in the case of equal masses, but it is unreasonable that a strong cavalry should attract to it a weak one.

Thus, when at the end of November, 1916, in Rumania the cavalry corps of Schmettow had crossed the Oltu, a division of Rumanian cavalry appeared before him. The arrival of the latter could not be attributed to the attraction that the German cavalry corps might have exercised over it, and we can rather believe that it resulted from its mission, which required it probably to throw back the German cavalry across the river. The instant long awaited of a great battle of cavalry appeared then to have arrived. In expectation of this encounter the two divisions of German cavalry were assembled in close order ready for a common action. But suddenly their power of magnetic attraction disappeared. The division of Rumanian cavalry had probably recognized in time the superiority of the German forces and it disappeared without bringing on a combat.

Schmettow's cavalry corps did not allow itself to be led away by the Rumanian cavalry, because it would have been diverted from its principal mission. It would be useless to discuss the attitude of the Rumanian cavalry division as long as one does not know either its mission or the circumstances which provoked its conduct. But it would have been, during the following days, a troublesome adversary for the German cavalry corps, if it had hung on, which it could certainly have done while avoiding engagement in a decisive affair.

In future wars a battle between the two cavalry forces will not then be an end in itself.

If the received mission leads to an engagement it will be necessary as formerly to go to the limit in order to bring about a quick success.

But a leader of Cavalry will decide to engage it only after mature reflection; he runs in fact the danger of allowing himself to be tied to and fixed in a combat of long duration, in which success lies often with the weaker side that succeeds in turning a greater force from its mission.

Participation in the main battles—We touch here at the heart of the subject.

A cavalry division, says Lieutenant Colonel Brandt, is a unit of combat just like an infantry division. Cavalry is not like other arms an auxiliary to infantry; it can replace infantry.

But it has its peculiarities that the high command must know well in order to know how to employ it usefully and to obtain from it the maximum service.

In fact, upon the orders that it receives depends in great measure its success or non-success.

It is essential to give it its mission with precision, and if it is given several missions, the principal mission must be clearly defined; the execution of the latter must not be endangered by finding itself compromised by others.

If we wish to utilize fully its essential quality, mobility, we must be led to employ the cavalry outside of the armies, and consequently on the wings or in the intervals, since experience has shown that there was no place for it in front.

With the great fronts and the long duration of modern battles it is no longer necessary to maintain the cavalry very near the armies. A cavalry that sticks close to its army rarely attains the sensitive point of the enemy and strikes most often at a front already prolonged. On the contrary, by separating itself boldly it finds the more frequent occasions of putting to profit its power of fire, by surprise, there where the enemy cannot parry the blow at the right time.

To assist in gaining the decision by acting offensively in the main battle at the sensitive point of the enemy,—therein lies the principal task of modern Cavalry. This has been moreover the task of cavalry always; we have simply forgotten it from time to time.

All the wars wherein the importance of this essential mission has been misunderstood mark a period of decline in the history of cavalry. Why, on the contrary, are the wars of Frederick the Second and Napoleon the First, rich in incomparable exploits of cavalry? It is not because the firearms were less efficacious: a frontal attack of cavalry against an unshaken infantry had then as

little chance of success as today. But it is rather that the two great captains saw the principal role of their cavalry in an incessant intervention in battle. Recognizing that a decisive success was obtained only by the action of a very important force, they united the mass of their cavalry under the command of a chief and strove to hurl it by surprise upon the weakest point of the enemy.

There is the law of all times; the means change but the idea remains; it is a question of adapting the means to the idea.

Being given the effectives engaged in a modern war, the intervention in battle of a division of cavalry will be only the exception; the union, for this purpose, of several divisions of cavalry into a cavalry corps and even that of several corps of cavalry will be the rule.

The single experience of the western front can give to this subject false ideas, yet it may be certain that in August, 1914, an army of German cavalry operating on the right wing could have had a decisive action.

And again, the employment of the cavalry army of Buddeny, for example, in the war of the Bolsheviki in 1919-1920, responded to the requirements of the particular situation in the Polish theater of operations.

In Palestine the English had constituted the "Desert Mounted Corps" composed of four divisions of cavalry and a camel brigade. It is to this corps, almost exclusively, that they owe their success.

The modern means of communication make the command of an army of cavalry quite as possible as that of any other army.

But it is not sufficient to unite several cavalry divisions under the same command; it is necessary to effect *surprise*. The idea, very wide spread, "that in war one always has time" would be disastrous for the cavalry.

Mobility, rapidity, skill, are the elements of surprise.

In order to surprise the sensitive point of the enemy it will frequently happen that the cavalry must go far to seek it and that it must for several days make long marches of 40 to 50 miles. It is necessary that it be prepared and that it knows how to make these marches without using itself up; it must also know how to take rests which permits in particular the examination of the shoeing; "this was not always the case for the German cavalry in Lithuania in 1915."

Colonel Brandt thinks that an example of the judicious employment of the cavalry at the beginning of an important campaign is offered by the Polish campaign of 1920 against the Bolsheviki.

In April 1920, a Polish cavalry division advancing in front of the infantry was directed on Koziatyn, a village situated about 160 kilometers behind the Russian front, seat of the Q. G. of a Russian army and an important railway center, with a view of seizing this locality and of maintaining itself there until the arrival of the infantry. The Russian front was thin and presented holes, it had the aspect of a network of advance posts rather than that of a continuous front. The Polish cavalry succeeded without difficulty in breaking through the enemy line. It reached Koziatyn after 38 hours of marching, having had at only one point to engage in a short combat; it seized the village after a combat on foot

of long duration. If found itself thus on the back of the Russians and could render useless the important railway of Kiev. To the material success that the taking of the village represented was added besides, for the Poles, the great moral effect that always accompanies the first success at the beginning of a campaign.

Colonel Brandt draws, further, out of this combat of Koziatyn two lessons in detail.

"The Polish cavalry rested two hours 20 kilometers north of Koziatyn and went from there, at 4 o'clock in the afternoon, directly toward the south in three columns in order to attack the village. The attack was to be made by surprise: it had then been ordered to move at a gallop to the outskirts of the locality and not to dismount until there. Although the surprise of the Bolsheviks was complete and in spite of the order given to advance mounted as long as possible, the regiments dismounted too soon; they had at certain points to proceed more than two kilometers on foot. They thus gave the Bolsheviks time to recover from this first surprise and to organize fairly well a resistance."

"The energetic intervention of a divisional general was necessary to make the best out of this excess of prudence.

"But the time lost could not be regained and the attack miscarried that day. The Poles succeeded only the next day in taking the village after having renewed the attack at an early hour."

If the cavalry wishes to surprise, it must not dismount at the first shots of the enemy. A few shots should not stop its progress if it takes appropriate formations, like infantry, when it enters the zone of hostile fire, opening out even wider so as to permit rapidity of movement.

"At the same time that they attacked Koziatyn, the Poles had cut the railways terminating in the village. As, the next day, the Polish cavalrymen attacked on foot the railway station, they were surprised by the arrival of a Russian armoured train which opened fire against them. This train had repaired the road destroyed the evening before. This incident proves that it is indispensable to guard the destructions made while one fights around a junction of railways."

The question of surprise, realized thanks to long and rapid marches, brings up that of attaching infantry to a cavalry division.

It is not necessary that the mobility of cavalry be diminished thereby: the mounted troops must, in any case, constitute the principal part of the division and be able to separate themselves from the infantry reinforcement while at the same time keeping a sufficient combative strength.

"The strengthening of the fire action of a cavalry division to the detriment of its mobility, as we see it in the various divisions said to be 'light' and born of experience on the western front, will in the future surely appear as an error."

Similar divisions have failed in the operations of cavalry in Lithuania and in Courland, at the battle of Wilna, in Rumania, in Palestine, in the expedition already mentioned of the Poles against Koziatyn and in the running combats with which the Turks fought the Greeks in Asia Minor.

"On bad roads, in bad weather or without communication to the rear, only

cavalry remained mobile and fit for combat."

The best solution, in the mind of Colonel Brandt, consists in maintaining in the division the former number of cavalry regiments, and in reinforcing it by other arms, in particular by infantry with rapid means of transport.

It is necessary, moreover, that the troopers be well led and instructed, the horses trained and fit to resist the fatigue of long marches.

One must in fact reckon with the eventual impossibility of utilizing the railways and great trains of automobile transport, either on account of the poor system of railways or roads, or by reason of the bombardments by aviators or by artillery at long range; the advantage will then be with that one of the adversaries who will have mobile forces able to move rapidly by their own means. "A strong cavalry thus employed will be able in future battle to play the same role as that of the cavalry of Frederick II in Silesia."

From this point of view, the conditions of the eastern front give to cavalry a special value; it finds there the necessary space for its movements. But, at the beginning of a war, there will be portions of the frontier weakly guarded. At these points the cavalry will be able to break through before the armies are put in march, it will hamper the concentration of the enemy and oblige the latter to make dispositions that may upset his plan of operations.

Finally, on the flanks of the enemy, the cavalry corps will find space for its employment: they will menace the communications of the enemy, attack his columns, steal away by night, then appear the next day at a new point, 30 to 40 miles from the first.

Employment as a reserve in the break-through—Before the war we did not admit the idea of keeping cavalry inactive while infantry was fighting; we engaged it even when we knew that there was not much of importance to expect by its intervention.

The continuous fronts of the world war have made of primary importance the question of the employment of cavalry as a general reserve and its utilization in case of a break-through.

The author makes a distinction here between a break-through in a war of movement and a break-through after stabilization.

In war of movement there are intervals or flanks where the employment of cavalry is quite obvious; this happened equally as much on the western front as on the eastern front. Nevertheless, we can see that at the beginning of operations, before the covering force of the enemy had been broken through, or rather when the enemy has closed up the holes in which the cavalry has already been able to operate, the latter may be usefully maintained in reserve.

We could imagine also a cavalry initially reserved in order to be launched at the important point when the situation clears up, with a view to bring about a decision, after the manner of Frederick II and of Napoleon. But a result should be expected only by the intervention of a large mass of cavalry. The world war does not offer us any examples.

Will the future furnish the cavalry with the occasion for such decisive inter-

vention? Nobody knows. Perhaps the very slowing down of infantry by material that renders it still more slow and more dependent on roads will work for us cavalymen. This indicates in any case that the way to develop the power of cavalry is to preserve its mobility.

As to the employment of cavalry in a break-through it may be said that it must be engaged only when the breach really exists. It may then make the most of its rapidity in order to prevent the arrival of enemy reserves, to prevent the breach from closing, or to act against the parties on the enemy front who are still holding out.

The delicate point for the cavalry leader consists in deciding to what place he will push and when he will throw himself towards one or the other of the enemy wings. As a general rule—and so long as the enemy lets him go free—if he seeks a success of great magnitude, he will push far and not engage himself too soon, in order that he may penetrate deeply and gain the rear of the enemy.

In a war of positions, one resolves more easily to keep the cavalry as a reserve. It can then serve in effecting reliefs at various points of the front. But only in case of absolute need and for short periods should the cavalry be maintained on foot on the defensive.

It must be able in one case to oppose itself to a break through by the enemy and in another case to be launched against an enemy in retreat.

"At the time of their attack with Tanks near Cambrai in the Autumn of 1917, the English, after having destroyed the obstacles and having taken possession of the German position, pushed the cavalry into the breach. The same thing happened on the 8th of August 1918, when the left wing of the II German Army was broken. But, in both circumstances, the German Command succeeded in rapidly corking the hole before it was made deeper, because the British cavalry that was employed was too weak to obtain a great success. This shows again that only forces of considerable strength of cavalry can have a decisive influence upon the issue of a battle. At Cambrai the English could have engaged a sufficient force of cavalry, because they had at their disposal five divisions of cavalry in the neighborhood of the breach; but only the fractions of three divisions were used. The reasons for this parsimony are not known."

On the German side, Garnier's Cavalry Corps comprising five cavalry divisions was engaged in the gap made at the battle of Vilna. In the region of Vilkomir, to the north of Vilna, it had at the outset to fight by itself to make the breach. It had to struggle for several days and to throw the Russians towards the east before being able to launch itself to the south in order to take in reverse the Russian corps that were still fighting at Vilna. It succeeded in getting to the rear of the Russians. But as it was obliged at the same time to detach several divisions against the reinforcements coming from the east, its strength was not sufficient to bar for a long time the retreat of the Russian columns. Nevertheless it had brought about a great success and it had really contributed toward gaining the battle."

"In the breaks-through of 1917 in Italy, and in March and May, 1918, in France, there was unfortunately no German cavalry. By reason of the lack of men and horses the German high command had judged it preferable to employ its cavalry as infantry. Numerous passages of French war literature show how the French expected then to see German cavalry appear."

If it is easier to bring cavalry to the point of rupture in a war of positions than in a war of movement, the moment for its engagement remains a delicate matter. In principle its role should consist in penetrating deeply into the enemy in order to interfere with the arrival of his reserves and to render impossible their employment in a counter attack of the whole enemy forces. It is necessary then to avoid having the cavalry suffer in the preliminary combats and to strengthen it with artillery, especially with long range guns permitting it to hold centers of communication (road and railway junctions) under its fire.

To sum up, Colonel Brandt thinks that the combative power of modern cavalry makes it more fit than in the past to be used as a reserve and that this role will become incumbent upon cavalry frequently in the future.

Pursuit and Retreat—The pursuit and the protection of a retreat have always been within the domain of cavalry. Progress in technique will change this very little.

In the pursuit it will be necessary to reckon with the important demolitions which will check the troops transported by mechanical means.

In the retreat it will always be a question of being able to break off the combat rapidly and disappear.

In both cases the cavalry is the arm which is better fitted to these needs.

It is rare that the cavalry may bar the retreat to an enemy who retires without having been completely beaten. The example of Garnier's corps at Vilna shows this. It can however check his flank columns and oblige them to change direction.

But it is quite otherwise with an enemy who has really suffered a defeat. In this case the victorious infantry is not rapid enough to gather all the fruits of its success; the cavalry must be substituted for it.

The ideal would be for the cavalry to envelop the two enemy wings, but it will almost never be adequate for this; its action against a wing by flank attacks and in reverse assures already great successes. This was the case for the 2d and 6th Cavalry divisions and for the corps of Egon von Schmettow in the battle of Schaulen, in July, 1915.

Even a direct pursuit can assure success against an enemy utterly defeated, if one engages cavalry in great force and at a definite point.

But there again a strong cavalry is necessary to realize an enveloping pursuit and to overthrow the detachments that the adversary brings to oppose it. It must also be realized that "in order to gain the head of troops in flight" as Frederick II wished to do, much time will today be necessary.

If it is a question of a routed and demoralized enemy, the cavalry can and must dare all.

Finally, in order to cover a retreat, it is clearly indicated to employ the cav-

alry for the direct protection of the retreat, by reason of its aptitude for disappearing rapidly after having engaged itself in delaying actions, but one must seek also to make it act offensively on the flank of the enemy who pursues. The pursuit will be slackened and rendered prudent by this menace.

"Among all the examples of the last war, it may suffice to cite the success brought about by the 6th and 9th divisions of cavalry covering the retreat of the XXVth Reserve Corps of Brzeziny in November, 1914, and on the opposing side, the employment of the Russian cavalry during the retreat of the 5th Russian Army after the battle of Schaulen in July, 1915."

Raids:—The utility of raids has been much disputed, says Colonel Brandt.

The characteristic principle of a raid, he adds, is that the troops which execute it are deprived of all communication with the rear. But this is the case in all operations in rear of the enemy, such operations not necessarily taking on this account the aspect of a raid. There must then be something else which gives to a raid its own character. By searching carefully one finds that a raid never seeks to obtain only a transitory success, after which the cavalry moves off rapidly, but one which, connected with other operations may assume an importance much greater. "To mark a decisive success, a raid should therefore never be an end in itself, but it must enter into the scheme of grand operations."

Having laid down this definition, von Brandt gives a place apart to those incursions made in the course of a prolonged check of the operations and with a view of disturbing the enemy, and causing him damage in such a way as to develop the spirit of enterprise in the troops.

"It is necessary therefore to take care," he adds, "that the efforts connected with marching that are demanded of cavalry in such like enterprises do not render it unable to fulfill its essential tasks, which will commence only upon the resumption of the operations of the whole army."

There are, according to him, operations to which the term "raid" does not apply, even if they are executed by important forces.

Their chances of success are slim in a cultivated country provided with good roads, good railway communications and a good system for the transmission of information. These chances increase, on the contrary, in those regions where these conditions are not present.

To return to raids properly speaking, Brandt believes that if the cavalry regulations before the war did almost prohibit them, it was because "no one had thought of raids executed in liaison with other operations, like that one made by the Polish cavalry division against Koziatyn in 1920."

He thinks then that, in a future war, raids will be perhaps more frequent than formerly, particularly as a preliminary to an important operation.

Seeking for the best known raids of the Great War, he cites three:

a. That one of the 5th French Cavalry Division executed on the 8th and 9th of September, 1914, in the forest of Villers-Cotterets behind the right wing of von Kluck's army.

Distance: about 30 kilometers.

b. That one of the 1st German Cavalry Corps and of the Bavarian Cavalry Division on the 6th and 7th of May, 1915, in Lithuania, reaching to 25 kilometers to the northeast of Kovno, that is to say, far in rear of the Russian front.

Results: Destruction of the railway station of Zeimy on the line Janow-Schaulen.

Distance: About 60 kilometers.

c. That one of the Russian Cavalry Brigade of L'Oussouri on the 18th and 19th of June, 1915, to the left wing of the Army of the Niemen and reaching to Lukniki and Zorany.

Result: Destruction of a German convoy and the interruption of signal communications and of the supply of rations during several days.

Distance: About 35 kilometers.

"These three raids incontestably caused damage to the enemy," thinks Lieutenant Colonel Brandt, "but they did not have any decisive result, because they were all executed with forces that were too weak."

In conclusion, he finishes with a chapter entitled: *The principal mission of cavalry*, which can be summed up in the following manner:

Exploration, intervention after battles, covering (screening), in spite of their inconvenience for cavalry, remain the missions of this arm. Its utilization as a general reserve will assume a great importance. Raids are by no means out of date.

But these are only accessory tasks. "The principal mission consists in participation in battle, by acting offensively against the most sensitive point of the enemy in order to destroy him."

For this it is necessary to unite a great mass of cavalry under the orders of a single chief: a division of cavalry does not suffice; it is necessary to consider in the future the constitution of cavalry corps and even, in certain circumstances, armies of cavalry.

Such masses having need of time and space, they must be made to act freely separated from other forces in order to seek out the flank and rear of the enemy.

The above leads the author to make some reflections on the organization, instruction, armament, and the command of the cavalry.

The organization of cavalry in divisions is necessary in time of peace. "This principle was misunderstood by Germany before 1914, and the German cavalry was found from this fact in a state of inferiority. After the war, there will be hardly anyone to deny the enormous superiority of a body of troops whose elements have been instructed in common and whose units are not improvised at the time of the mobilization."

In this organization it appears to him that one should not have in view exclusively the combat by fire.

"In certain places efforts are being made to replace cavalry divisions by

divisions called 'light.' That this idea may have many advocates in Italy is not surprising, because this country did not experience, in the course of the last campaign, a war of movement. But the more the various nations have had occasion to recollect the experience of the war outside of France, the more they recognize, in their after-war regulations, the value of cavalry, and the more they proclaim that, even in a future war, mounted attacks will not be excluded. The English regulations go the furthest in this sense. In Poland, where, at the beginning, one accepted blindly the French views based solely on the experience of the western front, voices are also raised now which cast in doubt that the French doctrine, insisting exclusively on combat by fire, is suitable to the Polish cavalry in a country such as that on the Eastern front. And recently, even in France, certain military authors write that, in some circumstances, the cavalry will still be able to fight mounted with the arme blanche; this notion has never been lost by the cavalry arms with the offensive spirit of other armies."

The instruction of fighting on foot in the organization of the division should not entirely replace the maneuver of great units such as they practiced before the war.

The armament of the cavalry must permit it to equal on foot the best infantry, but it must not compromise its mobility.

Finally, upon the High Commander depends in part the rendition of its duties by the cavalry. It is a question here not only of the Commanders of the cavalry units themselves, but of that Commander who gives to them their missions.

As Frederick II demanded in the instructions, that Colonel Brandt recalls, it is indispensable that the infantry generals should understand cavalry so as to know how to employ it properly and judiciously, because it is a more delicate matter to engage cavalry well than it is to engage infantry. Reciprocally, the cavalry generals must well understand infantry, because they often have fractions of it under their orders.

The cavalry will have no reason therefore to lack confidence in the future: inspired by the lessons of the great masters of the past it will still expect in a future war to play a decisive role.



Training of Cavalry Radio Squads

BY

Lieutenant MORTIMER F. SULLIVAN, 2d Cavalry

IN the training of a Radio Squad the first problem that confronts the Regimental Signal Officer is the question of personnel. The selection of men that are capable of receiving training is the most important factor in building up a communication unit.

First of all the men should serve in a line troop for one year before they are assigned to a communication unit. There are three factors to be considered in the selection of suitable men.

First: A man must have sufficient education and intelligence to be trained as an operator.

Second: He must have sufficient physical strength and size to pack a horse and manage his pack horse as well as his own riding horse.

Third: He must have a sense of duty that will make him work hard under difficult conditions and courage enough to follow line troops over difficult ground.

Unless the Signal Officer is fortunate enough to have limitless support from the Regimental Commander, as is the case in the Second Cavalry, where he is allowed to pick his men from the whole regiment, the question of personnel will be a constant cause of worry. With the proper personnel the training becomes mere routine.

THE MECHANICAL SIDE

Numerous pamphlets and training manuals have been written at the Signal School and elsewhere on the technical and electrical side of the training of cavalry communication units. Nothing has been written on the mechanical side, that is the packing and unpacking of the set, and opening and closing station. To insure a speedy transmission of radio messages, which is essential in cavalry units, the mechanical side of the training of the members of the squad as individuals and as a unit must be very highly developed.

Considerable discussion has always existed among interested officers at the Cavalry School and elsewhere, as to whether or not the regimental radio section could set up station and send a short message, and be ready to move out with the column at the conclusion of a ten-minute halt. With a view to testing the practicability of such a procedure several tests were made by the Communication Platoon of the Second Cavalry and some interesting facts have been ascertained from these tests.

Various schemes and methods of training were tried with varying results until finally the scheme herein outlined was evolved. The idea of the two man team proved to be the solution of the problem. To begin with, the men were impressed with the idea that no one man worked alone, but always with his partner. They carried out the aparejo and load, packed the pack horse, and saddled their riding horses at the same time. Men assigned to a pack always worked together on the same pack horse. It did not follow that the same men were always part-

ners, but the men assigned to certain duties always worked together, for example: Horseholder No. 1 and the assistant operator; horseholder No. 2 and the operator; and horseholder No. 3 and the squad chief, were always partners. Then to add to the team idea the squad always marched to all formations as a squad, even to putting their saddles away after arriving at stables. All tests were made with the issue aparejo packs and equipment.

The following methods of training were used with excellent results in preparation for the demonstration which was given before the Commandant of The Cavalry School, the Colonel of the Second Cavalry and the student Officers of The Cavalry School, and which showed the practicability of sending a short message during the ten-minute halt.

ORGANIZATION

Two radio squads were organized as follows:

First Squad.

- 1 Sergeant (Squad Chief).
- 1 Operator.
- 1 Assistant Operator.
- 4 Horseholders.
- 1 Corporal (Operates set SCR 54 A).
- 1 Panel Operator.

Second Squad.

- 1 Sergeant (Squad Chief).
- 1 Operator.
- 1 Assistant Operator.
- 4 Horseholders.

The men were then given general instruction in the art of packing including tying the diamond hitch, after they understood the basic principles of pack transportation. The pack horses were tied on the line and the loads of the respective animals were brought out by each two-man team and placed on the ground on either side of the aparejo just as it is carried (See Illustration). The section was then lined up and each man was taught the name of each article of equipment belonging to the set and pack.

Each horse was then packed individually by the two men assigned to that animal, under the supervision of the squad chief, the rest of the members of the two squads observing and working as their turn came.

The generator is packed as the top load of No. 1 Animal with three mast sections, type M S 2 in each side load.

The set box with parts is on the near side of No. 2 Animal, and the battery box with parts on the off side. Frame, type M-1, is top load.

The tent bag and contents, with three mast sections are on near side of No. 3 Animal, and the antenna bag and contents with two mast sections, a ridge pole and tent pole, on the off side.

Each man was given a slip of paper with his duties assigned in order for unpacking, setting up station, closing station, and packing with instructions to memorize the same. The following are examples:

SQUAD CHIEF:

Halts, dismounts, turns to right about, turns his horse over to Horseholder No. 4.

Unsnaps overload strap and removes tent bag and mast sections from near side of No. 3 animal.

Puts legs in Set Box and opens it up.

Assists Operator in running up mast.

Commands "Tie Down."

Listens in to see if station is calling.

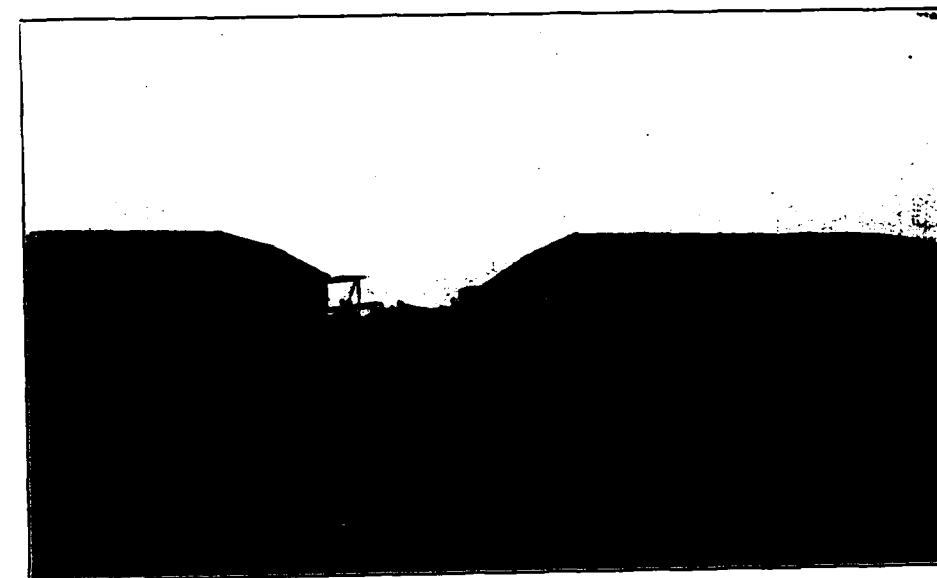
Tests transmission side of set.

Adjusts it to the prescribed wave length.

OPERATOR:

Moves up on left of Horseholder No. 1, halts, dismounts, turns his horse over to Horseholder No. 4.

Removes straps from Set Box.



Arrangement of Equipment Preparatory to Packing

Takes off Set Box placing it where station is to be set up.

Removes Mast Sections from near side and arranges them next to set box.

Places Battery Box in front of set box, attaches battery lead to set box.

Places Antenna Connectors in sockets.

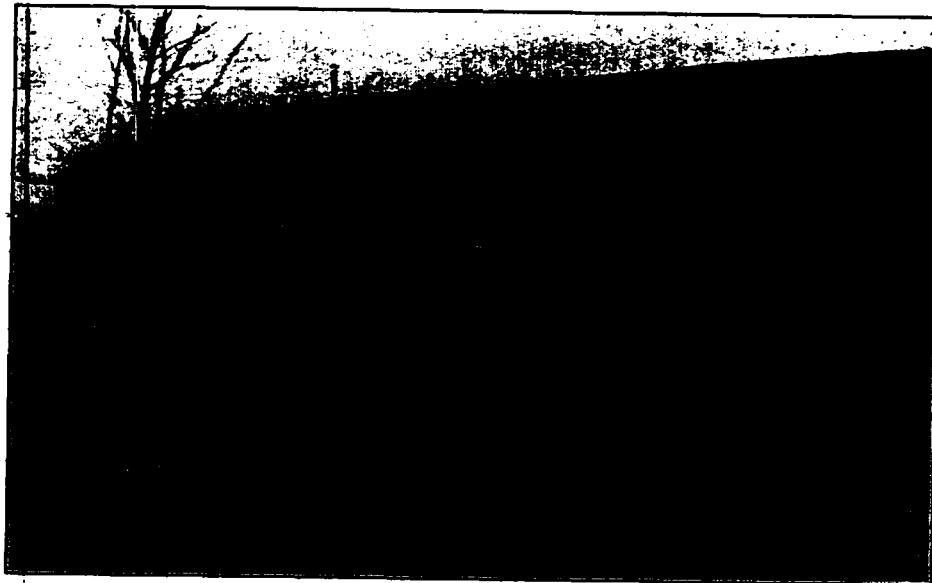
Assists Squad Chief in running up mast.

Keeps Log Sheet.

During this step in training three horses fully packed with a complete SCR 127 set were led out and the men of one squad went through their duties in setting up station by the numbers. The other squad observed, and each man in the observing squad checked up on his job in the working squad. No man was al-

lowed to assist another man except his team-mate, in any way. The idea of the two-man team being emphasized throughout the drill. Absolute accuracy was demanded. The observing squad and working squad then changed places and the drill was repeated, the former now doing the work and the latter watching.

The next stage was without the numbers but still with one squad working and the other observing. After each working squad finished each man was criticized in turn by the corresponding man of the observing squad, that is, the as-



The Squad Mounted

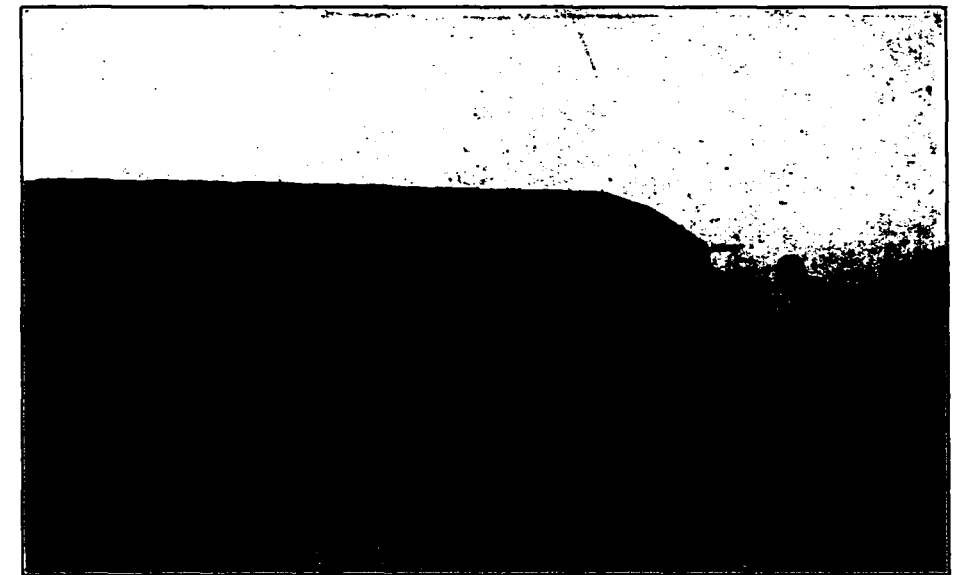
sistant operator of the observing squad made note of all the mistakes of the assistant operator of the working squad, etc.

The squads were then mounted and began to work for speed on about the sixth day of the training period. The drill was timed by a stop watch and each squad checked the other for accuracy. Competition became very keen between the two sections, and the result was that on the day of the test one squad had dots and dashes coming in through a magnavox hooked up to a receiving set in the riding hall two minutes and thirty seconds after the command "Open Station" had been given. After the squad mastered the drill, the horseholders were changed about so that each was familiar with the duties of the others.

In a like manner, the squad chief, operator and assistant operator, changed places, and by this procedure a versatile squad was secured. Nothing is said here about the training of operators. The matter of training operators is fully covered in training manuals and the only thing the regimental signal officer has to do is to follow these manuals. However, in this unit every man is an operator of

more or less skill. Their speed varying from five to thirty words per minute. Signal Corps Manuals on procedure are followed to the letter in all training. For training purposes along this line several Service Buzzers are hooked in a series, each buzzer being assigned a call letter. The N. C. S. then takes over the net just as if it were a radio net and puts through a traffic load. At the end of the problem the results are posted on the bulletin board showing number of messages sent and errors made by each station. The specified blanks are used in all problems.

The training of animals is also an item that must be considered. Quiet horses are essential both for riding and packing. The following methods were used in this troop: The horses were taken on long cross country rides over rough country and up and down steep hills. At first a man only had his riding horse to manage



Squad Unpacking After "Open Station" Has Been Given and Horses Circled

but later he had to manage a lead horse with just an aparejo as a load and finally one with the full radio load. If an unruly horse was found, he was packed up with two sacks of oats and taken out with that load until he became manageable.

Slides including the giant slide at Fort Riley were taken regularly and the squads were taken through wooded ravines to accustom the men and horses to avoiding trees with the packs.

The details of "open station" and "close station" follow:

TO OPEN STATION:

At the command "Open Station" given by the regimental signal officer or on reaching the place designated as the location for the radio station.

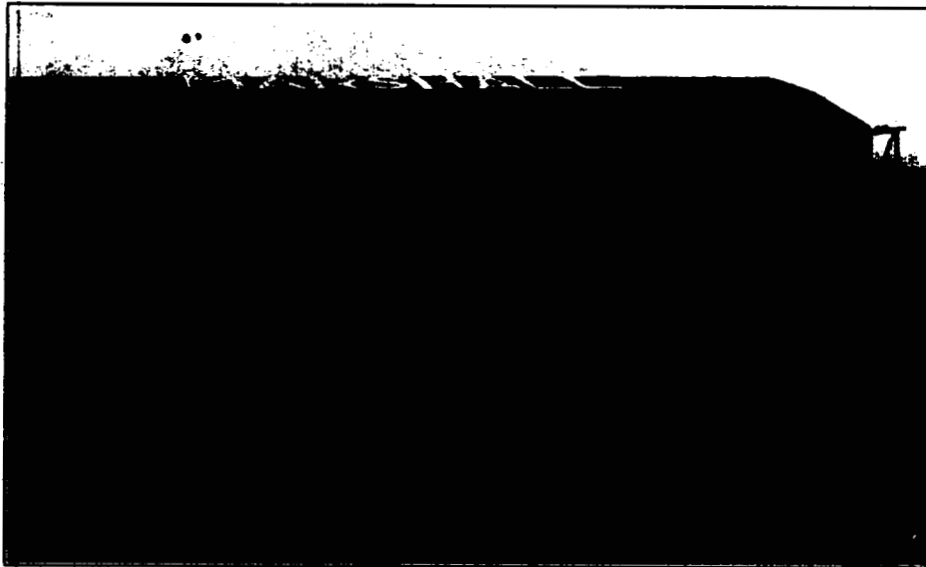
The squad leader commands "Circle Horses" the squad leader and horseholder No. 4 halt, dismount, turn to the right and left about respectively.

Horseholder No. 1 and assistant operator halt and dismount.

Horseholder No. 2 and operator move up on the left of horseholder No. 1, halt and dismount.

Horseholder No. 3 moves up on the right of horseholder No. 1, halts and dismounts. All pass their snaffle reins to horseholder No. 4. Horses are not linked for a temporary set-up.

Assistant operator releases the quarter straps and assisted by horseholder No. 1 removes the mast sections from No. 1 animal placing them on the left of the set box, ferrules to the right and then removes the generator.



The Mast Ready to Go Up, Equipment Unloaded and Arranged as Prescribed

The operator removes the straps from the set box. Horseholder No. 2 removes them from the battery box, leaving straps in the quarter strap rings. The operator and horseholder No. 2 remove set and battery boxes and place them simultaneously where station is to be set up, they then remove the mast sections, placing them on the left of the boxes, ferrules to the right.

The squad leader unsnaps the overload strap and throws it over to horseholder No. 3 who snaps it into the quarter strap ring. The squad leader and horseholder No. 3 then remove tent and antenna bags simultaneously placing them on the ground near the set box. They then return and remove the mast sections and place them alongside the bags.

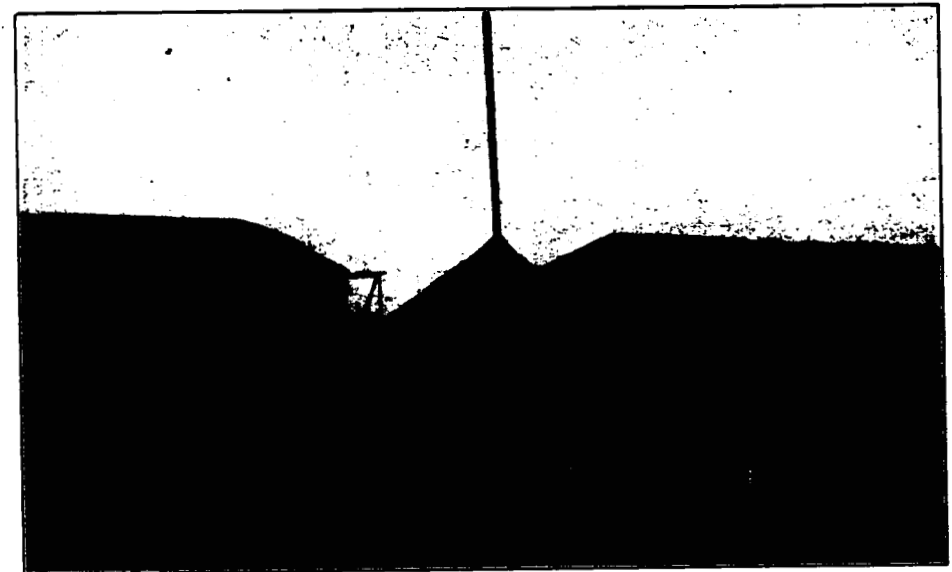
Horseholder No. 4 moves all horses of the squad fifteen yards clear of the set box.

Squad leader sets up and opens set box putting on legs.

The operator places battery box in front of set box, opens it, attaches the battery leads to the set box.

The assistant operator opens the antenna bag and removes reels and ground connecting block.

Horseholder No. 1 removes the generator cover, unwinds the leads and attaches the leads to set box.



The SET All Set Up and Functioning

Horseholder No. 2 arranges the mast sections on the ground, ferrules in one direction, and with top section nearest the place where the mast is to be set up. Horseholder No. 3 opens tent bag, and takes six pins and two hammers out of tool-bag.

The operator places the antenna leads in the connector sockets.

The assistant operator and horseholders Nos. 1, 2, and 3 each take an antenna reel and pin and proceed 90 feet in opposite directions, at a double time, holding the reel in the right hand, drops the reel, holds the wire in his right hand and drives the pin with his heel.

The squad leader and operator put up the mast, the men on the antenna wires giving or taking slack at each other's warning as pole goes up. The squad leader commands "Tie Down" antenna men tie antenna leads to pin with a clove hitch, they then double time back and get the counterpoise leads from the operator who has them connected in the counterpoise lead in block.

The counterpoise is then unreeled directly under the antenna wires.

Where six antenna wires are used for the installation of the set, this would be done where the set is not of a temporary character or where the wind is heavy, horseholder No. 1 and the assistant operator take out the extra leads, and horseholder No. 2 and 3 take out the extra counterpoise wires.

Horseholder No. 1 and No. 2 put crank handles on generator and wait for the squad leader's command to start turning.

The squad leader listens in to see if a station is calling, then tests the transmission of the set, and adjusts it to the prescribed wave length.

The operator keeps the log sheet, the assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 stand by to relieve the men on the generator.

When weather necessitates or when setting up is other than temporary the operator, assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 put up the tent as prescribed below. The operator takes a mast section type MS-2 and inserts ridge pole extension piece, making a complete ridge pole. The assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 each take a mast section type MS-2 and insert a tent adapter making an upright. They then insert the complete upright in the ridge pole. The operator unfolds the tent and pulls it over the complete tent pole with the aid of the assistant operator and horseholder No. 3.

The complete section is then raised and placed over the set box. The set box is not disconnected for this purpose. The operator drives the stakes while the assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 hold the tent upright.

The guy ropes are then tightened. The tent is always erected with the flap towards the generator and to the front of the set. When the tent is pitched, six antenna wires will be used.

CLOSING STATION (With tent up).

At the command "Close Station" the squad leader disconnects the antenna, counterpoise, generator, battery leads, and headsets, then closes the set box. Horseholders Nos. 1 and 2 remove the handles from the generator and secure the generator leads, winding them around the generator, and put the cover on. The squad leader puts the phones, battery leads, etc., in the battery box and closes it. The operator, assistant operator and horseholder No. 3 strike and fold the tent, and disconnect the ridge pole and upright.

The assistant operator, horseholders Nos. 1, 2, and 3 (at the double time) each reel up the counterpoise, then untie antenna guy wires and facing the mast, steady the antenna while the squad leader and operator lower the mast. As the mast is lowered the antenna men take in the slack at each other's warning.

The mast being down, the assistant operator, horseholders Nos. 1, 2, and 3 reel up the antenna wires and place them in the antenna bags. Horseholder No. 4 then leads the pack animals to their respective loads.

Squad leader and operator pack antenna bag, tent bag, and assemble all other equipment for packing. The same equipment is always packed on the

same animals, and by the man who unpacked it, and in the reverse order of packing.

When the tent is not used the 5th and 6th antenna wires will not be run out, so the modification in the above procedure is obvious.

All members of the squad get their riding horse from the horseholder No. 4, and the squad leads into column of twos or threes as directed facing the direction of march at the time the order to open station was given.

PANEL SQUAD.

Consists of:

1 Corporal (Operates 54 A set).

1 Panel Man (Operates panels).

SETTING UP 54A SET.

At command "Open Station," wagon halts and corporal and panel operator halt, and dismount, and turn their horses over to driver of wagon. Panel operator taking a mast section and reel runs out antenna to a distance of 100 feet, inserts antenna connector and insulator in mast, and guys mast to ground. Corporal connects antenna connector to other mast section, attaches antenna leadin to antenna, and hold the second mast section while the operator guys it down. Corporal attaches antenna leadin, ground leads, and phone plugs to set and listens in for a call. Panel operator lays out his identification panels rolled and ready to be displayed on call and identification of a friendly plane.



Mobility, Fire Power, and Shock

BY

Lieutenant Colonel CLARENCE LININGER, Cavalry

IT is said that the object of war is to impose one's will on the enemy. To accomplish this, his resistance must first be overcome. His means of resistance are men, materiel, and methods. To win, one must have more means, better means, or must use one's means with greater intelligence. For example, the enemy may concentrate his forces at a great distance and inaugurate strategical moves of vital importance. It is highly desirable to know of this action. The airplane exists and may be used for the purpose. The air service then is organized and a means of obtaining information at a distance is available. The armies meet. The enemy has field works, masses of men and animals, and materiel that one wishes to destroy. Gunpowder and the cannon are used, artillery is organized, and means for destruction have been provided.

In war tasks exist, and for the performance of such tasks, existing means are used, or new ones are devised. One does not first invent a tool and then find something for it to do. The task for it exists first. Every invention that ever found a place in warfare, found it because there was a task awaiting. Every arm, every branch that survives today, does so because there is a function for it to perform.

CAVALRY TASKS IN WAR

What, then, are the tasks for which cavalry is maintained? In war, whether in operations on a large scale or in those of smaller units situations arise in which time is an important factor. Something must be done quickly. A force is needed without delay to take advantage of an enemy's weakness or mistakes or to check the enemy at some point where he is gaining. Again, the area of operations may be extensive or the distance to the point where interference is needed may be great. Obviously there must be a specially organized force whose chief characteristic is such as to satisfy these needs. Many centuries ago men of war discovered that the horse could carry a burden and move for long distances at a rate moderately faster than a man and for short distances many times faster. They made the burden a soldier and his arms, organized, and had a force for the tasks mentioned above. They found that the soldier could remain on his horse and fight or could dismount and fight, thus greatly increasing his value. In the greatest of all wars, ended but six years ago, it was shown again that masses of horsemen, taking unto their own use modern inventions, performed the missions assigned them with results as marvelous as the world has ever known.

CHARACTERISTICS OF CAVALRY

Mobility, fire power, and shock are the characteristics of cavalry. The greatest of these is mobility, defined as the quality of being rapidly and readily moved about. Without mobility cavalry is of little value. On the other hand,

mobility alone is of little value. Mobility is valuable for what it confers. The value is that of the rapidity and readiness with which fire power and shock can be moved. Fire power and shock win battles but they must be used at the times and places most destructive to the enemy. Mobility makes it possible to use the fire power and shock of cavalry when and where wanted within a reasonable time and within a reasonable distance.

There are two kinds of mobility, or stated differently, mobility is used under two different conditions,—off the battle field and on the battle field.

Mobility off the battle field is expressed in long and rapid marches. It is seen in a situation where a cavalry division, say, is shifted quickly from one point to another in the theater of operations. It is used when a unit on a reconnaissance or security mission covers a great area. A treatise on marches would deal with this kind of mobility except from the strategical or tactical standpoints. It is obtained and preserved by march discipline, care of animals, and methods of marching that retain the freshness and vigor of the horses. It is characterized by long and sustained effort at a moderately fast rate rather than by a short effort at a very rapid rate.

Mobility on the battle field is displayed by rapidity of maneuver before fire power or shock is used against the enemy, and by the mounted charge when shock is used. Mobility on the battle field has too many applications for all to be named here. Among the most important are surprise, suddenness and impetuosity of attack, action against the enemy's weak and sensitive points, avoidance of heavy losses by rapid movement, the unexpected in regard to time, direction, place, and type of attack.

There is mobility of the individual as well as mobility of the mass. Without the former cavalry could not fill the country with a cloud of reconnoitering detachments and patrols, could not maneuver rapidly across country, and could not assume those many formations that allow it to fight in such a variety of methods and that are so productive of surprise.

Mobility is the means to an end, the end being to apply fire power and shock at places most harmful to the enemy. Whether fire power or shock be used, mobility should be employed to place the cavalry at the enemy's place of weakness,—at his throat so to speak. This place is sought out by active reconnaissance; when discovered the cavalry moves against it with great rapidity. Such place may lie along the enemy's front and an attack delivered at that point at once may be more productive of results than one delivered elsewhere a half hour later; but generally the point to be struck is the enemy's flank or rear, and there the cavalry must expect to reap its full harvest.

FIRE POWER OR SHOCK

The point of attack having been decided upon the cavalry commander must next choose between fire power and shock. Shock, in a few minutes, ends what it might take fire power hours to accomplish, and releases the cavalry at once for further missions; but if it fail the losses in men and above all

in horses may be tremendous. There is no rule. Shock should be the first thought of the cavalry leader but he should ask himself,—Have I surprise? Adequate fire support? Can I move at speed in suitable formation? If the answer is yes, the solution is the charge. The rash will always resort to shock; the timid or over cautious will always resort to fire power. The skillful leader will use sometimes one and sometimes the other, selecting the one which offers the greater results.

AN HISTORICAL EXAMPLE

Let us illustrate the uses of mobility and fire power by a familiar historical incident—that of Buford prior to and at Gettysburg. Leaving Middletown on the morning of June 29, 1863 he marched with two of his cavalry brigades via Boonsboro, Cave Town, and Monterey Springs to the vicinity of Fairfield. The next day he followed circuitous routes in order to avoid Confederate infantry with which he did not wish to become engaged and arrived at Gettysburg shortly before noon. He saw the strategical importance of the locality and decided to hold it for the Army of the Potomac, the leading infantry and artillery elements of which could not arrive until the following day. In two days Buford had marched some fifty miles, crossed a mountain range twice, slipped around a hostile force, and seized a locality which was vital to the success of a battle and a campaign,—a brilliant example of the use of mobility off the battle field.

Upon arrival at Gettysburg Buford found Confederate infantry approaching from Cashtown, eight miles to the northwest of Gettysburg. This infantry hurriedly turned back. Buford then sent reconnoitering parties to the northwest, north, and northeast. From them and other sources he heard of heavy infantry forces west of Cashtown, that Ewell's corps was advancing from the north, and rumors of Confederates approaching from the northeast. Receiving reports the following morning from his patrols of the approach of the Confederates from Cashtown, he dismounted his cavalry and placed it and his artillery northwest of Gettysburg astride the road upon which the enemy were advancing. From ten until half past ten in the morning he sustained a heavy infantry and artillery attack; at the latter hour he was relieved by Reynold's Federal infantry. In this action we find fire power used with far reaching results.

The question arises,—might not mobility have been used by Buford on the morning of July 1? The answer is no; the information of the enemy was too uncertain. The cavalry must remain in the vicinity of Gettysburg prepared to meet an attack from any direction except the southeast. But let us alter the situation somewhat and make the force at Cashtown the only enemy within a day's march of Gettysburg. Now Buford may march against this enemy, taking up a position three or four miles from Gettysburg, or better yet attacking the head and flank of the hostile infantry. At ten thirty the enemy would be two or three miles farther from Gettysburg than they were in the

actual case and the cavalry losses no greater and probably less. This would illustrate one of the numerous uses of mobility on the battle field.

Mobility is dependent on condition of animals and training of men and animals. Training and condition permit long marches and make possible rapid changes of pace, of direction, of formation. Without such flexibility cavalry falls a prey to more active enemy cavalry, becomes an easy target for artillery and airplanes, fails to reach the appointed place at the appointed time, and is incapable of effective shock action. It is at best only very poor mounted infantry.

IMPORTANCE OF REGIMENTAL OFFICERS

The regimental officer has little to do with organization or type and amount of equipment. He recommends—higher authority decides. But he has everything to do with the training of his men and the training and conditioning of his horses. His objective should be to obtain and hold fast to the characteristic which called cavalry into being thousands of years ago and made it the weapon with which military commanders from Alexander to Allenby wrought destruction upon their enemies. It is the regimental officer who trains cavalry to make long and rapid marches to the battle field and arrive there capable of further sustained effort. It is he who trains the cavalry to maneuver rapidly over varied terrain, make quick changes of pace, direction, and formation, and at the end act by fire power, shock, or a combination of both. It is he who makes of his organization a highly mobile and flexible unit which suddenly appears and strikes, goes on to gather the fruits of victory, or as suddenly disappears only to renew the attack elsewhere with unlesened violence, acting always with rapidity, activity, and surprise.

THE HORSE

The horse makes cavalry, distinguishes cavalry from foot troops, and gives the arm its characteristic of mobility. Cavalry therefore may operate within the powers of the horse and is held by his limitations. The horse in some respects is a hardy creature and in others a delicate one. He continues to carry his rider though terribly wounded but dies from apparently minor causes. He lives in the greatest extremes of climate but rapidly weakens under exposure. He lives upon almost any vegetable diet but soon falls by the roadside when deprived of his food. Misused, cavalry breaks and shatters. Properly used it produces the most astounding results.

CONCLUSION

To sum up: cavalry acts by fire power and shock. Mobility permits fire power and shock to be employed at the time and place most harmful to the enemy. The value of our cavalry therefore can be measured by the effectiveness of its fire, its skill in shock action, and its capacity for sustained movement off and rapid movement on the battle field.

Some Training Principles for National Guard Cavalry

BY

Captain KRAMER THOMAS, Cavalry

Instructor Wyoming National Guard Cavalry

THE training of National Guard Cavalry is always a difficult task, but most of the difficulties can be overcome and good efficient first-line combat cavalry can be developed if each problem is analyzed and solved in the light of the final mission of the unit. The 115th Cavalry, scattered over the State of Wyoming, presents the usual obstacles to training in intensified form, and a discussion of the methods used to overcome these difficulties should be of interest to all Cavalry officers since each is liable to assignment to National Guard instruction duty.

The 115th Cavalry has no two troops in the same town. Some troops are over five hundred miles from the Regimental Headquarters. The average distance between the Regimental Headquarters and Troops is about two hundred and fifty miles. The Regimental Staff itself is scattered in a triangle, each leg of which is about five hundred miles. For armories the State rents such facilities as the towns afford, although two armories are now being built. The men of the troops often live many miles from the troop station, and extreme cold weather in winter adds to the hardship of training. In planning and conducting the training of a Regiment under such conditions, the following principles have been evolved and successfully followed:

(1) *The program must be progressive.*

Although there is a large annual turnover in strength each year, the Regiment must not be held back in its training. Nor must it be held to elementary work until thoroughly proficient therein. The work must progress and it is better that the Regiment should be reasonably proficient in all phases of Cavalry training than expert in a few. Therefore, the programs for armory and field training have been made increasingly advanced with the result that the Regimental and lower Headquarters can now make sound solutions to ordinary tactical problems, issue good orders, and have the troops carry them out proficiently. This was demonstrated last year at camp in many problems. The remarkable part of this system is that new men quickly pick up and adjust themselves to the state of training of their unit as they find it. No difficulty from new men was experienced. The higher the mark, the higher will the troops aim.

(2) *The monthly schedules must be self-explanatory.*

It has been found that when the schedule prescribes a certain amount of work on "par. — to par. —, — manual" no one looks it up, and the drill period is devoted to such monotonous and morale killing exercises as Manual of Arms and Calisthenics. Therefore, schedules now issued prescribe in detail the work for each drill, and every new subject is thoroughly covered in an attached paper. Thus, if one hour is prescribed for exercises by the squad and platoon in bringing order out of confusion, a short paper is attached to the schedule

explaining the importance of this training and giving model exercises by which it can be taught. New and interesting things are thus constantly put before the troops, uniformity of training by scattered troops is secured, and interest is maintained. Troop Commanders seldom have time to do much studying in advance for drills, but by the above method, a few minutes spent in reading over the schedule prepares a leader to competently instruct his unit in the prescribed exercises. Thus the line of least resistance in armory drill is to follow the schedule.

(3) *Unit Commanders must thoroughly understand the organization of their commands.*

This is particularly true of the Headquarters Troop, Service Troop and Squadron Detachments, whose makeup is complex. This is facilitated by publishing "Function Charts" of all units. Thus the Headquarters Troop is divided into its platoons and sections, and each is analyzed on a separate sheet showing the rank, number and equipment of the men composing it, what their training should be, and what they should be able to accomplish. With this are furnished all necessary Training Regulations, pamphlets and suggestions. For example—the sergeant in charge of the Intelligence Section of the Regimental Headquarters Troop knows the organization of his Section, what each man should be able to do, what equipment he has for training, etc., and he then actually conducts the training of his Section supervised as necessary by the C. O. Staff Platoon.

(4) *To have complete equipment, required first that Commanders know what they should have.*

To simplify this problem, the equipment tables of the Militia Bureau have been studied and individual tables prepared for each unit showing what articles they should have, to whom issued, and for what purpose. A separate table, including exact allowance of expendable supplies, has been prepared for each type of unit.

(5) *Collateral work for officers.*

A short correspondence course to supplement the routine training is given each officer. It is divided into three sub-courses: Tactics, Animal Management and Cavalry Weapons. This also is progressive from year to year. Thus the officers come to camp with a good idea of many important subjects, which are impossible to cover in armory drill. This course is written and conducted by the instructors since the regular Army Course is too long to be suitable for National Guard.

(6) *Instruction must go through unit leaders.*

This is particularly important at camp. The best methods of handling this feature of training have been found to be:

(a) A school (lecture) for officers conducted by instructors, immediately followed by

(b) NCO School taught by troop officers on the day before a subject is taken up by troops on the field, then.

(c) A demonstration by troops before the Regiment, followed by

(d) Actual practice in the subject by the troops themselves.

For instructors to impart instruction direct to troops lessens the incentive of National Guard Officers to learn and lowers their prestige.

(7) *All demonstrations should be made by National Guard Troops themselves.*

A demonstration requires careful rehearsal (instruction) which may best be given to the National Guard Troops that they may benefit accordingly. Also it increases their self-respect to know that they can do these things rather than have Regular Troops make the demonstration for them.

(8) *Instructors should work unobtrusively.*

If the instructors make proper preparations for each new phase of training as outlined in (6) above, they should not have to go on the field and make corrections before troops. The same principle applies to matters other than training. A National Guard Regiment has within itself everything necessary for its operation. If instructors actually take over any executive or operative function, they are depriving some officer of his proper training. When an instructor solves an administrative or other problem, no one remembers how he did it, but if the Regiment has to figure it out alone, the lesson is well learned.

(9) *Regimental Esprit should be built up.*

In all National Guard Cavalry Regiments, and particularly those which are scattered over considerable territory, every effort should be made to attain a high standard of Regimental spirit and sense of unity. Toward this end the 115th Cavalry has found the following method beneficial:

- (a) Publication of a newspaper.
- (b) Wearing of Regimental Insignia.
- (c) Adoption of a Regimental Motto, "Powder River."
- (d) Regimental Summer Camp.
- (e) Encouraging little Regimental customs and practices, which are exclusively "115th Cavalry."

(10) *The Regimental Staff must function whether scattered or not.*

As an example of how this can be done, the 115th Cavalry was assembled for Summer Camp from its many home stations by the issuing of a Warning Order and a Field Order prepared by the Regimental Staff. These Orders were so complete that the regiment was assembled without a hitch, and no other instructions were sent out. The Regimental Commander sent a "Staff memo" to all Staff Officers calling on each to submit his paragraph for each order. These paragraphs were then coordinated and consolidated into the Warning Order and Field Order, each was issued at the proper time, and no further information was furnished or requested.

The principles given above have been tried and found sound. They have been instrumental in making a good, efficient Cavalry Regiment, which is not only able to "drill" but can march, camp, handle advance guard, outpost and similar duty, fight mounted or dismounted, make a good solution and take effective action on any problem with which it may be faced.

The International Polo Tournament Mexico City, D. F. Mexico

BY

Captain EDWARD M. FICKETT, Cavalry

For a number of years conditions in Mexico have been such as to keep a large part of the United States Army on the border looking over into that country, but prohibited from going over to see what it was like. From the casual contacts that many United States officers have made it seemed as though Mexico should be a very interesting place, and that there were some very interesting and pleasant people there. So much had been said and printed in the United States about the Mexicans being people habitually addicted to turning over in bed and shooting somebody just to keep their hands in, that finding the opposite of such a condition was to the people who experienced it a very pleasant surprise. But there was that everlasting curiosity. What was over there anyway? So said most of us who had been stationed on the border for any length of time. The result was that when Major E. L. N. Glass, Cavalry, now Assistant Military Attache of the Embassy of the United States at Mexico City, and formerly of the 10th Cavalry, was in Fort Sam Houston in December of 1923 during our last Mid-Winter Polo Tournament here, he and a group of polo enthusiasts got together on a scheme to see if an International Polo Tournament in Mexico City could be arranged somewhat along the lines of our own Mid-Winter Tournament in San Antonio. It was thought that the two could be run more or less together since civilian teams coming to San Antonio for the winter would probably be willing to ship to Mexico City for a tournament, and if the scheme could be put over once it would probably be possible for more and more of the teams from the Army to make the tournament.

Despite the fact that at the time the plan was first suggested, a revolution was in progress in Mexico, the idea was well received, and with the decline of revolutionary activities, our hopes grew stronger and stronger. The great thing which had to be overcome was the initial inertia; once that was overcome and things started moving, the project moved forward rapidly. A number of trips were made by Major Glass in the interest of the tournament, and without his energy, and willingness, tact, and ability in overcoming last minute obstacles, it is probable that the arrangements could not have been made. Srs. Eduardo Utrubide and T. Algara of the Mexico City Polo Club came to San Antonio during the summer and explained a great many things to us which were not clear in the discussions as they had been going on. Baron A. von Schroeder, also of the Mexico City Polo Club was invaluable in his assistance in getting the scheme under way. Even with the assistance of all these gentlemen, it appeared up to about three weeks before we would have to leave that the difficulties in the way of the trip were insurmountable. Eventually, however, all difficulties were cleared away and the trip made. The

official story of the tournament as reported to the War Department is as quoted:

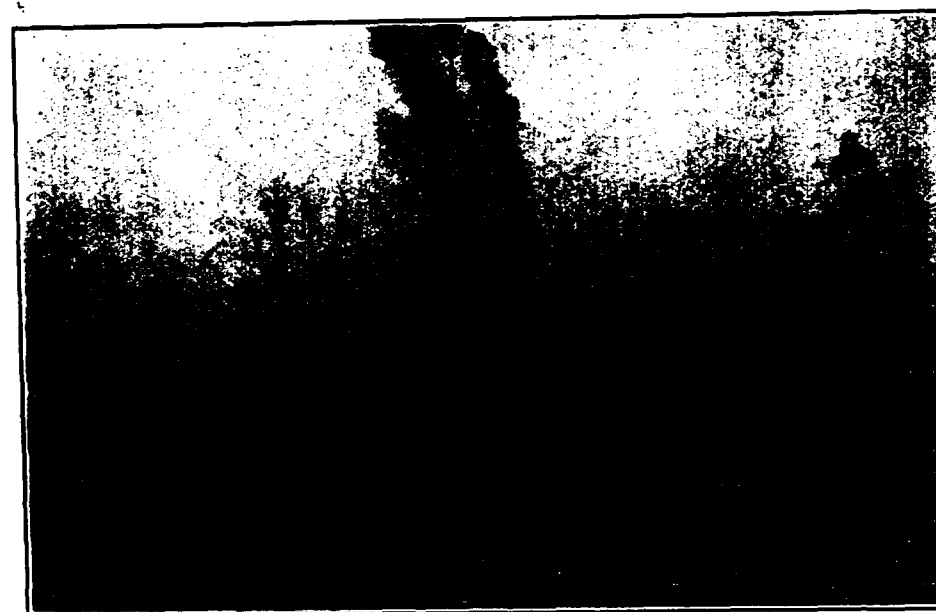
"An invitation was received by the Commanding General, Eighth Corps Area from the Board of Directors of the Polo Club of Mexico to send two Polo Teams from Fort Sam Houston, Texas, to Mexico City to participate in a Polo Tournament between these teams and teams representing the Polo Club of Mexico. At the request of the Corps Area Commander authority was granted by the War Department, under date of November 17, 1924, to send two teams to Mexico City, subject to the condition that the only expense to the United States would be that of commutation of rations for the enlisted men accompanying the teams for a period not to exceed thirty days."

"The official party consisted of Colonel John F. Preston, Chief of Staff; Colonel James F. McKinley, Corps Area Polo Representative; Lieutenant Colonel C. R. Norton, Polo Representative, Fort Sam Houston, Texas; Captain E. M. Fickett, Cavalry, Acting Quartermaster, and the First Team consisting of 1st Lieutenants Guy C. Benson, 12th F.A. (Captain), John A. Smith, 15th F.A., Eugene McGinley, A.D.C., M. McD. Jones, Cavalry, and Captain John A. Hettinger, Cavalry; and the Second Team consisting of Majors John F. Lapham, F.A.-O.R.C., (Captain), Frank M. Andrews, Air Service, C. B. King, 15th F.A., 1st Lieutenants B. M. Fitch, 12th F.A., and J. M. Clark, Air Service; and eighteen enlisted men of the 2nd Division. The official party, with the exception of Captain Hettinger and 1st Lieutenant Guy C. Benson, who accompanied the horses, arrived in Mexico City on December 5th. The horses arrived in Mexico City one week prior to the arrival of the players and when the players arrived the horses had been conditioned to the extent that light practice could be held and within a few days scrimmage was possible. Each day after the arrival of the players, up to and including December 12th, either light workouts or practice games were held."

"In company with Major Glass, Assistant Military Attache, the official party, on December 6, 1924, called on the Secretary of War and was received most cordially. The party received most courteous treatment at the hands of all government officials with whom they came into contact. The only other official call that was made was upon Mr. Sheffield, the United States Ambassador. Mr. Sheffield was sick during the visit of the Polo Teams in Mexico City, but Mrs. Sheffield gave a most delightful tea to the entire party. Major and Mrs. Glass were most cordial and entertained the entire party in their home. A great deal of the credit for the success of the Polo Tournament is due to the untiring efforts of Major Glass."

"The First Team played two games to win the President's Cup. On December 13th, our First Team defeated the Mexican First Team by a score of 9-1. On December 16th our First Team defeated the Mexican First Team by a score of 11-1. No one man on the American First Team stood out above the others. The team as a whole displayed splendid team-work and never was in danger of defeat."

"Our Second Team duplicated the work of the First Team by winning two games straight from the Mexican Second Team on December 15th and 17th. They defeated their opponents by scores of 11-2, and 14-2. The Second Team as a whole displayed excellent team-work. The two out-standing players on the Second Team were Major C. B. King, 15th F.A., and Major J. H. Lapham, F.A.-O.R.C. The line-up for the First Team was as follows: Lieut. Benson at No. 1, Lieut. McGinley at No. 2, Lieut. Smith at No. 3, Lieut. Jones at No. 4, Captain Hettinger, substitute, played at different positions for several periods in the two games. The Second Team had five men in their line-up and played all of them in each game. Two of the players kept their positions throughout their two games, Major King at No. 1, and Major Lapham at No. 4. The other three, Major Andrews, Lieutenants Fitch and Clark, alternated at the other two positions."



The Fort Sam Houston "Yellow Jackets" and the First Team of the Polo Club of Mexico
Left to Right: Mr. Manuel Campero, Mr. Eduardo Iturbide, Mr. Miguel Parada, Mr. Jorge Parada, Major E. L. N. Glass, Umpire, Lt. G. C. Benson, Lt. E. McGinley, Jr., Capt. J. A. Hettinger, Lt. M. McD. Jones.

"On December 18th an exhibition game was played by two teams, each composed of two American players and two Mexican players taken from their respective first teams. The line-up for the White team was Lieutenants Smith and Jones of the American Team, and General Iturbide and Mr. Campero of the Mexican First Team. The Yellow team was composed of Lieutenants Benson and McGinley of the American First Team and Mr. George Parada and Mr. Miguel

Parada of the Mexican First Team. Both teams apparently were of equal strength and the final outcome was a victory for the White Team by a score of 7 to 5. The game was a fast one and strongly contested.

"On December 19th an exhibition game was played by the two Mexican teams, strengthened by two American players, namely, Captain Hettinger and Major Andrews who played on opposing sides. There was a noticeable lack of teamwork in the game; however, the individual players rode hard and were most ag-



The Mexican Second Team

Reader's Left to Right: Mr. Archibaldo Burns, Major E. L. N. Glass, U. S. A., Mr. Miguel Parada, Mr. Antonio Pliego.

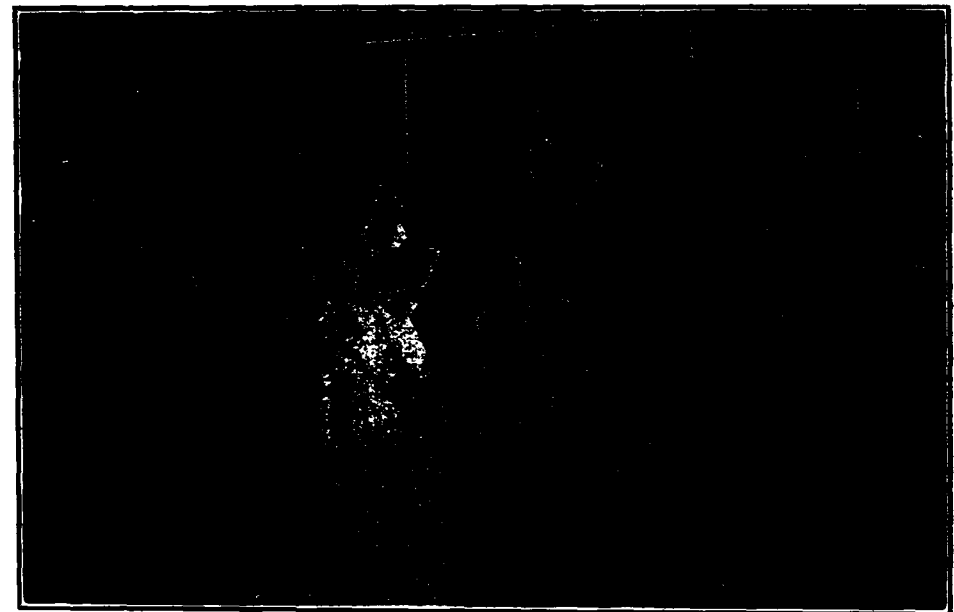
gressive at all times. From the standpoint of the spectators it was an interesting game.

"The only other scheduled game in the tournament in which the Americans took part was the Final Exhibition Game between the two American Teams. Lieutenant Jones played on the Second Team in place of Lieut. Fitch who played on the First Team. This game was looked upon as a game between our First and Second Teams. It was an exceptionally fast game, bitterly contested, and a thriller throughout. The final outcome was a victory of 7-6 for the Second Team.

"There are two fields in Mexico City at the present time. The practice field is very hard and should not be used for fast playing. It is very trying on the feet and legs of the animals. The second field belongs to the new Polo Club of Mexico.

Within a year it will be an excellent field when it becomes thoroughly covered with grass which is now very thin.

"From the experience of our teams in Mexico City it is believed that ten days is necessary to accustom our horses to the change in altitude; one week is sufficient for the players. During the tournament the teams experienced no trouble from the horses not being in condition as they had been in Mexico a sufficient length of time to get used to the altitude. From the standpoint of the care of

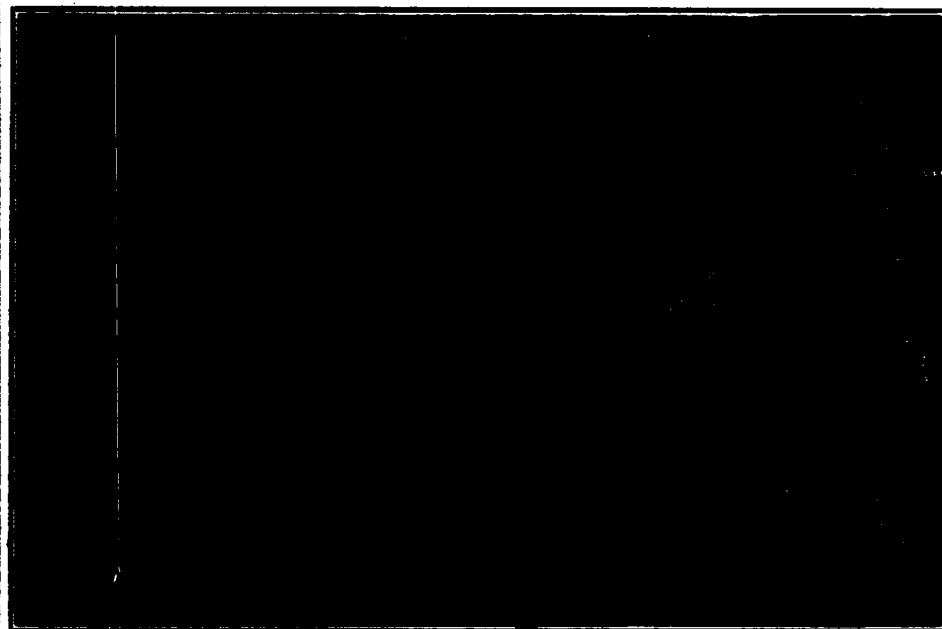


Senora Manuel Campero, Presenting the Polo Club Cup to Major Lapham at Cafe Chapultepec, December 18, 1924

animals, the most important thing about the climate of Mexico is the rapid evaporation which occurs there. Under no circumstances should grooms be allowed to sponge down the horses after playing; they should be covered with blankets and walked slowly until dry. During the winter months blankets should be used from about 4:00 o'clock in the afternoon until the sun fully comes up the following morning. Colds are easily contracted and due to the high altitude are most difficult to throw off.

"The fine spirit, and the gentlemanly and sportsmanlike manner in which the members of the two Mexican teams conducted themselves were at all times most noticeable; even though the teams were unevenly matched, individual members of both Mexican teams gave numerous exhibitions of hard riding aggressiveness. The players on both Mexican teams invariably played as hard during the last chukkers of each game as they did at the commencement of the game. Their splen-

did spirit and clean playing throughout the tournament was commented on by each and every member of the American teams. It is a fact that the actual playing of the Mexicans improved a great deal during the tournament. With the exception of two or three players it was their first experience of either seeing fast polo or taking part in it. Many of their horses were finely bred and fast, but with very few exceptions had not the best of polo training. It is apparently very difficult for them to get competent trainers and farriers in Mexico City. It is believed that within a couple of years the Mexicans will have some excellent polo teams; they have plenty of money to buy good ponies and will not rest until they have won back the challenge cup which was presented to the Polo Club of Mexico by General Calles, the President of the Republic.



Presenting the President's Challenge Cup at the Cafe Chapultepec, December 18, 1924.
General Carrillo Representing President Calles Presenting the Cup to Colonel J.
F. Preston, Representing the Commanding General, 8th Corps Area.

"The Mexican players are most anxious to improve their game and have extended invitations to a number of our First Team players to spend their vacations in Mexico City as their guests; they are anxious to have some of our good American players play with and coach their teams.

"The press was very liberal in their write-ups of the American players and the games. All of the papers carried stories, pictures and cartoons of the games. It is a fact that all the Mexicans with whom the official party came into contact

did everything in their power to make the visit of the Americans pleasant. No stone was left unturned by them to make the trip a memorable one."

Our hosts arranged many pleasant social events which afforded an opportunity to become better acquainted with the Mexican people, and to appreciate their generosity and sportsmanship in arranging this tournament. The party given by the Polo Club of Mexico at the Cafe Chapultepec in honor of the visiting polo players is one that stands out from many of the less formal affairs. The President's Challenge Cup, the cup of the Polo Club of Mexico, and the individual trophies were presented at this party with suitable ceremonies. The President's Cup was presented by General Carrillo, Chief of Staff of General Amaro, Secretary of War, in the name of, and representing President Calles who was unable to be present. A very gracious speech was interpreted by General O'Neill, Assistant Chief of Air Service, and was replied to by Colonel Preston, representing Major General Summerall, the Corps Area Commander.

The Polo Club of Mexico Cup was presented by Mrs. Campero, wife of the President of the Polo Club and the star number 1 of the Mexican team, and was accepted in the name of the Corps Area Commander by Major J. H. Lapham, the captain of the "Whips." Individual trophies were presented to each of the players on each team, after which appropriate dedication ceremonies were held.

The Mexico City Country Club also gave a beautiful party in honor of the polo players which was thoroughly enjoyed by everybody. On this occasion our hosts again came forth with an additional set of trophies, presenting silver cigarette cases to the Chief of Staff, Col. Preston, and the members of the two teams. This was a fancy dress party, the principal idea being polo; the result was that two of the fine horses of the Mexican string were occupying places of honor in box-stalls alongside the dance floor.

The "Fronton" and the bull-fights took hold of the American players and we all enjoyed them very much. The "Fronton," by the way is a kind of a glorified hand-ball court, with stone floor, end walls, and one side wall. The other side is open to a great hall seating probably 2,000 persons, but separated by a wire netting. Here they play the game of "pelota" with a small hard rubber ball about the size of a billiard ball, and a fiber basket tied to the wrist. The basket looks a little like a lacrosse racquet. The game is fast, difficult and interesting, but it is no game for a beginner or a novice as some of the boys found out when a private game was arranged one morning. The ball has a bad habit of sliding out of the basket and running up the arm, kissing one gently on the cheek, and other such pleasant tricks. And as the Mexicans say when one asks them if it is dangerous, "Oh yes, every once in a while some one gets killed." The bull fights, too, were a great subject of conversation and argument.

Interest became so keen in the bull-fighting that our friends arranged a private bull fight or "noveada" for us, so that we might have an opportunity to see and judge for ourselves just what kind of a sport it was to be in the ring with an infuriated bull. The only trouble was that the fight was arranged for the morning after the party at the Cafe Chapultepec where the cups were presented. The two

The Mexican and American Teams After Presentation of Cups

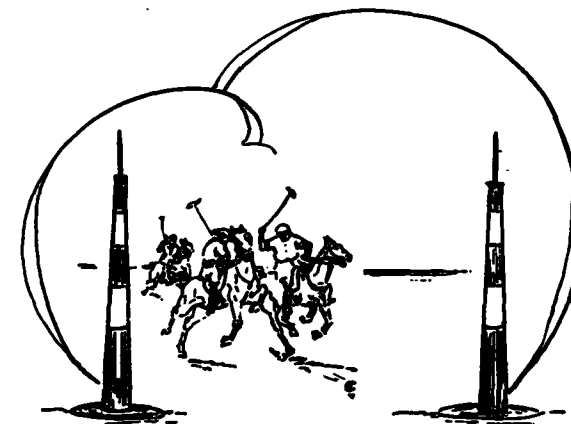
Left to right, sitting: Capt. J. A. Hettinger, Lt. J. A. Smith, Lt. E. McGinley, Jr., Lt. G. C. Benson, Col. J. F. Preston, G. S., Major J. H. Lapham, Col. J. F. McKinley, Major F. M. Andrews, Major C. B. King, Lt. B. M. Fitch, Lt. J. M. Clark. Standing: Mr. Nacho Orvanllanos, Mr. Tito Algarra, Mr. Jorge Parada, Mr. Eduardo Iturbide, Mr. Manuel Campero, Major E. L. N. Glass, U. S. A., Capt. E. M. Fickett, U. S. A., Mr. Julio Mueller, Mr. Archibaldo Burns, Mr. Antonio Pilego, Mr. Henry Lacey.

INTERNATIONAL POLO TOURNAMENT

193

toreadors were Tito Algarra and Julio Mueller, both of the second team and seasoned amateur fighters. The balance of the "cuadrilla" were supposed to be Americans, but as the hour approached, a number found that they were very ill, or otherwise unable to take part. However, four of our players discovered how fast a peevish bull could move and one, who had some preconceived ideas as to bull-fighting, found out that his idea was all wrong. After testing it three times, and the bull, having won two out of the three falls, he left the field to the bull.

The result of the tournament and of the entire trip is believed to have been of great value to both the countries. The friends made, the friendly feeling established, the sportsmanship of the players and the spectators demonstrated, and the mutual feeling of understanding and cooperation founded are believed to be real and definite contributions to a new era in the relations between the people of Mexico and the United States. Everywhere the Americans went they found the greatest desire to help them in their difficulties with the language, and customs of the country. The people of all classes were much interested in the tournament, and as a result of the tournament are taking a stronger and stronger interest in polo. It is thought that this tournament is not only the fore runner of many similar tournaments in Mexico, but that Mexican teams will soon be coming to the States and competing in our tournaments. They have already signified their intention of challenging for the President's Challenge Cup next year.



A Word As To Field Maps

BY

Colonel W. C. BROWN, U. S. Army

NO class of line officer has greater need in the field of good maps than the Cavalry officer, and this is true whether he be a lieutenant commanding a small reconnoitering patrol, or a Colonel in command of an independent column.

To supply these maps is of course one of the functions of the staff, but in the past they have not always been successful in producing the goods when wanted, as the writer has had the misfortune to experience.

The following examples are taken from actual personal experience.

In an Indian campaign in middle Idaho in 1879 *no maps* were supplied, for the very good reason that the government maps of that day marked our theatre of operations as "UNEXPLORED."

When the Spanish War came on the War Department essayed to do better, so the officers down to the grade of Captain and probably others, were issued a map of Cuba compiled shortly previous and which therefore embodied practically all that was known of Cuba at that time. The map which I received comprised 9 sheets, each 27" x 42", on a scale of 1" = 4 miles, the whole weighing a full pound. None of us knew where we were to land in Cuba so it was necessary to carry the whole big roll of sheets, but when we landed at Daiquiri, and it was known that Santiago was our objective, the writer cut out from the appropriate sheet a piece 6" x 8" which covered all and even more of the Cuban terrain which had any interest for us. But even this scrap was of *paper* and required unusual care in the torrential rains to which we were exposed to prevent its being disintegrated to a pulp.

In the Philippine Insurrection we fared worse, for the old Spanish maps supplied us were printed on paper almost as fragile as eggshells, and required the greatest care in handling to prevent their being torn. Some, compiled hurriedly in Manila, were blue printed from tracings but were lacking in detail.

In 1916 came the Punitive Expedition and the map of Northern Mexico supplied was printed on very thin paper and on a scale of 1" = 16 miles,—not much better than a sketch map,—and abounding in inaccuracies.

Conditions there were such that the commander of a column was obliged to refer constantly to the map, not an easy matter in high winds and occasional rain storms. The reader will ask, "Why not use a map case?" This is all very well but it adds just one more article to one's personal equipment. In Cuba we were afoot and officers carried everything, rations and all, on their backs. In Mexico we were mounted but with no transportation for officers' rolls so that, as *all impedimenta* had to be carried on the back of the horse, even a light leather map case made just one extra article to carry.

MAPS ON CLOTH

When I returned to the United States I determined to have a map *on cloth* affected by neither rain or wind, which after its being consulted could be stuffed back into one's pocket or saddle bags with no more care than one would take with a handkerchief.

After some investigation and experiments we find that there are several kinds of cloth maps which have varying degrees of merit, some very easily and quickly made, others which require more technical skill, but none difficult.

Blue print cloth is a commercial article, and with it an ordinary blue print (white on blue) can be made by direct print if the map to be reproduced be on thin transparent paper, as is the case of our General Staff Map of Northern Mexico, or a blue on white can be secured by first making a Van Dyke print or reversed negative as described below.

METHODS OF PREPARATION

Both of these are as tough as ordinary tracing linen, but in both cases the sizing in the linen gives us an article somewhat lacking in pliability—it is the same in this respect as ordinary tracing linen, no more and no less. To secure a map on a softer material with the pliability of a handkerchief, one must prepare his own sensitized blue print cloth, which is fortunately easily done by using the following formula:

- | | | |
|----|----------------------------------|--------|
| I | Citrate of Iron and Ammonia..... | 1¼ oz. |
| | Water | 8 oz. |
| II | Red Prussiate of Potash..... | 1⅞ oz. |
| | Water | 8 oz. |

Dissolve and filter each separately.

Select a fine meshed cotton material—100 meshes to the inch or finer. It should have some "body" and not be too thin. Such material can be had at from 50c to 75c per yard.

Stretch with thumb tacks on a clean board.

Mix equal parts of I and II in a saucer and, in a dimly lighted room, apply with a soft sponge to the cloth, going over it back and forth and crossways until thoroughly coated, then place in the dark to dry, and after the cloth is dry *keep in a dark place*.

If no facilities other than a printing frame be available and the map to be copied be on thin paper, an ordinary blue print copy on cloth (white lines on blue ground) can be secured by direct printing.

A step in advance of the above giving blue lines on a white background may be obtained at a photostat establishment, making what is known as a Van Dyke print or negative by placing the map (which must have no printing on the back) face to face against a sheet of sensitized Van Dyke negative paper, which when developed gives a *reversed* white on brown print to be used as a negative.

This latter is now used as a negative by placing it in the printing frame, face to face with the sensitized cloth. The resulting print is washed and dried, the same as in making ordinary blue prints.

Better results, however, are obtained by making a wet plate negative, enlarging or reducing as may be desirable, using a prism in the lens when photographing. If, however, the photographer is not equipped with a prism, the negative can be restripped on another piece of glass, making it a reverse negative. Place the negative over the sensitized cloth. Make the exposure in the sunlight, experimenting first with small scraps to determine the length of time of exposure required. This will give a blue line print with white background. For details of this latter method the writer is indebted to the Clason Map Company of Denver, Colorado.

In all the above prints the blue may be intensified by immersing for a few seconds, after the first thorough washing, in a 4% solution of hydrochloric acid, when it is again thoroughly washed.

These several methods are described because the facilities for one kind may be available but not the other.

It is desirable, of course, to get as clear a negative as possible, and the same negative should suffice for the purposes of printing all the copies of a given map required in any Corps Area.

Since the above was written, attention has been called to reproduction by Planography, which is applicable in the present instance, the details of which have been supplied by the Washington Planograph Company of Washington, D. C.

In this process a wet plate negative is first made, which is then printed onto a flat zinc plate which has by the use of chemicals been sensitized. The printing is done from the zinc plate on cloth giving a permanent beautiful black on white.

This process, it will be seen, is more technical than the others but appears more suitable for producing maps in large quantities.

Editor's Note—Samples of maps on cloth prepared by the methods described in the above article by Colonel Brown have been examined and the results are quite remarkable. Their legibility is at least equal, and possibly superior, to that of maps on paper, and their superior durability is unquestionable.



The Service Coat

BY

Major P. R. DAVISON, Cavalry

THERE is no stigma attached to, or criticism made of, an officer who expresses himself, verbally or in writing, concerning armaments or organization. In fact, he is encouraged to experiment and endeavor to develop ideas which tend to increase the efficiency of the fighting forces of the United States. Weapons are constantly undergoing a change. Some changes minute and unnoticed unless one be of a technical turn of mind and studies the mechanism carefully. Other changes outstanding. Marked revolutions in both design and use.

PROGRESS MADE THROUGH CHANGES

Saddlery has undergone radical changes, with the result that we have at present highly successful saddles for different purposes. I invite the attention of the reader to the fact that I mention saddles in the plural. The officers' field saddle, the enlisted men's modified McClellan and the training saddle. Each designed and used for a particular purpose. No attempt being made to establish one as an ever-ready for all occasions. It was found necessary to use a different type for the officer and the enlisted man. One saddle not being satisfactory for both usages, we improved the McClellan and very commendably adopted outright two French models. The officers' field saddle and the training saddle. On the training saddle, most of the riding at the Cavalry School and most of the riding for pleasure throughout the service, is done. It is strictly a non-military model, but fits into our scheme of training excellently. In the adoption of the above we have lost no part of our nationalism, individualism or of our self respect. To the contrary we pat ourselves on the back for being smart enough to be able to pick the best and put it to our service. It makes absolutely no difference to the horseman who designed the saddle he uses, so long as it is suitable to the work at hand and does not injure the horse.

Should we adopt a policy of, "we will adopt nothing new unless it be of distinctly American invention, design or manufacture," as an efficient fighting machine our army would be doomed. There are brilliant inventive geniuses in other countries. Other countries do not fail to take from us that which is good and successful.

Why should it be considered indiscreet for a junior officer to even so much as harbor the thought that he would like a change in the uniform? Why should he feel that by voicing an opinion he is hurting himself officially or incurring the wrath of the powers on high? Is not, and I hold most vehemently that it is, the uniform a very important part of our equipment? Why then should not this subject be open to development and improvement, and suggestions encouraged. If nature had seen fit to clothe us as the bear or wolf

there would be no need of argument. Since this is not the case the subject is herewith opened and certain views expressed. These views are not the views of any solitary officer but are the collective thoughts of the vast majority of the junior officers in my branch of the service and a goodly number of the other branches, among the few with whom I have had the good fortune to have been thrown. At any social gathering, any place where two or more officers are present, with no official duties to perform, you will hear, sooner or later, the matter of the uniform enter the conversation.

THE SERVICE COAT UNSATISFACTORY

The premise to start with is that the present service coat is unsatisfactory. This statement requires arguments to prove it. Statements of advantages and disadvantages. In the military hospital in which I took my annual physical examination I noticed that all of the medical officers were either in shirt sleeves or in operating gowns. Upon questioning I found that the gowns and shirt sleeves were not worn principally for sanitary reasons, but because the service coat was too uncomfortable to work in. That, in work more of a mental than a physical nature. The opinion was also expressed by a medical officer of considerable experience, that due to the standing collar the service coat is unsanitary. It is a primary cause of boils around the neck. The tight standing collar does not allow for the body heat to escape and causes profuse perspiration. The collar quickly becomes damp and when the exercise is stopped, and the person cools off, the damp collar helps the wearer to contract a cold. The standing collar is only the major bone of contention in the uniform.

Change the collar on the service coat from the standing type to a collar with lapels, similar to the collar on the British field coat.

The contents of his pocket book is one of the chief worries of an officer of the army. He must scratch around quite a bit to make both ends meet. The present uniform does not help him in his problem. The coat costs in the neighborhood of \$65.00 and is not an economical garment. If it is cut to fit so that a smart appearance will result. The coat is too snug for service requiring physical exertion. This snugness is necessary because the coat is entirely built around the collar and not the collar put on the coat. Any good tailor will claim that he could make a good uniform if he could cut the collar. It takes a specially trained expert to do that. After a short period of wear that collar will break down if the garment is worn during our many forms of mounted exercise that require great freedom of the arms, head, neck and shoulders. Shoulder seams burst at the slightest provocation when mounted. Once the coat has been ruined by mounted wear it cannot be assigned to the second string and used for dismounted wear only. Dismounted wear requires a better turn out and a snappier appearance than while mounted. A broken coat has no place left for it to go except to the rag-bag. As we now dress, field work and target practice, are done in flannel shirts. Should we have to wear coats for this duty, as we did during the war, we would have to keep on

hand a coat of large and sloppy dimensions especially for this work. In a very short time an officer has on hand several half worn coats. The material is good and shows little wear. They are broken down and of no further use. If they had been made in a comfortable, useful model, the maximum wear could have been secured from them. This leads to the conclusion that a dress and service uniform combined is more expensive than two separate types would be. That is not the question we are arguing at this time, so nothing further will be said on the matter. It is something to consider however. It is easy to see that we are traveling on a tangent of false economy.

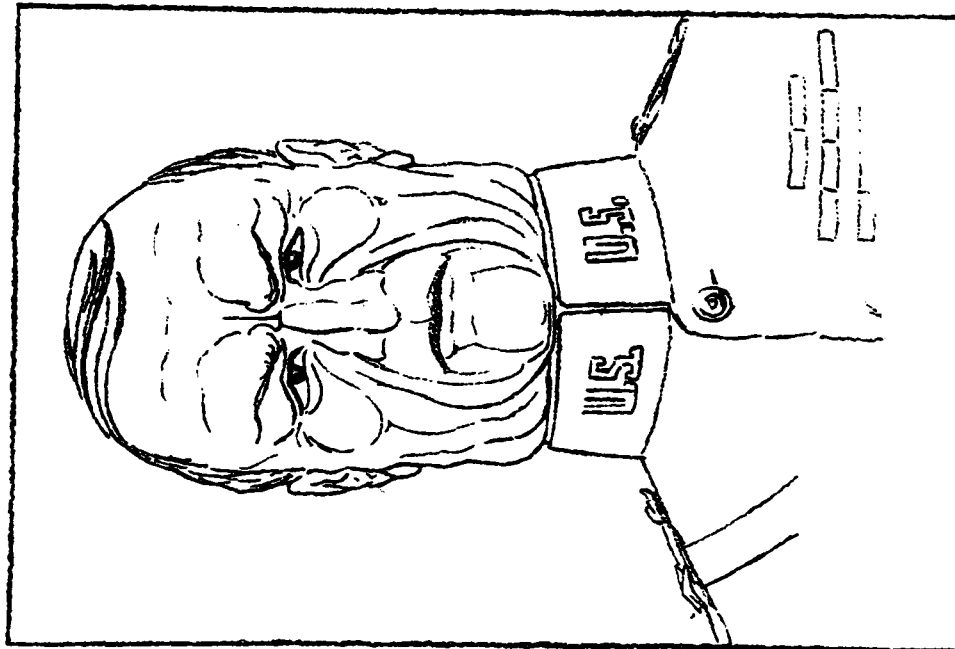
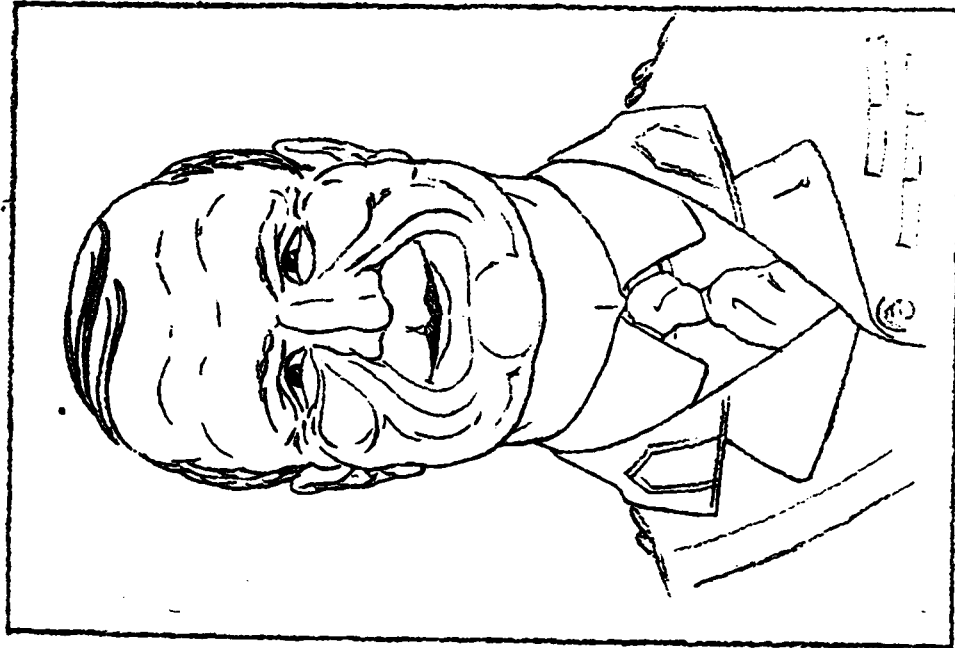
THE ACME OF DISCOMFORT

Dismounted, when a person has to wear a pack or even the belt, with equipment on it, over the coat with the present collar, the torture is like that of the damned. The front of the collar takes great delight in crowding the Adam's Apple toward the back of the neck. In consequence, the collar is left unhooked and the net result, a most sloppy appearance. Did you ever stop to consider what we have around our necks when we are fully dressed in the cold weather? A white linen collar, a coat collar hooked tightly, an overcoat collar hooked tightly. The head, neck and chin are in a set position as though set in concrete. The discomfort can be slightly overcome if the collar is loose and low but no particular, self respecting officer can afford to wear sloppy clothes with the standards as now set.

Air service officers are particularly strong in their objections to the standing collar and I notice, regardless of regulations, that they rarely fly with the coat on. This is somewhat of an argument in itself.

In an office, or class room, it might be thought, by those who are permitted to wear civilian clothes, that the standing collar would not be uncomfortable and that no argument could be raised against it. To those of us that are performing office and class room duty and are required to wear the uniform continually, on duty at the several service schools for example, the matter is of serious consideration. We suffer tortures unimaginable. We have a nasty, raw, red mark around our necks and who can blame us for dashing off our coats and climbing into something comfortable. Sitting around the house in the evening in a poly-garb, half uniform and half civilian. Dashing up the back stairs, in case visitors come, to get back into the torture coat in case the visitors should be of superior rank. Changing again on their departure. Shaving over the raw collar mark is just one of the many discomforts of the day. You cannot keep your mind open and concentrate on the work before you when you are in physical agony because of the garb you are wearing.

The only argument that I have ever heard put forth against the adoption of the lapel collar is that it does not present a military appearance. It is a question in the minds of many officers as to just what constitutes a military appearance when in uniform. Shall we say that the Scotch Highlander is unmilitary in appearance simply because he wears kilts? They do not detract



A Contrast in Expression

one iota from the military appearance of a Scottish regiment on parade or in battle. Greek Guardsmen wear bed room slippers and ballet skirts yet I have never heard them called unmilitary. Some British regiments wore knee pants such as our boy scouts wear. They were no laughing matter and fought with considerable zest. It can be seen that the whole matter of military appearance is one of personal opinion and not a matter of what's what. Let's snap out of our lethargy and give our soldiers a chance to perform their duties with some comfort. We copied the present coat from the Germans, let's copy a new one from some one else.

For summer wear officers may wear a light weight wool coat and cotton breeches. The combination is not unsightly and the garment that requires the most washing and gets the most wear is of a washable material. The cotton coat fits the wearer only once—before it is washed for the first time—after that it is a terribly ill fitting affair. Most officers have ceased to wear the cotton coat entirely. An open collared coat of light wool material would remedy the matter completely.

ECONOMY

I have talked with several first class uniform tailors and am informed by them that a coat could be turned out in less time, better fitting and at a lower cost to the officer if the lapel collar was adopted. There are plenty of tailors who can build a coat with a lapel collar. Those who are able to set the standing collar are experts and few and far between. These same tailors inform me that they can alter the present coat with little difficulty and at an expense of from \$3.00 to \$5.00 depending on the material.

Why not secure a vote of the service on the matter of the change? The ballot of two years past was started and counted in the wrong manner. There were too many items upon which to ballot. The differences in each change slight and misunderstood. The phrases: roll collar, turn down collar, civilian collar or no change, all drew their proportion of the vote and a majority was not secured. The matter dropped. The questionnaire should not be sent to Corps Area commanders to canvass their districts and then give their own opinion. It should be handled direct from Washington. The questionnaires sent out in the same manner that the Statement of Preference is sent out. The questionnaire so worded that the answer required would be yes or no. The matter should be attended to before it is necessary for officers to purchase new uniforms for next winter's wear.

It is difficult to get a matter of this nature before the authorities that are able to take action without its being killed en route. The matter is a sore and much debated subject to subordinates and it is hoped that this will be read in the spirit in which it is written, an argument for a much wished for reform and not a growl in a spirit of bolshevism.

The Cavalry School

BY

Captain ROBERT A. BUSH, Cavalry, O. R. C.

HONOR, education, pleasure, these three things, more or less desired by every officer of the military service, are given to one so fortunate as to be detailed for a course of instruction at the Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kansas.

Honor, because no greater recognition of a Cavalryman's desires could be accorded than a period of training at this institution, which lives, breathes, and is, the true spirit of Cavalry.

Education, for no matter how much, or how little, one who is detailed to the School may know about his Arm, the facilities and opportunities for learning, together with the untiring efforts and patience of instructors, will send any officer forth from the School with a wealth of knowledge concerning the capabilities and requirements of Cavalry.

Pleasure, derived from association with our army's greatest Cavalrymen and their ladies, who, from the arrival of the student officer at the Cavalry School, until his departure therefrom, do everything in their power to make his stay a pleasant period of his military career.

The student, upon his arrival, is very quickly convinced that Fort Riley, so far as he is concerned, means very little, but that the Cavalry School is to be his world. He learns that punctuality and regular attendance at classes, with a *speaking* knowledge of the text being studied, are essentials to his personal happiness. If he is of a mind not readily convinced, interviews with instructors followed by a short conference with the Commandant, will fully convince the student that *time, place and an approved solution* will all require a great amount of consideration on his part.

COURSE OF INSTRUCTION

The course of instruction at the Cavalry School, based upon sound military principles, is the peak of efficiency and training. Every facility which will help the student in any manner is placed at his disposal. Weapons, horses and equipment allotted to his use are of the highest order. The course for the Reserve Officer, necessarily crowded because of lack of time, is nevertheless thorough, and given by instructors who not only know the subject they teach, but also know how to convey that knowledge to the student. The Departments of Horsemanship and Tactics consume the greater number of hours during the course, and although every subject and hour of the course is of interest and value, undoubtedly these two departments are to the average student the best of the School.

The Departments of Cavalry Weapons and General Instruction, each having decidedly important subjects, are hampered by the shortness of the Reserve Officers' course. In all departments the student feels the thoroughness and interest which marks the teaching of every subject, and cannot help but derive some good from every minute of instruction received.

Since the World War it has frequently been the policy of officers, especially of other Arms, to speak in a disparaging manner concerning the Cavalry. The



Over the Fence With the Reserve Officers

Cavalry does not need to apologize to any other branch of service for its existence, and a careful study of the uses and deeds of Cavalry during the World War will quickly dispel any ideas of this nature. Without disparaging the Air Service, the Cavalry is still the eyes of the army. The use of the Cavalry by the Germans in their advance across Belgium, in the early days of the war, furnish ample proof of the above statement. That Cavalry is a protector of the less mobile arms in many instances, is demonstrated by the use of Cavalry in delaying actions when the Allied Armies were retreating toward Paris. That Cavalry has mobility, fire and shock power unequaled by any other arm of the service, is shown in the use of Cavalry by the British in Palestine, when this achieved successes which seemed well nigh impossible, and with a loss of men, horses and equipment which was almost negligible.

THE SABRE AND PISTOL

Cavalry officers disagree to some extent as to the relative value of the sabre and pistol. However, the sabre enthusiasts seem to have the best of the argument, for the sabre is always loaded, and in the hands of men well trained in its use, it is a formidable weapon, giving to the Cavalryman the same dash and spirit that the bayonet gives to the Infantryman. One fortunate enough to witness the demonstration of a mounted attack by well trained troops, armed either with the pistol or sabre, will readily realize that mounted troops, well disciplined and trained in the use of their weapons are extremely efficient, and their effect upon an enemy, both in loss of life and morale, is great. Foot troops, no matter how well trained and disciplined, will be shaken by a mounted charge. A solid line of troopers coming toward one, even though you realize that they are going to stop

before they strike you, will give a thrill never to be forgotten, and will cause even the stoutest of hearts to want to move from the "zone of action."

THE CAVALRY BOARD

The Cavalry Board, on duty at the Cavalry School, is constantly bringing forth revisions in equipment and training, which will improve the Cavalry. Assisted by the school staff, and the troops on duty at the School, which are used for demonstration purposes, the Board is readily acquainted with the feasibility and usefulness of any new equipment or plan for training. The practical demonstration of all phases of instruction at the Cavalry School show the student just what well trained cavalymen are capable of doing, and present to him pictures of the theoretical work he has had, or will have during the course.

GENERAL "A"

The alphabet of the School proves to be confined chiefly to the letter "A," and it is surprising to note what a stumbling block this letter is to the student. Actions and orders of the "A's," from Corporal "A" to General "A" are ever with you, and the many tactical errors and omissions which these models of military tactics are guilty of is readily proven by their bold signatures, appearing on the papers of each student as he gropes his way to victory, or, as is more often the case, defeat, so far as the approved solution of the situation is concerned.

Gettysburg-Antietam and the Kansas-Republican Rivers have been the scenes of many combats which would make such famed soldiers as Hannibal and Napoleon stand awestruck, could they behold the boldness and cunning which mark the engagements and battles fought in these great theatres of war.

The reservation surrounding the School furnishes a variety of terrain which is replete with hazards giving to the most daring horseman any excitement that he may crave. To the uninitiated, Magazine Canyon, Cemetery Slide, Republican Point and Twenty-second Battery Hill are mere names. To those who find these names familiar come memories of thrills, repeated alibis and much writing in the Police Book. Temptations to caress Mother Earth are ever looming in the path of the Cavalry School student.

RESERVE OFFICERS' COURSE

The course for the Reserve Officer is entirely too short, therefore he does not derive full benefit from the instruction and training offered at the School. Toward the end of the course inclement weather curtails parts of the course which are very essential to a well-trained Cavalryman, thereby working a hardship not only on the student, but on instructors as well. If the course could be lengthened the value received would far exceed the expenditure in money. The aim of every Reserve Officer should be to have provisions made for an increase in appropriations for the training of Reserve Officers at the Cavalry School, which would in turn permit a longer course for Reserve Officers, a greater number of officers being detailed to take the course, and it is hoped, a greater opportunity for the graduate of the School to pass along knowledge gained to his brothers.

Too much praise or credit cannot be given to the Commandant and the Staff of the Cavalry School for their efforts in the instruction of, and their courtesy to the student officers. It is to be hoped that every Cavalry Officer of Reserve status may be permitted at some time to have the privilege of attending the Cavalry School.

The Boise, Idaho Endurance Ride

BY

Captain W. R. KIDWELL, V.C., 116th Cavalry, Idaho N. G.

BOISE, Idaho, staged its first Annual Endurance Ride the week of September 14th, 1924. It was held under the sponsorship of the Boise Chamber of Commerce, The Gymkhana Association, and the Adjutant General of the Idaho National Guard.

The judges were Captain L. R. Shafer, 13th Cavalry, U. S. A., Dr. H. E. McMillan of Filer, Idaho and Dr. W. R. Kidwell of Boise, Idaho.

On Monday morning, September 15th, all entrants were weighed. The horses were weighed, pulse, respiration, and temperatures were recorded. Measurements were taken of the chest or heart girth and abdominal girth in the region of the flank. A thorough physical examination was given each animal, special attention being given to any blemish, unsoundness, or abnormalities. The gaits of the various mounts were observed, with riders up, and notes made while moved at a walk, trot, and canter.

Each horse had to carry 200 pounds weight, including the rider. If the rider weighed 155 pounds or more when stripped, he had to carry one pound additional dead weight for every two pounds of live weight over the 155 pounds.

The course was sixty miles, extending from Boise Barracks to Caldwell, a town located about 25 miles from Boise. Here all entrants stopped for the noon rest, fed and watered their mounts, and had a light lunch themselves. They were checked in by the Route Master on arriving and checked out again upon resuming the ride. From Caldwell the route extended to Meridian, and thence into Boise. The requirements were that the horse must complete the sixty miles in not less than 9 hours nor more than 11 hours. This included any stops made to water, feed, rest, or to replace lost or loose shoes. The entrant had to ride the entire distance.

Sergeant George Gatlin, horse shoer of Headquarters Troop, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard, carried his emergency equipment to reset or replace loose or lost shoes. He rode the entire distance each day, in a car with one of the judges and only replaced shoes on the road under the direction of a judge.

Each morning the rider was weighed out with his full equipment, including saddle, bridle, blankets or pads, and any weights that he carried and weighed in each night on completion of the day's ride. An accurate record of all grain or forage fed was kept by the Route Master, Mr. L. M. Davidson of Boise.

The first morning out 27 entrants and aspirants started, including one woman. All finished the sixty miles in the prescribed time, though some came in quite lame. The second day 22 entrants started with one dropping out

enroute. The third day 17 started with two dropping out on the road. The fourth day 11 started with seven finishing, while on the fifth and last day seven started with two being eliminated on the road. The remaining five finished within the prescribed time, as hereinafter stated.

Each morning the judges carefully examined each horse and observed them under the saddle at a walk, trot, and canter to note any lameness or weakness which might have developed during the night. If any were noted the horse and rider were eliminated and not allowed to start the day's ride.

On the morning following the fifth and final day's ride, the judges met at the stables and each horse was carefully examined before the owners or riders were permitted in to care for their mounts. The pulse, temperature, and respiration were again recorded. The riders were then permitted to enter the stables and attend to their horses for a period of fifteen minutes. The horses were then weighed and measured as on the preceding day of the ride, after which they were tried out with riders up, to determine the character of their gaits and to note any weakness. One horse was eliminated, as he was too lame to go on the road. The judges then retired to a private office where all notes and records were carefully gone over to determine the winners.

The winning horse, No. 11, owned and ridden by A. F. Feamster of Nampa, Idaho was a three quarter bred Saddle Horse of *Red Squirrel* breeding. His time for the three hundred miles was 47 hours and 44¼ minutes. This horse consumed 51¾ pounds of oats and 102 pounds of hay during the five days, and lost 15 pounds in weight. He gained ¾ inch in heart girth and lost 1¾ inches in flanks.

The horse which was awarded second place was No. 20; owned and ridden by Earl Coleman of Meridian, Idaho. This animal was a three quarter Morgan horse. His time was 48 hours and 53 minutes. He consumed 48 pounds of oats and 92 pounds of hay; losing 20 pounds weight in the five days. He also lost 1½ inches in heart girth and 3 inches in the flanks.

The horse which was placed third was No. 10; owned by the U. S. Government, and assigned to Troop C, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard, at Grace, Idaho. He was ridden by Sergeant E. R. Cox of that Troop. His total time was 48 hours and 32¾ minutes. He consumed 51½ pounds of oats and 105 pounds of hay. He lost 40 pounds in weight. His heart girth was 2 inches and his flank measurement was 4 inches less than when he entered the race. This mount, while making slightly better time than the one placed second did not finish in as good condition. He was continually troubled by interfering behind, which counted greatly against him. This rider also received a cash prize of \$25.00 for showing the best horsemanship during the contest.

The fourth horse, No. 22, was owned by the U. S. Government and assigned to Service Troop, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard at Caldwell, Idaho. He was ridden by R. J. Lonkey of that Troop. His time was 49 hours

and 23 minutes. This animal consumed 47½ pounds of oats and 100 pounds of hay. He lost 20 pounds in weight as well as 1 inch in heart girth and 1¾ inches in the flanks.

No. 6, the fifth horse that finished, was owned by the U. S. Government and assigned to Headquarters Troop, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard at Boise, Idaho. He was ridden by the Commanding Officer of that Troop,—Capt. J. F. Coonan. His time was 48 hours and 27½ minutes, which was the second best time made. This horse consumed 51½ pounds of oats and 113 pounds of hay, losing 40 pounds in weight. He gained ¾ inch in heart girth and lost ¾ inch in the flanks. While this horse was not placed within the money, he deserves favorable mention and praise. It was unfortunate that this animal did not place, because of his wonderful spirit and stamina which was shown throughout the ride. The spirit and horsemanship of his rider who was untiring in his efforts to care for his mount, were no less conspicuous. It is safe to say that Captain Coonan gave more attention to his mount than any other rider, while on the road. However, on the morning of the final judging, this horse could scarcely be moved from his stall: his left hind leg being so swollen and sensitive that it was with difficulty that he was moved at all. This condition, of course, eliminated both the horse and rider. Suffice to say, that Captain Coonan was given the consolation prize which was subscribed by his friends and admirers.

In conclusion, will say that the ride was a success from every angle, especially so, when one considers,—(1) that this was Boise's first attempt at staging an affair of this nature; and (2) that no horses were permanently injured or died as a result of this grueling contest. It demonstrated that blood and breeding counts when it comes to endurance. Also one might be led to believe that the environment and climatic conditions of Idaho, under which these horses lived, are conducive to producing the highest quality of stamina and staying power, which is so much desired in horses of this type. From the interest and enthusiasm shown, the indications are that there will be more and better blooded horses entered for the 1925 Ride than there were last year.



Editorial Comment

DRESS UNIFORM

At the present time, in view of decisions by the War Department, discussion of the subject of dress uniform would appear to be profitless. Nevertheless, the matter is deemed worthy of attention.

It is believed that the blue dress uniform should be revived for both officers and enlisted men. The main objection to such an action, is of course, expense, but for officers it can be demonstrated that two types of uniform are no more expensive than one type for wear on all occasions. As for enlisted men, the additional funds required could not be expended to better advantage in accomplishing an improvement in the morale and contentment of the enlisted personnel. A few years ago millions were spent in enterprises which had this for their object.

It has been found desirable to prescribe for formal occasions, the wearing of full dress blue uniform by the aides to the President. This is appropriate and reasonable. At the nation's Capitol most official functions are under the critical observation of the representatives of foreign countries, and it is proper that the Staff of our Chief Executive should be attired in a manner befitting the dignity of the office.

It is fully as important and for similar reasons that our military attachés abroad and troops on duty in foreign countries should be provided with a dress uniform.

Is it not as important, if not more so, that the army should be so attired as to inspire upon all occasions the respect of our own fellow citizens?

The service uniform was originally the working and field garb of our army. Drab color is associated in all minds with the idea of work—manual labor. And while manual labor is honorable, there is a time and a place for the habiliments thereof. It does not follow that because a plasterer does his eight hours daily task in overalls that he should wear overalls to a social function at night, even though he does change into a clean suit.

It is generally acknowledged that after the day's work is done a change from working clothes to others is desirable from the standpoint of comfort, health and morale. It may be said, "Why not change from one service uniform to another?" The above reference to the plasterer applies here.

A man's dress is reflected in his attitude toward himself and others. The great influence which our attire exercises in affecting our behavior, establishing self-confidence, and contributing to our success in life, is universally acknowledged. As a builder and sustainer of one phase of morale a neat, attractive, well-fitting dress uniform has no equal.

The appearance of our soldiers on occasions of ceremony has been very unfavorably commented upon, and especially in comparison with the Marine Corps. Such a state of affairs must certainly react to the detriment of the self-

respect of the soldier and of the respect in which the uniform is held by civilians.

Much of the criticism of the untidy appearance of enlisted men on pass in the streets of cities and the necessity for the issue of frequent and drastic orders with a view to the correction of such irregularities, is due to the authorization of but one type of uniform for all occasions.

We speak of a uniform, but as conditions are at present, it is at times a mis-nomer, for nothing could be more un-uniform than a gathering of officers with a dozen or more variations in color and material of the service coat and breeches.

INTERNATIONAL ASPECT OF ARMY POLO

The great development of army polo during the last few years is evidenced, among other things, by its present international aspect. A Canadian team has recently been playing at the Coronado Tournaments. Army teams from Camp Lewis and Fort Snelling exchange visits with neighboring Canadian teams. Army teams at Manila line up against their British friends from Hongkong.

Last December two teams from the Eighth Corps Area made a successful trip to Mexico City. And, as a fitting climax, a picked team of the Army is en route to England to defend our title to the International Military Championship of the World.

These events, aside from their interest as sporting contests, are of great value, for the resulting associations with our neighbors to the North and the South, and with the Mother Country across the Atlantic are bound to do much toward the promotion of international understanding and good feeling.

ANNUAL DUES

The proposed amendments to the constitution which were published in the October CAVALRY JOURNAL, and copies later furnished to all members, were adopted at the recent annual meeting. It will be recalled that the purpose of these amendments is to return to the system of payment of annual dues in place of subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL as the monetary requirement for membership in the Cavalry Association.

In order to comply with the Postal laws, the Executive Council has provided that 60% of the \$2.50 prescribed as annual dues shall be designated for subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. There will be no increase in the amount heretofore paid.

Organizations, and individuals not eligible for membership, may as heretofore, subscribe to the JOURNAL at \$2.50 per year.

100 PER CENT MEMBERSHIP

The Fifth Cavalry and the 1st Machine Gun Squadron have a 100 per cent membership in the Cavalry Association.

THE HORSE

There are numerous articles appearing throughout the country in newspapers, periodicals and service journals on the use and improvements of mechanical transportation. These articles naturally attract attention and do a great deal of good in the improvement of various machines and promote their general use. Yet on the other hand, such articles lead many people, both in and out of the Army, to false conclusions as to the old reliable, indispensable means of transportation—the horse and the mule.

The horse (and the mule), within a certain sphere, perform work which could not otherwise be done. They are in reality just as much a commercial and military asset now as they have ever been in the past. The CAVALRY JOURNAL realizes the above facts and proposes in the future to devote a certain amount of space under the heading "THE HORSE" to horse activities, including their use for commercial and military purposes, their production, etc., and we hope, in this effort, to keep the value of the horse before the public and before the Army, that we shall be assisted by all horse associations, as well as individuals interested in both their production and use.

BULLETINS OF RESERVE CAVALRY DIVISIONS

Very commendable enterprise is indicated by the attractive and interesting Bulletins published from time to time by the Reserve Cavalry Divisions.

The Bulletins of the 62d and the 63d Cavalry Divisions, the Arrowhead of the 64th, and The Chevalier of the 65th are worthy of special mention. Their attractive make up and variety in subject matter show that much time and thought are devoted to them.

The Chevalier, published at Chicago by the 65th Cavalry Division Association, is particularly meritorious, and in its printing, half tones, and subject matter compares very favorably with any publication.

SERVICE TO MEMBERS

Are you interested in the latest books on military and other subjects? Are you studying some subject concerning which insufficient information is available at your station?

Is there any matter which you would be interested in looking up if you were in close proximity to facilities afforded by the War Department and its records, the Library of Congress, and other institutions in Washington?

If so, do not hesitate to make your wants known to the Secretary. It will be a pleasure to be given an opportunity to furnish such service to members.

NATIONAL GUARD MEMBERSHIP RECORDS

Attention is invited to the fine records of membership in the Cavalry Association made by the following National Guard organizations:

- 1st Squadron, 106th Cavalry, Michigan National Guard—11 members.
- 2d Squadron, 106th Cavalry, Illinois National Guard—10 members.

115th Cavalry, Wyoming National Guard—16 members.

The above records which compare very favorably with those of regular Cavalry organizations, and are far ahead of other National Guard organizations, speak well for the cavalry spirit and professional zeal of the personnel of the organizations concerned.

Much of the credit for this fine showing is due to the enthusiastic support of the following instructors:

1st Squadron, 106th Cavalry—Major H. T. Aplington, Cavalry.

2d Squadron, 106th Cavalry—Captain J. K. Colwell, Cavalry.

115th Cavalry—Captain Kramer Thomas, Cavalry.

INDEX TO VOLUME XXXIII

The Index to Volume XXXIII of the CAVALRY JOURNAL has been printed and is available for distribution to all who may desire it.

CAVALRY FUND

Since the last report the Tenth Cavalry, the Twelfth Cavalry, and the Thirteenth Cavalry have joined the 100% contributors to the Cavalry Fund.

CERTIFICATES OF MEMBERSHIP

Beginning January 1, 1925, all new members have been and will be furnished an embossed certificate of membership. It was hoped that a similar certificate could be furnished all members, old and new, but this was found to be impracticable as the membership records prior to 1920 are not sufficiently complete to enable dates of enrollment to be ascertained.



Topics of the Day

THE 1925 ENDURANCE RIDE

In view of the excellent showing made by Cavalrymen in the 1924 Endurance Ride, it is hoped that the number of service entries for the 1925 Endurance Ride will be as great and if practicable, greater than last year.

This year the Ride will be held in Vermont from the 19th to the 25th of October. The exact location will be determined and announced later.

Several changes in the conditions of the Ride were decided upon at the meeting of the Board of Sponsors, January 19, 1925.

Questions of eligibility will be determined by the management instead of by the judges as heretofore.

The following section relative to Control Stations has been added:

"Control stations shall be established at approximately every fifteen miles. At these stations every horse must be stopped a sufficient length of time to allow for an examination by at least one of the judges. A record of the time required for this examination shall be kept and shall be deducted from the horse's time for that day, and shall not count against him. This shall not be construed in any way so that the time for lunch at noonday shall be deducted from the horse's time on that day."

The final judging will take place on the day following the completion of the Ride instead of on the second day following.

The minimum weight to be carried has been reduced from 225 to 200 pounds.

The officials of the Ride are as follows:

Chairman, Albert W. Harris; Secretary and Treasurer, C. C. Stillman; Judges, Albert W. Harris, Major Henry Leonard, Dr. W. W. Townsend; Recorder, Lennox D. Barnes; Route Master, Major C. A. Benton; Assistant Route Master, H. H. Reese.

The Ride is under the direction and management of the Board of Sponsors, made up of one representative from each of the following organizations: American Remount Association, Arabian Horse Club of America, Horse Association of America, The Kentucky Jockey Club, The Morgan Horse Club, Thoroughbred Horse Association, U. S. Cavalry Association.

The prizes this year are as follows:

\$500.00 to the *rider* of the horse whose score for condition is the highest at the end of the Ride, without regard to his position at the finish.

\$100.00 in gold to the *rider* who shows the best horsemanship during the Ride, without regard to his position at the finish.

First prize, \$600.00, the Mounted Service Cup, Arabian Horse Club Medal, The Morgan Horse Club Medal, The Morgan Horse Club gold link cuff buttons; second prize, \$500.00, The Morgan Horse Club gold link cuff buttons; third prize, \$400.00, The Morgan Horse Club gold link cuff buttons; fourth prize, \$300.00; fifth prize, \$200.00; sixth prize, \$100.00.

INFANTRY SCHOOL RECREATION CENTER

Many letters have been received concerning the contribution of \$1,000.00 by the Cavalry to the Infantry School Recreation Center Fund as a memorial to our comrades of the Infantry who lost their lives during the World War.

Of these letters, the following are especially noteworthy:

202 Hillcrest Avenue,
Orlando, Florida, January 31, 1925.

President United States Cavalry Association,
1624 H Street, Washington, D. C.

My dear General:

I am just in receipt of a letter from General B. H. Wells, informing me of his receipt of a check for \$1,000.00 from the secretary of your association as a subscription for a bay in the Doughboy Stadium, at Fort Benning. I understand that this bay is to be dedicated by the Cavalry to their comrades of the Infantry who lost their lives during the World's War.

On behalf of the Infantry, I wish to express appreciation of the fine spirit of comradeship which prompted this splendid action. To the Infantry, it means much more than simply a thousand dollars towards the accomplishment of a cherished objective. It is an assurance of the continued growth of the one army spirit which has been in evidence for the past four years. It is an expression of approval of a project that has been very dear to the hearts of most infantrymen. It will have an effect that will reach far into the future, much beyond the mere building of a recreational center or even of a Memorial Stadium. Coming as it did, uninvited and entirely unexpected, it means more to the Infantry than I can express.

Please extend these expressions of heartfelt appreciation to the Chief of Cavalry and the Commandant of the Cavalry School, and their fine assistants who I feel sure must have had an active part in developing the Cavalry spirit that prompted this contribution.

Very Cordially yours,

C. S. FARNSWORTH,
Major General, Chief of Infantry, U. S. Army.

The Infantry School,
Fort Benning, Georgia, January 19, 1925

Lieut. Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry,
Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association,
1624 H Street, Washington, D. C.

Dear Colonel Morris:

I was very much surprised and naturally greatly pleased with your note of January 15 inclosing a thousand dollar check as a contribution from your association to The Infantry School Recreation Center Fund.

The thousand dollars, of course, means much to us, but the feature that

pleases us most and to which we give a value that cannot be measured in money is the one that concerns the interest and sympathy you extend to our efforts by your unsolicited and spontaneous action and the regard and respect your association has manifested for your Infantry comrades who lost their lives in the World War.

Please convey our official and my personal gratitude to your Executive Council and say that we accept the contribution in the spirit in which it is made. Our Recreation Center Board has reserved a bay in Doughboy Stadium which will belong to the Cavalry Arms in perpetuity. The Cavalry colors will fly from the parapet wall above your bay at all times when the field is dressed for pomp, for ceremony or for gala occasions.

At a later date when we have determined the size and quality of pennants and flags, you will be asked to indicate your desires with reference to the Cavalry.

Sincerely yours,

B. H. WELLS,

Brigadier General, U. S. A., Commandant.

THE INTERNATIONAL MILITARY POLO CHAMPIONSHIP

In April 1923 the U. S. Polo Association initiated the idea of bringing together polo teams representing the British Army and the American Army. As a result, on May 1, 1925, General Pershing wrote to General, The Earl of Cavan, Chief of the Imperial General Staff, British Army, as follows:

My dear General:

The American Polo Association, through its Chairman, is arranging for a special polo match this Autumn between teams representing the British and American Armies.

I have gladly accepted for the American team, feeling that such a contest is the logical outcome of two friendly, horse-loving countries engaged in developing certain of its men for mounted work in the National Defense.

I sincerely hope you will accept for the British Army in order not only to further the development of polo in our respective Armies but to foster and extend the pleasant relations between the Nations.

Yours most sincerely,

JOHN J. PERSHING,

General of the Armies,

Chief of Staff.

In reply to General Pershing's letter, accepting the invitation, General Cavan said, in substance: I am delighted with your wonderfully hospitable proposition for an Army International Polo Match. Speaking entirely on my own behalf, as one friend to another I am anxious that this matter should set an example to all the world for clean sportsmanship. I therefore strongly advocate:—

- (1) That the teams be strictly confined to officers on the active list of our regular forces.
- (2) That the ponies should be the bona fide property of the officer on the active list of the Regular Army, or the actual property of the War Department.

General Cavan ended by saying "how very deeply we all appreciate the generosity of your offer, and how keenly we welcome such an opportunity of inaugurating under your lead a competition that should tend to make our respective soldiers even more friendly and intimate than they are already".

The above letters from two great polo enthusiasts put in operation the machinery which organized the first International Military Polo Tournament, which was played at Meadow Brook on September 12, 15 and 18, 1923. The American Army won the first and third games, and the title of Military Polo Championship of the World.

There was a tacit understanding that the title was to be played for every two years, and alternately in America and England. Accordingly, on June 19, 1924, a cable was received from the Hurlingham Committee inviting the U. S. Army polo team to visit England as their guests during the Summer of 1925 to play a return match with the English Army. A reply was cabled accepting the invitation.

In the selection of the Army team, previous War Department policy has been to concentrate on the development of a few men. As a result, great advances in Army polo have been made as evidenced by the winning of the Junior Championship in 1922 and 1923, and the Military Championship in 1923. Practically the same officers made up the team in all three events.

The War Department has decided it is not safe to depend upon these same men, nor is it desirable, and it is the policy now to look for new and promising material. With this in mind, the Army Central Polo Committee acted upon a large list of candidates highly recommended, and from which six officers have been selected who will represent the U. S. in England in 1925.

The team will assemble at Fort Myer, Va., about March 10th, where final arrangements will be completed, and it is expected sail for England March 28th, where, after a series of practice games with selected teams, the Military Championship Tournament will be played at Hurlingham, the middle of June.

The Army team at present is composed of:

Major Louie A. Beard, Q.M.C., Captain.

Major A. H. Wilson, Cav.

Captain Peter P. Rodes, F.A.

Captain Charles H. Gerhardt, Cav.

1st Lieut. Eugene McGinley, F.A.

1st Lieut. John Andrew Smith, Jr., F.A.

Thirteen enlisted men and twenty-five first class ponies complete the team.

PREPARATION BY ARMY TEAM

Since January 24, 1925, and until March 7th, the Army team was having intensive practice at the Flamingo Polo Club at Miami where it had had excellent preparation through playing against well-mounted teams, some of the members of which were among the country's best players. Expert observers report that the individual and team work of the army players has reached a high standard. While comparisons are difficult reports indicate that the team will be as strong as that which won the title in 1923.

Major Beard reports great enthusiasm on the part of everyone at Miami as to the team's prospects. A fund of \$15,000, which was raised by enthusiastic supporters of army polo, will be utilized for the purchase of a number of first class ponies.

Major Beard during a game had the misfortune to fracture his right thumb, but fortunately it occurred near the end of the team practice at Miami and he will be able to play again when the team arrives in England.

THE BRITISH TEAM

No information has been received as to the make-up of the British Army Team, but six of the seven players who constituted the British team in the matches last year for the International Cup will be eligible to play in the International Military Match, namely, Major V. N. Lockett, Lieut. Col. T. P. Melville, Major Geoffrey H. Phipps-Hornby, Major T. N. Kirkwood, Major E. G. Atkinson, and Major F. B. Hurndall. It is probable that some of these will be on the four which the Army team will meet at Hurlingham in June.

Of the above players, Major Lockett, Colonel Melville and Major Atkinson all played in the International Military Match of 1923.

R. O. T. C. HORSE SHOW—MICHIGAN AGRICULTURAL COLLEGE

Under the direction of Lieutenant Colonel T. L. Sherburne, Cavalry, the third annual R. O. T. C. Horse Show of the Michigan Agriculture College will be held at East Lansing, Michigan, May 29 and 30, 1925.

Last year a very successful two days show of eighteen classes was held with entries from all over Michigan, including the Kent Saddle Club of Grand Rapids and the following clubs of Detroit: The Grosse Pointe Hunt Club, The Detroit Riding and Hunt Club, and the Bloomfield Hunt.

This year there will be eighteen classes with \$1,000.00 in cash prizes in addition to cups or plate and ribbons for each class.

The show is sponsored by the Corps of Cadets at the Michigan Agricultural College, to foster the interest in horses of the general public in this state of the motor car.

Additional information may be obtained from Captain William C. Chase, Cavalry, Secretary-Treasurer, The Horse Show Committee, East Lansing, Michigan.

THE RASP

The 1925 RASP, the annual publication of the Cavalry School is now well under way and will go to press in June. This year's volume will be

bigger and better than ever and will contain a complete series of pictures depicting the activities of the school year from start to finish.

For those who expect to be at the Cavalry School next year, THE RASP will contain much valuable information. For those who have been there it offers an opportunity to renew old acquaintances and to learn why Aggie Austin no longer carries the mail; to see what friends have struggled with Funston, Brookline and Chamberlain and just who appears on the Honor Roll.

For the members of the National Guard and Officers Reserve Corps, the RASP will give an interesting picture of the Cavalry School, the heart of the Cavalry Service.

HOLLAND 1925

The preliminary prize list of the International Horse Show "Holland 1925" has been received with a cordial invitation for the participation of competitors from this country. It will include the following competitions:

1. International Horse Show at Hilversum (near Amsterdam) to be held on June 6th and 7th.
2. International Championship for riding horses at Hilversum, on June 8th, 9th and 10th, to be held under the same conditions as will obtain in the Olympic Games of 1928.
3. International Race Meeting at the Hague on June 11th.
4. International Horse Show at the Hague on June 12th, 13th and 14th.

RELIEF FOR THE REEL CART

Firing the wire by means of a projectile attachment is a new method being worked out by First Lieutenant Fred Canfil, of the 66th Cavalry Division, for laying telephone wire in the field. If present experiments are successful a trial will be given under field service conditions.

It is claimed for this method that wire consolidation can be made in a very short time, a close touch with advance elements can be maintained with but little labor, and, that new wire can replace, in a few moments, that cut by shell fire.

Very little change has to be made in present equipment and the added features are compact and light in weight.

Foreign Military Notes

FURNISHED BY THE MILITARY INFORMATION DIVISION, G. S.

FRANCE

Superior War Council: A French decree of January 6, 1925 publishes the composition of the Superior War Council for the year 1925. It is composed of the six Marshals of France and eight Major Generals who have commanded large units or have held the post of Chief of Staff of the Army.

Following are the members: Marshals Joffre, Foch, Petain, Lyautey, Franchet d'Esprey and Fayolle; Major Generals Gouraud, Berthelot, Guillaumat, Mangin, Debeney, Duport, Degoutte and Weygand.

Marshal Petain has been appointed Vice-President of the Council which signifies that he would command the French armies in war. He is the permanent inspector of troops, services and military schools and is responsible for the "center of advanced military studies" and the Ecole Superieure de Guerre. He has authority over the Major Generals who are members of the Council and makes all the necessary proposals to the Minister of War concerning them in the matter of the allocation of commands in peace and war. The General Staff of the Army is under the control of the Vice-President of the Council.

The Minister of War is by virtue of his office the President of the Superior War Council.

General Weygand was recently relieved as French High Commissioner in Syria by General Sarrail, who has been in retirement since his relief from command of the Salonica Armies in December, 1917. He has now been reinstated and is now given an important command.

General Weygand will assume the post of Commandant of the Center Higher War Studies on his return from Syria.

Marshals and General Officers: The active list of general officers of the French Army is as follows:

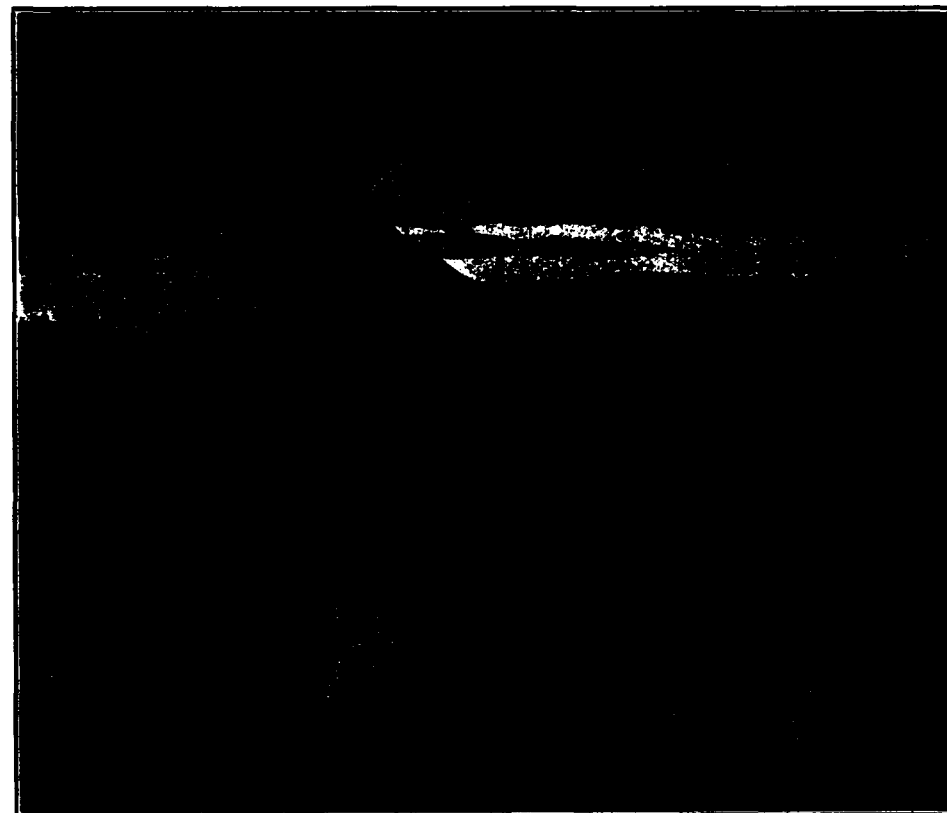
- 6 Marshals of France,
- 3 Major Generals (Castlenau, Sarrail, and Guillaumat) who remain on the active list for life,
- 1 Major General (Berthelot) who is held on the active list until reaching the age of 65 years,
- 1 Major General (Peltier), detached,
- 117 Major Generals, of whom 15 are with colonial troops,
- 233 Brigadier Generals, of whom 32 are with colonial troops.

The Senior general officer is General Gouraud followed by Generals Mangin and Debeney, in order.

The Horse

INCREASED POPULARITY OF HORSEBACK RIDING

Detailed surveys were made by representatives of The Horse Association of America during the past summer in Los Angeles, Detroit, Boston and Chicago. In all of these cities riding has increased very greatly within the past four years and in Chicago the number of riders has quadrupled within that time. There



Imported ABU ZEYD, Pure Bred Arabian, Owned by W. R. Brown, Berlin, N. H.

are now 40 riding stables, academies and clubs with over 1,750 horses kept exclusively for riding and more than 8,175 separate individuals participating in the sport each week throughout the riding season.

Most important of all, the interest which has developed in Chicago in the past four years caused men of wealth and influence to take the lead in building the finest riding club in the world, which is virtually completed and will be ready to open about January 1, 1925. The ground and buildings alone cost more than

a million dollars and the club, fully equipped, will cost around one and a half million. It contains the largest indoor riding arena of any club in the world. It will accommodate 452 horses and will have every appointment for the convenience of its members that the finest athletic clubs in America possess. The development of such a club is indeed significant, for it shows conclusively that leaders in the business world appreciate the great value of horseback riding for themselves and the members of their families.—(*From annual report of Horse Association of America.*)

HORSE AND MULE IN MODERN WARFARE

In many articles you see a comparison of horse and mule transportation to motor transportation. None of these articles distinctly defines the sphere of operation of either the animal or the motor. Their sphere of operation is quite distinct and is based on obvious reasons, if we take the trouble to study them. The motor, for instance, we all admit has taken over the work of the horse and mule where good roads are available and where they are not subject to destruction by shell fire. On the other hand, where the work has to be done across country and under fire, the horse and mule are still supreme.

We agree that the motor delivers various supplies to the front, as far as the road permits, and also to division supply points. What then completes the delivery to the troops on the firing line? Such roads as exist are under fire, and delivery to the firing line must necessarily be made off the roads and across country. There has never yet been a mechanical appliance that could replace the pack horse, the pack mule, or light, movable carts or wagons. Tables of organization of all modern armies require the horse and mule to do this work. The need for greater supplies causes greater methods of transportation, and the supplies required for a modern army is enormous. The mechanical vehicles are taxed to their limit to deliver these supplies near the front, and the proportion of animals to men still remains great in order to make the final connecting link to the firing line. A man in the Civil War could carry all the ammunition he would need for a day or possibly a week. Now a soldier can shoot up all that he can carry in a few moments. Ammunition carts, pack outfits, rolling kitchens, water carts, etc., must all be operated up to the firing line and this work must be performed by the horse and mule. They do it, too, heroically, quietly, patiently, and efficiently.—(Major C. L. Scott, in *The Quartermaster Review*.)

EXIT THE HORSE (?)

According to the Phoenix Horse Shoe Company of Chicago there are today in the United States, 27,283,413 horses and mules. Twenty years ago we had 300,000 less horses and 2,370,000 less mules.

New Books Reviewed

Napoleon: An Outline. By BRIG.-GEN. COLIN R. BALLARD, C. B., C. M. G. D. Appleton & Co., New York.

For the past century the career of Napoleon Bonaparte has been the subject of more discussion and the inspiration of more writers than that of any other character of our times. Apart from his military genius when at the zenith of his powers, and concerning which all agree, writers on Napoleon are generally violent partisans for or against him.

In this latest Napoleonic work which is written by the Professor of Military History at the English Staff College, the subject is treated with an unusual impartiality, as well as being presented in a novel and interesting manner.

The author divides Napoleon's career into three phases:

First Phase, up to the year 1800, Napoleon the Adventurer, with nothing to lose and everything to gain.

Second Phase, from 1800 to 1809. Napoleon the Man of Destiny, with everything won.

Third Phase, from 1809 to the end. Napoleon the Man against Destiny, with nothing to win and everything to lose.

Some space is devoted to a discussion of Napoleon's change in policy or of character sometime between 1800 and 1810 as evidenced by the renewal of war with all Europe, the execution of D'Enghien, and the annexation of Northern Italy, all bellicose facts in contrast to his constructive statesmanship prior to that time. General Ballard attributes this change to the British Navy which had thwarted Napoleon on three of the four occasions on which he had encountered it, namely: at the Battle of the Nile, at Acre, and at Malta. Napoleon widened his hatred of the Royal Navy to a hatred of the nation. This apparently influenced many of his future policies and resulted eventually in his downfall.

An interesting and unusual viewpoint is indicated by the statement that, broadly speaking, Napoleon fought twelve wars, in six of which he was successful, whereas the others ended in complete disaster, in the last five of which he suffered losses far greater than any he had ever inflicted.

After disposing of the theory that Napoleon's decline was the result of physical disease, the author discusses and emphasizes the distinction between the strategist, the tactician, and the leader of men. "A great general need not be, and rarely is, all three." After stating that no man has combined the strategist, tactician and leader better than Napoleon in his first campaign, it is admitted that events showed that he retained his genius as a leader and a tactician to the end. His failure is attributed to a decline in the strategist, which was caused by his strategy being based not upon knowledge, but upon ignorance. Three causes are given for this ignorance: First, he had so overawed his household that no one dared to give him even good advice, much less any contradiction. Second, he was overworked; and Third, self-deception. He used against himself the power of deceiving others which he knew so well how to wield. He had grown accustomed to find his wishes become law; he now began to regard them as facts."

As the title indicates, the book is an outline and does not pretend to give a detailed account of the Corsican's life. It does, however, present the man himself and the history and strategy of his campaigns in such a way as to be easily understood by the general reader. It enjoys the rare distinction among historical works in being of such interest that after beginning its perusal one is loath to lay it aside until it is completed. Twenty-six sketch maps specially drawn for the volume add greatly to its value.

The Genesis of the War. By the RIGHT HONORABLE HERBERT HENRY ASQUITH, Prime Minister of England, 1908-1916. George H. Doran Co., New York. (Price, \$6.00 net.)

The period since the World War has been enlivened by many Memoirs, Personal Recollections, etc., of prominent actors, both military and political, in this epochal event. Many of them have been chiefly devoted to confessions, vindications and demonstrations that this, that, or the other country (other than that of the author) was responsible for the War.

In "The Genesis of the War" Mr. Asquith very effectively "knocks the props" from under the platform of German innocence so laboriously erected by the two Chancellors, Prince von Bulow and Herr von Bethmann-Hollweg, and the Ex-Kaiser. He begins his narrative with a discussion of the Chancellorships of Caprivi (1890-1894) and Hohenlohe (1894-1900) through that of Prince Bulow which in 1900 marked the effective beginning of Weltpolitik. In 1904, during this regime, was begun the development of the Entente.

With the appointment as Chancellor of von Bethmann-Hollweg in 1908, began the intensive naval expansion of Germany which was its reply to the offer of Great Britain to reduce the competition in naval armaments.

The author goes quite fully into this phase and follows with a brief discussion of the effect on international relations of the Morocco question and the *Panther* incident.

Pre-war preparation of Great Britain is discussed under the three headings of first, the Financial Aspect; second, the Committee of Defense, and third, the Dominions in Council.

In the discussion of the period immediately preceding the war, it is indicated that Germany had such a war in mind at all times, that she was seeking to gain time until quite ready, and that when the storm broke in July, 1914, the time was considered propitious.

In addition to her satisfactory state of military and naval preparedness, Germany appears to have considered the political situation in the three Entente countries to be favorable for the long looked for clash. In Russia there was much industrial trouble and disorganization of public services. In France there was an era of ministerial instability and reports of alleged deficiencies in the equipment of the Army. In Great Britain the Irish question had reached an acute stage. That Germany placed undue reliance on these conditions is a matter of history.

Mr. Asquith's narration of the diplomatic exchanges and other events following the tragedy at Serajevo (28th June, 1914) leads one to the conclusion that the nations of the Entente were constantly striving for a peaceable settlement of the matter, and that Germany was working against such a settlement. The narrative closes with an interesting character sketch of the Kaiser with an analysis of his war preparation charges and a discussion of his claims to scholarship.

The value of this book is much enhanced by the author's intimate knowledge, by virtue of his office, of British policy and international politics during the period of which he writes, together with his having access to confidential state papers, from which many facts are disclosed for the first time. It is one of the most important, if not the most important book on the War.

Horses, Saddles and Bridles. By MAJOR GENERAL WILLIAM HARDING CARTER. Fourth Edition. The Lord Baltimore Press, Baltimore, Md. (Price, \$2.75.)

Much water has gone over the wheel since the first edition of "Horses, Saddles and Bridles" was prepared as a text book for the Infantry and Cavalry School. Its use was later extended to include examinations for promotion, and had much to do with the interest awakened in the subject of "hippology," a word created by the army

to comprehend the details of knowledge concerning horses expected of all officers who in the course of their official duties would have charge of public animals. Notwithstanding the efforts of the War Department to provide information on military matters in pamphlet form, and eliminate the necessity of officers purchasing private publications, the advantage arising from having technical subjects treated from the standpoint of personal experience by one who has devoted a lifetime to the subject, and embraced in a single volume, is very great.

That General Carter's interest in the horse is still keen is evidenced by the popularity of his latest book, "Horses of the World," of which 900,000 were published by the National Geographic Society.

The Fourth revised edition of "Horses, Saddles and Bridles" is now for sale and is commended to those who desire information in a somewhat different form from the official pamphlets.

Armaments Year-Book of the League of Nations. 844 pp. Sole American Agents, World Peace Foundation, Boston. 1924. (Price \$4.00, postage extra.)

This is the first annual publication of a comprehensive character on this subject. It gives, in considerable detail, much statistical information concerning the land, sea and air armaments of thirty-two nations, together with their budget expenditures on National Defense. In addition, considerable space is devoted to organization and administrative details. For any one making a study of the subject, either world wide or with reference to any specific nation, the work should be of great value.

Training Schedule for National Guard Rifle Companies; Training Schedule for National Guard Howitzer Companies; Training Schedule for National Guard Battalion and Brigade Headquarters Companies. By CAPTAIN DAVID P. LIVINGSTON, Iowa National Guard. Quartermaster Association, Washington, D. C. (Price, \$.50 each.)

The volumes complete the series of which *TRAINING SCHEDULE FOR NATIONAL GUARD MACHINE GUN COMPANIES* was the first volume.

The need of a complete National Guard training schedule and training guide in compact form has long been felt. The above set of four schedules, prepared by a National Guard company commander, with the assistance of other National Guard organization commanders and Regular Army Instructors at The Infantry School, were designed to meet this need. These *TRAINING SCHEDULES* are punched to fit the regulation size loose-leaf binder and may, therefore, if desired, be filed for convenient reference with War Department pamphlets.

Foreign Military Journals

The Cavalry Journal (British) January, 1925.

In this number *An Affair of Outposts*, by Captain J. G. W. Clarke, M. C., 16th/5th Lancers, deals with operations carried out by the 16th Lancers on August 28 and 29, 1914, during the retreat of the British Expeditionary Force after the battle of Le Cateau, with a view to preventing the crossing by the enemy of the Crozat Canal which connects the Somme and Oise Rivers. The necessity for changes in position from day to night outposts is brought out, together with the fact that a rear guard, boldly handled, does much to stop any incautious advance by an enemy.

Curiously enough, almost four years later, on March 21 and 22, 1918, the 16th Lancers found themselves at the same spot and carrying out a similar mission, when the Fifth British Army was driven back over the same ground.

Major E. G. Hume, 18th (K. E. O.) Cavalry, in *Notes on Modern French Cavalry*, gives an interesting description of the organization, equipment and training of the French Cavalry.

In *The Action of Kassala on July 17, 1894*, Major T. M. Carpendale, 3d Cavalry, I. A., describes a cavalry action between the Italian forces and the Dervishes. A remarkable feature of this action was the taking of the Italian Squadron in flank by a Dervish force in ambush at the moment that the Squadron started to charge the body on which the main attack was directed. It resulted in a *melée*, in which the crush was so great that sabers could not be effectively used although the Baggara horsemen made good use of their javelins and "jabbing spears." The Italians were greatly outnumbered, and were finally compelled to withdraw.

The Canadian Defence Quarterly January, 1925.

In an article entitled *The Regular Army and Tobacco*, the unpopularity of the Regular Army in England is attributed to its use in the Seventeenth Century in enforcing the laws prohibiting the growth of tobacco in England in competition with the Colonists in America. This is on a par with the suggestion of prohibition enthusiasts that the Regular Army in this Country be employed in the enforcement of the Eighteenth Amendment.

An article on *Japan and Her Army* by the author of *The Military Side of Japanese Life*, reviews the development of the Japanese Army from the *samurai* of feudal days to the present modern military establishment. Some space is devoted to the economic and political differences between the United States and Japan and the probabilities of a future conflict between the two nations.

Marlborough's Strategy Preceding Blenheim deals with the campaign of 1704 preceding the battle of Blenheim.

Two Great Captains: Jenghiz Khan and Subutai, reprinted from Blackwood's Magazine, is an intensely interesting and instructive article dealing with the campaigns of the great Mongol leader and his principal lieutenant.

The Journal of the United Service Institution of India January, 1925.

In *The Course of Future Wars*, by Major General Sir W. E. Ironsides, K. C. B., C. M. G., D. S. O., there is depicted the probable course of future wars between states separated by a land frontier. The author admits the possibilities of national destruction by air forces, but believes that the probable effect upon morale has been overestimated. A judicious combination of the action of land and air forces, with close co-operation between the two appears most likely.

Protection on the March, Mountain Warfare, by Colonel C. A. Milward, C. I. E., D. S. O., deals with various security methods while on the march which are necessitated by the special conditions of mountain warfare. Much of the discussion is based upon actual campaign experience in the mountain districts of India.

In *The Tactical Withdrawal by Night* a description is given of the British evacuation of the Gallipoli Peninsula in December, 1915, and January, 1916, which has been characterized by a German writer as a "hitherto unattained masterpiece." In the face of predictions that such a withdrawal was unthinkable and could not be made without heavy losses, the British feat of accomplishing it with but a few men wounded is extraordinary. The main reason for the success of this operation appears to have been the complete deception of the Turks which was facilitated by their poor combat intelligence system.

Journal of the Royal United Service Institution (British) February, 1925.

An Outline of the Rumanian Campaign, 1916-1918, which is continued in this number, covers the Austro-German attempt to break through into Rumania, including the first and second battles of Targujui, and the events in the Dobrudja from the 10th of October to the 10th of November, 1916, together with the German advance through Western Wallachia and the crossing of the Olt (November 21st-26th).

Major C. T. Tomes, D. S. O., M. C., in his lecture on *Old Military Customs Still Extant*, goes back to the beginnings of such customs as the various forms of the Salute, Sentry Duties, Funeral Exercises, Trooping of the Colours (Escort of the Colors), Officers' Messes, Military Bands, and the nomenclature of military ranks. In speaking of the salute, the lecturer states, "An integral part of the modern salute is to turn the head and eyes toward the officer saluted. In medieval days no serf was allowed to raise his eyes or look in the direction of his lord. He was expected to slink to the side of the path and avert his face when that privileged being passed by. The soldier, the man-at-arms, was no serf, but a free man, and as such had every right to look his superior straight between the eyes." This is commended to civilians and others who have construed the salute as a menial gesture.

Colonel G. M. Orr, C. B. E., D. S. O., Indian Army (Retired), gives a discussion of *Operations on Interior Lines in Bush Warfare*, based upon the Campaign in German East Africa, June to October, 1917. The British plan of campaign against the German force under command of General Von Lettow consisted in one force's moving south while another moved westward from the coast. This plan gave Von Lettow many opportunities to operate on interior lines. In five months he carried out seven distinct operations of this nature, in but one of which was he successful in changing the course of operations to his advantage. In commenting on this fact Von Lettow says, "The operation at Narungombe (where he was too late to effect anything) was a further proof of how difficult it is in the unknown African bush and in the face of uncertainty of communications, even if other circumstances are favorable, to carry through an operation in which several columns are taking part so as to secure the necessary unity of action on the battlefield. . . . My belief was strengthened that if I wanted to use different bodies of troops in one operation it was necessary to secure the closest concentration first."

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands) November, 1924.

Cooperation Between Reconnaissance Forces in the Air and on the Ground. By H. Mathon. A short article based on the 1924 Combat Regulations.

It is important for both airplanes and cavalry to be informed of each other's movements and of any intelligence that either may pick up.

Airplanes are to get a general view of the enemy's movements; the cavalry reconnaissance detachments learn the details. Before starting out, the commanders of

cavalry reconnaissance detachments should be summoned to headquarters for a consultation with the commander of the air forces attached to the brigade or division.

Communication should be maintained by wireless. One automobile and two motorcycle wireless stations are assigned to the Light Brigade. Experience has shown that the cavalry detachment, not being confined to hard-surfaced roads, can easily leave the radio vehicles behind. The station then can be used for transmitting, orderlies being sent back to it by the commander of the reconnaissance detachment. What the cavalry reconnaissance detachment needs is a radio outfit that can be taken wherever the detachment goes and can be used for both sending and receiving.

Flanking Light Machine Gun Positions. By Tielens. The use of flanking fire in defensive operations is discussed at some length in this article, which is illustrated by several drawings and photographs.

The author considers flanking fire much superior to frontal fire, although it does not allow the machine gunner as wide a field of fire.

The chief means of attacking machine gun positions are: artillery fire, shell from infantry guns, hand and rifle grenades, flanking fire from machine guns, and enveloping. Artillery fire is of little effect. No country has yet found an infantry gun that is entirely satisfactory. Hand grenades have to be used at short range. If the attacker uses flanking fire from machine guns, it may interfere with the advance of parts of his own units. If the machine gun positions of the defender are selected so that they flank each other and cover all hollows, etc., that the enemy might try to use for infiltration, it will be hard for the attacker to envelop them. All machine gun positions should also afford protection for the gunners from frontal fire.

Organization in depth is another important factor.

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands) December, 1924.

Radio in the Cavalry. By R. Wirix. A very interesting article about a field radio outfit constructed by the writer; illustrated by two photographs.

The whole outfit weighs 9 kilograms and easily be carried by two troopers or even by one if necessary. The radio apparatus itself is contained in a wooden box 30 x 35 x 16.5 cm. Variable mica condensers and milliwatt double grid tubes are used, so that the A and B batteries can be made very light.

Messages have been received from an airplane 100 kilometers away, under rather unfavorable conditions.

The outfit can be set up or packed for transportation in about 2½ minutes. No aerial is used, but the wires are stretched on the ground.

Operation is extremely simple and the apparatus is built according to the plan followed by the majority of Dutch radio amateurs; consequently no long course of instruction is required. It can be used for wireless telephony as well as telegraphy.

The box is so strongly constructed that the same tubes could be used throughout the maneuvers of the Light Brigade in September, 1924.

The batteries will last for twenty-four hours and are of a type that can be procured in any village.

Small tools and an instruction book are carried in the box.

The total cost was about 150 florins (sixty dollars).

As this little receiving set has turned out so well, attempts are now being made to develop a sending outfit that can also be transported by cavalry.

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands) January, 1925.

The Work of Reconnaissance. By Capt. H. W. C. E. Mathon. The failure of the French to have their cavalry conduct proper reconnaissance in 1914 cost them dear. Their postwar regulations aim to avoid this mistake. Both the French and the Germans feel that, despite the great development of aviation, the cavalry can still do

good work. Proof of this was given in Poland in 1920, when the Polish air service, which was quite efficient, could not lift one corner of the veil that the 15,000 troopers of Budyenni held before the organizations of his army.

The postwar cavalry regulations of the French and the German armies are presumably based on experience gained during the World War by the compilers of the regulations. They differ fundamentally in one respect: the French reconnaissance detachments are to be given pretty definite instructions and are to follow the route mapped out for them; the German detachments are given much more liberty.

For the small Dutch army, no extensive cavalry movements can be contemplated; the French idea is more likely to be followed than the German one. Patrols should not be sent out very far ahead of the main cavalry detachment and the commander of the detachment should be careful not to weaken it too much by dividing his forces.

The Cyclist Patrol of the Squadron. By Captain J. de Waal. Each squadron of cavalry has a cyclist detachment consisting of one sergeant, two corporals and twelve privates.

In the opinion of the writer, this detachment should be used as a whole, instead of weakening it by allowing several members to be detailed as orderlies, etc.

When the squadron is marching as an independent unit, the cyclist patrol can be sent ahead as a billeting detachment; if contact with the enemy is likely, the patrol forms the point of the advance guard. When the cavalymen dismount to fight on foot, the cyclists can act as horseholders; in case of combat on horseback, the patrol acts as a covering party. If the squadron is marching in column with other organizations, the cyclist patrol forms an excellent means of liaison between different parts of the column. In case an airplane appears, the cyclists can dismount and open fire more quickly than men on horseback.

The Regimental Liaison Detachment and that of the Light Brigade. By 1st Lieut. G. F. Imminck. In the future, the liaison detachment of the regiment is to consist of: the telephone section, the radio section, the optical section and the orderly section, all under the command of the liaison officer. In the Light Brigade, the liaison detachment is made up as follows: detachment headquarters (1 supply truck, 1 baggage truck, 1 ration truck with rolling kitchen); 1 radio section (1 motor truck carrying a high-power radio outfit, 2 motorcycles with sidecars, carrying a low-power radio outfit); 1 optical section (2 lamps for signalling to great distances, and 1 sergeant, 1 corporal and 6 signalmen on bicycles); 1 telephone section (2 passenger automobiles, 2 cable trucks, 1 telephone switchboard, 6 telephone instruments, 16 km. of heavy field cable).

As most of the members of the above mentioned sections will be taken from cavalry organizations, more attention will have to be paid to training in telephony, lamp signalling, etc., than heretofore.

The writer considers a small flag much better than a lamp for signalling in daytime. For night use, he recommends the German "Perlux" lamp. He considers German telephone and radio equipment the best to be had.

Reviews by Major Harold Thompson, Cavalry

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish) November, 1924.

In this number appears an article by Captain Ramon Climent, Spanish Artillery, entitled *Evolution of the Cavalry*. The writer opens his theme with a strong arraignment of those who would do away with the Cavalry Arm or delegate to it secondary or unimportant rôles. Admitted that the fire power of modern weapons prohibit the massed, boot-to-boot cavalry charges of the past, is no reason that Cavalry as an Arm should disappear or leave its complete rôle to Aviation or any other Arm. On the contrary, he says, evolution which is a natural law, is applicable in every sense to the

employment of Cavalry and here the author agrees thoroughly that there must be a change.

In the first place the Cavalryman must cease considering the horse as an arm, instead of a means toward a definite end. Mobility with increased fire power must be given the most serious consideration and to this end, he would do away with the lance. [There are eight Lancer regiments today in the Spanish Cavalry.] Not so the saber, for although its use may be very limited, the ease with which it can be carried and its lightness together with its possible use, design that it should be used by the Cavalry when opportune. Mobility is again and again emphasized, and in few but positive words the writer strives to impress upon the reader that one of the most important factors here toward attaining mobility is to lighten the load on the Cavalry mount, rations and ammunition being reduced to the minimum consistent with the mission planned.

At another point the Captain vehemently disclaims advocacy of the Mounted Infantryman, for evidently he fears that his statement "the principle being accepted that the horse is a means of transportation," will be so construed. On the contrary Cavalry is and will be always the Arm of opportunity and surprise and for this reason its essential characteristics, mobility and fire power, must not be interfered with by such a hybrid product as mounted Infantry.

Many passages would appear to be identical with our own conceptions of the employment of Cavalry, such as Cavalry and Aviation in the different phases of operations before combat, Aviation forces with Cavalry in distant reconnaissance in force, and many others. The various illustrations offered are based upon Cavalry both in the offensive and defensive. It is interesting to note that the writer believes that Cavalry should be endowed with heavy fire-power, both machine guns and machine rifles, as well as hand-grenades. For the Cavalry division he advocates light and fast armored cars with 37 mm. guns and machine guns, as well as a unit of cyclist Infantry. The uses or employment of machine guns in side-cars and armored cars that are recommended, coincide identically with those suggested at the Cavalry School.

As of interest, it is recommended that the light type of armored car, similar to one employed by the French be adopted, three or four cars to a group, two or three groups forming a combat section. A command car (armored) and a motorcycle to be added for liaison purposes.

All personnel for the Cavalry armored car sections should come from the Arm, should be trained at the various Cavalry training centers (Cavalry School of Fire and Cavalry Demonstration Unit) and then at the Specialists' Training Center. To be successful armored car soldiers, the men must come from the Cavalry, where the Cavalry spirit and all it implies, is engendered and fostered.

Sheridan's Raid, 27th February-25th March, 1865, is continued, the article apparently having created a great deal of interest. After discussing each phase of the operations, conclusions are drawn, based upon the principles illustrated.

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish) December, 1924.

Captain Ramon Climent, Royal Spanish Field Artillery, continues his article, *The Evolution of the Cavalry*, from the November number.

Certain deductions are made as to the best ways of employing armored car sections with Cavalry units, these being, for reconnaissance on the march, with the advance guard, so as to make rapid trips ahead of the column, and reconnoitering cross-roads and villages, always with a reserve car or element held out. For combat reconnaissance, such cars should be able to break the resistance of lines holding up the advance, employing short and rapid bursts of fire at close range. For strategic pursuit where parallel roads exist armored cars with Cavalry should more than prove their value, due to their mobility, fire power and protected parts.

Additional missions such as transmitting messages under fire and bringing up ammunition for troops in combat are suggested. For independent Cavalry, from large units to the squadron, armored cars would prove of the greatest value.

Having Cavalry endowed with additional fire power by incorporating elements such as horse artillery, light truck artillery, automobile machine guns, cyclist infantry and light armored cars, the true employment of Cavalry will be found in acting on the flanks or toward the enemy rear by large enveloping movements; raids along the lines of communication, feints, mobile reserve, the break through, pursuit and exploitation, screening and reconnaissance in force.

The writer finds still another employment for the Cavalry, particularly the Divisional Cavalry, armed and equipped as the Independent Cavalry with automatic material, grenades and carbine, which would appear to be to hold such Cavalry close to the enemy front, yet protected from Artillery fire and ready to take advantage of a propitious moment—rupture, sudden withdrawal or over-extension of the line. —(Continued.)

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish) January, 1925.

In this issue, Captain Ramon Climent, Spanish F. A., concludes his remarks on the *Evolution of Cavalry*. After a brief statement of the former conception of the rôle of Cavalry in retreat, he presents his idea of how Cavalry, with its Artillery and Machine Guns should be employed in the case. Normal action will be by short but violent fire fights with rear guard elements, while the maneuvering mass strikes at the flank or flanks, rapidly and in succession. Perhaps here the opportunity will occur for the mounted charge, but it will be most successful if undertaken by small units. The disorder, confusion and moral depression of the mounted charge are not underrated; however, the menace of machine guns and machine rifles is to be remembered. Such attack should be made in line of forages and with good intervals.

In the retreat, the rôle of Cavalry is still brilliant. Uppermost should be the thought of gaining time, by means of mobility, such as rapidly breaking off an action in order to hold a succeeding delaying position, and by actions embracing short and sudden bursts of fire to force enemy deployment. The use of the light armored cars and auto machine guns is here described and the necessity for the closest liaison by the Cavalry columns with such units. This also involves the Aviation forces with the Cavalry.

The first part of the article by Captain Francisco Ramos, Cavalry (Mehal-la of Larache, Africa) appears in this number. This brilliant Cavalry officer was killed at Megaret in September, 1924.

Spanish and French Cavalry in Morocco.

The organization of the Cavalry forces of both countries in the Moroccan zone is as follows:

SPAIN

Two Peninsular regiments, 14th and 28th Chassuers, of six squadrons, and the 29th Chasseurs of seven; four demi-regiments, Moorish Horse, of four squadrons each; the Mehal-la, a squadron of three mfas (100 horse each) and various irregular units of Native Constabulary, Guides and tribesmen (in groups called Harkas).

FRANCE

Six regiments of chasseurs d'Afrique of five squadrons each; four regiments of Algerian Spahis, and the organized "Guma," smaller native units, number and composition varying.

In comparing units, the personnel of the Spanish Chasseur regiments does not differ from regular Peninsular units, whereas the Chasseurs d'Afrique are real

Colonial troops. These have their permanent stations in Algeria, but may serve in any part of the French dominions or protectorates.

In regard to the native forces of Cavalry, both French and Spanish contingents are similar in character and composition. They differ in two characteristics, in system of recruiting, and in organization. In the Spanish units, Cavalry and Infantry are together in one group, while the French keep their Cavalry units separate from the Infantry.

The remaining forces of both nations have little in common. The native police, Spanish is excellent, practically equal to the native soldiery. The *Gums* (French) which have contributed so well to the pacification of the French protectorate, are raised by levies from one or more tribes, and are commanded by their own tribal chiefs. Note, too, that the French always employ the *Gums* thus raised against rebel tribes who are widely separated from the former, or employ such *Gums* against the latter's tribal enemies. In service, they form a light curtain of horsemen who precede the other troops (action at Setat, 1908); again, they may fight both mounted and dismounted, forming a part of the regular native Cavalry, Chasseurs or Spahis (action at Kaiva, 1913).

The Spaniards have already formed a group of *Gums* in the Melilla zone, but it is too early yet to appraise their value.

The Harkas (irregular groups of friendly tribesmen, not organized) leave much to be desired. In fact, the past has frequently proved their undesirability except for a small moral effect. Those composed exclusively of Cavalry have a real latent value.

The mountain country of the Riff, Yebala and Beni-Snassen (Spanish protectorate) have never furnished even small contingents of enemy horsemen, whereas in the French zone, the French have had to deal almost exclusively with the horsemen of the plains country.

The tactics employed by the Moorish horsemen have ever been the same. Here he quotes Heefer, "Essentially it consists in approaching to some seven hundred yards from the enemy, a sudden deployment in thin lines at full gallop and an abrupt halt at the limit of short range, when the Moors fire their pieces, mounted, turn to the rear and fall back in small groups still at the gallop, and return and repeat. Certainly not dangerous for steady troops, and if our Cavalry advances with sabre at the charge the Moorish lines disappear like mist."

However, in the rugged mountain region even the French have had their difficulties and in proof, surprise attacks by the Moorish horse against convoys for example, it took the genius of General Lyautey to end the resistance of the powerful Beni-Snassen tribesmen.

Recently, too, when General Poemyrau occupied Uazzan, the French forces had to lament considerable casualties, and at that the columns included all arms, including light armored cars. Again, and with the same column, endowed with equally great fire power and mobility, the French had eighteen killed and one hundred and seventy-four wounded. This was at Beni-Mestaran, when two thousand tribesmen attacked the convoy, with a fifteen per cent loss to the French.

Where the Spanish forces operated over the plain country of Garet, Guerra and Metassa, against the tribesmen who at times numbered eight thousand, four and five to one, the losses on the part of the Spaniards were very slight, analogous to those of corresponding French operations.

There is no doubt in the mind of the writer that operations in the rugged, mountainous country of the Riff and Yebala have been difficult and that losses have been and will be large. Certainly the experience of the Spaniards in Northern Morocco since 1909 proves his belief.

(To be continued)

Revista Militar (Argentina) November, 1924.

First Lieutenant Leopoldo Ornstein, Argentine Cavalry, presents an article in this number titled *Field Fortification for the Cavalry Service*. A detailed study is made of the movements of the Cavalry Corps of von Richthofen and von Marwitz, together with those of the British Cavalry divisions in the opening phases of the World War, coupled with a brief discussion of Mobile Defense, Delaying Action, Defensive Screen and Protection by the Cavalry during retreats.

The Lieutenant's deductions, based upon the opinions he has formed, are, in so far as they apply to the Cavalry Arm of the Argentine Army:

That the defensive missions of the Cavalry are more readily carried out by employing certain forms of hasty field fortification;

That the Cavalry should be in position to equally develop a mobile defense or a tenacious form of defense;

That the great extension of probable Argentine theatres of operation, and their physical characteristics, demands that the Cavalry develop both forms of defense (as above), to a degree greater than developed in Europe;

That Cavalry personnel be well-instructed in hasty construction defense, bridge demolition and road obstruction;

That Cavalry officers thoroughly understand the best methods of field fortification;

And that Cavalry units be equipped with certain kinds of field fortification material.

And as a caution, he adds that the above must in no way be understood as to imply any checking of the essentially characteristics of Cavalry, the offensive spirit.

From the military information chapter is taken the following, relating to the newly organized unit of Mounted Infantry (Brazilian Army):

The new Mounted Infantry battalion of the Infantry Brigade (Rio Grande del Sul) is composed of three companies (rifle), one machine gun company, and a reserve squad of ten men. The company has 122 effectives, the machine gun company, 86 men. Total, in the battalion, 463 officers and men.



Polo

THE SECOND ANNUAL MID-WINTER POLO TOURNAMENT

San Antonio, Texas

BY

Captain EDWARD M. FICKETT, Cavalry

For many years San Antonio has been a great polo center, and for many more years a center of military activities in the Southwestern States. The border troubles of 1911 to 1920 brought of great many troops into this region, and inasmuch as San Antonio—Fort Sam Houston,—was also Department Headquarters, it seemed only natural that it should become the army polo center of this section of the country. At the same time under the able guidance of "Bill" Meadows, "Jack" Lapham, Mr. Drury, and others, civilian polo was developing. After the war, efforts were made from time to time to get polo teams from all over the Corps Area to come here for the annual tournaments with greater or less success until 1923 when the First Mid-Winter Polo Tournament was held. This was such a great success that no one gave thought to anything but that it would be an annual meeting.

The 1923 tournament was such a success that when the Chamber of Commerce of San Antonio was approached on the subject of assisting again in the staging of the second tournament, they raised a fund of \$3,200.00 to be used in bringing the teams here. Other public-spirited firms and individuals subscribed largely, making it possible to bring a large and representative group of teams to the tournament.

The fact that the weather here is ideal for all 'round the year polo, and that when the teams in the north are limited to riding hall work and indoor polo, outdoor polo and fast polo at that, is possible in San Antonio is coming to be more and more generally accepted throughout the United States. Teams from Detroit, Chicago, and Des Moines, and other northern points have found that weather conditions, fields, competition, and accommodations are such as to make attendance at such a tournament exceptionally attractive and pleasant. In addition it affords them an opportunity to get in condition for the spring, summer, and fall tournaments in the north and east without having to rush the conditioning of their ponies.

Three tournaments were made possible this year. The low handicap tournament for the Texas Cups is a regular part of the Mid-Winter Tournament. The South Western Circuit Tournament was moved up from its usual time in the early spring so that it could be held as a part of the larger meeting. The fact that the United States Polo Association announced an elimination tournament to be held in each Circuit to select a team to represent the Circuit in the Inter Circuit Tournament to be held in the northeast some time this summer provided the opportunity for the third tournament.

Due to the fact that play for the Texas Cups was limited to teams of not more than six goals handicap, many of the competing teams brought both low and high goal teams, that is, enough low handicap men so that a team could be entered in the low goal events and at the same time, by the substitution of other men place a strong team in the field for the Southwestern Circuit and Elimination events.

The results of games for the TEXAS CUPS were as follows:

First Round—Detroit 14-15th Field Artillery 8; Camp Marfa 10-Kelly Field 5; Fort Sill 10-2d Division, Infantry, 8; Austin 8-Fort Clark 6.

Second Round—Fort Bliss 20-Detroit 4; Camp Marfa 8-Fort Sill 6; San Antonio 10-Fort Brown 9; Hdqrs., 8th Corps Area 10-Austin 8.

Semi-Finals—Fort Bliss 13-Camp Marfa 7; San Antonio 16-Hdqrs., 8th Corps Area, 7.

Finals—Fort Bliss 17-San Antonio 4.

Play throughout the tournament was hard and fast, especially in the later brackets. The semi-final game between Fort Bliss and Marfa was one of the best of the Texas Cup event. The final score is no index of the actual closeness of the game. Both teams rode hard and hit well, but the excellent team play of the Fort Bliss Cavalrymen gave them the edge. The game between the 8th Corps Area Headquarters and San Antonio was hard fought, but the Corps Area was outmounted, and outplayed. The final game of the tournament between Fort Bliss and San Antonio was an easy victory for Fort Bliss. Captain Wood and Captain Huthsteiner at the ends of the team were a combination that San Antonio could not beat. Line-ups follow:

Fort Bliss	Camp Marfa	San Antonio	8th C. A. Hdqrs.
No. 1—Capt. Wood	Capt. Herman	Mr. J. Chittim	Capt. T. W. Hasty
No. 2—Lt. Col. Holliday	Capt. Morris	Mr. C. Armstrong	Lt. Col. E. Swift
No. 3—Lt. D. Burgess	Capt. Truscott	Lt. B. M. Fitch	Maj. A. H. Jones
No. 4—Capt. Huthsteiner	Capt. Thompson	Mr. W. D. Meadows	Lt. Col. Tompkins

The results of games of THE SOUTHWESTERN CIRCUIT CUPS were as follows:

First Round—Fort Clark 15-Detroit 10; San Antonio 20-15th Field Artillery 12; Fort Bliss 13-Hdqrs., 8th Corps Area, 7; Fort Sam Houston 16-Kelly Field 12; Austin 13-2d Division, Infantry, 7.

Second Round—Fort Clark 15-Fort Sill 9; Camp Marfa 13-San Antonio 5; Fort Sam Houston 9-Fort Bliss 8; Austin 15-Fort Brown 8.

Semi-Finals—Camp Marfa 13-Fort Brown 6.

Finals—Camp Marfa 15-Fort Sam Houston 12.

In the semi-final game between Fort Clark and Marfa, Fort Clark put up an excellent fight but lacked the team-work and organization of the Marfa team, and despite the fact that they put up a game fight against heavy odds were defeated. The final game was a complete upset to all the "dope." It was felt that the Fort Sam Houston "Yellow Jackets" were easy favorites, although a good game was expected. When Marfa came out, and by hard riding and driving, and team play such as has seldom been seen here, defeated Fort Sam Houston by a score of 15 to 12, just the difference in the handicaps, it was a complete surprise. It was a beautifully fought, hard, fast game. The defensive work of both backs was excellent, and the rest of both teams were equally good. The smooth, machine-like functioning of the Marfa team was simply too much for the Fort Sam Houston men.

Line-ups follow:

Camp Marfa	Fort Clark	Fort Sam Houston
No. 1—Lieut. Forsyth	Capt. Berg	Major King
No. 2—Capt. Morris	Capt. Tully	Lieut. Jones
No. 3—Capt. Truscott	Capt. Barnhart	Lieut. Smith
Back—Lieut. Feagin	Capt. Daniels	Capt. Hettinger

The results of games for THE SOUTHWESTERN ELIMINATION CUPS were as follows:

First Round—Fort Clark 11—Detroit 5; Fort Sill 18-Hdqrs., 8th Corps Area, 5.

Second Round—Camp Marfa 13-San Antonio 5; Fort Bliss 24-2d Division, Infantry, 4; Fort Clark 10-Kelly Field 3; Fort Sam Houston 19-Fort Sill 7.

Semi-Finals—Fort Bliss 9-Camp Marfa 4; Fort Sam Houston 15-Fort Clark 10.

Finals—Fort Bliss 11-Fort Sam Houston 7.

The three strong teams in this tournament were Fort Bliss, Fort Sam Houston, and Camp Marfa, although Fort Clark was showing greater and greater strength each day they played. Opinion was fairly evenly divided as to the final outcome of the event, with each team holding its strong supporters. The preliminary games were a little one-sided, but showed quickly that there would probably be not more than four contenders for the final cups. As the tournament neared its end, and other

teams were eliminated from competition, the matter of rest between games for the teams still remaining in became a vital one, so that Marfa was of necessity required to play Sunday, March 8th, and again on Tuesday, March 10, it became a question of which game they could best afford to loose. An even worse condition faced Fort Sam Houston. Playing Sunday against the tough Marfa team, they then met Fort Clark on Tuesday, and on Thursday Fort Bliss for the final events. At the same time Fort Bliss had two hard tournament games in two days, and Fort Clark the same. The result was that all the horses were a little tired.

The Fort Bliss-Marfa game played Tuesday, March 10, was a hard-fought battle from the first whistle to the last bell. Horsemanship, hitting, and team work marked the play of both teams. The excellent work of Captain Wood at Number One for Fort Bliss, and of Major Chamberlin, who replaced Lt. Col. Holliday, was a great help in piling up the score, although the size of the score gives no idea of the fierceness of the game.

Fort Clark gave Fort Sam Houston a real thrill in the second game played the same day at Harbord Field when they held the "Yellow Jackets" to the small end of the score with the aid of a six-goal handicap until the fifth period, when Fort Sam Houston got going and finally defeated Fort Clark 15 to 10. Captain Daniels, of Fort Clark, was invaluable to his team.

The bitterest and hardest-fought battle seen here in many a day was the final game between Fort Bliss and Fort Sam Houston. Both teams were anxious to win due to the fact that the winners were to be selected to represent this Circuit in the Inter-Circuit Tournament to be held in Philadelphia this summer. The game was fast from the very beginning, Bliss, however, did not get into its stride until the fourth period when they stepped out and started scoring. In the meantime the "Yellow Jack-ets" had made up the handicap of three goals which they had to give away and were going strong. About that time, however, Major King got a fall in a bit of slippery going near one end of the field and was a little shaken up. Then the Fort Sam Houston horses began to show the strain of three hard games in six days, and the Cavalymen got their steam roller oiled up and working. From that time on the game was the personal property of the crew from Fort Bliss. The "Yellow Jackets" staged a momentary rally in the sixth Chukker, but were unable to catch up. It is hard to say that any one man stood out or was responsible for the winning or the losing of the game. Both teams were functioning as teams exceptionally well. The forwards naturally made most of the goals, but the defensive work of both sets of backs was probably the best that has been seen in this vicinity for a long time. The most thrilling incident of the game was when Captain Wood, of Fort Bliss, was hit square in the face by a long backhander that came back so fast that it had hairs on it. No one saw that he was hit, though he called for time. The whole play, including the umpires, passed him by, with Wood just barely able to hang on to his horse. After a number of seconds he managed to get himself together and rejoin the play. Shortly thereafter he pushed through another goal.

In addition to the Polo Tournament, there was held as a part of it, and in connection with it, an excellent Horse Show and Gymkhana at the Remount Station. Major A. H. Jones, in addition to his other duties, found time to put on one of the best shows seen around here in many years. Competition was keen and the show was attended by an extraordinarily large crowd of both army people from Fort Sam Houston and the visiting polo teams, and also by a large crowd of people from San Antonio and vicinity.

Altogether the Second Annual Mid-Winter Polo Tournament is and was a very satisfactory event, both from the standpoint of teams entered, the class of polo, and the financial results.



Eighth Cavalry Team, Senior Champions, 1st Cavalry Division
Lieutenant Collier, Lieutenant Bosserman, Major Chamberlin, Captain Huthsteiner.

POLO IN ALABAMA NATIONAL GUARD

The Birmingham Sabers (Headquarters Troop, 23d Cavalry Division, Alabama National Guard) have moved into their new quarters. They are now at Roberts Field, home of the 106th Observation Squadron, Alabama National Guard. This new arrangement affords an ample field for polo and about 250 acres of good riding country.

During the greater part of the year polo practice is held twice a week, and Sunday afternoon a practice game is played on the new regulation size field.

The officers of the 106th and the members of The Birmingham Sabers, together with other enthusiasts, have formed a Polo Association. The greatest handicap to be overcome is horses. At present there are 32 issued by the government for training purposes, and practically all of these are used, together with some three or four private mounts.

Last Summer at Camp McClellan the Birmingham Sabers team was selected to play the Governors Horse Guards from Atlanta on Governors Day. These two teams had, by a process of elimination, been selected to meet in this final match. The Governors Horse Guards from Atlanta won by a close score.

Plans are being made to have similar matches this year at the annual encampment which will be held at the home of the 6th Cavalry at Fort Oglethorpe. The officers of the 6th Cavalry have made practically all the mounted officers of the National Guard in the Southern States polo enthusiasts in the past three years. This regiment helped to instruct and hold matches at the annual encampments and, at times, participated in matches with the Guardsmen.

Thanksgiving and the Saturday following of this year, The Birmingham Sabers had the Anniston Polo Association in Birmingham for two games. These games were close and enjoyed by the crowds that witnessed them. First Lieutenant Charles M. Hurt, Cavalry (DOL), Instructor, Cavalry, is the polo instructor and manager of the Birmingham Association.



1st Machine Gun Squadron Team, Junior Champions, 1st Cavalry Division
Lieutenant Chittim, Lieutenant Carleton, Captain Berg and Captain Baylies.

INDOOR POLO IN BOSTON

The first season of the Boston Indoor Polo League proved a greater success than had been anticipated even by the most confirmed optimists. Six teams, three service and three civilian, fought hotly for the title and gave some excellent exhibitions of fine riding and stickwork.

A year ago several polo teams were formed around Boston and played a number of games, but it was not until the autumn of 1924 that the league was definitely formed, being composed of the 110th Cavalry, and the 101st Field Artillery, both of the Massachusetts National Guard, the Instructors of the Harvard R. O. T. C., the Harvard University Polo Team, and the Essex and Norfolk Club teams. These last two were made up of members of the Myopia and Dedham outdoor teams. Not only was the interest strong among the players and other members of the organizations concerned, but there was also much interest shown by the public in general, giving promise that in future years indoor polo will hold a strong place among the winter sports supported by public interest.

Honors this year were carried off by the 110th Cavalry trio, with four games won and only one lost. A very marked improvement was noticeable on the part of the Cavalry over last year both in team work and in stick work. In addition, several games were played by the 110th Cavalry with teams not in the league, notably with the Rhode Island Cavalry.

The National Guard

SERVICE MEDALS FOR TEXAS CAVALRY

In view of the special circumstances connected with the organization and service of the two brigades of Texas Cavalry organized under authority of the War Department dated December 8, 1917, and also on account of their not being entitled to Victory medals under the law, Congress has recently authorized the issuance of Service medals to the officers and enlisted men of these two brigades.

After the 36th Division was called into service in 1917 the State of Texas was authorized to organize two National Guard Cavalry Brigades of three regiments each with a total of approximately 350 officers and 7,900 enlisted men. This was for the purpose of relieving the Regular Army regiments doing Mexican Border duty, in order that these regiments might be available for overseas duty.

On September 18, 1917, arrangements were made for the officers of these brigades to attend a training camp of four months duration. Non-commissioned officers and enlisted specialists were also to attend non-commissioned officers' and specialists' schools. The attendance of both officers and enlisted men was voluntary.

It was decided that the two brigades would be drafted into Federal service on January 2, 1919. The signing of the Armistice stopped the draft of these regiments, but officers and enlisted men voluntarily agreed to continue their courses until completion, December 8. During the time the officers and enlisted men were at these schools the remainder of the regiments were being drilled almost every day at the home rendezvous.

NEW PRESIDENT, ADJUTANTS GENERAL ASSOCIATION

At a special meeting of the Adjutants General Association held in Washington on March 10, 1925, Brigadier General Frank D. Beary, Pennsylvania, then Vice President, was elected President, to fill the vacancy caused by the retirement of Brigadier General Harry B. Smith, Indiana. Brigadier General Hartley A. Moon, Alabama, was elected to fill the unexpired office of Vice President.

104th CAVALRY—Pennsylvania National Guard Colonel E. J. Stackpole, Jr., Commanding

Officers of the regiment are watching with sympathetic interest the development of plans for an encampment of the 21st Cavalry Division, of which the 104th Cavalry is a unit, being worked out by officers of the Militia Bureau and staff officers of the 27th, 28th and 29th National Guard divisions, to which units of the cavalry division are attached for training and discipline. This encampment will bring together for the first time in their history the units of the 21st Cavalry Division, and it is the estimate of the officers of all regiments concerned that such an encampment would be invaluable. A question of costs, it is said, is the only obstacle to such a plan.

The proposed camp would see the 51st Cavalry Brigade, composed of the 51st Machine Gun Squadron and the 101st Cavalry, both of New York state; the 102nd Cavalry, of New Jersey; the 52nd Cavalry Brigade, including the 52nd Machine Gun Squadron, the 103rd and 104th Cavalry regiments, and Company "A," 125th Mounted Engineers, all of Pennsylvania, together. It is understood that Sea Girt, the New Jersey National Guard camp, has been suggested for the site of the cavalry maneuvers.

Plans for a large military ball, to be held during February in Harrisburg, Pa., regimental headquarters of the 104th Cavalry, are being made and Regular Army, National Guard and Reserve Corps officers from all parts of the State will be invited. The 104th Cavalry band will alternate with an orchestra for the dancing, and the regimental standard, troop guidons, sabres, and the lances of the Governor's Troop at Harrisburg, will be a part of the decorative scheme.

The 104th's band, which last year was heard in a dozen states when it broadcast from station WBAK, the Pennsylvania State Police station at Harrisburg, is preparing another program to be sent out from the same station.

Motion pictures will have a large part in the training of the regiment's recruits, following the purchase of a machine and projector. Pictures will be taken of the elementary drills, proper methods of saddling and biting, mounting and jumping, as well as the use of arms, mounted and dismounted. These will be shown at troop drills. In addition, pictorial records of the summer camps of the regiment will be made.

FIRST SQUADRON, 105th CAVALRY—National Guard, Wisconsin ANNUAL OUTDOOR SHOW

The dismounted season of the 1st Squadron, 105th Cavalry, was brought to a successful climax on Saturday, March 7th, at the Shorewood Armory. In accordance with the custom, the Officers Club arranged a party and dance for the squadron, following exhibition work. One of the largest crowds ever handled at the Armory was in attendance.

The event of the evening was the crack platoon competition, dismounted, between selected platoons of the three troops. These outfits have been rehearsing on Sundays for several months, and each produced twenty minutes of exhibition drill involving everything in the regulations. Leather boots were worn throughout, and an excellent appearance was presented.

The platoons representing Troop C, led by 2nd Lt. E. P. Beyer, won the decision and with a year's custody of the Instructors Trophy. Lt. Col. R. M. Barton, Cavalry; Captain Wm. T. Haldeman, Cavalry, and Lieutenant A. H. Norton, Cavalry, all of the Regular Army, acted as judges.

Between events in the competition, fencing and broadsword exhibitions were presented by selected officers.

After the exhibition trophies were given to the various winners of the recent Guard-Collegiate Shoot, St. John's Military Academy being on hand to receive the principal awards.

The results of the final examination and grading for the winter of the non-commissioned officers' school students were announced. Diplomas were issued, the five leaders being given special certificates of proficiency, to be filed with their records and considered during the next examinations for commissions. They were as follows:

Sergeant Roland E. Zache, Troop B,	97%
Sergeant F. G. Patterson, 1st Sq. Det.,	96%
Sergeant P. H. Jacobs, Troop C,	96%
Sergeant W. Bubboltz, Troop "C,"	95%
Corporal Frank Rupnik, Troop A,	94%

In addition Sergeant Zache won the "Non-com's plaque" for his winter's work. General Charles King, U. S. A. (Ret.), made the presentations.

SECOND SQUADRON, 106th CAVALRY

Officers of the 2d Squadron, One Hundred Sixth Cavalry, met at the Hotel Orlando, Decatur, Illinois, and inaugurated a series of quarterly banquets to be held by executives to discuss cavalry problems peculiar to the National Guard.

Following dinner the mounted service was discussed from different angles by the squadron commander, Major Kenneth Buchanan, and by Captain J. K. Colwell, D. O. L., cavalry instructor on duty with the unit.

Major Buchanan stressed the need of regular physical exercise within the command and basketball games between the troops were arranged. A squadron gymkhana at the coliseum of the Illinois State Fairgrounds will be another feature in the near future. All officers who had not already become members of the Cavalry Association were ordered to do so.

Following Major Buchanan's talk, Captain Colwell urged troop commanders to use the "Lentz" system of dismounted drill and explained its manifest advantages over other methods.

Letters from the Adjutant General of the State, and General Foreman were discussed in which the squadron was highly commended for its appearance and discipline during the inaugural ceremonies in January, when the mounted unit was selected over the entire 33d Division for the guard of honor.

During summer camp in 1924 the 2d Squadron One Hundred Sixth Cavalry won a number of trophies from the division for appearance, efficiency and the riding qualities of its troopers.

117th CAVALRY—Colorado National Guard, at the Western National Horse Show, Denver, Colorado—January 19-24, 1925

Squadron Headquarters and Headquarters Detachment and Troop "B," 117th Cavalry (Colorado), successfully participated in the Western National Horse Show at Denver, Colorado, winning two first prizes, one second, one third, and four fourth, against strong competition from the entries of the 13th U. S. Cavalry, Fort D. A. Russell, Wyo., Dr. Walter Venn of Chicago, Bruce Robinson of Des Moines, Iowa, Country Club Heights Stable of Denver, Colorado, A. C. K. Palmer and E. A. Phinney of Golden, Colorado, and C. F. Cusack of Denver, Colorado.

On January 19th in the Heavy and Middle Weight Hunter Class with 15 entries, 4th place was won by Sergeant R. E. Noe on *Tony*, No. 17, of Troop "B."

On January 22d in the Triple Bar Jump class with 23 entries brought out the keenest competition of the show, the 13th Cavalry having five entries and Troop "B" six. Sergeant R. E. Noe rode *Tony*, No. 17, to win and *Colonel* to third place. Actual measurement of the winning jump showed a spread of 22 feet 6 inches, the high bar being 4 feet 6 inches. The splendid horsemanship exhibited by Sergeant Noe received the highest commendation from Officers of the 13th Cavalry as well as from the other competitors and the spectators.

On January 23d in the Pairs and Hunters class with 10 entries, Captain L. N. Scherf and Sergeant R. E. Noe rode *Tony*, No. 17, and *Stump* to second place, and Sergeants Hamrock and Appledorn on *Tony*, No. 24, and *Cappy* rode to fourth place.

In the Officers' Chargers class with 15 entries 4th place was won by First Lieutenant C. E. Richardson, Commander of Headquarters Detachment, 1st Squadron, 117th Cavalry.

On January 24th in the Consolation for Hunters and Jumpers class with 13 entries, the blue went to *Colonel*, ridden by Sergeant R. E. Noe.

All entries by the 117th Cavalry were Government horses issued to the National Guard in 1921, and the officers and enlisted men of the regiment are entitled to the

highest commendation for the excellent work done in training and developing them. Every one of the thirty mounts in the hands of this unit will freely take a three foot jump.

The organization acknowledges the splendid instruction and assistance rendered by Lieutenant Colonel James E. Shelley, Q. M. C., Commander of Trains, 103d Division O. R. C., and appreciates that the Cavalry suffered the loss of a real horseman when Colonel Shelley transferred to the Quartermaster Corps.

The Organized Reserves

SIXTY-FOURTH CAVALRY DIVISION

The 64th Cavalry Division, with headquarters at Louisville, Ky., Colonel Kirby Walker, Cavalry (DOL), Chief of Staff, has been holding monthly conferences at the Armory of the 138th Field Artillery, Kentucky National Guard. The average attendance at these conferences has been over fifty Reserve officers, who are very much interested in a series of lectures being given by Colonel Walker on "The Palestine Campaign."

Twice weekly, Reserve officers of the Division living in Louisville and vicinity meet at the Riding Hall, 138th Field Artillery, for classes in equitation, with Lieutenant Stanton Higgins, Cavalry (DOL), as instructor. Interest is keen and all officers are working to perfect themselves in horsemanship with a view to putting over a horse show in the Spring.

A polo team has been made up of 64th Cavalry Division officers who meet the 138th Field Artillery team twice a week in practice games. Officers composing the former team are Captains George I. Smith, W. E. Barott and Lieutenant Stanton Higgins, all Cavalry (D. O. L.).

63d CAVALRY DIVISION

During the past three months Division Headquarters has been actively engaged in conducting Tactical Schools and Equitation Classes for National Guard and Reserve Officers of Chattanooga.

The Headquarters of the Division being located at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, the home station of the 6th U. S. Cavalry, and only nine miles from the City of Chattanooga, it is particularly fortunate in being able to offer the training facilities of an excellent Cavalry Post to all Officers of the Army of the United States, who wish to take advantage of same.

The Tactical School is held in Chattanooga semi-monthly, and through the courtesy of the Y. M. C. A. we have secured an excellent room in which to conduct the class. The attendance, though not as large as desired, is satisfactory. Many students are so interested in these classes, that they have been present for each session since the school began last November.

The problems deal with the use of combined arms, the students being divided into small tactical groups, according to their rank and branch, each group being given certain tactical requirements to solve.

Similar schools are being conducted in all the larger cities throughout the Fourth Corps Area.

The riding class, held Sunday mornings at Fort Oglethorpe, began last December as a semi-monthly affair with an attendance of only five or six Reserve Officers.

However, the rides soon became so attractive, that frequent requests were made for more riding. Accordingly, the class is now held every Sunday morning, and has

increased to such an extent that the average attendance is about twenty (20) officers each ride.

The duration of each class is about two hours, the first hour being devoted to intensive instruction in the riding pen, the second hour the class has a flock ride through Chickamauga Park. Beginners are given McClellan saddles, the more advanced students using the flat saddle. Horses are furnished by the 6th Cavalry.

The war strength (58) commissioned personnel of one (1) cavalry regiment of this Division is to be ordered to active duty for fifteen (15) days at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, April 5-19th.

The 309th Cavalry has been selected by the Chief of Staff, 63rd Cavalry Division, as the regiment to report. Programs and schedules for the training of this regiment have been drawn up and approved.

Clay pigeon traps have been set up and a gun club organized at Fort Oglethorpe. All officers of the Army of the United States are eligible to join. Regular shoots are held on each Saturday afternoon and Sunday morning. Several Reserve Officers have taken advantage of this opportunity and are showing their skill, or the lack of it, on the flying clay targets.

It is contemplated organizing a Reserve Officers' Team to compete in the tournaments, which will be held from time to time during the year.

322nd CAVALRY

Approval has been officially granted the following design for the regimental insignia of the 322nd's Cavalry: Shield, "Or, a Sioux warrior in war bonnet brandishing a spear in dexter hand and mounted on an Indian pony courant all proper."

The Motto, as approved, is: "Audacter et Strenue," which was adopted from the motto of the family coat-of-arms of Colonel H. H. Polk, of Des Moines, Iowa, the first and present commanding officer of the 322nd Cavalry.

The 322nd Cavalry is a component of the 66th Cavalry Division: is allotted to states of Iowa, Minnesota and Nebraska with the officer personnel largely from the cities of Des Moines and Minneapolis. The regimental area is old Sioux country. Regimental headquarters is located in Des Moines. The Executive Officer is Captain Joseph L. Phillips, Cavalry, (D. O. L.).

During the absence on leave of Captain Joseph L. Phillips, Cavalry, (D. O. L.), Executive Officer, 322nd Cavalry, from Des Moines, the equitation class for reserve officers at Fort Des Moines, has been conducted by Captain Luther L. Hill, a graduate of the Military Academy, now Plans and Training Officer of the 322nd Cavalry.



Proceedings of the Annual Meeting of the United States Cavalry Association

Washington, January 14, 1925.

The meeting which was held at the Army and Navy Club, Washington, D. C., this date, was called to order at 8:05 P. M. by the President. There were fifty-five members present in person and 813 represented by proxies, a quorum.

Upon motion it was voted to dispense with the reading of the minutes of the last annual meeting.

The annual report of the Secretary-Treasurer-Editor was read as follows:

Washington, January 14, 1925.

To the United States Cavalry Association.

Gentlemen:

I present herewith, as required by the Constitution, the following financial statement for the year ending December 31, 1924, and a report of the activities of the United States Cavalry Association for the same period.

FINANCIAL STATEMENT OF THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION FOR THE YEAR ENDING DECEMBER 31, 1924.

RECEIPTS

Cash on hand January 1, 1924	\$809.43
Advertising	1649.05
Book Department	3238.61
Cavalry Journal	4827.35
Interest	618.53
Magazine Department	5337.52
Marquis Saddle Equipment	1111.50
Postage, Stationary and Incidentals	.90
Rent	274.90
Telephone	45.87
Wetmore Legacy	489.01

\$18402.67

DISBURSEMENTS

Advertising	\$34.78
Book Department	1815.59
Cavalry Journal	3671.50
Draper Prize Fund	200.00
Investment	914.97
Magazine Department	4489.84
Marquis Saddle Equipment	857.25
Office Equipment	120.48
Outstanding Checks	69.08
Postage, Stationary and Incidentals	704.87
Rent	710.00
Salaries	2256.80
Telephone	127.04
Cash Balance, December 31, 1924	2430.47

\$18402.67

PROCEEDINGS OF ANNUAL MEETING

243

ASSETS

Cash in bank, December 31, 1924	\$2410.13
Petty Cash	20.84
6 Liberty Bonds at Market Value	6082.80
Accrued Interest on Liberty Bonds	60.18
1 Real Estate Note	1000.00
Accrued Interest on Real Estate Note	24.15
1 Real Estate First Mortgage Certificate	1000.00
Accrued Interest on First Mortgage Certificate	27.50
5 Southern Railway 4% General Mortgage Bonds, at Market Value	3687.50
Accrued Interest on Southern Railway Bonds	50.00
2 American Water Works Bonds, \$500.00 each, at Market Value	925.00
Accrued Interest on American Water Works Bonds	12.50
Stock on hand, books at cost	981.18
Stationery and Office Supplies	89.00
Office Equipment	284.15
Credit at Post Office for Mailing	14.97
Credit with Register of Copyrights	6.00
Accounts Receivable	1946.03

LIABILITIES

Credits due Customers	\$152.69
Due Authors from Accounts Receivable	1.25
Outstanding Checks, Manufacturers National Bank	32.04
Printing and Engraving, January Cavalry Journal	800.61
Net Assets December 31, 1924	17634.84

\$18621.43

Net Assets December 31, 1924	\$18621.43
Net Assets December 31, 1923	\$17634.84
Net Assets December 31, 1923	15018.48

Net Gain for 1924 \$ 2616.36

Washington, January 5, 1925.

We, the undersigned, appointed by the President of the United States Cavalry Association, to audit the accounts of the Treasurer of said Association, for the year ending December 31, 1924, do hereby certify that we have examined the books of account, vouchers, and the foregoing statement, covering said fiscal year, and that the same are correct and true.

W. J. GLASGOW,
Colonel, Cavalry.
JAMES H. REEVES,
Colonel, General Staff.
LEON B. KROMER,
Colonel, Cavalry.

As evidenced by the foregoing statement, the Association is financially in a healthy condition. Exclusive of a final payment of \$489.01 from the William B. Wetmore legacy, the Association gained during the past year \$2127.35 in net assets, notwithstanding the charge against this year's income, of getting out five issues of the CAVALRY JOURNAL instead of four.

As in the past, Advertising in the CAVALRY JOURNAL as a source of income has been the greatest problem, as it is likely to be in the case of any periodical with a limited circulation. We have lost no ground in this respect but the most earnest and

persistent effort has failed to increase our income from this source. Our principal dependence apparently must be upon members and friends of the Association who by means of personal solicitation or otherwise, are in a position to help us.

The Book Department has continued to be a profitable enterprise and a means of service to members. Our stock of old books has been materially reduced, and the supply of a few works practically exhausted. The only increment in stock during the year was 350 copies of "As to Military Training" which were received through the generosity of Major J. F. Wall, the author, with the proviso that 60% of the proceeds should go to the Cavalry Fund and 40% to the Association.

The Magazine Department has continued its success of last year and has been the greatest single source of income. Troops, headquarters detachments, officers' clubs, and some individual members have been liberal in giving us their business and at this time seventy-five troops and seven headquarters detachments are obtaining their periodicals through the Association. It is hoped that all cavalry organizations not on our lists at present will eventually give the Association this very material support.

The continued popularity of the Marquis equipment shows that officers appreciate the value of first class saddle equipment. About one thousand dollars worth of this equipment was sold during the year. Although the profit made by the Association is very small, it is believed that the enterprise is fully justified by the service rendered to members.

The various securities in which the surplus funds of the Association have been invested have been a consistent source of income.

The fact that the market values of all our bonds are well above what they were at the time of purchase indicates the wisdom of the investments.

A final payment of \$489.01 from the William B. Wetmore Legacy was received in June, \$3042.08 having been received in 1923.

The income from subscriptions to the CAVALRY JOURNAL has increased during 1924 and the paid circulation on December 31 stood at the highest mark in its history.

This is largely due to the co-operation and loyal support of commanding officers, regimental representatives and officers on duty with the National Guard and Organized Reserves.

The following analysis of subscriptions and membership may be of interest:

Cavalry R. A., active and retired, and General Officers, 895 (gain of 3.9%).
Cavalry Reserve Corps, 375 (gain of 34.8%).
Cavalry National Guard, 158 (loss of 21.5%).
Miscellaneous (Officers of other Arms, Libraries, Clubs, etc.), 332 (gain of 2.1%).
Exchange 23, Complimentary 1, Life 4, Honorary 3, 31 (loss of 32.9%).
Organizations, R. A., 131 (gain of 11%).
Organizations, N. G., 8 (loss of 37.5%).
Total, 1930 (gain of 5.7%).

While the increase in membership in the Regular Army and Organized Reserves is gratifying, we are not satisfied. It is felt that there should be many more than 158 members out of 716 National Guard Cavalry Officers and more than 375 members out of 3217 Reserve Cavalry Officers. And it is especially disappointing that 233 (22%) regular cavalry officers out of a total of 1050 on the active list should be non-members of the Association of their branch of the service.

There may be various reasons for this state of affairs. That it indicates on the part of non-members a lack of interest in their profession and their Arm, we are loath to believe. Rather it is thought that outside of some cases of neglect, the situation is largely due to a lack of education in the history and purposes of the Association.

If the history of the accomplishments of the Association, its purposes, and its meaning were thoroughly understood, it is believed that in but few cases would the response be unfavorable. It is difficult to do this at long range—much work, many

quarts of ink and reams of paper have been devoted to it—and with some success, but it has been our experience that the place for the most effective missionary work for the Association, is in squadrons, regiments, posts, brigades and divisions, and by those on duty with, and in more or less intimate contact with our fellow cavalry officers in the National Guard and the Organized Reserves. Many loyal members serving in various capacities with the three components of the Army have done yeoman service for the Association during the past year and it is desired at this time to express to them our appreciation of their valuable assistance in increasing the membership.

THE CAVALRY FUND

Pursuant to the action of the Association at its last annual meeting, the Cavalry Fund and the support of various activities were continued this year. The financial statement of the fund follows:

FINANCIAL STATEMENT OF THE CAVALRY FUND FOR THE YEAR ENDING DECEMBER 31, 1924

RECEIPTS	
On hand January 1, 1924.....	\$588.95
Received from Officers and Organizations.....	964.03
	<hr/>
	\$1552.98
DISBURSEMENTS	
Entrance fee for Cavalry School Team, Colorado Endurance Ride.....	\$40.00
1924 Endurance Ride	500.00
Medals for Cavalry Rifle-Pistol Team.....	176.50
Engraving-Cavalry Engineer Trophy	7.50
On hand in bank, December 31, 1924.....	828.98
	<hr/>
	\$1552.98

Washington, January 5, 1925.

We, the undersigned, appointed by the President of the United States Cavalry Association, to audit the Cavalry Fund account for the year ending December 31, 1924, do hereby certify that we have examined the books of account, vouchers, and the foregoing statement, covering said fiscal year, and that the same are correct and true.

W. J. GLASGOW,
Colonel, Cavalry.
JAMES H. REEVES,
Colonel, General Staff.
LEON B. KROMER,
Colonel, Cavalry.

On the basis of a contribution of \$3.00 from each field officer and \$1.50 from each officer below field grade it was thought that probably \$1500.00 out of a maximum of \$2000.00 would be collected, which would permit laying aside each year a substantial amount for the Olympic Team and a reserve for the Fund. As shown by the statement but little more than half of the amount expected has been collected. The disbursements from the fund have been limited as indicated in the statement, and there are no obligations outstanding.

The next call for disbursement from the fund will be about June 1, 1925, when our contribution of \$500.00 toward the 1925 Endurance Ride is due. It is hoped that before that time many officers and organizations that have not contributed as yet may find it possible to assist in augmenting the fund.

It is believed that the solution, as in the case of membership, is in educating them at close range as to the advantages accruing to the Cavalry as a whole, and the indirect individual benefit to be derived from our support of the various enterprises to

which the Cavalry Fund may contribute.

As a result of the Prize Essay contest of 1924 an enthusiastic Cavalry Reserve officer who believes that the value of Cavalry is largely measured by the prompt decision and aggressiveness of the leaders of its small units, has donated \$1000.00 to be utilized in prizes for a competition in the Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units.

The President of the Association appointed a committee consisting of Colonel J. H. Reeves, General Staff; Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, 3d Cavalry, and Lieutenant Colonel Robert Mc. Beck, Jr., Cavalry, to prepare a plan for the competition.

After a thorough study of the subject, the committee submitted its recommendations, which have been approved. In general, the two essentials of the plan are as follows:

First, that field sports, or feats involving nerve and endurance, form an integral and important part of the competition.

Second, that technical problems should be brief, simple, and settled when possible by concrete evidence (e. g., hits in fire problems and condition of horses after a march problem).

The test is to be in two phases; the first phase to be such as to test the individual military capacity bearing upon leadership of the officer and enlisted man, and will determine who will compete in the second phase; the second phase to be such as to test the ability of the officer to lead a unit, and also the teamwork of the men composing the unit.

The test is to be held at the Cavalry School during the year 1925, the details to be determined by the Commandant of the School.

The fund in question has been deposited as a separate savings account, and has been verified by the Auditing Committee appointed by the President of the Association.

Captain G. A. Moore, to whom is due much credit for the sound financial condition of the Association, he having been Acting Secretary, Treasurer, and Editor during the first half of 1924 and Managing Editor for the past three years, ceased to function as such September 25, 1924, as he was assigned, upon return from a leave of absence, December 5, to duties in the office of the Chief of Cavalry which require his entire time.

On December 1, Major Kenna G. Eastham was, in addition to his other duties, assigned to duty in the office of the Association, and has rendered material assistance to the Secretary and Treasurer.

Upon motion, the report was accepted.

The following officers and members of the Executive Council were unanimously elected:

President: Major General Malin Craig.

Vice-President: Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, 3d Cavalry.

Members of the Executive Council:

Colonel W. J. Glasgow, Cavalry.

Colonel J. H. Reeves (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel A. C. Colahan, National Guard of Pennsylvania.

Colonel F. Le J. Parker, Cavalry.

Colonel T. A. Roberts, Cavalry.

Lieutenant Colonel W. P. Draper, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieutenant Colonel John Philip Hill, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieutenant Colonel W. M. Connell (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Lieutenant Colonel S. R. Gleaves, Cavalry.

General Craig, the newly elected President, took the Chair.

The following amendments to the Constitution proposed by five members of the

Association three months before the meeting and submitted to the members one month before the meeting, all in accordance with Article VIII of the Constitution, were adopted by unanimous vote:

In Article III, Section 2, erase the words "and at such subscription price" and the words "which may be subscribed for by any person or organization," so that the section will read:

"In furtherance of its aim and purpose, the Association shall publish with such frequency as may be determined from time to time by the Executive Council, a professional and scientific journal to be known as the CAVALRY JOURNAL, and conduct a book department for the sale to its members and the public, of books, maps, and periodicals."

In Article IV, Section 2, to erase the words "for at least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL," substituting therefor the words "of at least one year's dues, the amount of which shall be determined from time to time by the Executive Council"; also erase the words "date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced," so that the section will read:

"Any person desiring to become an active or associate member, shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility, and be accompanied by the payment of at least one year's dues, the amount of which shall be determined from time to time by the Executive Council, and the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership."

In Article IV, Section 3, erase the entire section and substitute for it the following:

"All active and associate members shall receive the JOURNAL without other cost than the annual dues."

In Article IV, Section 4, erase the words "renew the annual subscription to the JOURNAL," substituting therefor the words "renew through payment of annual dues," so that the section will read:

"Any member may withdraw from the Association at the end of any current year by tendering his resignation; and membership shall lapse, ipso facto, by failure to renew through payment of annual dues; but such withdrawal or lapse shall not operate to relieve such member from liabilities to, or as a member of the Association, incurred prior thereto."

To Article IV add the following section:

"Section 6—Any person or organization may become a subscriber to the CAVALRY JOURNAL upon the payment of a subscription price equivalent to the annual dues of the Association, and all such as are not regularly admitted and entered as active, associate, or honorary members, shall be considered as subscribers merely."

Upon motion, it was unanimously voted to contribute, on behalf of the Cavalry, one thousand dollars to the Infantry School Recreation Center Fund as a memorial to our comrades of the Infantry who lost their lives during the World War.

Major General Willard A. Holbrook, at the request of the members, made a brief address on the achievements of Cavalry and its future.

The President addressed the meeting briefly.

Upon motion it was unanimously voted to extend to Major General Willard A. Holbrook the thanks and appreciation of the Association for his valued and efficient services as President during the past four years.

There being no further business, the meeting adjourned.

W. V. MORRIS,

Lieutenant Colonel, Cavalry,

Secretary

Cavalry School Notes

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—Fort Riley, Kansas
Brigadier General E. L. King, Commandant

Graduation exercises of the National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class of 1924 were held on December 12-13, 1924.

A night ride of about 25 miles was started at the West Riding Hall at 7:30 P. M., on the evening of the 12th. The course extended via Clark's Creek, West Gate, Cedarville Ranch and Ogden. Each contestant was required to go over the course at a rate of 8 miles per hour reporting at each station at the finish. Penalties were incurred for failure to report and for over and under time at any station. Horses were required to be in serviceable condition at the finish. The winner was Captain Mott, O. R. C.; second, Captain Philip, Texas N. G.; third, Lieut. Bradley, O. R. C., and Lieut. Dundon, O. R. C., tied.

On the morning of the 13th, each member of the class was "cited in orders" by the President of the Class for some feat "above and beyond the call of duty", such as "policing", "carrying the mail", etc., performed during the course. Following this was a ride by the whole class which included the following movements: slow trot, form line, trot, threes by the right flank, half turn in reverse, three by the left flank, half turn, by threes right oblique, gallop depart in circle, suppling exercises, jumping through the chute and jumping. The Commandant, General King, then made a short address, in which he stressed the importance to all components of the Army of the United States of the provisions of the National Defense Act, following which he presented prizes for the night ride and certificates of graduation.

The following were the members of the class: Lieutenant Colonel de Hermida, O. R. C.; Majors Baxter, Bell and Carrico, O. R. C.; Captains Bierwirth, Michigan N. G.; Blackledge, Wyoming N. G.; Bush, O. R. C.; Durant, Connecticut N. G.; Fox, Kansas N. G.; Gillispie, Louisiana N. G.; King, Alabama N. G.; Leonard, O. R. C.; Mott, O. R. C.; Philp, Texas N. G.; Stitt, Texas N. G., and Timmons, New Mexico N. G., and Lieutenants Barber, Kentucky N. G.; Bercaw, O. R. C.; Bradley, O. R. C.; Cain, New Mexico N. G.; Dundon, O. R. C.; Hlavas, O. R. C.; McKenney, Rhode Island N. G. Monroe, Kansas N. G.; Mozley, Alabama N. G.; Sawyer, O. R. C., and Sheldon, New York N. G.

Distinguished visitors to the post included General George H. Cameron, formerly Commandant of the Cavalry School, and General Snow, Chief of Field Artillery, who was accompanied by Major Lester. Exhibitions were given in their honor in the West Riding Hall, which included pair jumping by the Special Advanced Class in Equitation, a ride of schooled horses by the instructors of the Department of Horsemanship, special drills by troops of the 2nd Cavalry and exhibition driving by Battery "A", 9th Field Artillery.

A holiday horse show was given in the West Riding Hall on the evening of December 19, 1924. Zero weather failed to cool the enthusiasm of the contestants and spectators. A jumping contest for troop officers over a course of eight 3½ foot jumps was won by Captain Carpenter; Captain Neilson, second; Captain Cox, third, and Captain Ligon, fourth. The first Platoon, Captain Coe, Instructor, won the ribbon for the highest aggregate score. A class for teams of three jumpers from any organization to be shown in column over a course of seven 3½ foot jumps was won by the team from the Department of Cavalry Weapons, consisting of Colonel Lippincott, Captain Falck and Major T. K. Brown. Prizes consisted of a piece of plate presented by "The Standard" and three hunting snaffles presented by Captain C. C. Smith. Second place went to the First Platoon and third place to the Second Platoon. The Advanced

Class jumping over eight 3½ foot jumps was won by Major Rayner, with Major Millikin; second, Lieutenant Colonel Gordon Johnston, third; and Major Foster, fourth. The open jumping class, over a very difficult course of eight jumps, 4 feet high and better, without wings, was won by Captain Fiske, with Captain Maddox, second; Lieutenant Comfort, third, and Lieutenant Holbrook, fourth. The Ladies' Jumping Class was won by Mrs. J. B. Thompson, with Mrs. Coe, second; Mrs. Truxes, third, and Miss Lillian Whitside, fourth. A potato race for enlisted men resulted in a tie between 1st Sergeant Harris, Troop "F", 2nd Cavalry, and Private Engel, Battery "A", 9th Field Artillery. A novelty event for grooms was won by Private Van Dyke, Stables No. 4. After the show, coffee and "hot dogs" were served by the School for Bakers and Cooks.

The February Horse Show was held in the West Riding Hall on the evening of February 6, 1925. The bucking barrel class was won by Private Autry, Transportation Stables, who was dislodged from the barrel only after 1 minute and 7 seconds. The class for cow ponies, open only to civilians, was won by Mr. Chard. The ladies' jumping class was won by Miss Lillian Whitside, with Mrs. Creed, second, and Mrs. Truxes, third. The enlisted men's jumping class was won by Private Lovesee, 2nd Cavalry, with Corporal Starkey, 9th Engineers, second, and Sergeant Rembe, 2nd Cavalry, third.

The Troop Officers' Jumping Class resulted in a tie between Captain Pierce, Captain Ramey and Captain Creed, all of whom had clean performances. In the jump off, they were placed as listed above. Lieutenant Puncett of the Cuban Army was fourth. The Second Platoon, Captain Coe, Instructor, won the platoon phase of this event. The jumping class for officers on duty with school troops, was won by Lieutenant Reinberg, with Lieutenant Jennings second, Lieutenant Wofford third, and Major Conard fourth. The jumping class for staff officers and instructors resulted in a tie between Captain Beeman and Major Lyman, who were placed in that order in the jump off. Captain Stevens was third and Captain Weeks fourth. The Advanced Equitation Class pair jumping was won by Major Strong and Captain Gay, with Captain Lambert and Lieutenant Holbrook second, and Captain Grow and Captain Maddocks third.

The team jumping class, for the Standard Plate and three hunting snaffles, donated by Captain Waters, was won by the 1st Platoon of the Troop Officers' Class, Captain Roffe, Instructor, with a team composed of Captain Creed, Captain Maher and Captain Pierce. The Post Headquarters team, composed of Lieutenant Waddell, Captain Weeks and Captain Washburn, was second and the 2nd Cavalry team composed of Lieutenant Reinburg, Lieutenant Thornburg and Captain Monahan, third.

The whole Cavalry School was given over to the Army Relief on Friday afternoon and Saturday, February 27th and 28th. The program included a circus in the West Riding Hall on Friday afternoon, a cabaret Friday night and an air circus Saturday afternoon.

The circus started off with a grand parade of all the performers around the post. The side shows of ringing live ducks, throwing tennis balls at boxes, fortune telling and an exhibition of the smallest dog in the world garnered many dollars in small change. The Ladies' Costume Ride to music by 32 members of the Ladies' Riding Class was a well executed and charming performance. A stirring holdup of the Deadwood Coach followed. The cow pony class was won by Mr. Chard. The Medicos, in a gruesome autopsy on a live victim, caused uproarious laughter. The bareback riding, including a "Fred Stone Rope Act," rivalled anything that Barnum ever put on. Members of the Troop Officers' Class enacted a stirring Jousting event between Queen Arthur and Mrs. Launcelot for the hand of the Virgin Knight and the Special Advanced Equitation Class gave a ludicrous burlesque of an Instructor's School Ride. Other events were the covered wagon, a Buckling Barrel Contest and a Greased Pig Contest. Boy Scouts sold crackerjack and peanuts and the Bakers' and Cooks' School coffee and sandwiches.

The cabaret was jammed to the doors and a good time "was had by all." The hits of the evening were the Sally chorus, led by Mrs. Neilson, and the Black and White Ballet, led by Captain Millholland. It is rumored that Mr. Ziegfeld made several flattering offers after the show. The Equitating Balletiers and Bud's Tanbark Tooters were side splitting acts, the former a classic dancing act and the latter a German brass band. Miss Lillian Whitside and Captain Mallan gave a lovely exhibition waltz and Mr. Fletcher Sargent of Junction City gave a seductive oriental dance. Other attractive acts were a radio concert by Lieutenant Pride, a vocal solo by Mrs. Neilson and a musical fanfare by the 2nd Cavalry Drum and Bugle Corps and the 9th Cavalry Band. At the end of the performance, opportunity tickets for many beautiful gifts donated by the merchants of Junction City, were drawn.

The air circus started with formation flying and an aerial review, and included machine gun and bomb attacks, stunt flying by Captain Bock and a parachute jump by Private Snyder. Aerial photographs were made by the 9th Photo Section and sold for a small sum. Tickets were raffled off to civilians for three airplane rides and the ladies of the post reaped a small harvest selling tags.

In all, a total of over \$3,000.00 was made for the Army Relief.

Regimental Notes

THIRD CAVALRY (Less First Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia
Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, Commanding

The winter season opened on December 5th with a pay ride in the riding hall for the benefit of the Army Relief Society. In spite of the very disagreeable weather that we had on that day the hall was filled.

The program was a very good one; consisting of a rough riding exhibition by Troop F, Roman riding by Troop G, a Squadron Drill, and an Officers' School ride led by Colonel Hawkins. There was also a class for the best trooper's mount, and a civilian and an officers' jumping class.

Since this first date there has been a ride given every Friday afternoon. Troop F has specialized in rough riding. Troop G, in Roman and bare-back riding, Troop E, in school riding. At various times the program has been changed by a drill given by the entire Squadron, a drill by the 1st Battalion 16th Field Artillery, an officers' or a non-commissioned officers' jumping class, a drill by one of the Batteries and an officers' school ride led by Colonel Hawkins. These Friday afternoon programs have become so popular that on February the twenty-seventh at the drill given in honor of the Chief of Staff there were over twelve hundred and forty tickets given out.

For the second time since being stationed at Fort Myer, the Regiment (less the 1st Squadron) participated in the Inaugural parade as a guard of honor to the President and the Vice-President.

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont
Lieut. Colonel Herbert E. Mann, Commanding

During the past three months the post has experienced some of the coldest weather, and the heaviest snow storm, that has been seen around here for many years. The mounted work out of doors has been restricted mainly to horse exercise, while the Post Riding Hall has been constantly in use for equitation purposes, and for the training of remounts which were received here last December. Another car-load of particularly high grade remounts were received by the Cavalry in February, and training has commenced on these.

From the 20th of January to the 8th of February the entire garrison was engaged in its annual task of cutting, hauling, and storing ice.

On February 21st the Post in conjunction with the University of Vermont, held an Ice Carnival. Entries were made from the garrison, the University of Vermont, and other civilians; appropriate cups and prizes being presented by the Post and the

Chamber of Commerce of Burlington, Vermont. Unfortunately the skating events had to be omitted on account of the thawing of our ice rink, but the skiing, skijoring, snow shoeing, obstacle races, etc., went off well. This Squadron won the most points for the Army, with Troop "B" in the lead.

The troops are going in strong for gallery practice this winter. The first indoor gallery competition was held between the various organizations, the competitors being men who fired last year and failed to qualify. This competition was won by Headquarters Detachment, and will be followed by competitions between marksman, sharp-shooter, and experts from the different troops.

An exciting and closely contested Basketball Tournament has been in progress since December 16th, the outcome of which is still in doubt.

Our string of polo ponies have had a good rest for the last two months, and are now fit and ready to start in strenuous training for the coming season.

On Saturday, February 28th, the garrison was startled by the unusual sensation of an earthquake, which was quite severe in this locality.

FOURTH CAVALRY (less 1st Squadron)—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming
Colonel Osmun Latrobe, Commanding

Colonel Osmun Latrobe took command on January 3rd.

The Post Bowling Championship was won by the 4th Cavalry Officers' team consisting of Captains R. E. Willoughby, C. W. Burkett, P. S. Haydon, and Lieutenant A. K. Hammond.

March 3rd, being the 70th anniversary of the organization of the regiment, was declared a holiday. The day was celebrated by appropriate exercises and a Horse Show. The program of the exercises was:

Explanation of assembly by Regimental Commander.

Prayer by Chaplain.

Reading of short history of regiment.

Presentation of new men to colors.

Short talk to new men by Regimental Commander.

Address by Brigadier General J. J. Jenkins.

National Anthem.

The Horse Show events and place winners were:

CLASS 1. Officers mount, Private or Government owned. 1st Place: Captain R. E. Willoughby. 2nd Place: Captain T. A. Dobyns. 3rd Place: Lt. H. I. Hodes.

CLASS 2. Non-commissioned Officers Jumping. 1st Place: Sgt. John S. Maras, Troop G. 2nd Place: Sgt. Daniel F. Murphy, Hq. Troop. 3rd Place: Sgt. Clarence Jones, Troop E.

CLASS 3. Privates Jumping. 1st Place: Pvt. Arthur B. Carlton, Hq. Troop. 2nd Place: Pvt. Norbert E. Tuck, Troop G. 3rd Place: Pvt. Steve Fernick, Troop E.

CLASS 4. Officers Jumping. 1st Place: Lt. A. K. Hammond. 2nd Place: Captain T. A. Dobyns. 3rd Place: Captain P. S. Haydon.

CLASS 5. Enlisted Mens' Equitation. 1st Place: Pvt. Bundy Penegar, Service Troop. 2nd Place: Sgt. John J. Donegan, Hq. Troop. 3rd Place: Pvt. Andrew Wescott, Hq. Det. 2nd Sq.

CLASS 6. Recruits, full field equipment. 1st Place: Pvt. James Pratt, Hq. Troop. 2nd Place: Pvt. Fred Hartman, Hq. Troop. 3rd Place: Pvt. James Brown, Troop T.

CLASS 7. Escort Wagon Class. 1st Place: Pvt. Ellis M. Mitchell, Service Troop. 2nd Place: Pvt. Anton D. Jurgatis, Service Troop. 3rd Place: Pvt. Marvin E. Hunt, Service Troop.

CLASS 8. Radio Set Class. 1st Place: 2nd Squadron Detachment.

CLASS 9. Mule Jumping, Bareback. 1st Place: Pvt. Arthur Briscoe, Service Troop. 2nd Place: Pvt. Wasil Kozol, Service Troop. 3rd Place: Pvt. Joe Karaniczyz Service Troop.

CLASS 10. Special Officers' Jumping. 1st Place: Lt. C. C. Blakeney, 76th F. A. 2nd Place: Lt. W. C. Stout, 76th F. A. 3rd Place: Capt. L. A. Shafer, 13th Cavalry.

The Troop winning the largest number of points was, Headquarters Troop, commanded by 1st Lieutenant E. E. Cox, 4th Cavalry.

Many guests from Cheyenne and the other regiments stationed at the post were present for the Horse Show.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort Meade, South Dakota

Major Otto Wagner, 4th Cavalry, Commanding

There have recently been received three carloads of remounts from the Remount Depot at Fort Robinson, Nebraska. These replacements were badly needed as the average age of horses of this squadron is between 12 and 15 years. Most of the young horses received promise to make excellent troopers' mounts and some of them can probably be developed into good polo ponies.

The squadron has received 43 recruits since January 1st, 1925. A large part of the present training is devoted to recruit instruction and training of remounts.

The Advanced Course in Tactics, for officers, under the direction of Major Otto Wagner and Captain C. G. Wall has been an excellent one and has been strictly carried out according to the original schedule. A short course in Public Speaking has been recently incorporated in this course. Officers have chosen the following subjects for their lectures:

Major Wagner—"Preparation of Addresses."

Captain Kilburn—"Early History of U. S. Army."

Captain Wall—"The Present Day Army."

Lieutenant Ward—"Progress of War Settlements."

Lieutenant Gregg—"The Chaotic Condition of European Finance."

Lieutenant Stone—"Muscle Shoals."

Captain Barnum—"The Paris Peace Conference, 1919."

Lieutenant Noble—"General Mitchell's Campaign for a United Air Service."

Lieutenant Sells—"Premier Mussolini."

Major Wagner—"Events Leading Up to the World War."

The Enlisted Men's Dance Committee has been giving one dance a month. These dances are popular and well attended. As there is no band at this post the expense of Officers' and Enlisted Men's dances must be borne by the individual. Due to the isolation of the post the cost of transporting and engaging dance orchestras is high and therefore dances have been few.

The Squadron Basketball League, composed of teams from Troop A, B and C, has been playing some exciting and fast basketball during the winter months. The teams are evenly matched and the race is very close.

The individual stars of the league are Lieutenant Gregg, 4th Cavalry; Sergeant Dyer, Troop A; Corporal Morris, Troop C; Private Hendricks, Troop B.

The present standing of the three teams is as follows: Troop A won 5, lost 3; Troop B won 3, lost 5; Troop C won 4, lost 4.

The Post Team is composed of the following players: Sergeant Dyer, Forward; Private Hendricks, Forward; Corporal Morris, Center; Lieutenant Gregg, Guard; Corporal Szpienski, Guard. To date the Post Team has competed in two outside games with the following results: Fort Meade 11, Spearfish 14; Fort Meade 20, Deadwood 19.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel Wallace B. Scales, Commanding

During the month of February the regiment engaged in record saber practice, in which 158 qualified as Experts, 156 Excellent, 7 Swordsman, and 10 were Unqualified. Percentage qualified—96.9.

There are still about twenty officers and enlisted men to take the course; all are expected to qualify, thereby raising the percentage.

On March 3rd the regiment celebrated the seventieth anniversary of its organization. Following is the program of the exercises for the day:

(a) Salute to the Standard—Band playing National Anthem.

(b) Reading of G. O. No. 2, Hq. 5th Cavalry, February 6th, 1920.

(c) Address—History and achievements of regiment.

(d) Address by regimental commander.

(e) Regimental March by the band.

(f) Reminiscences by Master Sergeant Bovee, oldest soldier in point of service with the regiment.

(g) America—by the band.

This was followed by an officers' polo game in the afternoon and an enlisted men's dance at night.

Due to the recent death of Lieutenant Colonel R. R. Love, the Executive Officer of the regiment, the officers did not have their customary dinner and dance on Organization Day.

The First Squadron and Headquarters Troop started range practice with the rifle on March 1st. The Second Squadron and Service Troop started range practice with the pistol on March 1st. Although we set a high standard in qualifications attained last year in all arms we are out to surpass those marks this year.

Due to pressure of business and a shortage of officers, the regiment did not send a polo team to Fort Sam Houston, Texas, for the mid-winter tournaments. A team from Fort Clark, is now at Sam Houston, engaged in the tournaments and is composed of Captains J. M. Tully, F. H. Barnhart, and E. M. Daniels of the regiment and Captain S. Berg, of the 1st Machine Gun Squadron. The team has been successful to date, having won three out of four games played.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Ga.

Colonel Robert J. Fleming, Commanding

On January first the annual presentation of trophies and medals to individuals and organizations was made. Troop "C," Captain Renn Lawrence commanding, was again awarded the Guidon streamer for attaining the highest average in Military Proficiency during the year 1924 and the cup presented to the troop securing the highest number of points in the annual horse show. Troop "F," Captain Robert R. Maxwell commanding, was awarded the banner for the highest average in Military Administration, while Troop "G," Captain Wharton G. Ingram commanding, won all first place awards for the highest percentage obtained in Rifle, Automatic Rifle, Pistol dismounted and Pistol mounted practice for the year, qualifying 100 per cent in each record practice. Troop "G" also won the cup offered in the Troop Rifle Competition with an average score of 312.3.

Monthly field days were held in January and February. The events in February showed a decided improvement over previous months, especially in pair jumping and novelty jumping, the winners winning with a clean performance.

The Chief of Staff of the Army, Major General John L. Hines, visited the Post on February second and third. A review followed by a tactical inspection was held on the morning of the third, while in the afternoon Post Schools, Headquarters, Barracks and Stables were inspected. The General's visit was the occasion for a very delightful Hop at the Officers' Hop Room. He expressed himself as well pleased with the condition of the Regiment.

A review by the Commanding Officer on February thirteenth was used to present streamers to which the Sixth is entitled to bear on its standard. Twenty-two streamers bearing inscriptions of Indian Wars, Civil War, Spanish-American War, China

Relief Expedition, Philippines Insurrection and the World War campaigns and engagements were placed on the standard.

During February the Officers and Ladies of the Post gave a County Fair and the entire Post gave a Carnival for the benefit of the Army Relief Society. A total of \$545.67 was raised and forwarded as a result of these entertainments.

A Gun Club has been organized by the Officers and Ladies of the Post, together with a number of enthusiastic civilians from Chattanooga. All equipment has been installed and regular meets are held three times a week. The Higgins Trophy is being competed for at the present time and real competition has developed.

The Baseball season has started with the prospect of developing the fastest team we have had in several years. We are a member of the City League of Chattanooga which assures us strong competition and a regular schedule of three games a week throughout the season.

Captain W. G. Simmons has been ordered to duty with the Organized Reserves with station at Knoxville, Tennessee, and Captain W. C. Steiger has been ordered to the Philippines. Lieutenant W. P. Campbell is attending the Chemical Warfare School at Edgewood Arsenal.

The Regiment reached its authorized strength during February with 133 recruits now in training with the Recruit Detachment. It is expected to complete all Recruit Drill in time to return all recruits to duty to take part in the summer training camps to be held here this summer for the CMTC, ROTC, ORC and National Guard.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

In December the Regiment completed the training of the individual soldier, tests of which the Brigade Commander, Brigadier General Joseph C. Castner, conducted soon thereafter and pronounced creditable. Recently the training squad and the platoon was satisfactorily finished.

During January and February the Regiment, with the exception of a few men in the Hospital, fired the Pistol Qualification Course, mounted and dismounted. Out of the total firing, only four men were lost. A high percentage is anticipated for the Regiment when the final results shall be tabulated, which will be in keeping with the excellent record of last year.

The saber qualification course has just been completed with the excellent result of 98.7 per cent. for the Regiment.

During the quarter officers have been attending schools in Tactics, Equitation, and Field Service Regulations.

On account of favorable weather, interest in athletics has not waned. The Regimental Basketball Team made a creditable showing in the Post League, but did not achieve first honors. The Team played in the league at El Paso and gave the winners a hard fight for first place. Two days, December 23rd and 24th were devoted to a Regimental field meet embracing mounted and dismounted events. Prizes were awarded to Troops and individuals. Presentation was by Colonel Fitzhugh Lee.

The baseball season for the Regiment opened on February 15th with an appropriate speech from Colonel Lee, the band playing "Garry Owen," and Service Headquarters Troops crossing bats. The inter-troop league is now well under way. The Regimental Team has promising players, and its prospects for championship of the Post League are good. The Post League Pennant won by this Regiment for two consecutive years, waves over the grandstand challenging the players to make it theirs for a third consecutive year. Lieutenant A. B. Clark is coaching and managing the Team. Sergeant W. W. Morrison is assistant, and is very active in all athletic affairs of the Regiment.

The Regimental Band, conducted by Warrant Officer C. B. Price, began the

spring concert season on Sunday afternoon, February 15th. The concerts are welcomed by the personnel of the Post, and are attended regularly by a large audience from El Paso.

During the past quarter the Non-commissioned Officers' Club of the Regiment, has promoted successfully a few dances, several masquerades, radio concerts, smokers, and sociables. An auxiliary to the Club has been organized among the wives of the Non-commissioned Officers. The auxiliary has proven a valuable aid in entertainments. The Club is active and prosperous.

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel S. McP. Rutherford, Commanding

Results of the recent mounted pistol competition between five-man teams from each cavalry troop of the army show the Eighth Cavalry in the three top places. Troop "F" took first place—total score, 147; Troop "G," second, 146, and Troop "E," third, 145. A letter has been received from the Brigade Commander congratulating the regiment on this remarkable record. That one squadron should take all three places in a competition entered by all troops of the army is considered more than phenomenal.

The members of the Troop "F" team were awarded gold medals and a bronze medal for highest regimental score. These medals were presented at Regimental Inspection on February 28th, by the Regimental Commander.

This year's pistol firing has been completed, with gratifying results. About 86.75 per cent qualified dismounted, and about 97.1 per cent mounted. Both E and F Troops qualified all men mounted.

This regiment's organization day is November 23rd. It was desired to celebrate the event, but the celebration had to be deferred until December 30th on account of the rush of activities during November. The celebration took the form of a field meet, opened by an address by the Regimental Commander on the history and achievements of the regiment. The field meet, comprising both mounted and dismounted events, was won by Troop F. It is intended to hereafter make the celebration of organization day an annual event.

The Brigade completed saber practice on February 25th. Of the officers and enlisted men of this regiment running the course 89.67 per cent qualified. Troops "A" and "E" qualified all officers and enlisted men.

The facilities afforded by the new area service club have greatly stimulated interest in basket-ball. During the winter just past an inter-troop league was formed, and after many good games Service Troop carried away the honors. The regimental team is on top in the post league and its winning the title is almost assured.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Lieut. Colonel Kerr T. Riggs, Commanding

The Ninth Cavalry Club boasts one of the finest Enlisted Men's Club Houses in the service. Fully equipped in every detail to furnish comfort and recreation to the men of the regiment, their wives and friends, it has been the center of attraction during the winter months. In addition to the regular weekly hops, and the moving pictures, a number of special entertainments have attracted large social gatherings. At all of these joyful festivities, Sergeant Clyde Andrews' Jazz Orchestra thrills the veterans of six or seven "hitches" with the spirit of gallant youth.

The elimination boxing bouts on February 12th drew a large crowd of patrons of the "Manly Art." Four fast and furious bouts furnished an enthusiastic audience with plenty of excitement.

An innovation to furnish amusement and entertainment for the members of the regiment and their friends, entertainments consisting of both mounted and dismounted events are held periodically at the West Riding Hall. These events are held at night so as to permit everyone to attend and are officially known as "NINTH CAVALRY

NIGHTS." Music is furnished by the band, and refreshments are served following the contests. The troop winning the highest number of points is presented with a banner. "NINTH CAVALRY NIGHT" on January 28th included the following events: Caterpillar Race, Potato Race (Mounted), Three-legged Race, Mounted Wrestling and a Relay Race. Troops finished as follows: First, Troop G, 11 points; second, Headquarters and Service Troop, 10 points; third, Troop F, 7 points; fourth, Troop C, 6 points. "NINTH CAVALRY NIGHT" on February 11th was won by Troop A with 13 points; second, Headquarters and Service Troop, 10 points; third, Troop B, 8 points; fourth, Troop G, 7 points. The program included the following events: Mounted Boxing, Greased Pig Chase (open to married men only, winner gets pig), Pie-eating Contest, Pillow Fight and Mounted Wrestling.

The Army Relief Benefit on February 27-28th was a huge success. The Ninth Cavalry took an active part in the numerous entertainments that were held to raise funds.

As the basketball season draws to an end the regimental baseball team is commencing its spring practice. Several very promising players have been acquired who will bring added strength to the very formidable aggregation of last year.

On February 18th a retirement party was given in honor of First Sergeant Richard L. Wilson and Staff Sergeant Miles Terry.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California Colonel H. J. Brees, Commanding

On December 12 and 13 the regiment entered a team in the 30th Infantry Horse Show, which was held at San Francisco. Under the direction of Major Sloan Doak this team brought back several cups and ribbons. Cups were won by the following entrants: Colonel H. J. Brees, Clift Hotel Cup; Captain W. J. Redner, Fairmont Hotel Cup; 1st Lieutenant Sol M. Lipman, Cup presented by Major General Chas. G. Morton, Corps Area Commander; 1st Lieutenant P. A. Noel, Hotel Plaza Cup; Sergeant T. P. Farrell, Troop B, The Mecchi and Company Cup; Private Dahlstrom, Headquarters Troop, winner of two cups presented by the 30th Infantry. The Regiment considers it acquitted itself admirably considering that it was in competition with some of the best civilian horseman and horses on the Pacific Coast.

The month of January was devoted to completing the saber course of 1925. Practically every man in the regiment was put through the course and almost 100% qualified. February and the first week in March was allotted to pistol practice dismounted. The remainder of March will be used for mounted pistol practice. It is intended to finish all target practice before the summer training camps begin. The results to date are very gratifying.

During the month of January one and two-day marches were made by all troops which greatly facilitated the field training. The weekly parades are still continuing. Regimental parade being held on the first Thursday of the month and squadron parades the remaining Thursdays. These parades are of much interest to the civilian population, all being well attended by people from Monterey, Del Monte, Pacific Grove and Pebble Beach.

Two members of the regiment have been cited by the Secretary of War in War Department General Orders for heroic conduct on September 14, 1924, during the destructive oil fire which occurred at that time. The two heroes are Sergeant Herbert A. Pederson, Headquarters Troop, 11th Cavalry, and Private George Bolio, Headquarters Troop, 11th Cavalry, who was cited posthumously, he having lost his life in the fire.

Athletics have been progressing satisfactorily. The regiment participated in a post dismounted field meet on February 25, winning a fair share of first places. A boxing card was held at the Post Gymnasium on February 26th, in which the regiment was well represented.

Preparations are being made for the summer training camps, Troop B, Captain James M. Adamson, commanding, having been designated to go to Camp Lewis, Washington, in June, to participate in training at that station, while Troop C, Captain D. C. Hawley, commanding, will go to Camp Del Monte, California.

TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Fort Ringgold and Sam Fordyce, Texas Colonel John M. Morgan, Commanding

The entire regiment will engage in rifle practice, automatic rifle practice and musketry problems at Fort Ringgold this year, due to the lack of range facilities at Fort Brown and the excellent terrain at Fort Ringgold. One-half of the Fort Brown command, with Lieutenant Colonel Edmund A. Buchanan, 12th Cavalry, in charge, left Fort Brown March 5th for Fort Ringgold, the itinerary calling for a five-days' march. When this contingent has completed firing and has returned to Fort Brown, the other half of the Fort Brown command will go to Fort Ringgold.

The completion of saber record practice, regular season, at Fort Brown in February, shows satisfactory progress in the training in this arm. Among the enlisted men, sixty-two qualified as expert, one hundred and eighty-six as excellent and twenty-three as swordsmen, making a total of two hundred and seventy-one qualified. The qualifications total sixty-nine more than are required to run the course, these being authorized but not required to demonstrate their ability in the saber. Fort Ringgold has not completed saber practice, having taken up rifle practice first in order to be able to turn the class A range over to the Fort Brown troops in March.

Athletics held the interest of the command throughout the past quarter. The basketball series consisted of 15 games with five organization teams competing. The series was completed February 11th, and Headquarters Troop awarded a loving cup for first place. Service Troop took second place. Field meets, including dismounted and mounted events, were conducted on January 31st and February 23rd. Good boxing cards entertained fight fans on the nights of December 29th, February 6th and March 3rd with five bouts each night. An inter-troop baseball league has been organized for the 1925 season. The official series will begin in May and will consist of a "once-around" round robin, each team playing each other team once.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming Colonel John J. Boniface, Commanding

During the past three months weather conditions have been exceptionally good in comparison with the usual Wyoming winters. The 13th Cavalry has thus been allowed, for the most part, to proceed without interruptions with its program of training. Frequent regimental practice marches, tactical inspections, and weekly mounted and dismounted parades are nearly always held as scheduled. The regiment is fortunate in having received 117 new horses, about one-third of which have completed their remount training and have been assigned for duty; the remaining remounts are progressing very satisfactorily under the supervision of Captain Selby and the personnel of Troop "E".

The 13th Cavalry Annual Horse Show, which was held on January 30, was complimentary to the Commanding General, Fort D. A. Russell and to the Governor and State Legislature of Wyoming. The seating and standing capacity of the riding hall would scarcely accommodate the spectators. A tea was given at Post Headquarters after the show to welcome the Wyoming Legislature, in session at that time.

A riding team, composed mainly of 13th Cavalry entries, participated in the National Western Horse Show in Denver during January. Fourteen ribbons were won in the nine classes entered. The most valued ribbons won were first places in the five-foot class and in the pairs of hunters; both of these classes were won on 13th Cavalry horses.

Nine officers of the 13th Cavalry have recently purchased horses either in Colorado or Wyoming. Practically all officers are now mounted on private mounts, there being 22 private mounts in the regiment.

In addition to our equitation classes, a cross country ride of about ten miles is held on each Thursday afternoon. All officers take this ride, which is led by Colonel Boniface. Twice this ride terminated at the Regimental Commander's quarters where tea and sandwiches were served by Mrs. Boniface.

The regiment has bright prospects for a good season of polo. Fourteen officers are training new ponies selected from the remounts just received in the regiment. Plans are being made for a local tournament in July, during the Cheyenne Frontier Days Celebration.

The 13th Cavalry Regimental Dinner was given at the Plains Hotel in Cheyenne on February 18th. This monthly affair is normally given in the Officers' Club, but the change to a new orchestra and dancing between courses made a pleasant innovation.

At a regimental dismounted parade on December 12, decorations, awarded by competent authorities, were formally presented by Brigadier General John M. Jenkins to the following officers and enlisted men of the 13th Cavalry for meritorious and conspicuous service: Colonel John J. Boniface, Major Mack Garr, Captain H. C. Minuth, Sergeant Alex Lager, Sergeant John May, and Corporal J. V. A. Kruas.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa, and Fort Sheridan, Illinois Lieutenant Colonel A. H. Davidson, Commanding

Troop A returned to Fort Sheridan on December 1st from St. Louis, Mo., after participating in the St. Louis Horse Show. This troop was one of the main attractions at the Horse Show and received many favorable notices.

The regimental training during this period has consisted of schools for officers and enlisted men and mounted and dismounted drills.

On January 5 the regiment (less 1st Squadron) received 22 remounts from Ft. Robinson, Nebraska. These remounts together with those received earlier in the year are being trained daily in the officer's and non-commissioned officer's equitation classes.

Lieutenant Colonel A. H. Davidson took command of the regiment on January 18, Colonel Caldwell having been promoted on that date to the grade of Brigadier General.

General Caldwell left Fort Des Moines on February 13 for Fortress Monroe.

On February 18 Lieutenant Colonel H. J. McKenney joined from sick leave, having been attached to the regiment by War Department Orders.

A great deal of interest has been shown by all organizations in the various competitions scheduled for the winter season.

The post football championship was not decided as both games between Troop G and Troop F to determine the winner resulted in a tie.

The bowling schedule which ended on February 20 resulted in a tie between the Service Troop and the Quartermaster Corps team, each having won nine games and lost one. The tie will be played off on March 3.

The winner of this event will receive a cup donated by Argonne Post No. 60, American Legion of Des Moines.

In the Indoor Pistol Competition the teams at the top at the present time are:

Headquarters Troop, 14th Cavalry	4680
Service Troop, 14th Cavalry	4664
Troop F, 14th Cavalry	4442

The post basketball championship was won by the Combat Train, 9th Field Artillery, with eight straight victories. Troop G, 14th Cavalry was second, having won seven games and lost one.

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas Colonel George Williams, Commanding

During the month of December this regiment gave two demonstrations as follows: December 3—Headquarters Troop Demolition Sections and December 5 the 1st Squadron in an advance guard problem.

In January each troop of the regiment was assigned periods in the riding halls for the preparation of exhibition rides to be given on Saturday morning during the winter. On January 17th an exhibition drill was given by Troop G, demonstrating all phases of platoon drill. The following Saturday the Communication Platoon Headquarters Troop gave an exhibition drill showing the speed of setting up radio stations and establishing communication. Troop F also gave a drill showing the training of troopers' mounts in combat which included rifle fire, pistol and saber.

On January 26, Troop G gave an exhibition drill for the Chief of Field Artillery. Troop F acted as mounted escort on the departure of Chief of Field Artillery from this post on January 26th.

Troop C and the Service Troop gave exhibition drills on February 21. The former demonstrated close order drill, mounted, and the latter gave an excellent driving exhibition.

A class in equitation and jumping under Captain Wharton and Captain Duke is being conducted during the winter months for all the officers of the regiment.

The middle of February saw the second of a series of School Horse Shows. The School Troops open jumping being won by Lt. Reinburg, 2nd Cavalry, with Lt. Jennings second and Lt. Wofford third. In the team jumping for entire school the 2nd Cavalry Team, Lt. Reinburg, Lt. Thornburgh, Capt. Monihan, took third place.

ESTABLISHED 1818

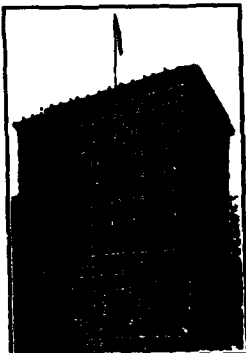
Brooks Brothers,
CLOTHING,
Gentlemen's Furnishing Goods,
MADISON AVENUE COR. FORTY-FOURTH STREET
NEW YORK

Officers' Uniforms

Agents in the United States
for the
"Woodrow" Cap
and
Messrs. Peal & Co.'s
"Sam Browne" Belt

Send for Circular

BOSTON PALM BEACH NEWPORT
LITTLE BUILDING PLAZA BUILDING AUGER BUILDING
Tenth and Broadway C O R D E R 220 Broadway Avenue



BROOKS BROTHERS'
Building, convenient
to Grand Central, Subway,
and to many of the lead-
ing Hotels and Clubs

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of Its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITOR

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry

Copyright, 1925, by

The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association. Editor, Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Baltimore, Md., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

Office of Publication, Baltimore, Md. Editorial Office, Washington, D. C.
\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65c. Foreign Postage, 25c Additional

ESTABLISHED 1818

Brooks Brothers
CLOTHING
Gentlemen's Furnishing Goods.

MADISON AVENUE COR. FORTY-FOURTH STREET
NEW YORK

Officers' Uniforms

Agents in the United States
for the

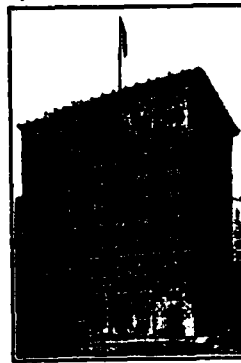
"Woodrow" Cap
and

Messrs. Peal & Co.'s

"Sam Browne" Belt

Send for Circular

BOSTON PALM BEACH NEWPORT
LITTLE BUILDING PLAZA BUILDING AUDRAIN BUILDING
Twenty one Beacon C O R D E R 222 Beacon Avenue



BROOKS BROTHERS'
Building, convenient
to Grand Central, Subway,
and to many of the lead-
ing Hotels and Clubs

New England CONSERVATORY OF MUSIC

George W. Chadwick
Director

Year Opens
September 17, 1925

Boston, Mass
Established 1867

Pianoforte, Voice, Organ, Violin, Violon-
cello and all other Orchestral Instru-
ments; Composition, Harmony, History
of Music, Theory, Solfeeggio, Diction,
Chorus, Choir Training, Ensemble for
Strings, Woodwind and Brass.

Department of Public School Music

A three year course leading to Con-
servatory Diploma.

English, Languages, Psychology and
Education

Degrees of Bachelor of Music and
Bachelor of School Music, Granted

Operatic Department

Dramatic Department

Orchestra of Eighty-Five

Free Privileges

of lectures, concerts and recitals, the
opportunities of ensemble practice and
appearing before audiences with orches-
tral accompaniment.

Dormitories for women students.

Address RALPH L. FLANDERS,
General Manager

A Selected List of Books on Cavalry and Allied Subjects

- The Desert Mounted Corps—Preston** \$4.50
The story of how the British troops, composed largely of mounted units, overcame the Turks in Palestine.
- A History of Cavalry—Denison** \$4.20
The only complete history of cavalry ever written. Analyzes all battles where cavalry played a part.
- As to Polo—Forbes** \$3.00
The standard book on the American game.
- Equitation—Bussigny** \$7.50
A system of practical exercises, carefully illustrated and explained by a master of horsemanship.
- Modern Horse Management—Timmis** \$7.50
A most beautifully illustrated book on the care, breaking and riding of horses.
- Tactical Principles and Decisions—The General Service Schools** \$7.20
With Binders \$9.00
In loose leaf form. Catalogue of chapters on request. Entire set may be purchased, or separate chapters. The basis of the course in combined arms as given at The General Service Schools.
- Breaking and Riding—Fillis** \$7.50
A classic of horse lore by a master with fifty years experience.
- Feeds and Feeding—Henry and Morrison** \$3.85
Complete study of kinds of forage, methods and results of feeding.
- Mess Sergeants' Handbook—Holbrook** \$1.00
How to handle the ration in field and garrison.
- Modern Military Map Reading and Sketching—Pearson** \$2.50
A complete, comprehensive, practical, up to the minute treatise.
- History of the 6th Cavalry Brigade, 1914-18—Bickersteth** \$5.00
Tells the story of the 6th Cavalry Brigade in France where the cavalryman was an all-around virtuoso of fighting.
- The Strategy of the Western Front—Sargent** \$2.50
Affords a well studied and comprehensive conception of the World War in its major aspects.
- Robert E. Lee The Soldier—Maurice** \$4.00
The best one-volume study of Lee, the soldier.
- History of the Great War—Edmonds**
Volume I—France and Belgium, Aug.-Oct., 1914 \$8.00
Maps to accompany Volume I \$8.00
Volume II—France and Belgium, Oct.-Nov., 1914 \$5.00
Maps to accompany Volume II \$2.20
These volumes bear the official approval of the British Government. Remarkably accurate and complete.
- Development of Tactics Based on the World War—Balck** \$2.00
The development of every arm of the service during the World War is discussed and resultant changes in employment stated.

A Selected List of Books on Cavalry and Allied Subjects (Continued)

- Military Intelligence—A New Weapon in War—Sweeny** \$2.50
Presents the subject in a manner both clear and interesting.
- Hints on Horsemanship—McTaggart** \$2.00
One of the most practical books on horsemanship that has appeared for some time.
- Principles of Equitation—de Souza** \$5.00
Written by a master of twenty years experience. Especially adapted to the needs of beginners.
- Official History of Australia in the War of 1914-18. Volume VII, Sinai and Palestine—Gullet** \$7.50
Describes in detail the operations participated in by the Australian and New Zealand forces as they fought from the Suez to Damascus in 1916, 17 and 18.
- Instructions in Learning Accurate Pistol Shooting—Thomas** 50c
A guide to shooting the 45 caliber pistol.
- Principles of Command—Jones** \$1.00
A valuable book on the management of men.
- Principles of War—Foch** \$7.50
An invaluable book for the military man.
- Stonewall Jackson and the American Civil War—Henderson** \$8.00
Recounts the exploits of Stonewall Jackson, that peerless leader of men.
- Leaves from a War Diary—Harbord** \$5.00
A full and accurate story of the A. E. F. by one of its highest commanders.
- Cavalry in War and Peace—Bernhardi** \$2.25
Every phase of cavalry duties.
- The War With Mexico—Smith** \$10.00
The story of our war with Mexico is here told for the first time.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> The Desert Mounted Corps | <input type="checkbox"/> History of the 6th Cavalry Brigade |
| <input type="checkbox"/> A History of Cavalry | <input type="checkbox"/> The Strategy of the Western Front |
| <input type="checkbox"/> As to Polo | <input type="checkbox"/> Robert E. Lee, The Soldier |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Equitation | <input type="checkbox"/> History of the Great War— |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Modern Horse Management | Volume I |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Tactical Principles and Decisions | Maps, Volume I |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Breaking and Riding | Volume II |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Mess Sergeants' Handbook | Maps, Volume II |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Development of Tactics Based on the | <input type="checkbox"/> Instructions in Learning Accurate Pis- |
| World War | tol Shooting |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Military Intelligence | <input type="checkbox"/> Principles of Command |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Hints on Horsemanship | <input type="checkbox"/> Principles of War |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Principles of Equitation | <input type="checkbox"/> Stonewall Jackson and the American |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Official History of Australia in the | Civil War |
| War of 1914-18 | <input type="checkbox"/> Feeds and Feeding |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Leaves from a War Diary | <input type="checkbox"/> Modern Military Map Reading and |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cavalry in War and Peace | Sketching |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The War With Mexico | |

CHECK IN SPACE OPPOSITE THE BOOKS WANTED

Please send the books checked above. 1925

Name

Address

.....

The only book of
its kind in English.

Price \$5.00

Warfare

BY

Colonel J. W. Wright, Infantry, U. S. A.
Lieut. Colonel Oliver L. Spaulding, Field Artillery, U. S. A.
Hoffman Nickerson

A book in one volume giving military methods from the earliest times. Gives for each period the organization, tactics, weapons in use, with their range, rapidity of fire, weight, accuracy, etc. A battle or campaign is described for each period.

Book Department, U. S. Cavalry Association
1624 H STREET, N. W.

Washington, D. C.

ANIMAL MANAGEMENT

Prepared in the
Veterinary Department
British War Office

A compendium of information on the horse. Has been for several years a text book at The Cavalry School. Contains chapters on points of the horse, stable construction, stable management, feeds and feeding, conditioning, fitting saddles, shoeing, prevention and first aid treatment of diseases.

The best book of its kind.

Price \$1.00

Book Department
U. S. Cavalry
Association

1624 H Street, N. W.
Washington, D. C.

HORSE-SENSE and HORSEMANSHIP OF TODAY

By

Geoffrey Brooke, D. S. O., M. C.
Lieut. Colonel 16th/5th Lancers

The Journal of The United Service
Institution says of this book:

"This book is wonderful because from cover to cover, it is full of good meat easily digestible without a superfluous word. The photographs are excellent and deserve careful study."

Should be owned by all men who hunt, or play polo, or take any active interest in horses.

Price \$5.00

Book Department
U. S. Cavalry
Association

1624 H Street, N. W.
Washington, D. C.

The History of the United States Army

By Major W. A. Ganoe, Inf.

Price \$5.00

Book Department
U. S. Cavalry Association

1624 H STREET, N. W.

Every officer should possess this book. Gives an analytical review of changes in organization, drill regulations, equipment, weapons and uniform.

Washington, D. C.

CONTENTS FOR OCTOBER, 1925

VOL. XXXIV, No. 141

FIRST AND SECOND AMERICAN DIVISIONS IN THE OFFENSIVE OF JULY 8, 1918	407
General Pierre Emile Berdoulat.	
THE HORSE IN WAR.....	412
THE PHILLIPS PACK SADDLE	413
Lieutenant Colonel A. E. Phillips, Cavalry.	
A CENTURY OF CAVALRY MARCH REGULATIONS.....	423
Colonel Conrad S. Babcock, Cavalry.	
WITH THE ARMY OF FENG YU-HSIANG.....	440
HOW A PLATOON WON \$1000.....	454
Lieutenant W. F. Pride, Cavalry.	
CAVALRY OF THE RED ARMY.....	465
BETTER RIDING HORSES	468
THE SCIENCE OF HITTING IN POLO.....	469
Devereux Milburn.	
THE FIGHT AT HAELEN, AUGUST 12, 1914, AND ITS LESSONS.....	472
Gustavo A. Salas.	
PHOTOGRAPHING HORSES	476
Major C. L. Scott, Remount Service.	
A 900 MILE HORSE RACE	476
LIAISON INSTRUCTION, POST SCHOOLS AT FORT BLISS.....	478
Lieutenant Mark Rhoads, Cavalry.	
EDITORIAL COMMENT	481
NATIONAL DEFENSE—SIZE OF THE JOURNAL—OUR ADVERTISERS.	
TOPICS OF THE DAY	483
THE CAVALRY TRY-OUT MATCHES—COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE—THE CAVALRY SCHOOL TEAM—REMOUNT CONFERENCE AT FORT RENO—PRIZE POLO PONIES.	
FOREIGN MILITARY NOTES	486
THE NATIONAL GUARD	491
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES	495
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED	498
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS	501
POLO	506
REGIMENTAL ROSTERS AND NOTES	514

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President

Major General MALIN CRAIG, Chief of Cavalry.

Vice-President

Colonel HAMILTON S. HAWKINS, 3d Cavalry.

Secretary and Treasurer

Lieutenant Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel W. J. GLASGOW, Cavalry.

Colonel J. H. REEVES (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel A. C. COLAHAN, 103d Cavalry.

Colonel F. LeJ. PARKER, Cavalry.

Colonel T. A. ROBERTS, Cavalry.

Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieut. Colonel W. P. DRAPER, Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Lieut. Colonel W. M. CONNELL (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Lieut. Colonel S. R. GLEAVES, Cavalry.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

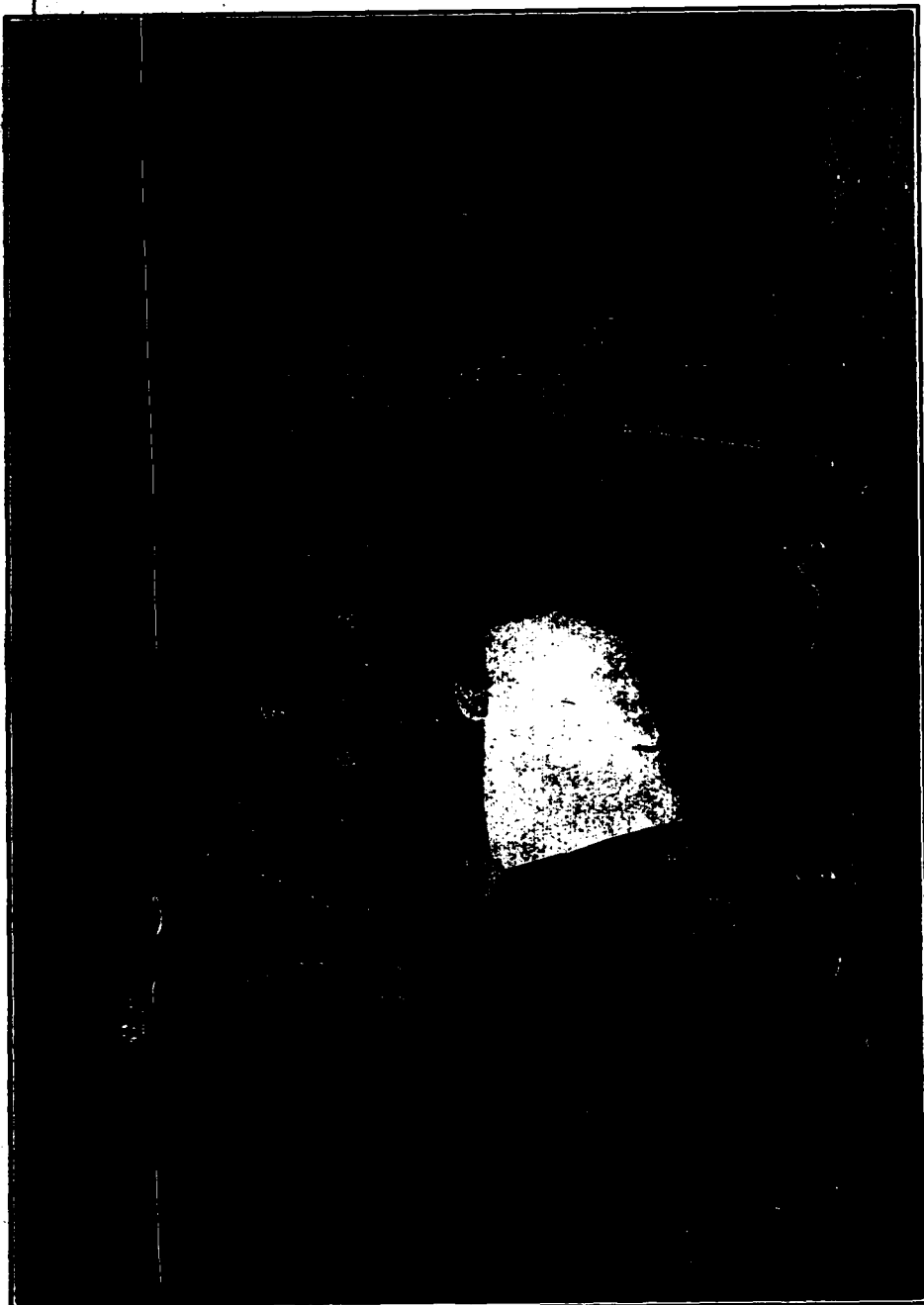
- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class I shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$2.50, which includes subscription to the Cavalry Journal, 60% thereof being so designated.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.



A Group of Civil War Cavalry Leaders
Major General Philip H. Sheridan, Brigadier General James W. Forsyth, Major General Wesley Merritt, Brigadier General Thomas C. Devin, Major General George A. Custer

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXIV

OCTOBER, 1925

No. 141

The First and Second American Divisions In the Offensive of July 8, 1918

BY

General Pierre Emile Berdoulat

WHAT a strange spectacle was that presented on July 16, 1918, in the village of Rethuil, at a large farm clinging to the side of a ravine, on the edge of the forest of Villers-Cotterets!

An incessant buzzing of motors was broken only by the sound of the galloping hoofs of the estafettes' horses. American Khaki mingled fraternally with French Horizon Blue, while the Malgache and Senegalais soldiers put a finishing picturesque touch to the scene.

In the large white-washed rooms turned into offices the General Staffs of the French 20th Corps and the American 3rd Corps worked hurriedly amidst incessant telephone ringing and hasty replies of "who speaking."

At night-fall, just as General Berdoulat, Commander of the French 20th Corps, was leaving the dinner table, General Harbord, Commander of the 2nd D. I. U. S. (2d U. S. Infantry Division) arrived, accompanied by his Chief of Staff. With the greatest calm, punctuated by the more youthful ardor of his second, the American chief recounted to the French general the difficulties arising on all sides during the hurried placing of the troops.

"First of all you are going to have your dinner served you," replied General Berdoulat, "during which time affairs will take shape"; and the G. Bureau informed of the facts, took the necessary steps. General Berdoulat was very optimistic. Two fine successes obtained the 15th of June at Coevres and the 25th of June at Saint Pierre Aigle, together with a view of the superb troops put at his disposal, inspired him with confidence—moreover, he had just finished dinner.

The most delicate of operations, however, was the placing in two nights of two heavy divisions like the First D. I. U. S. to the north of the Moroccan Division, and the Second D. I. U. S. to the south, while the heavy trucks in incessant

Note: General Berdoulat, the author of this article, is a very distinguished French General, now retired. He was in command of the Twentieth French Corps at the Battle of Soissons on July 18th and 19th, 1919, and was prompted to write this article by statements made in General Bullard's memoirs regarding the action of the Second Division on that occasion.—*The Editor.*

sant numbers carried over the whole front the necessary ammunition for such a formidable artillery; for, in addition to their own artillery, each American Division found upon arrival in its sector, ready for firing: 7 groups of 75 and 2 groups of 155 C, making a total of 108 cannons.

The 18th of July, at 2 A. M., the officers on duty received the following telephone communication:

"Hello! Headquarters of 20th Corps? Headquarters 2nd D. I. U. S. speaking: Our machine guns haven't arrived yet."

"In that case count on them no longer; this terrible storm now on has caused the ditching of a great number of lorries, the circulation is absolutely stopped and we attack at 4.35."

"All right, we'll take the Boche machine-guns."

THE ATTACK

At 4.30 General Berdoulat, on the outskirts of Retheuil, casts a long look over the battle-field. The atmosphere, washed by the recent torrents of rain, is absolutely clear. Dawn begins to break. A cannonading resounds. The Germans, made anxious no doubt by the noise of our tanks, start a timid barrage fire.

4.35—The entire front is illuminated by an uninterrupted lightning accompanied by a deep muffled thunder. Our attack is on.

All goes well, for the numerous signal rockets rising at different points of the front, indicate that the Infantry is asking the Artillery to lengthen its range. Information from the American Divisions soon begins to reach us:

Between five and six o'clock the First D. I. U. S. reaches the linden tree of la Glauze, and the Second D. I. U. S. the Beaurepaire Farm.

Between six and seven o'clock, the First D. I. U. S. gets a foothold in the ravine of Missy, in direct liaison with the 153rd French D. I., the Second D. I. U. S. gets to the ravine of Vaux-Castille.

Between nine and ten o'clock the First D. I. U. S. reaches Ploisy, where they take prisoners, while the Second D. I. U. S., penetrating Vierzy, which is defended foot by foot, seizes the sugar refinery.

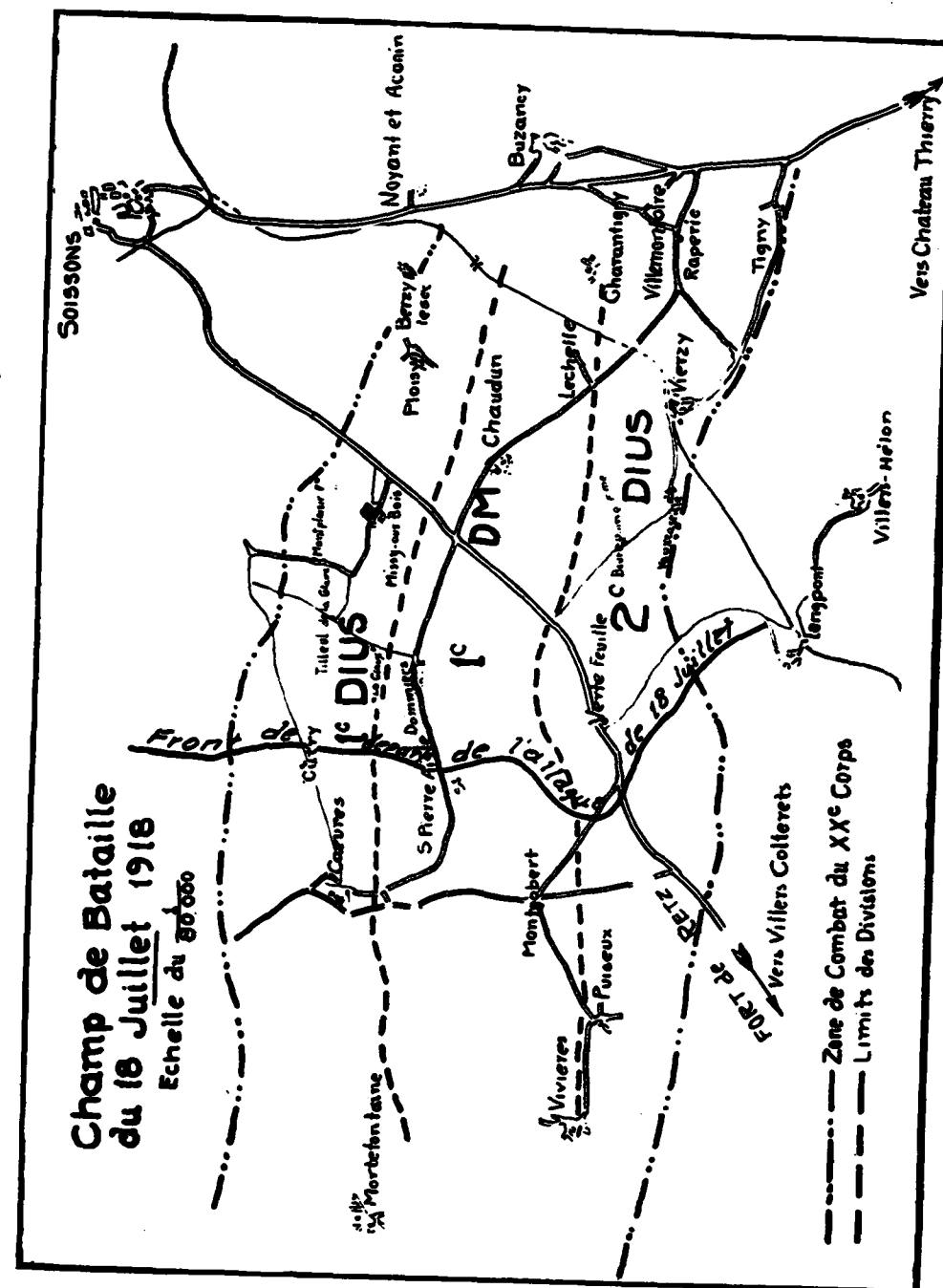
At 1 P. M. General Bullard, commander of the Third American Corps, calls joyfully to General Berdoulat:

"Oh, General! What a fine attack!" The latter approaching him, replies: "Listen to this. I have just received a letter from the Mayor of Montreux-Vieux, a little town in the reconquered part of Alsace, in which he sends his best wishes for victory—I am going to reply to him on the spot—it is ours!"

At 2 P. M. General Berdoulat moves his P. C. to Montgobert: General Summerrall (First D. I. U. S.) to Cœuvres, and General Harbord (Second D. I. U. S.) to the Vertefeuille Farm.

The enemy is making an unsuccessful attack all along the front, while the Second D. I. U. S. has progressed as far as the outskirts of Tigny.

By night, 3,500 prisoners, including 38 officers, and about 40 cannons have been counted.



Note: 1e DIUS indicates 1st American Division; 1e DM, the 1st Moroccan Division; and 2e DIUS, the 2d American Division.

The Cavalry, sent ahead at eleven in the morning, has added a final touch to the disordered circulation on the few roads already blocked by the tanks and huge trucks of the American troops.

These troops in spite of all the difficulties occasioned by the tardiness of their supply service, gave proof of a remarkable and unyielding endurance. A magnificent result crowned their efforts.

The enemy, pushed back to a depth of seven kilometers, saw his principal and almost only line of communication with Chateau-Thierry cut and might make a desperate effort to check our rush, in order to give his advanced lines toward that town the time to fall back.

THE DAY OF JULY 19

At four A. M. we recommenced the attack. The enemy strengthens his resistance, his artillery making a terrible barrage fire.

The First D. I. U. S. having its left in liaison with the French 153rd D. I., is now stopped because the advance of the latter is paralyzed.

The Second D. I. U. S. which now has only the 6th Marines to call upon as fresh troops, experiences the greatest difficulty in holding the beet factory of Villemontoire.

At 11.30 A. M. this Division reports having lost its contact with the Moroccan Division which underwent a severe counter-attack at about 10.30 A. M.

At 5 P. M. the joining of the entire front is re-established but at the cost of heavy losses, and unusually severe suffering for the 6th Marines, owing to their lack of water in the terrific heat.

General Berdoulat orders that the Second D. I. U. S. shall be relieved by the 58th French Division during the night.

THE DAY OF JULY 20

The First D. I. U. S. in connection with the 153rd French D. I., carries out an operation which has taken them to the borders of Berzy-le-Sec, which they are not able to penetrate.

THE DAY OF JULY 21

A general attack by the Army Corps is started at 4.45 A. M.

The Right Brigade of the First D. I. U. S. crosses the high-road and reaches the outskirts of the sugar refinery of Noyant; with the 87th French D. I. (replacing the Moroccan Division) they take Buzancy, where 200 prisoners are captured. At 9 A. M. the Left Brigade conquers Berzy-le-Sec but Buzancy was taken back by an enemy counter-attack.

The order is given that the First D. I. U. S. shall be relieved during the night by the Fifteenth Scotch Division, the artillery of the two American Divisions to be relieved during the night of July 22-23.

RELIEF OF THE AMERICAN ARTILLERY

The Artillery of the two American Divisions, remaining in place after departure of their Infantry, was to be relieved during the night of July 22-23, but they requested to remain a day longer to participate in the attacks ordered for the French and Scotch Divisions. The telephone conversation on this point between

the Headquarters of the 20th Corps and the Commander of Artillery of the Second D. I. U. S. is worth quoting.

Headquarters of the 20th Corps—"General Bowley? You will be relieved tonight."

General Bowley—"Impossible, question of honor. I have here 6000 obus belonging to the Boches that must be sent back before we leave . . . besides I am in very good form to support the attack ordered for tomorrow."

Thus, in the midst of the worst dangers, American humor claimed its rights.

SOME REFLECTIONS ON THIS OFFENSIVE

The most striking point is the enormous advance of the first day, with its relatively slight losses, and the slight results afterwards obtained at the cost of such great losses.

The reason of this is that on the first day we profited by the primary asset of every success in war—*surprise*. Moreover, the attacking troops were well under the control of their chiefs, advancing in order and directly supported by the fire of their artillery.

From the second day on, our artillery could not exactly locate the advanced elements, because, due to lack of practice, the American troops could not point out the first lines to the aeroplanes. In consequence, the enemy could spring out his machine guns either from the ravines or the caves, so numerous in the region of Villemontoire, without being fired upon by our artillery.

For against machine guns there is no question of bravery. Every troop coming under their fire is instantly destroyed unless it shelters itself at once and fires effectively upon the adversary.

There is no need of large effective forces, but of small, almost invisible supple columns, creeping along the recesses of the ground, supported mutually and successively by the fire of their heavy and light machine-guns.

The two American Divisions were in marvelous form. The following appreciation is quoted from an official document of July 22, 1918.

"Their offensive spirit is indisputable; it has, in fact, been noted by the enemy himself in a written document found a month ago and referring to the Second D. I. U. S.

It is to this ardor that one must attribute the heavy proportion of loss suffered. In his desire to come immediately into a hand to hand fight, the American officer as well as soldier often loses sight of the precautions necessary to avoid useless loss. The attack troop is not scattered enough. Evidently they are still somewhat lacking in experience.

The necessary liaison practice has not been acquired either for the work outside or in the Division itself. The report system is not thoroughly carried out.* Its absence is the inevitable consequence of an insufficiently organized liaison. It must be said here that telephone communications were extremely difficult; that their frequent interruption, combined with the block-

*"Le compte-rendu n'est pas entre complètement dans les reflexes."

ing of the roads, made the transmission of certain reports very slow and difficult and even altogether impossible.

The ammunition supply worked well. That of food less satisfactorily. The cause of this is in the main the difficulty with the traffic, and to the order given to pass the ammunition first. Certain units of the 6th Marines received no food supply during two days of battle and were forced to live on their reserve rations.

The supplying of water was also very difficult. The water tanks arrived empty. As the water resources of the region were deficient, owing to the recent drought, the 6th Marines were not supplied with water during forty-eight hours."

This simple quotation shows the necessity for a troop to be well instructed, something which cannot be obtained without sufficient time, for in the furnace of battle there is no question of explanations; the Chief must know his job to the core and be understood and followed by his soldiers upon the merest sign. The comment also gives an idea of the energy and self-sacrifice that was required in order that those new American troops should, in a few hours, gather their magnificent trophies; 6,250 prisoners and 146 cannons.

The French officers and soldiers who lived those splendid and eventful days of July, 1918, side by side with the American troops, deeply appreciated their enthusiastic co-operation. They remember them with a feeling of deep and unceasing gratitude.

THE HORSE IN WAR

Field Marshal Earl Haig, on being presented on Thursday with the diploma of honorary associate of the Royal College of Veterinary Surgeons, paid a warm tribute to the work of the royal army veterinary corps during the war, and expressed unabated confidence in the future of the horse for military purposes.

"If we are to believe some enthusiasts," said Earl Haig, "the horse is likely to become extinct, and to be of no further use in wartime, with the advent of aeroplanes, tanks, and all sorts of things. All these great inventions always produce an antidote, and I think it is only by utilizing the horse and equipping our mounted troops properly that we are likely to take advantage of these modern weapons.

"I am all for using aeroplanes and tanks, but they are only accessories to the man and the horse, and I feel sure as time goes on we will find just as much use for the well bred horse as we have ever done in the past. Do not let us be despondent and think that the day of the horse is over."—From the Naval Military Record, London, June 10.

The Phillips' Pack-Saddle

BY

Lieutenant Colonel ALBERT E. PHILLIPS, Cavalry

SOMETIMES an article of equipment is invented to supply a need, and its field of usefulness is thus decided upon before its advent.

For many years the War Department has endeavored to find a pack-saddle to replace the Aparejo in combat organizations. In 1906, one squad of each machine gun platoon was equipped with Aparejos and one squad with English pack-saddles. These saddles were tested for a period of three years; neither type of saddle was satisfactory, but much valuable information was obtained.

The need of *cavalry pack equipment* was keenly felt when the Pershing expedition entered Mexico in 1916. Three of the four machine gun troops that crossed the border with the leading forces fell out of the cavalry columns in from seven to ten days. The 10th Cavalry Machine Gun Troop, commanded by the writer, was the one troop which remained continuously with the cavalry rifle units, completing more than 1100 miles of marching.

This practical field test, under service conditions, demonstrated clearly that the Aparejo was not suitable for cavalry gaits, and, also, that it could not be handled satisfactorily even by experienced regular army troops.

The World War found us without pack-saddle equipment that could be handled by new troops. This war demonstrated that the design of all fighting equipment must admit of easy handling by newly organized units with only a short period of training.

Modern implements of warfare; the machine gun; the machine rifle; gas; radio and other signal devices; demolition material; pioneer equipment, etc., have caused a large increase in the number of pack saddle units in the maneuver and fire elements of cavalry. To take full advantage of this additional fighting power, cavalry was, and is, dependent upon pack equipment that will not retard its mobility in march, or its maneuvering ability in battle.

And, further, this new pack equipment must be so designed as to conserve horse-flesh, and to assure the loads being present when needed. Carrying devices must admit of rapid attachment and detachment of loads.

Extensive tests of pack equipment were therefore instituted upon the return of our troops from France. Practically all types of foreign and American pack-saddles were then tested by boards of the several services.

The Infantry School conducted the test for the Infantry. The Mountain Artillery test was conducted by the Pack Artillery Board in 1922-23. This test covered 500 miles of marching over all types of terrain. The First Cavalry Division conducted three separate tests covering eleven hundred and fifty miles. The first of these three tests was an elimination contest. The second was a test of the more difficult cavalry loads, and the third test was a practical demonstration of the winning pack equipment and the existing Aparejo equipment, made during the division maneuvers of 1923.

The superiority of the Phillips' Pack-Saddle was proved conclusively in each of the tests and the saddle was adopted for all Cavalry loads on July 20, 1924. The approved 1924 model represents the highest development of the pack-saddle.

DESCRIPTION OF THE SADDLE

The design employs the principle of a pack frame with pads, in which the



The Phillips Pack Saddle, Cavalry Type, with Woven Mohair Saddle Pad

frame is an integral part of the saddle.

The Pads

As the success of a pack-saddle greatly depends upon correctly designed pads, a general description of the pads will first be given. The data for the contour of the pads were obtained from normal pack animals and these data were modified only after extensive field experience with experimental saddles on animals of various conformation. The resulting data were utilized for patterns and for the

design of "molds" for the pads. All pads are stuffed and tied in these molds. Pads of uniform contour are thus assured.

The outside of each pad is of selected tan leather reinforced with four 1" x 1/16" spring steel ribs and one top rib arranged longitudinally for necessary stiffening. The contact side is of woven felt of the highest grade and is of the quality used on the American officers field-saddle.

There is an aluminum-alloy "pocket with foot-rest" on the two lower corners of each pad. The pockets operate with two bronze staple fasteners near the top edge of each pad for securing the pads to the frame. The "foot-rests" are used when the diamond or other hitch loads are secured to the saddle, and are also used for keeping the pads off the ground in camp.

The pads are stuffed with selected long curled hair that retains its resiliency indefinitely. Three hand holes are cut in the outside of each pad for adjusting the parts of the contact side.

The Frame

The frame is scientifically designed so as to be light in weight and yet sufficiently rugged to withstand hard usage. The side bars and the bottom bars are of "duralumin," the new hard aluminum alloy, and the other members are of steel. The frame is free of all projections that might tear cargo loads. Side hanger loads, top loads, or rope hitched loads may be carried.

Special features of the frame.

(a) The hanger bars connecting the arches strengthen the bridge type assembly and enable simple hooks to be used on hangers.

(b) The wide wings of the arches form a base for top carriers of various lengths and also add greatly to the rigidity and strength of the frame.

(c) A "depression extension" on the rear center of each arch forms a secure seat for locking top carriers to the frame.

(d) The spring steel ribs connecting the side bars and the bottom bars support the saddle and distribute pressure over the entire saddle, thus reducing pressure over the weight carrying muscles of the back. These steel ribs also present injury to the animal's ribs.

(e) A nickel-steel hitch hook on the lower center of each bottom bar eliminates a lash cinch when the diamond hitch is used.

(f) Both ends of the frame are alike, thus making it reversible.

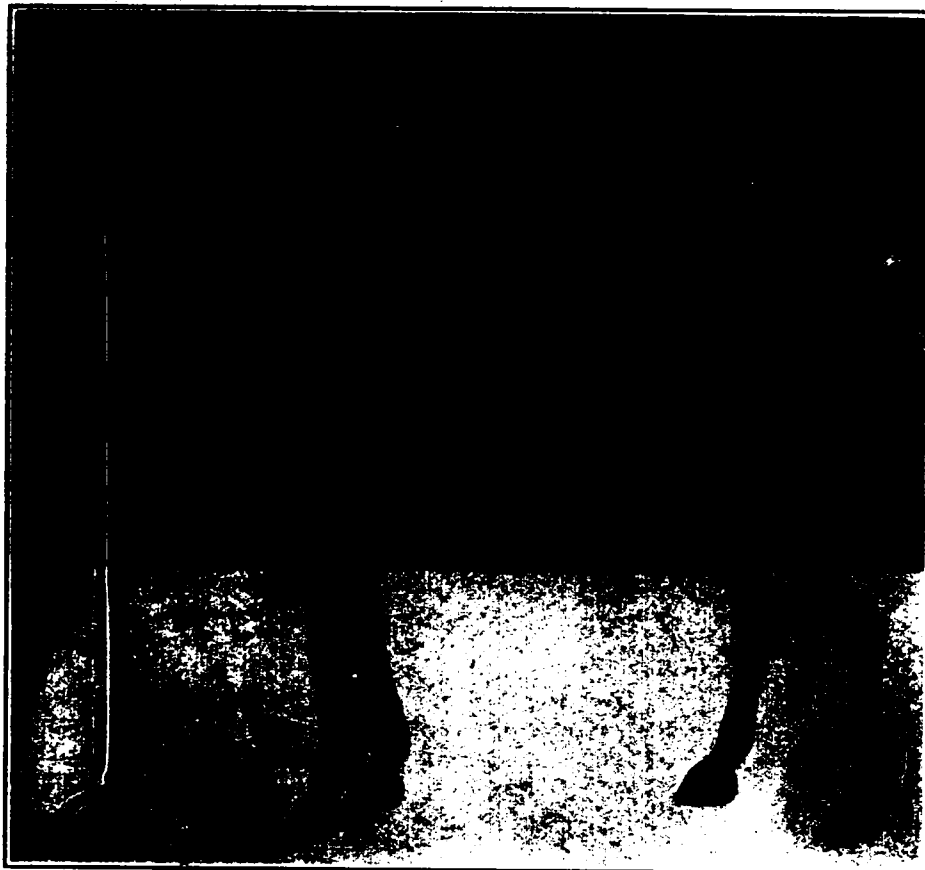
The Saddle Cinchas

The saddle is equipped with two mohair strand cinchas. Every known type of cinch was tested during the period of development. The mohair strand cinch is soft, strong, light, cool, inexpensive, and is easily cleaned. Our tests proved that two cinchas are necessary on pack-saddles. The saddle is cinched principally with the front cinch; the rear cinch should always be as loose as the load will admit. With cinchas properly adjusted, the method enables the animal's hind quarters to travel through their natural swinging movement. Fast gaits and loads with a high center of gravity or extended transversal dimensions require fairly snug rear cinchas.

Two cinchas enables considerable adjustment of the saddle longitudinally. With cinchas attached to the bottom bars of the saddle frame, cinch pressure is distributed over the entire saddle and compression of the animal's ribs does not occur.

The Cinching Device

Frequent adjustment of cinch pressure is necessary if sound backs are to be conserved. Dead loads require more careful adjustment of cinchas than live



The Cavalry Machine Gun Pack on Phillips Pack Saddle
Complete Fighting Unit of Gun, Tripod, 250 Rounds of Ammunition and Gun Spare Parts.
Saddle and Load Weighs 197.5 lbs.

loads. A "cinching device" was therefore devised which eliminates tying and untying of cinch-straps, cinch pressure being easily and quickly regulated.

The Saddle Cover

This is a canvas cover with leather border that covers the pads and protects

them from rain and wear. It also shades the pads from the heat of the sun, while air currents moving rearward keep the pads and the animal's spinal column cool.

The Breeching

The breeching was developed with the saddle and differs from all other types of breechings. It was designed to function at all gaits, and it satisfactorily fulfills all requirements.

The top strap attached to the saddle as shown in the photograph, is one of the "breeching hold up" straps, for holding the breeching in place. The lower strap attached to the saddle is one of the breeching "holding" straps. Forward pressure exerted on the "holding" straps is distributed over the "croup piece" and the "breeching body" in rear of the buttocks.

The four-inch ring connecting the croup piece and the "breeching body stays" enables the breeching body to oscillate and thus to remain in relative position at the different gaits.

The question is frequently asked, Why is the "breeching body" below the holding straps? The answer is quite simple. During the early period of development, the breeching body was set in line with the holding straps in the endeavor to place the height of the breeching body where it would encounter the least motion of the animal's hind quarters. In this position, the breeching body worked up under the tail and failed to perform its function. The body was then lowered to a satisfactory working position. The design admits considerable flexibility and prevents rubbing of the buttocks. This breeching has given ideal results.

The Breast Collar

The breast collar was designed for animals of poor conformation, and for use when going up steep grades and when moving at the extended gallop. It is adjusted for extension of the animal at the gallop; consequently, it is comparatively loose at the walk and trot.

The Woven Mohair Pad

Many saddle bruises are caused by the material under the saddle; and so having perfected the saddle, we endeavored to find a more suitable article than either the canvas lined corona or the woolen saddle-blanket. Our search was not rewarded. The most desirable article in use was the Navajo Indian woolen saddle-blanket. Mohair is cooler than wool and more durable. We therefore developed the woven mohair pad. The material is the best grade of long fleecy Angora goat hair; the weave is similar to the weave of the Navajo saddle-blanket. This pad shapes itself instantly to the contour of the animal and it will not cause injury. It does not wrinkle; it is durable, soft, and is easily cleaned. It is cooler than the woolen blanket; and, when used under a riding-saddle, sweat evaporates rapidly, leaving the back practically dry, provided the animal is ridden at the walk for the last mile.

As only one mohair pad is used under the Phillips' pack-saddle, there is no possibility of pinched withers. This pad has received the approval of everyone

who has used it. Our best horsemen are its most enthusiastic supporters.

TYPES AND WEIGHTS OF SADDLES

There are two sizes of saddles; a Cavalry, or light saddle, and an Artillery-Cargo, or heavier saddle. Both saddles are of the same type and many of the parts are interchangeable.



The Cavalry Machine Rifle Pack on Phillips Pack Saddle
Saddle and Load, including 900 Rounds Ammunition in Magazines, Spare Parts and Magazine Fillers, Weighs 191 Lbs. 4 Oz.

The pads of the cavalry saddle are 23" x 19". The pads of the Artillery-Cargo saddle are 24" x 22". The approved 1924 cavalry-saddle weighs approximately 50 pounds. The new Artillery-Cargo saddle weighs 56 pounds.

The breast collar, breeching and cinchas, which weigh 13 pounds, are not on the weight bearing parts of the animal. The Mohair pad weighs 4 pounds.

For cavalry, we have then, the saddle at 50 pounds, plus the mohair pad of 4 pounds, or 54 pounds weight distributed over the weight bearing parts of the animal.

In comparing this weight with that of the Aparejos, we find that the medium size 60" fitted Aparejo, with blanket, corona, crupper and cinch, weighs 75 pounds; and that adding the light pack (Rice) frame of 18¼ pounds, we have 93¼ pounds, all concentrated on the weight bearing parts of the animal.

SPECIAL FEATURES OF ASSEMBLED SADDLE

(a) The saddle is issued ready for immediate use and does not require fitting or breaking-in. This point is very important in campaign, especially with personnel of limited experience. New pack-animals may be started on the road without developing those injuries which occur with Aparejos during the breaking-in process.

(b) The saddle will fit either horses or mules.

(c) In case of animal casualties, saddles may be changed from one animal to another without adjustment of pads.

(d) The breast-collar, breeching, and cinchas are not on the weight bearing part of the animal.

(e) Sore tails, so frequent with Aparejos, are impossible.

(f) In more than three years of service, in which hundreds of these saddles have been used, no side injuries have ever occurred. In comparing this with that of the Aparejos, we find that practically every mule of our pack trains shows side bruise marks.

(g) The hair padding of the saddle pads does not require replacement. Should the building up of pads be necessary in the case of animals that have lost flesh in a campaign, any soft material, such as grass, hay, pieces of sacks, or even paper, may be used. As all adjustments are from the *outside*, the original smooth contact surface obtained in the mold is not changed, altho the contour may be altered.

The exact adjustment required may be determined by detaching the pads from the frame and by holding them in place on the animal's back. No tools are required for detaching or attaching pads.

(h) With two cinchas attached to the bottom bars of the saddle, instead of one cinch over the saddle as on Aparejo, cinch pressure is distributed over the entire saddle and is not concentrated on the "swell" of the animal's ribs. Considerable flexibility in adjustment of cinchas is possible. Final adjustment of cinchas is made *after the load* is packed; and, furthermore, cinchas may be adjusted *without* removing the loads. The reverse principle is the case with Aparejos.

As pack-saddle loads frequently cannot be removed during halts, it is nevertheless very beneficial to relieve cinch pressure. The *cinching device* affords a rapid means for the purpose.

(i) A Lash Cinch is not required for rope hitched cargo loads.

(j) The breeching may be adjusted *without* removing the load.

(k) But one article, the mohair pad, is required under the saddle.

(l) No special frame for hanger loads is required. The distance of $13\frac{1}{2}$ inches between the outer edges of hooks of hangers is standard for the Cavalry-saddle and for the Artillery-Cargo saddle. The Aparejo requires a special frame; and the distance between "eyes" of hangers varies.



A Diamond Hitched Load on the Phillips Pack Saddle. Eliminated Lash Cinch

NOTE: The War Department has recently adopted the standard distance of $13\frac{1}{2}$ inches between outside edges of hanger hooks for all new pack-saddle equipment.

With the Phillips' Saddle as standard for the Army, hangers for one department may be used on animals allotted for service in other departments. Pack-trains would have a saddle that could be used with or without hangers, thus avoiding the necessity of a special frame for hanger loads.

Many pack-train loads now slung by ropes would be carried in hangers or by hooks on boxes. Many standard containers for rations and other supplies would be developed.

(m) Should the animals and equipment of a combat pack organization using the Phillips' saddle, be destroyed in action, a Quartermaster pack-train equipped with this saddle could be used, without other special frames.

The adoption of this saddle for pack-trains would not entirely eliminate the skilled packer, but it would relieve him of considerable labor and would save many animals.

No matter how scientifically a pack-saddle may be designed, improper handling will defeat the desired results. Altho the successful handling of heavy cargo pack transportation at the walk requires practical experience and skill, the writer believes that the successful handling of combat pack transportation at Cavalry gaits requires greater skill and better equipment.

CAVALRY PACK LOADS

The following new type cavalry pack-loads are now being carried on the Phillips' saddle in the First Cavalry Division:

Cavalry Machine gun loads; Machine gun ammunition loads; Machine rifle loads; Machine rifle ammunition load; Cavalry radio loads; Wire and Instrument loads; Demolition load; Medical load; Pack Cooking kits; Picket line load.

These new loads are by far the most highly developed pack loads yet produced. The pilot model machine rifle loads are perhaps superior to all others. Moving at the gallop, the machine rifle and the machine gun pack animals may be halted and guns unpacked and fired in less than ten seconds. The total weight over the weight bearing part of the animal, of all cavalry pack-saddle loads, as established by the Chief of Cavalry, must not exceed 200 pounds, including the saddle.

SECOND TEST BY CAVALRY DIVISION

As this test was rather unusual it is worthy of special comment. Upon completion of the first, or elimination test of pack equipment, General Howze, the Division Commander, ordered a special test of the three, then most difficult cavalry loads. These loads were the Signal Corps Radio loads—S. C. R. 127. The generator load was particularly unwieldy.

The march was from Douglas, Arizona, to Fort Bliss, Texas, a distance of 247 miles over desert country, in the month of June.

The three horses selected for the test had not been used for pack purposes for several months. The march required ten days. The horse carrying the generator load was saddled *without a blanket or pad* under the saddle. This horse completed the march with a sound back and in perfect condition. One of the other horses developed a small sore the eighth day of the march, caused by sand blown under the saddle during a Texas sand-storm; but this sore was healing nicely when the horse arrived at Fort Bliss.

Further convincing proof of the merits of the Phillips' pack equipment may be found in the following extracts of letters urging its adoption:

Extract of letter of the Commanding General of the 1st Cavalry Division, to The Adjutant General, dated Nov. 20, 1923.

"These packs (Phillips') are designed for all kinds of loads, for Cavalry gaits and for the purpose of overcoming all the difficulties of other pack equipment. The average soldier can be taught to handle these packs in a short period of time. The tests during our recent maneuvers have conclusively proved this to the point that it is the unanimous opinion of all concerned. The Quartermaster General was present and made a special inspection of this equipment during the maneuvers and is conversant with its advantages. These packs are so far superior to anything of the kind that we have previously had, both in saving animals and in insuring the equipment's being present when needed, that they should be furnished at the earliest practicable date."

Extract of letter of the Chief of Cavalry, Major General Holbrook, to the Adjutant General dated June 27, 1924.

"This test (1st Cavalry Division) extended over a period of six months and was completed in December, 1923. During this test the Phillips' Saddle was subjected to every kind of service which would be required of it in active campaign. As an example of the advantages of the Phillips' Saddle and the disadvantages of the present type of pack-saddle (Aparejo), the Second Machine Gun Squadron, equipped with the Phillips' saddle, carried its loads from Fort Bliss, Texas, to the maneuver area, near Marfa, Texas, through the maneuvers, and returned to Fort Bliss, with the animals in as good shape as when they began the march. On the other hand, the —, equipped with Aparejos, did not carry its loads until it reached the maneuver area, and at the end of the period of maneuvers, which lasted approximately ten days, the —, was considered out of the campaign. The loads of this —, were shipped back to — (station) on the completion of the maneuvers. The same unsatisfactory condition exists with reference to other loads carried on the Aparejo. In my opinion the waste of animal flesh caused by the use of an unsuitable saddle is sufficient to warrant the issue of the Phillips' pack-saddle to replace the present type of pack-saddles.

"The important fact in connection with this matter is that the auxiliary weapons will practically be useless if the Phillips' pack is not adopted, in case the Cavalry is called to active service. The loss of this auxiliary fire power would decidedly lower the efficiency of the Cavalry."

A Century of Cavalry March Regulations

BY

Colonel CONRAD S. BABCOCK, Cavalry

THE greatest value of Cavalry will be found in its mobility, which enables it to arrive in time and place for most effective action"—Cavalry Memorandum No. 1, December 10, 1920.

Excepting only the age old controversy of saber versus pistol, there is no one subject upon which more theory is expounded and less practical common sense exhibited than in the marching of the mounted soldier. The Training Regulations covering Cavalry Marches and Camps have not been issued by the War Department; so that at present, the authoritative instructions on these points rest on the pamphlet—"Cavalry Marches," as taught at Fort Riley, and on the verbal instructions and examples transmitted down through the past century by our leaders of Cavalry.

Recently, there have appeared in THE CAVALRY JOURNAL several articles on the marching of cavalry; in more than one instance the author has evolved a set of march regulations from his own head, with entire disregard of any authorized instructions on the subject.

Whatever may have been the changes in the equipment, training, and tactical use of the mounted soldier since man first straddled a horse, the principles involved in successfully getting a mounted organization over ground have changed but little. Equipment, horse rations and footing are the three great causes affecting the march of the horseman. Keeping these in mind, let us review the tactics of our predecessors.

DEVELOPMENT OF CAVALRY ORGANIZATION

After the War of the Revolution, the first regular mounted force, authorized under an Act of Congress dated March 5, 1792, was a four troop Squadron of Light Dragoons. This organization lasted until September, 1792, when the four troops were assigned to and became part of each of the four sublegions. These sublegions were composed of Infantry, Riflemen, Artillery and Dragoons. The four constituted the then Army of the United States, under the title of "The Legion of the United States." Major General Anthony Wayne was the Commander in Chief of the Legion of the United States.

In October, 1796, two of the Dragoon troops were abolished when the Legion organization was broken up and it wasn't until July of 1798 that the two remaining troops, and six newly authorized troops, became the "Regiment of Light Dragoons."

By an Act passed in May, 1800, the six troops authorized in 1798 were discharged; and by the Act of March, 1802, the two troops remaining were discharged. For six years there were no mounted troops in the Army.

In April, 1808, an eight troop regiment of Light Dragoons was organized. In January, 1812, this regiment became the First Regiment of Dragoons, and

the Second Regiment of Dragoons of twelve troops was organized.

In May, 1814, the two Dragoon Regiments were consolidated into an eight troop Regiment of Light Dragoons. This organization lasted until May, 1815, when the Dragoons were consolidated with the Corps of Artillery. Let us hope that they became Light Artillery. From 1815 to 1832 there was no cavalry of any type in our Army.

In June, 1832, a six company Battalion of Mounted Rangers was organized, and in March, 1833, the Mounted Rangers were demobilized and the Regiment of Dragoons was authorized. Since 1832, we have always had a cavalry force in our Army, but in the past ten years the changes and breaking up of old organizations have been all too numerous.

In May, 1836, the Second Regiment of Dragoons was organized; the Regiment of Dragoons becoming the first Regiment of Dragoons. The Second Regiment of Dragoons became the Regiment of Riflemen in March, 1843, but reverted to the title of "Second Regiment of Dragoons" in April, 1844. In May, 1846, the Regiment of Mounted Riflemen was organized. In February, 1847, the Third Regiment of Dragoons was organized for the Mexican War only, being demobilized in July, 1848.

Until March, 1855, the regular mounted troops were the First and Second Regiments of Dragoons and the Regiment of Mounted Riflemen. On this date, the First and Second Regiments of Cavalry were organized. Dragoon and Cavalry Companies consisted of a Captain, one First and one Second Lieutenant and sixty-one enlisted men. Companies of Mounted Riflemen had the same commissioned personnel and seventy-six enlisted.

In May, 1861, the Third Regiment of Cavalry was organized.

In August, 1861, the First and Second Regiments of Dragoons became the First and Second Cavalry; the Regiment of Mounted Riflemen became the Third Cavalry; the First, Second and Third Regiments of Cavalry became the Fourth, Fifth and Sixth Cavalry.

In July, 1866, the Seventh, Eighth, Ninth and Tenth Regiments of Cavalry were organized.

In February, 1901, the Eleventh, Twelfth, Thirteenth, Fourteenth and Fifteenth Regiments of Cavalry were organized.

In June, 1916, the Sixteenth, Seventeenth, Eighteenth, Nineteenth, Twentieth, Twenty-first, Twenty-second, Twenty-third, Twenty-fourth, and Twenty-fifth Regiments of Cavalry were authorized, the increase to be made in five annual increments.

Only the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Cavalry were organized in 1916. The Fifteenth becoming inactive in October, the Sixteenth and Seventeenth in September, 1921. The Eighteenth, Nineteenth, Twentieth, Twenty-first, Twenty-second, Twenty-third and Twenty-fourth were never organized.

In 1922, the Twenty-sixth (Filipino) Cavalry was organized.

Such in brief has been the ups and downs of our Cavalry. Today, under

the system of allotting so many officers and men to each branch, the changes in system of organization are of almost yearly occurrence.

THE FIRST DRILL REGULATIONS

Presumably, during the Revolution and for many years thereafter, mounted organizations used the drill methods of their old commanders, the British. The first authentic record of an attempt to establish an American text is found in "The American Trooper's Pocket Companion, being a concise and comprehensive System of Discipline for the Cavalry of the United States by Nicholas Pariset," published in 1793. Mr. Pariset published his little pamphlet at his own expense and prefaced it with the following letter:

"To George Washington, Esquire, President of the United States of America.
Sir:

Nothing could justify my Temerity in offering to your Excellency a work so little proportioned to your enlightened Talents in the Art of War, but your Excellency's known disposition to patronize every well-meant Endeavor. My presumption in presenting it to the Public proceeds solely from Devotion and Zeal for the Service of my Fellow Citizens of the United States.

The Utility of an invariable and uniform Plan of Exercise and Discipline for the rising Cavalry of the States, appeared to me to be obvious—Assisted by some years' experience in that service, I have presumed to digest a System, as concise and comprehensive as a Subject so extensive in itself would permit. Should this my present Performance fail of receiving your Excellency's Approbation (which to me would be above all others Eulogium) I flatter myself that your Excellency will pardon me in favour of the Motive that induced me to undertake it.

I am, with great respect,
Your Excellency's
Most obedient humble servant,
The Author"

Trenton,)
December, 1793)

In the first chapter are given "Instructions to the Officers, non-commissioned Officers and Privates, for the Management and Preservation of Horses." This brief chapter might be said to be the first of our American Regulations on the care of horses in the field and in garrison.

"A horse must be fed regularly and often; that is to say, three times a day . . . No excessive hard labors should be required of a horse particularly after a long rest; it always tends to emaciate him, if not at once, at least by degrees. A constant middling hard labour is less pernicious to a horse, than to be used hard occasionally. . . .

After an exercise, a battle, or coming from off a detachment or any other expedition, the horses should not be fed within an hour at least; They must immediately be rubbed down dry, and when dry, rubbed again to take off the dust."

A preparatory command of, "Take Care" was prescribed in mounting, dismounting and in the regimental "Maneuvers and Evolutions," but as this command

was not given during the firing mounted of the muzzle loaded pan primed pistol or in the "exercises of the Sword", its cautionary meaning was evidently not intended.

The reception given Pariset's Pocket Companion is not of record; but up to 1811 no definite cavalry regulations had been adopted; and, for this reason, several troops of Light Horse of the city and county of Philadelphia formed an association and appointed a committee for the purpose "of establishing an uniform system of exercise."

COLONEL HERRIE'S DRILL BOOK

This committee adopted a "Colonel Herrie's Instructions for Volunteers and Militia Cavalry of the United States.* The chapters on equitation, horse management and marching are worthy of study by our modern Cavalry School. Troops were assembled in *double rank*. Troopers carried two muzzle loading pistols—one on either side of the pommel, and a sword slung from the trooper's belt. The saddle had a breast strap and a crupper; and was, probably, a type of the saddle used during the Revolutionary War.

March instructions included the following:

"The regiment should generally march at the rate of six miles per hour. After the first two miles, the column must halt ten minutes, and also for a few minutes every six miles, that the men may look over their appointments, examine their horses' feet, etc., and gentlemen will not be allowed to fall out or dismount at any other time, except on urgent necessity, when they must obtain leave from the commander of their division. When the march is long, the troops may feed on the road, carrying, on such occasions, a feed in their nose bags."

Little, if any, complaint can be made as to the wisdom and judgment shown in these instructions. These instructions were written in the "Day of the horse" when whoever went anywhere did so by or on the horse.

"About a quarter of a mile distant from the town where the regiment is to quarter, the column will halt, dismount, brush over appointments, and put everything in good order for marching into the town."

How often is this done?

"Officers to remain with their divisions whether marching or halted, and to be particularly attentive that they maintain steadily the pace of the front".

"As soon as the horse is in the stable, take off the bridle, and tie him up with the collar, give him a handful of hay, and throw a little litter down the stall, take off the great coat, leather coat case or wrapper, and necessary bag; take the pistol and leather case (containing currycomb and brush, etc.) out of the holster, loosen girths, and turn up breastplate and crupper, wisp the horse's head and legs a little, and pick out his feet.

"Take the arms, necessary bag, etc., to quarters, put on stable dress, and when the trumpet sounds, repair to stables, unsaddle, wash out the horse's feet, see if the shoes are fast and good, proceed to clean him thoroughly, cloth him, litter him well down, and at the appointed time, two or three men per stable repair for oats; the rest set the stable fair, clean bridles, saddles, etc.

*Foot Note:—War College Library 33047 VE 161H56 Published 1811.

"The Officers and Quarter-Masters go round, see the horses fed, and stables dismissed."

And finally, the old tactics says, "*Cavalry* ought never to surrender or capitulate if they can cut their way through an enemy, nor should they stand still a moment when they are likely to be attacked."

In view of the discussion as to the advantage or disadvantage of single and double ranks, which was general a few years ago, it may be interesting to note that Herrie's instructions provided for a double rank formation and also a "Rank entire" when the troopers were formed in one rank. When in double rank, they were formed into "Ranks by threes". That was a formation in which "every three men, both in the front and the rear rank, told off as one; viz, *right, center, and left*; and it has this particular advantage, that as the breadth of three horses, standing at proper distance in ranks, is nearly equal to their depth, they can turn every way on their own ground by making the rider of the center horse the center of the circle; and it is by this movement only that cavalry can execute everything which infantry can without requiring more ground to their front, flanks, or rear, than what they stand upon."

So much for the Cavalrymen of 114 years ago.

On the 11th of January, 1812, President Madison approved an Act of Congress authorizing another regiment of light dragoons. This regiment was formed into two battalions of six companies each; each company consisted of one Captain, one First Lieutenant, one Second Lieutenant, one Cornet (Third Lieutenant) and 85 enlisted men.

At this time and until, at least, 1824, mounted organizations had no official drill books. In writing of this, Lieutenant William Theobald Wolfe Tone, 1st Reg. U. S. Artillery, in the preface of his book, "School of Cavalry," or, "System of Organization, Instruction, and Maneuvers, Proposed for the Cavalry of the United States" published in Georgetown, D. C., in 1824 says, "The army, militia, and military schools of the Union, possess as yet no official nor methodical course of instruction for the tactics and manoeuvres of Cavalry."

Whilst we had few mounted corps, short abstracts of the British regulations were the sole guides of their officers; and their service was deemed so useless and expensive, that the only Regiment of Cavalry which the army latterly contained, was suppressed on the last reduction.

On March 1st, 1825, the "General Regulations for the Army" (revised by Major General Winfield Scott) were officially promulgated by the War Department in an order signed by the Secretary of War, Mr. J. C. Calhoun.

CAVALRY TACTICS OF 1834

On December 11th, 1826, a Board of Officers consisting of General Scott; General Caldwell of the Pennsylvania Militia; William H. Sumner, Adjutant General of Massachusetts; Beverly Daniel, Adjutant General of the Militia of North Carolina; Abraham Eustis, Lieutenant Colonel, 4th Artillery;

Z. Taylor, Lieutenant Colonel, 1st Regiment U. S. Infantry; E. Cutler, Lieutenant Colonel, 3rd Infantry, and Charles J. Nourse, U. S. A., submitted to the Secretary of War "A Complete System of Cavalry Tactics." This treatise, however, does not appear to have been published until 1834—shortly after the U. S. Dragoons were organized.

These tactics provided for a regiment of eight troops of 4 officers and 76 men each—organized into four squadrons of two troops. Squadrons formed up mounted in two ranks, two feet from head to croup. One Colonel, one Lieutenant-Colonel, and one Major composed the regimental field officers.

These tactics go into great detail on the subject of training young horses, gaits, seats, equitation aids, etc. Cavalrymen of today will search in vain for much therein which could not be taught at Fort Riley. Posting at the trot, however, was not part of the instruction; and the cavalryman was taught to keep his seat at all gaits. In Herrie's tactics, posting was taught and recommended. Certainly the mounted officer of 1834 knew as much about equitation and horse management as many of today. However, "March regulations" are noticeably absent.

The remarkable marches, during the almost continuous expeditions after hostile Indians, by the U. S. Dragoons and later (after 1836) by the 2nd Regiment of Dragoons, were made by troops under officers, some of whom had served with the Mounted Rangers and probably all had vast practical experience in conserving horse flesh and man power under more than ordinary difficulties.

THE FLAT SADDLE

Officers, who favor a flat saddle for Cavalry, may be interested to know that the Cavalry saddle of 1824 was the English or flat saddle of to-day in every particular. However, General Scott's board did not approve of that saddle and urged the adoption of the "Hussar Saddle," which was practically the French soldier's saddle of to-day—covered with a sheep skin called a "Schabraque," "through which the cantle peak passes, protecting the valise as well as the holster; the surcingle is buckled over it."

In spite of the fact that in the moving picture plays of the Revolutionary period some of our ancestors are seen charging the British or going to market astride the McClellan saddle, that much abused old friend of ours did not appear until 1859.

The regulations provided that the mounted soldier carry a sword (slung from the belt) and one muzzle loading pistol—carried in the left pommel holster.

TACTICS OF 1841

On the 10th of February, 1841, the Secretary of War, Mr. J. R. Poinsett, approved "The system of Cavalry Tactics, adapted to the organization of Dragoon Regiments." Be it remembered that at this time, the Cavalry consisted of the First and Second Regiments of Dragoons only, while these tactics prescribed in great detail the training of Dragoons, Chasseurs, Hussars, and Lancers.

The two dragoon regiments were armed with a saber, muzzle loading pistol, and a muzzle loading carbine (Hall's Carbine). *Double rank was prescribed.* The saddle was the Hussar saddle recommended by the Scott Board of 1824. The dragoon was taught to sit down in the saddle at a trot. The cavalry recruit of this period was given two months' instruction on foot before his instruction on horseback commenced. After 120 lessons (two each drill day) in the School of the Trooper, and 60 lessons in the School of the Platoon, the trooper was considered able to enter the "School of the Squadron."

Prepared for field service, the horse was equipped with curb and snaffle bits, a blanket folded into 12 or 16 thicknesses, the Hussar saddle with a buckled girth, breast strap and crupper. The dragoons carried a heavy saber slung from the waist, the pistol went into the pistol holster strapped on the left side of the pommel, and the carbine, ordinarily attached to the carbine sling (a broad leather shoulder belt), was carried in a small leather boot attached to the off side of the saddle behind the trooper's thigh.

No march regulations were published in the 1841 tactics, although the mounted soldier of that day probably was called upon to do twice the actual amount of horse travel of the cavalryman of to-day. The Regulations of March 1st, 1824, covering the general principles of march discipline appear to be all that was published; but the unwritten laws of preserving horse flesh must have been known and practiced.

MARCH OF FIRST DRAGOONS

One fine example of the practical application of good horse management is found in the march of the First Dragoons under Colonel Stephen W. Kearny during the summer of 1843. Companies C, F, G, and K started from Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, and marched to Grand Island on the Platte River in Nebraska, thence to Fort Laramie, Wyoming, thence to the Green River in Wyoming—where they camped for a short time, and then back to Fort Leavenworth through Colorado and Kansas. In less than one hundred days they made 2000 miles. Colonel Kearny, in his report, spoke in the highest terms of the behavior of the men and the condition of his command. He asserted that mounted troops have shown themselves able to keep in good condition while covering great distances in a short space of time.

The company horses lived entirely on the wild grasses, and it is probable that the few rations carried were added to by wild game of all kinds.

Good horses could be purchased for \$50.00 in those days; but Colonel Kearny obtained authority and gave as much as \$200.00 for his regimental mounts. The First Dragoons were superbly mounted.

COOKE'S TACTICS

On November 1st, 1861, Mr. Simon Cameron, Secretary of War, directed the publication and use of "The System of Tactics and Regulations for the Cavalry of the United States by Colonel Philip St. George Cooke, 2nd Cavalry."

These tactics were based on the single rank formation, but as is stated in General E. J. McClernand's "Historical Notes on the Drill Regulations of the U. S. Cavalry," single rank was not actually adopted until 1874.

Cooke's tactics were submitted to the War Department in January, 1860, but were not approved until nearly two years later; by that time, the Civil War had been going on for a year and a half and in spite of the Secretary of War's "all additions to or departures from the exercise and manoeuvres laid down in the system are positively forbidden," the majority of the Cavalry fought the Civil War, in double rank, under the tactics of 1841.

The instruction in horse training and equitation given in Cooke's tactics is much inferior to anything previously prescribed since colonial days; and from the publication and use of these tactics dates the low standard in equitation enjoyed in our Army until the establishment of our Cavalry School at Fort Riley in 1904.

General Cooke graduated from West Point on July 1st, 1823, and served in the Infantry until 1833, when he was transferred to the First Dragoons.

Probably no officer, who ever ventured to write the tactics for the cavalryman, had more actual experience in the profession than General Cooke. The Dragoons and Cavalry from 1833 to 1860 led a life filled with marching, fighting, and camp life that will never come to any of us.

As might have been expected, under such circumstances, the niceties of horsemanship were forgotten; but the rules and regulations for service of cavalry in the field were very complete, and from Cooke's recommendation one can trace all following instructions on this subject. Not since the publication of Herrie's tactics in 1811, can one find anything in the cavalry tactics so complete and worthy of study as the chapter in Cooke's tactics called "Special Service of Cavalry in the West."

MARCHING PRINCIPLES

The principles, governing the marching of cavalry and the camp sites, were based on two important factors—Indians and grazing.

"It is very certain that bodies of cavalry, performing the same amount of marches and duties—one, under a commander ignorant, or injudicious and careless in this respect will have broken down horses, whilst the other may maintain them in good condition.

A commander in the west is subject commonly to the great difficulty and risk of necessarily grazing his animals at night, whilst they must be protected from an enemy. The camp should be formed early; sometimes it is protected in rear by a wide river, and the squadrons disposed on three sides of a parallelogram; sufficient space is included for night grazing.

To encamp regularly, the squadrons are formed in line with squadron intervals; they are dismounted; without forming ranks, the troopers unsaddle and unbridle; they deposit the saddles in line in front of all the horses, and place upon them their sabres; the horse blankets are retained surcungled to the horses; if to be picketed, under charge of an officer they are led out as far as is safe in order to preserve the nearer grass for the night."

Then follows the first and only complete set of march regulations ever published in the Cavalry tactics.

The March

"The march should generally be in column of fours, the squadrons with 40 or 50 paces interval, in order that a check in one squadron should not

extend its disturbing influence by causing the next to stop; it also tends to the avoidance of dust (In these tactics the word 'Squadron' means "Companies".) From 40 minutes to an hour after the march, a halt of five minutes should be made, the squadrons to be dismounted, informally in column, at the command 'dismount' from their Captains. If there be grass, the squadrons should oblique from the road before dismounting. The horses should be encouraged to feed at the shortest halts; at those for 10 minutes or more, as when watering, the commander should give the command 'unbit'.

Every hour, a halt of from two to five minutes should be made.

Troopers are prohibited to leave the ranks for any purpose on the march, unless on foot, leaving the horse led.

About noon, or about the middle of the march, when circumstances allow a choice of time, the "watering call" should be sounded; the troopers should generally dismount and unbit. The watering is superintended by the officers. Often the horse would fail to be watered from the impatience or want of perseverance of the trooper. This halt is from 20 to 45 minutes. Videttes or sentinels from the advance guard are posted.

After one of the halts the troopers should lead, about 45 minutes; or twice for 30 minutes.

There are several advantages in trotting a part of the march: By it the horses are sooner relieved of the saddle and burden, and have longer time for feed and rest. Horse and man are relieved from the constant motion and fatigue of the same muscles and parts. It avoids a bad carriage of the person of the troopers, sometimes injurious to the horse; it awakes and relieves him. It is found, from experience, to lessen the liability to sore backs.

Long marches or expeditions should be commenced very moderately. The horses, if untrained, must be gradually inured to their labors; in other words, the march must first be a training. Fifteen miles a day at first;—afterwards they will be equal to twenty-five."

The walk was fixed at $3\frac{3}{4}$ miles per hour, the trot at $7\frac{1}{2}$ and the gallop at 10.

There you have the march principles at the outbreak of the Civil War, written by a cavalryman of 27 years' experience with an arm that was everlastingly marching under conditions vastly more difficult than any with which we may be called upon to contend.

The saddle in use when General Cooke wrote his tactics was the Grimsley saddle which had a crupper, a breast strap and a buckled girth. The troopers were armed with the pistol and saber only—the latter hanging from the trooper's belt. These regulations also changed the formation from a double to a single rank; but it was not until 1874 that the change was actually adopted.

These tactics discarded the muzzle loading carbine, retaining only the pistol (a six cylinder breech loader, using a cartridge which was fired by the use of percussion caps separately placed on each cylinder). However, during the Civil War the cavalry carried several different types of carbines.

ADOPTION OF McCLELLAN SADDLE

Before Cooke's tactics were actually in use by the Cavalry, a Board of Officers in 1859 had recommended the McClellan saddle after an exhaustive

test of this saddle and other models known as Campbell, Hope, and Jones saddles.

Colonel Philip St. George Cooke, 2nd Dragoons, was the President of the Board, and among its members were Lieutenant Colonel Robert E. Lee, 2nd Cavalry, and Lieutenant Colonel Joseph E. Johnston, 1st Cavalry.

Captain George B. McClellan, 1st Cavalry, was a member of the "Military Commission to the Crimea." This Commission visited the scene of operations of the Crimean War (1854-1856); and on October 3rd, 1856, Captain McClellan wrote the following letter to the Secretary of War, Mr. Jefferson Davis, a West Point graduate of 1824, a regular infantry officer for four years, a dragoon officer for eleven months when he resigned, a Colonel of Mississippi riflemen from July, 1846, to July, 1847, and afterwards the President of the Confederate States (1861-1865).

Phila. October 3rd, 1856.

Honorable Jefferson Davis,
Secretary of War,
Sir:

I have shown to several officers, passing through this city, the Prussian Cavalry equipment; all agree that, with certain quite essential modifications, it would be a better equipment than any we have yet had in our service. The tree is that known as the Hungarian; I would remove all the unnecessary iron with which the Prussians have encumbered it, reduce the height of the cantle, and adopt very nearly "Nolan's" tree. For my own regiment, armed with the revolvers, there need be no holster, for the men should follow the Russian system and always carry the pistol on the waist belt.

Instead of two pouches there would be but one,—just large enough to carry the necessary cleaning utensils, which would be made as small as possible, the currycomb with a movable handle.

The pouch would be balanced by a camp hatchet, slung on the other side of the pommel.

Instead of a valise there would be a pair of small saddle bags in the style of the Chasseurs d'Afrique, either of leather or gutta percha, and only large enough to contain the indispensable change of clothes, i. e., 1 shirt, 1 undershirt, 1 pair drawers, and 1 or 2 pairs of socks; and in case of necessity an extra pair of boots.

Instead of a forage bag there should be the "tente d'abri"—a piece of light cotton cloth, about 5 feet square, to be used as a shelter at night instead of a tent; this can very easily be arranged so that it can be used as a forage bag in case of necessity.

The stirrups to be of steel; the leathers passing through mortices in the side boards.

The girth either attached to the saddle flaps, or as in the Campbell saddle, to be of leather.

I would prefer dispensing with the saddle flaps, and to reinforce the pants with soft pliable leather.

Use saddle blanket of felt cloth.

Bits of steel; the curb to hook to the cheek straps; the snaffle to be attached by a toggle.

Spurs to be screwed to the boot.

Sabre knot of plaited buckskin, or leather.

I have here given merely a hasty outline of the general nature of the

equipment I propose, and would respectfully request to be authorized to have a model set made in this city, by one of the best saddlers, to be presented for examination.

I would at the same time call the attention of the Secretary to the sabres furnished to our Cavalry; they are not what they ought to be, and I have never seen any make in this country that compare in weight and balance with the French model. I have a sabre, purchased in Paris, which is an entirely different weapon from our own—tho' of the same model. Ours are too heavy and are badly balanced; so bad are they that many of our Cavalry officers are disposed to regard the sabre as an useless weapon. As this is without doubt the true weapon of Cavalry, too much pains cannot be bestowed upon its manufacture; it ought, if anything, to be lighter than the French model. A wooden, leather, or gutta percha scabbard would also present great advantages—as being much lighter than the steel one, allowing the sabre to be kept sharp (and if dull it is of but little more service than a broom handle), and preventing, to a very great degree, the noise attendant upon the movements of cavalry.

The pistol should be provided with a strap, attached either to the guard, or to a ring in the butt, that it may be dropped in an instant; I have personally experienced the evil effects of being obliged to return a pistol before using the sabre.

I am sir very respectfully yr. obdt. svt.

Geo. B. McClellan,
Capt. 1st Cavalry."

This letter, Mr. Davis referred to the Chief of Ordnance (Colonel Henry K. Craig) with the following remarks:

"I will however at this time remark that elasticity is an essential quality in a girth. For this reason hair is probably the best material, woolen yarn the next and leather the worst of which girths are made. The tendency to rust is an objection to the use of steel for stirrups and bridle bits. As our cavalry must frequently act on foot moving in grass, brush, and mud, there is an evident objection to the proposed mode of screwing the spurs to the boot. The necessity for allowing the spurs to rise when pressed underneath has led among the Mexicans to the abandonment of the strap under the foot.

Though the revolvers should be carried in a belt, if the carbine pistol be used the necessity for a holster would still remain.

Jefferson Davis."

UPTON'S TACTICS

On July 17th, 1873, Mr. Wm. W. Belknap, Secretary of War, adopted "The revision of Upton's Infantry Tactics by the author, and the Tactics for Artillery and Cavalry, assimilated to the Tactics for Infantry," and a new set of "United States Army Cavalry Tactics" was published.

These were commonly known as "Upton's Tactics." This Board consisted of:

Lieutenant-Colonel Emory Upton, 1st Artillery,

Captain Henry A. Du Pont, 5th Artillery,

Captain John E. Tourtellotte, 7th Cavalry,

Captain Alfred E. Bates, 2nd Cavalry.

Emory Upton graduated from West Point in 1856, and was assigned to

the 4th Artillery. He commanded the 121st New York Infantry from October, 1862, until he was made a Brigadier General of Volunteers in May, 1864. On the 22nd of February, 1865, he returned to his regular army rank as Captain in the 5th Artillery.

General Upton had a distinguished Civil War record, and the first paragraph of his "Tactics" states, "The movements explained in the following system of Cavalry Tactics are confined as nearly as possible to those finding practical application in war."

The Cavalry at this time was organized into ten regiments of three battalions each; four companies to a battalion. Each company having one Captain, one First Lieutenant, one Second Lieutenant and 77 enlisted men.

The McClellan saddle, single (curb) bit bridle, and six-fold blanket were now regulation. Mounted, the cavalryman carried a saber suspended from the waist belt, a pistol carried butt to the front in a holster on the right side of the belt, and a single breech-loading 45 caliber carbine in the carbine socket hung from the saddle behind the trooper's thigh. Dismounted, companies formed in double rank; mounted in single rank.

MARCH REGULATIONS

March and camp instructions are as fully covered as in the Cooke tactics and, if followed to-day, one could not go far wrong.

"Commanding Officers must bear in mind that the efficiency of cavalry depends almost entirely upon the condition of the horses, which alone makes them able to get out long distances in short spaces of time"

The average march for cavalry is from fifteen to twenty miles per day. The walk is the habitual gait, but, when the ground is good, the trot may be used occasionally for short distances".

The cavalryman of to-day, even with horse roads getting less and less, is a strong believer in the trot; often the excessive use of this gait, with the heavy rifle suspended from the pommel of the saddle, wrecks the backs of his mounts.

To continue:

"Long marches or expeditions should be begun moderately, particularly with horses new to the service. Ten or fifteen miles a day is enough for the first marches, which may be increased to twenty-five miles when necessary, after the horses are inured to their work The march is usually in column of fours; when practicable, it may be in double column of fours; in small commands it is often in column of twos.

In small commands, not in campaign, distances of forty to fifty yards may be taken between the companies, so that checks will not extend from one to another and cause unnecessary halts. A halt of from five to ten minutes is made at the end of every hour, for the purpose of adjusting equipment, tightening girths, etc. The companies are dismounted in column at the command of their Captain; if there be grass, each Captain first obliquely his company a short distance from the road to let the horses feed, as horses must always be encouraged to graze as much as possible on the march. When troops march for the greater part of the day, a halt of from twenty to forty-five minutes is usually made about noon"

On long marches, officers and men, except the sick, are required to dismount and lead from twenty to forty minutes every second or third hour; to

save their backs, horses will be led over steep ground, and particularly down hill.

In passing obstacles, each company commander halts at a sufficient distance beyond the obstacle, and requires his men to close up at a walk. When necessary, the column is halted by the commanding officer for the companies to close up.

When water call is sounded, the Captains cause their companies to dismount, and usually to unbit. The watering is superintended by the officers, who see that all the animals are watered without confusion. No horse of a cavalry command on the march should be watered unless all are watered:

In each company, the chiefs of platoon, and particularly those in rear, are held responsible that the troopers do not lounge in their saddles so as to chafe their horses' backs. Any man who fails to sit up squarely on his horse, must be made to dismount and lead.

No enlisted man will be permitted to leave the ranks for any purpose, except on foot, leaving his horse"

The instructions on "Camping" go into detail as to sanitation, etc., and, specific instructions are given covering precautions to be taken in "hostile country."

So much for the official instructions of the Indian War days of fifty years ago.

DRILL REGULATIONS OF 1891

On October 3rd, 1891, Mr. Redfield Proctor, Secretary of War, authorized the Drill Regulations (note the word "regulations" and not "tactics") prepared by a Board of Officers consisting of

Lieutenant Colonel John C. Bates, 20th Infantry,
Lieutenant Colonel George B. Sanford, 9th Cavalry,
Major Henry C. Hasbrouck, 4th Artillery,
Major John C. Gilmore, A. A. G.,
Captain Joseph T. Haskell, 23rd Infantry,

Captain Edward S. Godfrey, 7th Cavalry,
Captain James M. Lancaster, 3rd Artillery, as recorder, and later First Lieutenant John T. French, 4th Artillery.

The noticeable change apparent in these regulations, when compared to the 1873 tactics, is in refinement of detail. Especially is this true in the chapter on "Marches."

The march instructions of 1891 represented, unquestionably, the matured judgment of officers familiar with the Indian campaign experiences of the previous twenty years.

Keeping Cooke's and Upton's tactics in mind (covering a period from 1860 to 1891), one will note the same principles are followed, but several excellent directions were added:

"On starting from camp, the first two miles should be made at an easy walk, at a less rate than four miles an hour. A halt of from ten to fifteen minutes should then be made to allow the men to relieve themselves; after the first hour, there should be a halt of five minutes every hour; at each halt, the horses' feet should be examined, saddles replaced if they have moved, and cinchas tightened when necessary".

In 1913, I was with a regiment that made a march of several hundred miles. Each morning, the entire regiment took up a trot immediately after clearing camp, and kept the trot up for, at times, as much as twenty minutes. As a result, we arrived at our destination with a very large number of sore backs.

"As a rule, after the first hour, the march should average a rate of five miles an hour, alternating the walk and trot, and occasionally dismounting and leading for short distances; the most favorable ground is selected for the trot."

"The last two miles or more should be made at a walk and the horses brought into camp without excitement".

In 1902, I was a member of a small command that marched from San Francisco to the Yosemite Valley, California. The entire march was made at a walk; never once were we permitted to dismount and lead. Camp was reached about 4 P. M., daily. Never have I experienced a more fatiguing journey.

"The Discipline and even the efficiency of a command is indicated to a great extent by the manner in which its ordinary marches are conducted".

"Ample time should be left, after a seasonable reveille, for the men to breakfast, horses to be fed, and the wagons or mules packed".

POSTING

Let the present day cavalryman note the following suggestion offered in 1891: "Many cavalry officers are now disposed to favor the hunting seat at the trot, as a relief from the close seat, and a desirable change to men and horses; with proper instruction, this practice may occasionally be found advantageous in long marches."

Evidently, the Board referred to what is known as "Posting." This is the first word on that subject since "Herrie's Instructions" of 1811; but "posting" was practically unknown in the Army until about 1910.

The "Mounted Exercises" prescribed in the 1891 tactics are the very beginning of what we now call "Monkey Drill." The seventeen mounted exercises cover practically everything done today by any organization and in many instances prescribe several feats that only the best of our mounted troops can perform.

Equitation—that is the making of a soldier into a finished horse show or cross-country rider, and his mount into a finished performer in such events, is below par in these tactics.

That the cavalry soldier was well instructed in drill, could care for himself and his horse under the most trying conditions, is well known. He knew very little of those niceties of riding now possessed by what can be designated as a "horseman"; but he didn't have to know them to make of himself a *bona fide* cavalryman of that period. Horse shows, County Fairs, and Exhibitions were practically unknown to him, and if an occasional troop commander went in for that sort of thing, he was quite the exception.

Horses were kept in a condition to take the field at a moment's notice;

clipping and blanketing were, therefore, not permitted, and while it is probably true that our cavalry of thirty-five years ago was fully as efficient (possibly more so) than to-day, certainly it was less smart, and was incapable of participating in feats where a knowledge of equitation was necessary.

The cavalryman of this period rode the McClellan saddle (minus the leather skirts that the Ordnance Department finally cut off after years of solicitations by the cavalry officers of the 70's), used the single curb bridle (with the powerful Shoemaker bit), a 45 calibre revolver worn on the right side (butt to the front)—and a 45 caliber, single shot, Springfield Carbine carried in the carbine boot. The saber was carried attached to the left side of the saddle pommel under the trooper's left leg.

REVISION OF 1896

The next revision of the Drill Regulations for Cavalry was made by a board of officers consisting of Lieut. Colonel Louis H. Carpenter, 7th Cavalry; Captain Edward S. Godfrey, 7th Cavalry; Captain Ernest A. Garlington, 7th Cavalry, and 1st Lieutenant Tyree H. Rivers, 3rd Cavalry. These regulations were further revised by Major General Thomas H. Ruger, and on May 18, 1896, were promulgated by the Secretary of War, Mr. Daniel S. Lamont.

Before this time (in September, 1892) the single loading Springfield Carbine had been replaced by the Krag-Jorgenson carbine, with the side magazine; the low port Ordnance bit had replaced the Shoemaker.

The pistol, saber, and carbine were carried as prescribed in the 1891 Regulations.

Practically no changes are noted in the March Regulations. The seventeen mounted exercises are retained, and the chapters on Training Horses and General Rules for Stable Management are the same as in the 1891 Regulations. Instead of using the expression "hunting seat," these regulations state "Many cavalry officers are now disposed to favor rising at the trot, as a relief from the close seat, and a desirable change to men and horses; with proper instructions, this practice may occasionally be found advantageous in long marches."

The Drill Regulations for Cavalry of 1896 were revised in 1902, again in 1909, and further corrected in 1911; but the changes did not affect the subjects under discussion here.

The carbine had been replaced (June, 1903) by the Springfield rifle with magazine under bolt, the pistol (38 caliber) was still worn butt to the front and the saber carried suspended from the off cantle ring and off spider ring—the rifle similarly hung from the near side of the saddle.

CAVALRY EQUIPMENT BOARD

In April, 1910, the War Department convened a Board of Officers "to consider and report upon the changes, if any, that should be made in the cavalry horse equipment, in the personal equipment of the cavalry soldier (rifle and pistol excepted), and the cavalry packs." Colonel Alexander Rodgers,

6th Cavalry, was the first President of this board. After many changes, in personnel, the Board consisting of

Colonel E. J. McClernand, 1st Cavalry,
Lieutenant Colonel George W. Burr, Ordnance Department,
Major W. F. Flynn, Cavalry,
Captain F. A. Austin, 3rd Field Artillery,
Captain Edward Davis, 13th Cavalry,

submitted its proceedings in April, 1912.

The recommendations of this equipment board should be read by all cavalry officers.

It was the first attempt to recognize, from an equipment point of view, the many modern roles of the military horseman, efficient field soldier, smart garrison soldier, expert horseman, and horse show participant.

The single bit (curb) bridle and McClellan saddle were still in use; but Fort Riley was having its effect and troop commanders were improvising bit and bridoon bridles.

CAVALRY SERVICE REGULATIONS

On March 9th, 1914, the Cavalry Service Regulations (experimental) prepared by a board composed of:

Brigadier General Edward J. McClernand,
Colonel C. H. Murray, 12th Cavalry,
Lieutenant Colonel Joseph T. Dickman, Cavalry,
Lieutenant Colonel Frederick S. Foltz, General Staff,
Major Jesse McL. Carter, Cavalry,
Captain Frank Parker, 11th Cavalry,

were approved and published for experimentation by the Cavalry.

What a row that made! Officers in the service at that time will remember how bitter were the arguments for and against. The principal points, that brought forth much ironical oratory, were the change from single rank (adopted in 1874) to double rank (used from colonial days to 1874); and the statement in the "Preface" that "Mounted action is the main role of the Cavalry Arm and its organization, armament, and instruction should be with a view to rendering it effective in such action."

At this time, the 1912 saddle, bit and bridoon bridle and rifle carrier were in experimental use in several cavalry regiments. When mounted, the rifle butt was inserted in a small leather bucket behind the left thigh, the barrel passing up through a ring fastened to the back of the trooper's belt. The straight saber was suspended from the right side of the saddle behind the thigh, and the 45 caliber automatic pistol was worn, butt to the rear, from the waist belt over the right hip.

The chapters on equitation and care of horses reflect Fort Riley at its best; and the chapter on marching is very complete.

These regulations recommend a rate of march, including halts, of from 5 to 6 miles per hour; and this pace should be made by walking, trotting, galloping, and leading—with the first halt made after a couple of miles have been covered.

For the first time in over a century we see it recommended that "The first halt . . . should, if possible, be preceded by a short trot in order to betray to the troopers any faulty adjustment of equipment." What the betrayal does to the horse's back, before the trooper can adjust the equipment, is not mentioned.

Another new recommendation is the use of the gallop over short distances, and the advice that "the officer setting the pace should occasionally drop back to observe the pace of the column."

On October 26th, 1916, the Secretary of War, Mr. N. D. Baker, authorized the "Cavalry Drill Regulations . . . for the information and government of the Army and the National Guard of the United States."

These regulations modestly withhold the names of their authors, possibly due to the storm of criticism that descended upon the 1914 Board of Officers. However, double rank was eliminated in the platoon, although a makeshift was authorized under certain conditions.

Mounted action as the main role of Cavalry gives way to complete and concise instructions as to dismounted action. "When it is impracticable, owing to the tactical situation, to the nature of the terrain, or to other causes to accomplish by mounted action a mission assigned to the regiment, it resorts to dismounted combat."

The equipment of the Cavalry trooper received a few changes, but the experimental saddle, rifle carrier, etc., were not adopted: The old McClellan saddle for field service remained.

The march regulations adhere to the gallop but qualify this by stating "its practicability will depend upon the training and condition of the horses, since on long marches, unless accustomed to this gait with packed saddles, the horses will break down."

A new march suggestion is one that veterinarians be habitually utilized for the purpose of observing the effect of the pace on the column.

TRAINING REGULATIONS

And now we come to our present Training Regulations, which do not cover the subject of March Regulations; but, otherwise, are so voluminous that the little hip pocket tactics or regulations of the past look far more practical and companionable.

To-day, after the experiences of the Great War, after experts of all types have experimented with our bridles, saddles, and fire arms—we are practically settled, at least for the time being, on the McClellan saddle, on the heavy rifle, and saber slung under the trooper's knees, on double rank, if desired, and on thorough training in mounted and dismounted action, in posting at the trot, and in superior horsemanship, and care and appearance of horses and equipment.

In looking back over the 114 years of Cavalry Instructions, briefly covered in this article, it is apparent that wars or active frontier service have a strong tendency to eliminate from our military texts much that is theoretical, impracticable, or for show purposes only; that long years of garrison life and much schooling brings forth a host of ideas on training, equipment, organization, etc.,—some of it excellent, much of it old, and much of it applicable to the balmy days of Peace only.

With the Army of Feng Yu-Hsiang

During the Chihli-Fengtien War of 1924, General Feng Yu-hsiang, the so-called "Christian General," commanded the Third Army, and it was with this force that he executed the celebrated "coup d'etat" which changed the governing power at Peking in a night.

This Third Army consisted of the 7th, 8th, and 25th Mixed Brigades, each of three infantry regiments; the 11th Division, of which General Feng Yu-hsiang was himself the commander, consisting of two infantry brigades of two regiments each, one cavalry regiment, and one artillery regiment; one Student Regiment; one Bodyguard Brigade (in detachments with various units); and an Army Camel Train of about 800 camels. The total strength of the army was about 35,000 officers and men.

RELATIVE EFFICIENCY

In China more so than in any other country, an organization is the direct reflection of its commander, in fact there is an old Chinese proverb to that effect. It is therefore interesting to note that the relative efficiency of Feng's combat troops was about as follows: 1st—The 7th Mixed Brigade, General Chang Chih-chiang; 2d—The 11th Division and the 8th Mixed Brigade commanded, respectively, by General Feng himself, and General Li Ming-chung; 3d—The 25th Mixed Brigade, General Sung Che-yuan.

DISPOSITION OF TROOPS

In the march to Jehol and operations in that vicinity, General Chang and the 7th Mixed Brigade was the most important feature. The 7th Mixed Brigade led the advance, followed by the 25th Mixed Brigade. These two organizations were both in Jehol. The former was camped under canvas about a mile south-east of town, with an entrenched outpost line about ten miles to the east and south-east. The latter was partly under canvas and partly in two of the larger Lama temples about three and one-third miles north of the town. The 25th Mixed Brigade also had an entrenched outpost line about ten miles to the north and north-east of its camp.

The 11th Division was strung out along the road all the way from Ku Pei Kou to Lan Ping Hsien and General Feng himself established his headquarters at the latter place, a distance of about fifteen miles from Jehol.

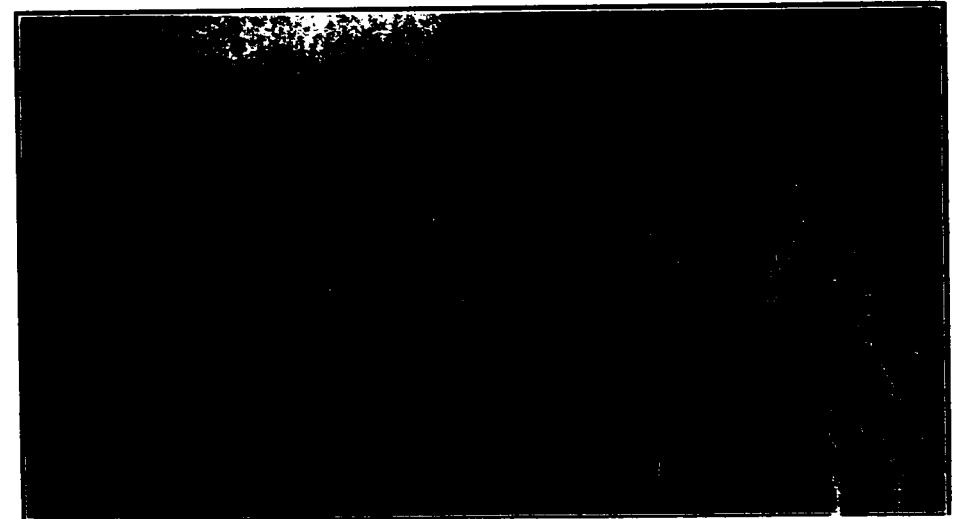
The 8th Mixed Brigade was finally concentrated at Shih Hsia and guarded the road to the rear.

From the above it can be seen that Feng made a sound and logical distribution of his forces. He placed his best combat unit, the 7th Mixed Brigade, in the lead, under his most trusted general. In Jehol this was placed in the direction of the most probable route of enemy approach, i. e., from Ping Chuan. Next came the 25th Mixed Brigade, his poorest unit, which was placed between the 7th Mixed Brigade and Feng's own 11th Division.

The 8th Mixed Brigade, being the remaining unit, became the rear element. This gave Feng his best combat unit where he could use it, and a trusted commander at the front. His worst unit, the 25th Mixed Brigade was in a position where he could make it fight, since he, himself, with his 11th Division, was in its rear. His line of communication to Peking was made safe by the presence in his rear of a unit—the 8th Mixed Brigade—just as good as his own.

COMMAND

General Wang-Cheng Pin was sent to Jehol supposedly to be in command of the Second and Third Armies under Wang Huai-ching and Feng Yu-hsiang, respectively. The authority exercised by Wang Cheng-pin over the Second Army is not known, but is believed to be very little. Certainly the authority he exercised over General Feng and the Third Army was decidedly questionable.



General Chang Chih-Chiang, Commander of the 7th Mixed Brigade and General Feng's Right Hand Man

Wang Cheng-pin had his own Chief of Staff, aides, etc., and about a company of infantry which he had brought from Tientsin. He was also furnished with a troop of cavalry from the 16th Mixed Brigade. I often went to these headquarters for information and was referred to General Chang Chih-chiang, and even to the "ping chan" of Feng's forces in Jehol. It is my belief that Wang Cheng-pin was sent to Jehol for the purpose of watching the movements of Feng so that President Tsao Kun would be able to have reliable information as to the situation in the Jehol sector. Wang's presence in Jehol was, I believe, the reason General Feng remained 15 miles south of that town. Feng apparently took orders from no one, and did what he pleased. I do not believe Wang Cheng-pin was a party to the "coup d'etat" which later took place. His yamen in Jehol

was surrounded by troops of the 25th Mixed Brigade which at the same time tore out the telegraph instruments. He was forced to move behind practically the last element of Feng's troops, and even though he and his staff were in motor cars, they returned to Ku Pei Kou at a slower rate than did the dismounted troops. He was allowed to enter Ku Pei Kou but not leave it for several days. I am of the opinion that he was simply ignored in the matter of command over Feng, before the "coup d'etat," and that afterwards he was eliminated according to typical Chinese methods.

PERSONNEL

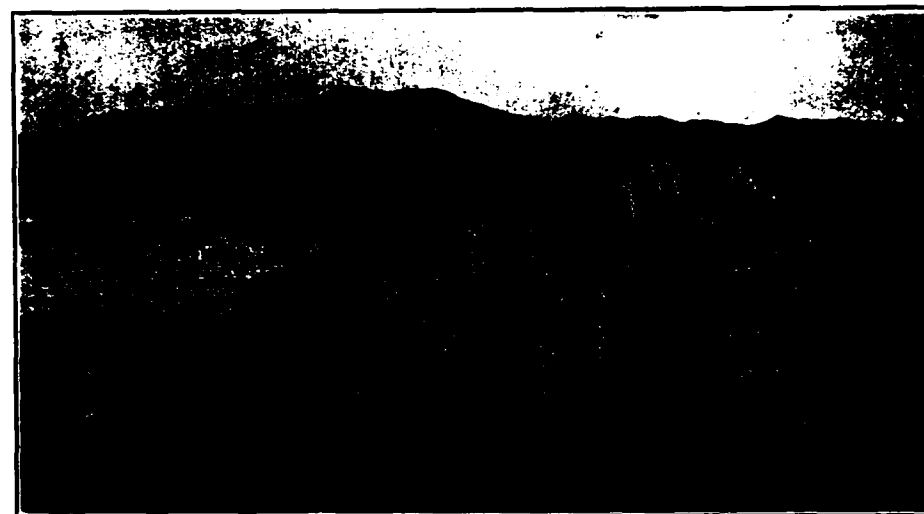
(a) *Staff.* Each brigade and division had a chief of staff with a varying number of staff officers to assist him. They were, on the whole, a very intelligent and well-informed lot of men. The most intelligent was the Chief of Staff of the 7th Mixed Brigade, Huang Chung-han. The assistants to the Chief of Staff had no definitely assigned duties as our General Staff officers have, but were assigned to whatever work that needed to be done. For example, a staff captain was assigned the duty of working out plans for defense against airplane attack. When this was finished he might be placed on personnel or other work. There were no divisions for staff work as we know them, and there seemed to be quite a duplication of duties, very likely due to the dislike of assuming responsibility and to the characteristic trait of the Chinese which requires many heads and hands in order to accomplish a given end.

I had no opportunity to observe how the brigade or division staff would function in active operations. Their planning and carrying out of the march to Jehol and return to Peking, however, were excellent. The orderly, efficient, and speedy way in which Feng's troops returned to Peking for the "coup d'etat" was a logistic achievement for which any army could be commended. It was planned in secret, the troops being prepared under cover of darkness, and carried out, so far as I could see, without a hitch. While this movement was in progress, civilians were not allowed to travel and all mail and telegraphic communications were taken over by the military. In my opinion the staff work in the matter of logistics was very well done. In this connection, it might be well to mention here the "fu kuan," or adjutants who carry out the greater amount of the logistical work. Their work will be discussed later under "Supply Department." They are in reality good business men chosen by each officer of high rank to assist in handling non-military matters of administration and supply. They cannot command troops, but rank a salute the same as an officer. Each brigade and division headquarters has its "fu kuan chang," or chief adjutant, and they have their assistants down to the battalion.

There was evidently an excellent intelligence section. It is certain that in all operations in China, spies are very much in evidence, and treachery and double dealing have played a far more important part than has military strategy. In the history of Chinese military operations, it has been the former, not the latter, that has won victories. I do not believe, however, that much information leaked out from Feng's Headquarters in time to be of use to the opposing side.

(b) *Line Officers.* The majority of the line officers were men of good physique and seemed fairly intelligent. They were all able to read the Bible translated into Mandarin, which requires more education than is possessed by the average Chinese. All officers up to the rank of colonel were required to take the same physical exercises as the troops. They wore no rank insignia, and the quality of their clothing was the same as that worn by the troops. The only way it was possible to ascertain their rank was to read the identification tag sewed in the left breast pocket of the uniform coat. The platoon commander, or what would correspond to our lieutenant, is considered almost as much a non-commissioned officer as he is an officer.

Some officers had folding canvas cots, and there was a great deal of camp



Cavalry Column Crossing the Lan River
Note the Dirt Floor on a Layer of Kaoliang Stalks

equipment for headquarters, such as folding chairs, tables, etc., which the general officers and their staffs used. All officers had thermos bottles of the cheap Japanese variety. Many had German field glasses, and all had German Luger pistols.

General Feng always marched with his troops. His whereabouts was never known to his troops, and this fact was supposed to make them pay strict attention to their duties, as they never knew when he might appear to inspect them.

(c) *Enlisted Men.* The non-commissioned officers have duties much the same as our own, but there is no tendency to differentiate between them and the rest of the men. Each squad has a man to work for them. These men are learning to be soldiers, and if they do their work well can become privates. The cooks

are not soldiers, but are hired only to cook. The privates can be detailed on kitchen police as well as the men who are learning to be soldiers.

(d) *Discipline, Morale, and Physical Condition.* The discipline of Feng's troops was excellent and was the marvel of the country through which we passed. In the month I was with them I only heard of one soldier being punished for his actions towards civilians. This man took a cake worth a few coppers and refused to pay for it. The shop-keeper reported him and the soldier was given forty strokes with the bamboo. This affair was given much publicity among Feng's troops and posters were distributed about it. In every town passed through, the merchants stated that they received whatever price they asked for their goods. When the troops came back from Jehol, they had a lot of "copper notes" on the Jehol Bank. These were offered in payment for goods, but when the merchants refused them, the soldiers did not force them in payment. The troops, as far as I could see, drank no wine and did not smoke. They were in an absolutely distinct class from any Chinese soldiers previously observed. This, I believe, was entirely due to their leaders and to the personality of General Feng Yu-hsiang.

It is impossible at the present time to analyze his motives in the recent "coup d'etat," or to give a conception of his character judged from an American point of view, due to the inability of our minds to cope with the mental reactions of the Chinese. It is, however, certain that Feng Yu-hsiang has exceptional ability as an organizer and as a leader of men, and that his troops were with him to a man.

It is also not possible to state how sincere Feng is in his Christianity, but it is certain that he used it to excellent advantage in building up the morale of his troops. He gave them a slogan and used it to its utmost. Mass singing was a regular part of the schedule, in camp and on the march, and its good effect on morale was very evident. All members of the command were provided with Bibles and Hymn books and frequent religious services were held. Several Methodist Chaplains accompanied the troops, and were used to censor mail in addition to their other duties.

The physical condition of the troops of the command was excellent, and physical training was part of the daily schedule. In Jehol the troops of the 7th Mixed Brigade used to march ten miles from the camp to the outpost line, dig trenches and march back again, as a daily routine. Horizontal bars and other such apparatus were part of the camp equipment. No body of troops could have returned from Jehol to Peking, a distance of 145 miles, in four days had they not been in good physical condition. After this hard march they took over the city in the "coup d'etat." They arrived in the capital late one night, and the next morning the city awoke to find Feng's men in complete and orderly control of affairs. This movement could not have been carried out without a high degree of discipline present among his troops. The greater part of Feng's troops marched at night, and this of itself indicates a high degree of discipline.

INFANTRY

(a) *Drills, etc.* Infantry was the strongest arm with any of the units. The close order drill, very like that of the Japanese, was well done and the movements

executed with snap and precision. Great attention was paid to bayonet drill, which while well executed, as far as precision in the movements was concerned, was much more slowly done than our own. There was quite a little of the theatrical flourish which characterizes the handling of all weapons by the Chinese. There was no bayonet work on dummies. Close order drill was emphasized much more than was combat work, of which they seemed to know very little.

(b) *Equipment.* The men were dressed in cotton padded, grey clothing, typical of all Chinese soldiers.

It was always kept clean and in good repair. Wrap cloth puttees were worn, and all the men wore the typical Chinese low cloth shoe. All had goggles which were worn around the cap. A cloth bag for small articles was carried by a strap from the left shoulder and hung over the right hip. In rear of this was carried



Cavalry Column on March
Photo Taken Just After Troop Had Fallen in for a Day's Advance

a canteen and cup which was balanced by the bayonet hanging on the left. The canteen was of tin, cloth covered. The cup was a common tin enameled one. The cartridge belt was of cloth, tied around the waist by strings and held 100 rounds of ammunition. A bandoleer, made just like the cartridge belt, was slung from the left shoulder, and also held 100 rounds, thus giving each man at least 200 rounds always on the person. All ammunition was wrapped in paper and then slipped in the pockets of the belt or bandoleer. A sort of a padded quilt and a blanket were carried in the pack, the quilt being rolled and the blanket being rolled long and thin. The latter was used to tie the pack on by being passed through the rolled quilt and then tied across the chest in front. The pack then,

was slung from the left shoulder and pointed towards the right hip, the blanket going over the left shoulder, across the chest and under the right arm. An extra pair of shoes was attached to the outside of the roll by the strings which keep the quilt in place. A small trench spade or small mattock, in a leather case, was also fastened to the roll in like manner. The umbrella was slung to balance the pick or mattock. In some regiments the pack was not slung across the back, but was so arranged that the blanket formed a sling for the left shoulder, and a cloth sling was used to go over the right shoulder. In this way the pack was carried in a position a little like our own.

(c) *Arms.* The rifles carried were either Italian or Japanese (38th year models) of about 15 years ago. Some were in excellent condition and others would be dangerous to fire. The great majority were in fair condition but polished bright. The stocks, as a whole, were not well cared for. Some slings were of cloth, some of webbing, and a few of leather. The men understood the use of sights but had no conception of the use of the sling for shooting. They have no regular target practice and I doubt very much if many of the men fire the rifle before they use it in war. Ammunition replacement is such a serious problem in China, that it is conserved for actual fighting. To fire the rifle the men take a prone position in prolongation of the piece. The elbows are quite close together, and the legs and feet touch each other. It is most awkward and a position which causes the soldier much fatigue. After every shot the rifle is removed from the shoulder to work the bolt.

(d) *Machine Guns.* The machine guns were handled by the infantry and were of various types. They were, as a rule, well oiled and cared for. The leather and pack equipment was mostly new and in good condition. During the month I was with these troops, I only knew of one gun's being fired. The various types of guns, of course, use different ammunition, which would be most inconvenient in active operations.

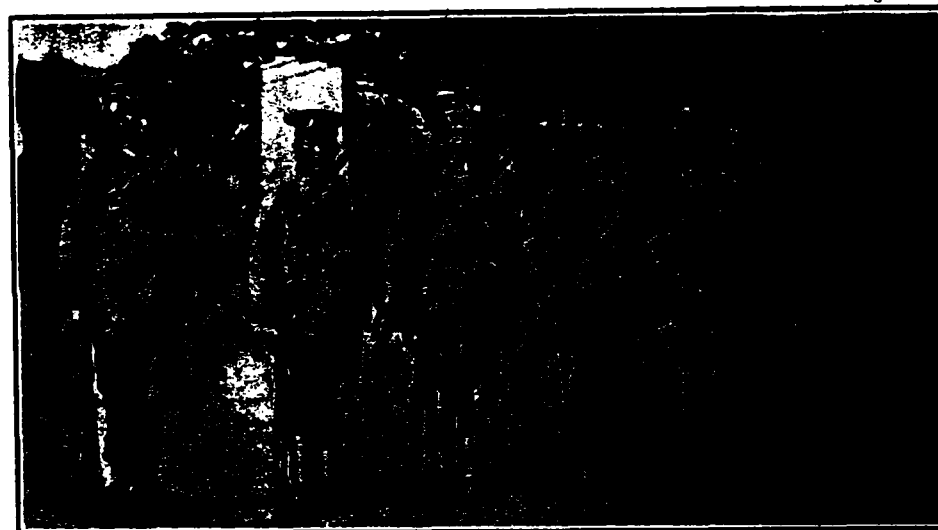
The 7th Mixed Brigade had nine machine guns. Three of these were Italian guns, water cooled. They fired a soft-nosed bullet. The ammunition was in brass clips, 50 to a clip, and carried in wooden boxes containing 10,000 rounds. Four of the guns were water-cooled guns of the "heavy Browning" type, made at Hanyang Arsenal. About 10,000 rounds, loaded in belts, were available for these guns. The best of the 7th Mixed Brigade's machine guns were two new water-cooled heavy Brownings, No. 748 and 752, made at the Tientsin Arsenal. They were evidently new and in excellent condition. About 12,000 rounds of ammunition, loaded in belts of 250 rounds each, were available for these new guns.

The 8th Mixed Brigade had eight machine guns. Four were of German make and air cooled. The other four were water-cooled heavy Brownings from the Hanyang Arsenal. Material was in fair shape. The men stated that they had about half as much ammunition as had the 7th Mixed Brigade.

The 25th Mixed Brigade had six machine guns. Three of them were of the air-cooled German type and three were water-cooled heavy Brownings from the Hanyang Arsenal. There was about 3,000 rounds available for each gun.

The 11th Division had 12 machine guns. Six were of the air-cooled German type and six were water-cooled heavy Brownings from the Hanyang Arsenal. About 60,000 rounds of ammunition were available for these guns.

(e) *Bodyguard Troops, or "Shou Chiang tui" (Pistol Troops).* These troops are a special organization of picked men who act as bodyguard for higher ranking officers. They are required to swear an oath that they will remain with their officers, and will not retreat while one of their number remains alive. They are armed with a very sharp curved sword shaped like the old executioner's sword, and a Luger pistol, for which each man carried 200 rounds of ammunition. They are sometimes called "Ta tao tui" (Big knife corps), and are very expert in the



Some of the "Shou Chiang Tui" (Pistol Troops) of the 25th Mixed Brigade

use of this weapon. The drill with swords is very intricate and spectacular. These men act as guards for the officers' tents while in camp and go with the officer wherever he goes. They are a good looking corps of men and in exceptionally good physical condition, as they not only have the physical drills given all troops, but in addition have their special drill and work with the swords.

CAVALRY

(a) *Strength, Drills, etc.* The 11th Division has one regiment of cavalry, the 7th Mixed Brigade had one troop, and the 8th and 25th Mixed Brigades had only a few scouts. This shortage was due to the lack of horses and the expense involved in purchasing more. Because of this, the greater part of the cavalry of the 7th Mixed Brigade was used to handle trench mortars.

The close order drill, based on Japanese regulations, was fairly well done. They appear to know nothing of mounted combat. The horse to them is a means of transportation which enables them to move a little faster and cover greater distances than can the infantry. In my opinion this cavalry was fair infantry hampered by horses. The 11th Division Cavalry had a little mounted saber practice, but this was more of an individual exercise than preliminary training for mass combat use.

(b) *Horsemanship, Marching, etc.* They know very little of horse training as we think of it. They cinched up their mounts until it seemed that the cinch would cut through the horse. After dismounting, no attempt was made to adjust



A Cavalry Trooper and Mount, Fully Equipped for the Field

equipment, and on mounting again, saddles were always turning over under the horses' bellies. Once on his horse's back, the trooper would either walk or gallop, unless his horse could pace, a trait considered very desirable by Chinese. They rode with their stirrups quite short and with their backs stiff. Posting at the trot was not done, and my doing so was always the cause of much comment.

In marching they rode at a walk half the time and dismounted and led for the remainder. There was a great deal of backing and filling in the column. The average rate of march was a little over three miles per hour.

(c) *Animal Management.* Horses were treated very badly. Their mouths were jerked to make them go and jerked to make them stop. The use of the legs as an aid was apparently unknown. Whips were much used. Very little grooming was done, and the animals' hair was allowed to grow long.

Horses were fed almost anything, from the dry and unappetizing chopped kaoliang stalks to soggy bread of the worst grade. Some millet and beans were also fed. Canvas feed troughs on iron supports were strung under the picket lines, as shown in the photograph.

In feeding they used good sense as to amounts and times, and they watered before feeding. They also watered along the road at every opportunity, and led their horses for a time before mounting. No attempt was made to carry forage.

The soldiers seemed to care nothing for their mounts and were very cruel to them. This, I believe, to be partly caused by fear of the horse and partly due to the lack of sympathy on the part of the Chinese for all animals with the exception of birds.



Canvas Feed Troughs Used by Cavalry
Note Condition of Back of Animal at Right of Photo

(d) *Personal Equipment.* The clothing and personal equipment of the cavalry was, with a few exceptions, practically the same as that of the infantry. The men carried no pack on their backs, but carried it on the cantle of the saddle, rolled in a short, cylindrical roll, like a sausage. No entrenching tools and no extra pair of shoes were carried.

(e) *Horse Equipment.* Feng's cavalry was mounted on the stocky pony common to North China. It was equipped with rope halters, leather bridles with single snaffle bits, and a leather saddle made after the German type. The rope halter was worn at all times. Neither the leather bridles nor the bits were uniform, and both were always in need of cleaning. The saddles were in general better cared for, but many were in need of repair. They were made after the German

pattern but on a smaller tree so as to be lighter and more suitable for the smaller Chinese horses. Pommel pockets were of leather and contained nothing. Cante bags were of white canvas and were likewise generally empty. Some of the saddles were equipped with breast straps and all had a strap from the cante to a crupper under the horse's tail. Some men carried folding canvas buckets.

Many of the officers' saddles were new, and those of the men were in good condition save for the fact that the leather was dry. With much use, the equipment would undoubtedly crack and break.

(f) *Arms.* All were armed with either Italian rifles (15 years old) like the infantry used, or with Japanese rifles or carbines of the Japanese 38th year model. Rifles or carbines were carried slung across the back. Ammunition was carried the same as by the infantry.

As mentioned before, the six trench mortars of the 7th Mixed Brigade were handled by the cavalry. These were the well-known 3 inch Stokes Mortars and were in good condition. There were about 100 rounds for each mortar, packed in wooden boxes and always kept covered with water-proof cloth. No other unit had trench mortars.

FIELD ARTILLERY

The 7th Mixed Brigade had two four gun mountain batteries, and one battery of four 3 inch guns.

The 8th and 25th Mixed Brigades each had one four gun mountain battery.

The 11th Division had two four gun batteries of 3 inch guns, and one four gun mountain battery.

All of these guns were of German type, made in Japan, and were over ten years old. They were equipped with Zeiss telescopic sights, and all instruments and scales were well oiled and carefully handled. The paint was worn off the material in many places but there was no rust visible. The breech mechanism of the field pieces was in good working order, and the bores free from rust. Cotter pins were missing in many places and were replaced by copper wires. Each battery had four caissons. The artillery ammunition was carried in drawers in the caissons, each shell having a wooden rack. Fuses were separate and were not attached to the shells. Each fuse was in a separate little tin box and covered with a soft, removable, lead nose. The top of the shell had a lead plug, which could be unscrewed for the purpose of screwing in the brass fuse head. The fuse head was fitted with time rings which were set by a hand fuse setter.

The battery commanders seemed to understand their material and the principles of direct and indirect fire. They also understood adjustment of fire for height of burst.

The caissons also contained the fuses, sights, spare parts, etc., besides the shells. Much of this looked as if it had never been removed, as the wood racks in which parts were placed were clean and unmarred.

The artillery harness, sight covers, etc., were in good shape on the whole, much of it being new leather.

The men were able to handle the pieces and to do standing gun drill, but evidently had done no mounted drill with the guns.

ENGINEERS

Aside from the fact that the engineers handled signal equipment they might be considered as infantry, and were often used as such. They were equipped the same as the infantry.

German field telephones were used, the wiring being strung on bamboo poles much like those used by our own Signal Corps. Automobile storage batteries were used to operate the instruments.

The 11th Division and the 7th Mixed Brigade have Marconi Radio Telephone and Telegraph pack units. The Marconi name-plates were on all pieces, but the



Camp of the 25th Mixed Brigade in One of the Large Lama Temples North of Jehol

data and serial numbers were blank. Power to operate these sets was furnished by storage batteries. These were charged by means of a small gas engine and generator, arranged on a pipe frame. The set proper was arranged in two carrying cases, and the batteries in another. The gas engine and generator were mounted one on each side of a pipe pack frame to be carried on a pack animal. A copper wire aerial was supported on a sectional pipe pole, and copper wire ground nets were used.

The apparatus was in good condition and showed good care, but the radio telephone and transmitting part of the set were of doubtful value due to lack of storage battery power.

There were a number of men who could send and receive and the work with the field buzzers was very satisfactory.

Flag signalling was used to some extent. The equipment consisted of two flags, a red one and a white one, which were held in the left and right hands, respectively, while signalling.

MEDICAL

(a) *Equipment.* Each brigade had a medical unit. The equipment for this was carried on camels, and included stretchers, tents, and the usual first-aid supplies. The camel train was under the charge of a non-commissioned officer.

(b) *Camp Sanitation.* The police of the camp was excellent. What little waste material was left from the kitchen was at once taken away by the civilian population. Latrines were always dug and screened with canvas screens. When the troops moved on, these latrines were as a rule not filled in.



Type of Camel Pack Used by Third Army

(c) *Personal Hygiene.* The men washed frequently and were all supplied with tooth brushes. They were marched by platoons to the Chinese bathing houses in towns where such were available.

SUPPLY DEPARTMENT

The supply of the units was handled by the "fu kuans," or adjutants, who have been mentioned before. These go in advance of the troops and establish "ping chan" or supply stations, at which the troops stop while on the march. These supply stations requisitioned from the town or village at which they were located whatever food or forage was required. They also made arrangements to billet the troops, when tents were not available.

TRANSPORTATION

(a) *Motor.* The Second Army Headquarters (Wang Cheng-pin) had two ten-ton Stewart trucks, and many hired automobiles for staff officers. Feng's troops had no motor transportation with the exception of four motor-cycles to division and mixed brigade headquarters.

(b) *Animal.* There were no wagons that belonged to the troops. All this transportation was the two-wheeled cart used for commercial purposes in North China and pressed into service with its civilian driver. It was supposed to take forty wagons to move a battalion of infantry. These wagons were drawn by horses, mules, and donkeys, and were loaded with from 800 to 2,000 pounds, depending on the bulk of the baggage.

(c) *Camels.* Feng's troops had about 800 camels which were not split up among the units, but kept in trains of about 200 each.

The camel "pack saddle" is composed of two heavy straw stuffed pads placed on each side of the camel's two humps. Poles are then placed along these and the ends drawn together, so that the arrangement remains in place, partly by pinching the humps and partly by resting on the camel's back.

MARCHES

The troops marched from supply station to supply station. They always marched at night as much as possible and in the very early morning before daylight. The reason for this was in order that the people in the villages would not know how many troops had passed through, and also in order that they would not be frightened by the presence of soldiers.

These marches under cover of darkness were very well done, and with very little confusion. The march discipline of all units was very good.

CAMPS AND ENCAMPMENTS

All camps were entrenched and trenches were always dug on strategic ridges in the vicinity of camping places. These trenches were in reality just a ditch large enough for a man to stand or kneel behind, with a ledge on which to rest the elbow.

The camps were always located with a view to concealment, and were generally located near trees. Tents were also often erected in temple yards and the buildings also used to billet troops.

The tents used were made of grey canvas, of doubtful value in keeping out rain. They were conical in shape and were always well ditched. The inside of the tent is dug down, leaving a sort of platform around the center pole, on which are stacked the rifles. The ground inside the tent is covered with straw or matting. Sometimes places are dug for the feet, and also a dirt table made.

How a Platoon Won \$1000

BY

Lieutenant W. F. PRIDE, Cavalry

THE origin of the idea for the competition to be described may be found in the January, 1924, issue of the CAVALRY JOURNAL in an announcement of a prize essay contest from which the following is an extract: "An enthusiastic Reserve Cavalry Officer has in mind the general idea of an actual competitive test in the *"Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units."* He wants to know what the Cavalry Service thinks is the best plan for holding such a test. . . .

"The mission of this prize essay contest is to get a plan to test competitively combat leadership of small cavalry units."

A "small cavalry unit" was defined as any unit not exceeding a troop in size. The donor of the prizes believed it preferable to permit all cavalymen and all cavalry units in the continental United States to compete in the actual test. He believed also that certain factors should be considered in drawing up the plan as:

1. Tactical knowledge and leadership in handling one's own unit or another unit; or

2. The personal qualities of the individual, as shown in, for example, cross-country riding, boxing, polo, fencing, big game shooting, scouting, horse jumping, athletic team development, etc.; or

3. Both (1) and (2).

As a result fourteen essays were received and considered by a committee of the Executive Council of the U. S. Cavalry Association and prizes awarded. In submitting their decisions the judges made the following comment: "While the board of judges is of the opinion that none of the plans submitted constitute in themselves a complete plan for the conduct of a test in Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units, it is nevertheless felt that the essays contain many excellent suggestions which should serve as a basis for the final preparation, under the direction of the Chief of Cavalry, of the details of the test desired."

After the announcement of the results of the Prize Essay contest, the donor of the Prize donated an additional \$1,000 to be competed for in an actual test in the combat leadership of small Cavalry units.

NOTE: The author, Lieutenant Pride, prepared a very complete and comprehensive account of this competition, giving the score sheets in detail, together with interesting and instructive comments and conclusions on each phase and sub-phase. On account of lack of space, the above had to be omitted in the publication of the article. In order that the service may have the full benefit of the experience gained and lessons learned in this most important test, arrangements have been made for supplying copies of the complete article to all cavalry organizations. The score sheets should be of great value, not only for use in other tests of a similar nature, but as handy reminders of the various details involved in the tactical handling of a small combat unit in the situations as were presented during the several phases of the test.—
The Editor.

HOW A PLATOON WON \$1000

455

In the fall of 1924 a committee was convened by the Commandant of the Cavalry School, in compliance with instructions from the Office of the Chief of Cavalry, to formulate the details for the test. This committee made its report, based upon the following general principles:

1. That the only fair method of comparison as between the competing officers and units is to have them perform over the same terrain at the same time and under the same judges.

2. That the test should be divided into two phases:

(a) *Individual*: To demonstrate the courage, endurance and ability of the officer acting alone; failure to pass a given standard to disqualify for the leadership test.

(b) *Leadership*: To demonstrate the qualities of prompt decision, aggressiveness and ability of the officer as a leader, as shown by the evidence of proper training of his men.

3. That the test of leadership should be demonstrated in the handling of the same sized unit for each contestant in order to make anything approaching a fair comparison.

4. That, since ability to lead should be the highest aim of every young officer, the leadership test should be given the greater weight.

5. That if conditions are such that it is impracticable to bring officers and units together for competition, opportunity for as many as possible to compete be afforded by changing each year the place where the competition is to be held, so as to finally afford opportunity to all cavalry regiments.

6. That as conditions necessarily will vary widely at different points where the test may be staged as regards terrain, climate, personnel and facilities, the arranging of and carrying out of minor details must be in the hands of a committee appointed for each particular test.

7. In the interest of economy, to stimulate interest, to obtain more widespread benefit from the test, to facilitate the running off of the final event and make it a more sporting event, elimination tests should be held in each regiment concerned under the supervision of the regimental commander.

It was further recommended that the first test be held in the 1st Cavalry Division to permit participation by the greatest number of units and create a wider interest in the event. However, it was decided to have the test held at the Cavalry School this year and it was accordingly so held during Graduation Week.

Upon adoption of the report of the first committee and receipt of the decision to hold the test at Fort Riley, a second committee was appointed by the Commandant early in April, to arrange all the details of the test and to have charge of its conduct.

It was decided to declare one platoon from each rifle troop of the 2d Cavalry eligible for entry in the contest and that the officer habitually commanding the platoon should lead it during the test provided he passed the individual proficiency or qualifying phase. Should he fail to pass the individual test that officer from among the other lieutenants of the regiment who most successfully passed the test would be selected to lead the platoon in question.

With the above considerations in mind ten lieutenants were designated to enter the First Phase: Lieutenants Koester, Todd, Wofford, Jennings, Edmunds and Conrow were the regular platoon leaders. In addition Lieutenants Thornburgh and Sullivan from Headquarters Troop, Lieutenant Kemp from Service Troop and Lieutenant Reinburg, Personnel Adjutant, were entered.

The First Phase was held June 1st on Republican Flats. The course was flagged for a couple of days before the event and contestants knew the course and general conditions. No attempt was made at secrecy as this phase was intended to test physical fitness, ability of the officer to ride across country and familiarity with the weapons of a cavalryman and was to be a qualifying phase only. It was similar to the Standard Stakes, an event held annually at the Cavalry School. Each contestant provided a horse, saddle, bridle, pistol and saber. Previous to the event he furnished the officer in charge a rifle to be placed at the firing point on the rifle range. Ammunition was furnished him as needed.

First sub-phase.—Contestants had their horses tied on a picket line with saddles, bridles and sabers in rear of the horses. Contestants formed 50 yards from the picket line and drew for starting numbers, starting at two minutes' intervals. At the starting signal they proceeded to the picket line, saddled and bridled their horses, attached the saber and rode to the mounted pistol range.

Previous to starting each contestant was given five rounds of pistol ammunition.

Second sub-phase.—At the mounted pistol range each contestant, moving at regulation gait, fired five shots to the right at five standing figures on the regular pistol course. Contestants were allowed only one run and all took the course in the same direction. In case of a jam contestants were allowed to complete any unfinished portion of the run.

After completing the mounted pistol course the contestant proceeded to the dismounted range. There he dismounted and turned his horse over to a horseholder, secured five rounds of ammunition, proceeded to the firing point and fired five shots at his own numbered target—a kneeling figure at 25 yards.

Third sub-phase.—Having completed his dismounted pistol firing the contestant mounted and took a short course of four jumps along the Republican River. The course included a post and rail jump, a brush jump and two ditches.

Fourth sub-phase.—From the last jump the contestant proceeded to the saber course and took the first five heads of the regulation saber course. The first head was standing and to the right, the second, kneeling and to the left, the third standing and to the right on the far side of a ditch, the fourth standing and to the right on the far side of a jump and the fifth standing and to the right.

Fifth sub-phase.—From the saber course the contestant rode uphill over the rim rock to a special rifle range on the western edge of Pump House Canyon. Here he dismounted, turned his horse over to a horseholder and proceeded to a point on the firing line where he found his own rifle with ten rounds of ammunition. He fired ten shots at his own numbered target and then proceeded on the course.

Sixth sub-phase.—This final phase was a cross country ride of about two and one-half miles, from the rifle range southwest over Macomb Hill to a bend in the river near the Overflow, where the river was forded. After fording the river the contestant dismounted and led to the second ford. Before crossing this ford he mounted and then rode to the finish.

The *Leadership Phase* was held from Tuesday, June 2d, to Friday, June 5th, both inclusive. Lieutenant Koester was unable to lead his platoon through this phase owing to illness and Lieutenant Reinburg substituted for him. The following were the contestants:

- 1st Platoon Troop A, 1st Lieutenant Wm. N. Todd, Jr.
- 1st Platoon Troop B, 1st Lieutenant James B. Edmunds.
- 1st Platoon Troop C, 2d Lieutenant Walter F. Jennings.
- 1st Platoon Troop E, 1st Lieutenant Wm. H. W. Reinburg.
- 1st Platoon Troop F, 2d Lieutenant John W. Wofford.
- 1st Platoon Troop G, 1st Lieutenant Wm. S. Conrow.

This phase consisted of a two days' reconnaissance by each platoon, with a represented enemy in the vicinity.

Two platoons were started each day, one platoon leaving at 4:00 A. M. and the other at 6:00 A. M. The order of departure of platoons was determined by lot.

Each platoon was accompanied by an umpire who remained with the platoon continuously throughout the test.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR PLATOON UMPIRES

The Platoon Umpires were in control of the situation at all times except during the presentation of special situations by designated Special Umpires. During those periods the senior Special Umpire was responsible for the conduct of the test.

In the event that a platoon sent a patrol to a definite point to gain information, such as a post office, railroad station, etc., the Platoon Umpire allowed the patrol to proceed to the entrance of the building but halted it before it entered the building or made any inquiries. The Umpire then represented the party to whom the inquiry was addressed and gave the patrol all the information it was reasonable to assume it might gain.

Should a platoon leader definitely err in following his route or instructions, Platoon Umpires were authorized to intervene to the extent of insuring the success of the test but were required to make a special written report of such intervention.

Platoon Umpires were instructed to hold their platoons at each Control Point until the Special Umpires for the situation to be presented at that point, arrived.

At noon June 1st and each day thereafter, the Platoon Umpires presented the leaders of the two platoons due to start the next day with the following situation:

Map: General Map of Fort Riley, Kansas: scale, 1 inch equals 10 miles.

GENERAL SITUATION

Hostile armies are confronting each other along a general line extending from Fort Riley, thru Milford and to the northwest. Blues are southwest, Reds northeast. The entire theatre of operations is in Red territory.

Cavalry of both sides is operating on the Fort Riley flank.

Air Service of both sides active and numerous.

SPECIAL SITUATION I (BLUE)

On — June, the 1st Cavalry Division is occupying a portion of the line on the Blue extreme right with its right on Macomb Hill.

The 2d Cavalry, in division reserve, is located at Junction City with headquarters at Washington Street Park.

* * * * *

At 5:30 P. M., June 1st (and at the same time each day thereafter), Lieutenant — commanding the 1st Platoon Troop, —, 2d Cavalry, was directed to report to his Platoon Umpire (representing the Commanding Officer, 2d Cavalry).

At this time Lieutenant — was informed that his platoon would proceed on reconnaissance at (4:00 or 6:00) A. M. the next morning; that he might be away two days; that complete orders and maps would be given him at his troop picket line one-half hour before the time set for his departure.

* * * * *

At (3:30 or 5:30) A. M., June 2-4, inclusive), Lieutenant — was given the following written order, together with all necessary maps:

HQ, 2d Cav.,
WASHINGTON STREET PARK,
JUNCTION CITY, KANSAS.
— June, 1925. — A. M.

FIELD ORDERS

No. 40.

Maps: Road Map Fort Riley and Vicinity: 1" = 1 mile.

1. Enemy reported detraining at KEATS, MANHATTAN and neighboring points. Hostile cavalry of unknown strength east of DEWEY'S RANCH late yesterday afternoon.

Blue situation unchanged.

2. This regt. remains at JUNCTION CITY.

3. The 1st Plat. Tr. — will proceed on reconnaissance at — A. M., moving on DEWEY'S RANCH via OGDEN, KEATS and MANHATTAN.

Each of the above named localities will be reconnoitered carefully.

The presence of enemy detachments encountered the size of a tr. or larger will be reported.

Identifications are desired.

Patrols will act generally in an aggressive manner, fighting when necessary to obtain information or secure identifications.

Observation by hostile aircraft will be avoided.

4. Full field allowance of rations and forage will be taken.

5. Messages to WASHINGTON STREET PARK, JUNCTION CITY.

WILLIAMS,

Colonel.

In the first sub-phase a combat situation was presented representing a meeting engagement with a hostile platoon of Cavalry.

The second sub-phase involved the approach and reconnaissance of a town in which a hostile force was detraining.

The third sub-phase involved the establishment of a camp, spending a night therein, and breaking it.

While in camp, platoon leaders at 1:00 A. M. were given messages which directed them to return to Junction City at once. This required a night march.

Upon arrival at Junction City, the platoons were informed that the enemy situation remained unchanged, and that they were to join their organizations.

The last phase consisted in a dismounted attack as part of the regiment on an enemy in position and involved the use of service ammunition and a number of group targets. The scoring in this phase covered all the details of such an attack.

Upon return to the stables the platoons were met by a veterinarian who made a detailed inspection and rated each platoon.

At some time during each day's march, and later on in camp, airplanes sought to locate platoons that were out, and each platoon was rated on the results.

Scoring.

The final score of each platoon was based entirely on the results of the Leadership Phase. Scoring was based on the following plan:

Platoon Umpires.

March Discipline	5	
March Conduct	5	
Care of Animals	2	
Night March	7	
Equipment	3	
Security	4	
Avoidance of Aerial Observation	3	
Reconnaissance	4	
Orders	2	
TOTAL	35	35

Umpires at Control Point No. 1 (Mounted Combat).

Orders	4	
Tactics	11	
TOTAL	15	15

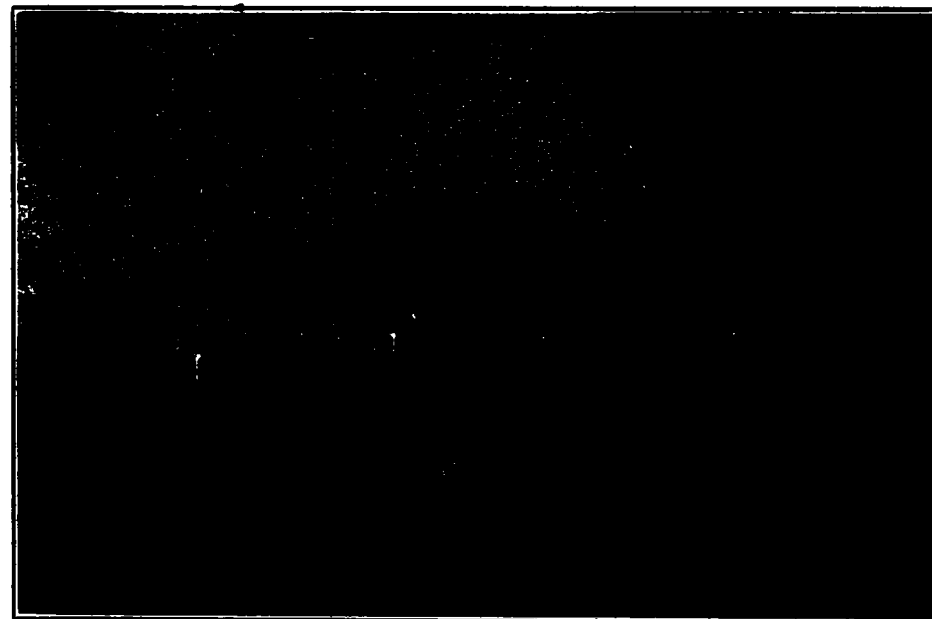
Airplane Observer	5	
TOTAL	5	5
<i>Umpires at Control Point No. 2 (Manhattan Reconnaissance)</i>		
Reconnaissance	3	
Security	2	
Decision	3	
Dissemination of Information	2	
TOTAL	10	10
<i>Umpires at Control Point No. 3 (Camping).</i>		
Camp Site	2	
Going into Camp	3	
Security	4	
Breaking Camp	4	
General	2	
TOTAL	15	15
<i>Umpires at Control Point No. 5 (Dismounted Combat).</i>		
Fire effect	6	
Conduct of Platoon	9	
TOTAL	15	15
<i>Veterinary Umpire.</i>		
Condition of Animals	5	
TOTAL	5	5
GRAND TOTAL	100	100

The final scores represented the concerted work of all umpires. On completion of the contest all umpires met and acted as the final marking committee. The senior umpire, Lieutenant Colonel Gordon Johnston, acted as chairman of the committee. Captain W. B. Bradford and the writer sat in this final committee in an advisory capacity only. No other members of the Committee were present and no officers from the 2d Cavalry were present.

Prior to the meeting of the marking committee all senior Special Umpires prepared their score sheets. The committee first considered the score sheets of Platoon Umpires. Each item on each score sheet was discussed and the value assigned it by the Platoon Umpire either accepted or rejected depending on the vote of the entire committee. After that the score sheets of the various Special Umpires were considered. About a day and a half were consumed in considering scores. The writer acted as recorder and when a score had been finally accepted by a majority it was recorded. The totals for the different situations were not

added until all platoons had been graded. Thruout the scoring all computations were carried to four decimal places.

When all grades had been awarded and all reports considered, totals were figured and Second Lieutenant John W. Wofford with a platoon from Troop F of the 2d Cavalry was declared the winner, with a final score of 85.6757. Altho only one place was awarded and one prize given the margin between the winner and second place was so close as to be rather remarkable and is considered worthy of special mention. The platoon from Troop B commanded by First Lieutenant James B. Edmunds made a score of 85.4308.



Lieutenant J. W. Wofford and the Winning Platoon of Troop F, 2d Cavalry

Prizes were awarded as follows.

To Lieutenant Wofford.....	A sterling silver service valued at \$200.00
To each sergeant	\$40.00
To each corporal	\$35.00
To each private	\$28.18

On Graduation Day the Commandant of the Cavalry School, presented the platoon leader and enlisted men with their prizes.

GENERAL CONCLUSIONS

As a result of observations made during the test it is the opinion of the writer, and that opinion is held by other members of the various committees, that our training is not sufficiently diversified. We teach a type method for

handling a certain situation. We do not stress the adaptation of that type to variations in the situation to a sufficient degree. One of the Platoon Umpires in his report made the following statement: "It is believed that the platoon leader showed excellent training in the principles involved but a lack of training in, or inability to comprehend their proper application to the situations confronting him."

Take for example the one instance of orders issued by platoon leaders. In our training we teach one form of order—the formal five paragraph order. And that is well and good. It teaches us to think along certain lines and to talk in the same sequence; it insures, by constant practice and repetition, that when we issue an order we will not omit anything of importance. But the stilted, formal phraseology of formal order language is not suited to the ordinary soldier. In issuing orders to soldiers clarity is of supreme importance and to insure clarity we must come down to earth, talk English and use words the soldier comprehends. Brevity is of equal importance with clarity. The value of brevity was brought out very clearly in the mounted combat situation. To attain those requisites of clarity and brevity we must teach the formal five paragraph order form to inculcate logical habits of thinking and speaking along certain lines. Early in that teaching we must show how the form and phraseology of the order may be varied to fit a particular situation. For example, in a meeting engagement a complete five paragraph order might be issued without a word being spoken.

Paragraph 1—Leader points to enemy.

Paragraph 2—Leader raises his pistol.

Paragraph 3—Leader signals "Line".

Paragraph 4—Omitted.

Paragraph 5—Sticks his spurs in his horse and moves out—leading his unit.

In the matter of reconnaissance the same premise was borne out. During our ordinary routine training with platoons, if we teach the reconnaissance of a village, it is usually just that—a village of a few houses. For many reasons it is not always convenient to actually practice the reconnaissance of a larger town. Consequently our platoons or patrols receive training in reconnoitering a small group of houses. They may be told about other methods sometime but their practice is confined to one type. Then when we encounter a town of considerable size what is the tendency of our patrol or platoon? It is to use the same methods that it has been practicing. Another point that cannot receive too much emphasis is that when approaching a place such as a village, woods, etc., speed is essential. The reconnaissance of such places must be rapid and thorough. Having gained the far side of the village quickly, then a march outpost can be established and inhabitants questioned.

Closely allied with reconnaissance and security is the business of "movement by bounds". On the first morning of the Leadership Phase the members of the Committee observed a platoon pass through Seven Mile Creek Valley. The creek itself is surrounded by woods, in the vicinity of the Ogden-Keats

road, and affords perfect concealment. After crossing the creek the road extends north for a few hundred yards and then winds around a hill to the northwest. Between the creek and the hill there is very little cover. The members of the committee, in a car, got ahead of the platoon and reached the bend in the road on the hill. Here they were concealed beside a stone wall and under cover of some small trees and observed the approach of the platoon. It broke out from the cover along the creek and approached the hill in the orthodox formation—point of four men preceding platoon at about 200 yards, all in column. Had the members of the committee possessed a machine gun few members of the platoon would have reached the hill for there was perfect enfilade and the range was easy. Special note was made of this point and, at the meeting of the marking committee, Platoon Umpires reported that all platoons did the same thing. A similar procedure was observed at other points.

Because we say in our training that the advance guard will precede the main body at so many yards it does it—in spite of hell, high water or fire. To overcome that difficulty it is suggested that it may often be desirable in small units where the advance guard is only a point, for the platoon leader to ride with the point himself. Certainly he must ride where he can control it and also his main body.

In a command the size of a platoon or smaller the function of the point is to prevent surprise of the main body at close quarters. The point must not be considered as a fighting unit and for that reason two men will often suffice. It must be trained to move by bounds and if it has not been so trained the platoon leader must march where he can control both the point and the platoon by signals.

In the situation at Seven Mile Creek the platoon itself should have remained under cover of the trees at the creek. The point should have proceeded at a trot and gallop to the top of the hill and on reaching that point should have waited until the platoon had reached the hill when it would have made another bound to another point. The fact that the distance between security detachments and the main body is flexible must be stressed.

The establishment of outpost, another employment of the Principle of Security, illustrated the same tendency to follow a set form, or practice, of training without adapting it to the situation at hand. Too many men detailed on outpost duty may be considered nearly as great an error as the employment of insufficient security measures. And that was the tendency noted, i.e., to establish an elaborate outpost employing for the purpose too great a proportion of the command. On the other hand, the establishment of march outposts was frequently neglected.

Dismounting to lead, while on the march, was done, to some extent at least, by all platoons. It is believed that when a platoon is alone in enemy country, it may, and should, dismount to lead but it must be properly secured while doing so. Its point should remain mounted and the place of leading should be selected with a view to proper security, particularly from surprise.

In other words leading, in enemy country, should be done as in making a march in friendly country but the time and place of leading will depend upon the situation and the terrain and not upon a march schedule.

The importance of stressing the factors of Time and Space in our training was very clearly illustrated in the mounted combat situation. In all combat situations Time and Space may be said to be the predominating factors. In a meeting engagement between two small forces of cavalry that one that "gets going" first will win, other factors being equal. Therefore, in estimating the situation, subordinate officers must be taught to emphasize their consideration of Time and Space. Had platoon leaders fully appreciated the value of those factors the orders issued in that situation would have been more brief and would have been issued more promptly.

The advisability of having the platoon leader with his point or where he can readily control it was further brought out by the mounted combat situation. It will be remembered that in every case the points dismounted to fight on foot. There was no necessity for this and had they withheld their fire the contesting platoons might have had the advantage of complete surprise. Or had the points charged mounted the effect of surprise would have been greatly increased over that actually attained. There seem to be two alternatives: (1) In the case of an untrained point it may be advisable for the platoon leader to actually ride with it or put a well trained noncommissioned officer in charge, (2) The training of squads and half squads to act as advance guards for troops and platoons must be specially emphasized because the results shown in this test are those we are likely to get under actual conditions unless training is emphasized.

It has been the endeavor of the writer during the foregoing discussion under the head of Conclusions to illustrate the point that our training, while it is progressing materially, is still not flexible enough. Our tendency is to teach and practice a type of advance guard or other action without emphasizing its variations. The remedy would seem to lie in teaching, not types, but principles. Those principles should be especially emphasized in our teaching and by principles is meant the Principles of War. Then, by presenting constantly, varied situations, we can teach the application of those principles.

The Committee and all umpires connected with the conduct of this test felt that they learned lessons of great value and all were most enthusiastic about the test. It is believed that the test can be made one of the greatest of our peace time incentives for perfection in leadership of small units. The idea of the donor of the prize is recognized by all as being excellent and to his energy, enthusiasm and personality the credit for the origination of a test that is most complete and exacting, is due. The test should be worked on in detail and enlarged in scope as the years go by. For the Cavalry Service, it can become the test par excellence for officers and men alike.

Cavalry of the Red Army

ON April 7th was held, in Moscow, a conference of the Cavalry Chiefs of the Red Army. The conference was occupied with a series of important questions, such as organization, tactics, and technique. The conference was preceded by a lively discussion in the professional press. The preparations for the conference occupied considerable time. Since the termination of the civil war this is the second conference of this nature to be held.

The conference was opened by Budenny. As members of the Presiding Board, the following Communists were unanimously elected: Stalin, Kalinin, Rykov, Frunze, Unschlicht, Voroshilov, Bubnov, Lashevitch, Iegorov, and Tukhachevsky.

Telegrams of greeting were sent to the plenary session of the Executive Committee of the Communist International and to the Central Committee of the Russian Communist Party.

The President of the Revolutionary War Council, Frunze, then greeted the conference and wished it the greatest success. In his speech Frunze remarked that in the bourgeois countries, there had been no uniform opinion formed as regards cavalry. On this field in the bourgeois countries, therefore, nothing could be considered as conclusive. The explanation for this must be sought in the great change which the Great War has brought about. The problem of the conference consisted in solving the complex questions in regard to cavalry, and its preparation for war. Finally, it must be admitted, that even this conference will find it difficult to arrive at a solution of all the questions. On the other hand, the successes of the Bolshevist cavalry have shown that the further work of the military authorities must be conducted along practical lines, and not consist of mere experimental tests. Frunze emphasized that the questions of organization were of the greatest importance to the conference. The conference must solve these questions in all the details, and along the lines laid down in the last plenary meeting of the Revolutionary War Council, and it must especially determine upon the organization of the cavalry units. The method proposed by the Cavalry Inspector was fundamentally right. The problem of unity of command must be solved in the course of the current year. At the present time there is under preparation a number of measures, which will make it possible to utilize the number of Commissars, who will become supernumerary. In concluding, Frunze pointed out that the conference would also have to occupy itself with the question of building up a territorial cavalry. In view of the military and political situation of the Soviet Union, the Red Cavalry must always be prepared.

The Communist Kotovsky urged the conference to make all efforts to realize the program drawn up by Frunze in his speech. The Communist Sacken presented the greetings of the 1st Cavalry Division.

BUDENNY'S REPORT

On April 8th, the Inspector of Cavalry, Budenny, made a long report. He mentioned that only during the last year had it been possible to ascertain the quality of the horses in the army, and to make the required purchases. The Inspector of Cavalry's Office has already issued the first and second part of the Cavalry Regulations, and is at present working on the third part. During the year 1924, the Inspector of Cavalry visited almost 80 per cent of all the cavalry units, and the cavalry schools. With the view of raising the fighting efficiency of the cavalry, and developing cavalry sports, a Central Investigating Committee had been formed, and in each military district corresponding district committees had been established. In the Fall of 1925, a similar investigation for the entire territory of the Union has been planned, and likewise an investigation into the stock of pure blooded horses. In regard to the cavalry saddle, model 1880, Budenny declared that it was too heavy. On the other hand, the good qualities of this saddle must be retained in the future. Further, it would be necessary to introduce the Cossack saddle in a certain part of the cavalry. The vehicles, according to the resolution of the Revolutionary War Council, must be of the type of the so-called "Tavritchanka" (named after the Government of Tavrida, where it is used), the single wheel vehicle, which has already been successfully used in place of the two-wheeled carts.

FUTURE WARS

In the further part of his report Budenny spoke of the employment of cavalry in the next war. Every future war will resolve itself into a war of classes. In civil war, the cavalry is presented a much broader field of action, as there are no rigid fronts, and in the rear of the combat groups centers of revolt develop. The American Civil War of 1861-65 and the Russian Civil War from 1918 to 1920 show that the cavalry played an important role. The future enemies of Russia would fully take into consideration the possibilities of using the cavalry. Budenny asserted that the assembling of masses of cavalry is done openly in Poland, France and Germany even in time of peace. In foreign literature there are constant plain indications that the importance of cavalry in future wars is fully recognized. Budenny then referred to the German military author, and Chief of Staff of the Inspector of Cavalry's Office, Colonel Brandt. The organization of cavalry in divisions during peace time is necessary for the purpose of infantry instruction, and manoeuvres with large forces cannot be omitted in the future. The cavalry armament must make it possible for it to compete, when dismounted, with the best infantry, but its mobility must under no circumstances suffer. As regards France, Budenny said that the basic principle of French regulations, compiled shortly after the war, consisted in having the cavalry manoeuvre mounted, but fight dismounted. This had resulted, from a technical viewpoint, in having an overloaded cavalry. From the experiences of the Russian Civil War, the

Greek-Turkish war, and their own manoeuvres in 1923, the French have learned that their cavalry showed little mobility. The French have drawn the conclusion therefore that their views of the importance and employment of cavalry in the next war were fallacious.

Poland at the outbreak of the Polish-Bolshevist war, did not have much cavalry. Upon the termination of the war, much attention was given to the organization and increase of the cavalry arm. This is explained, on the one hand, by the strong French influence, on the other hand by the most anticipated theater of war, the Soviet Union. The entire Polish cavalry will be formed into large units, and a machine gun platoon will be introduced.

Roumania is reorganizing its cavalry along the same lines as Poland, also under the influence of France.

In Germany, under the severe terms of the treaty of Versailles, is tied down in developing its fighting forces, and cavalry is considered as an independent arm. From the works of German authorities, such as Brandt, Poseck, and Bernhardt, it is seen that the Germans in regard to cavalry, do not hold the pessimistic views of the French. The German cavalry regiment is sufficiently mobile, and still possesses sufficient fire power.

Budenny closed his report with the assertion that the work of reorganizing the Red Cavalry must be carried on without interruption until a state of efficiency has been attained that will enable the Soviet Cavalry to go wherever the Soviet Union desires.

THE HORSE PROBLEM

The Communist Sacken reported on the work of getting horses for the Red Army, and established the fact that such a thing as a cavalry horse, properly speaking, no longer exists in the Soviet Union. The World War, and the Civil War have almost completely wiped out the supply of saddle horses in Russia. While since 1922 a small increase in the supply of working horses on the peasants' farms has been registered, no progress has been made whatever in the matter of saddle horses. A great number of the horse breeding farms of Russia lie in the territories which now belong to the border states. On the steppes, beyond the Don River, there could be obtained for the army before the war 160,000 cavalry horses for remount purposes, now the available supply numbers only 3000 horses. He praised the good qualities of the Don horses, which were well demonstrated during the World War.

The Communist Sotchadenko spoke on the political education of the cavalry soldiers. He mentioned, among other things, that the young cavalryman must be educated in the political sense. After the material improvement hoped for has been reached in the cavalry, stricter requirements in regard to discipline must be sought for. In regard to the ownership of horses, the speaker mentioned that the Central Control Commission of the Communists Party had permitted staff officers to keep their own horses. In the near future there will be issued an order regulating the purchase of horses through

the staff departments, by which payments on the installment plan will be permitted.

The question of single command has been completely solved. The Commissars will be used for economic and administrative positions. Those of the Commissars who have the ambition to become officers, will be detailed to finishing courses of instruction, and then become eligible to posts of command.

In regard to the territorial system, the speaker said that it could become a terrible weapon directed against the enemies of the Soviet Union.

The Chief of the Army Veterinary Administration, the Communist Nikol-sky, reported on the veterinary condition of the horses in the Red Army. The Chief of Staff of the Red Cavalry, S. Kamenev, gave a lecture on war training of cavalry.

BETTER RIDING HORSES

While the number of riding horses bred in recent years has decreased enormously, the kind and the type of this day are far superior in quality and breeding to those in the past.

Not only is there a demand in the army for good riding horses, say officers of the Remount Service, but horseback riding, polo and hunting are greatly on the increase throughout the country, and a good, well bred riding horse is bringing a better price than at any time in the history of the United States.

Declaring that breeders appreciate this, they point to the numerous applications being made to the Quartermaster-General's office for remount sires, more than 1,500 being received. To encourage the breeding of light horses, the Quartermaster Corps is distributing stallions of thoroughbred Arab and Morgan breeds. The thoroughbred, or running horse, it is said, is by far the most popular sire for the production of riding horses.

In the army's quest for appropriate horses the entire country has been covered by army purchasing boards, and while the purchasing program is now up to schedule, Major C. L. Scott of the Remount Service said that "the fact that horses of proper type were so hard to locate shows the neglect of breeding in the past and the scarcity of good sires of riding type at the present."

During the world war, and for a dozen years previous, breeding of light horses, particularly riding horses, decreased greatly, in many States the drop being from 75 to 90 per cent. The breeder has now discovered that it only pays to raise a high class, well bred colt and that "scrubs and mongrels are of no use and have no saleable value."

The Science of Hitting in Polo

BY
DEVEREUX MILBURN

Reprinted by permission, from THE SPUR of August 15, 1925

There is an art in hitting a polo ball, as there is in hitting any other kind of a ball, and it can best be acquired by study and practice. It has always been a source of wonder to me that polo players in general devote so little time to the improvement of their hitting, as it is the foundation upon which their game must be built. No matter how sound a tactician a man may be, it will avail him little unless he can hit the ball where he wishes, and with reasonable consistency with regard to length. Golfers spend hours with professionals working over and perfecting every detail of their swing. Polo players rely on the inspiration of the moment, plus a little casual knocking around, before the season begins. You rarely hear in a polo dressing-room any discussion of hitting, or of the relative merits of the methods employed by different players.

I have always been very much interested in hitting, and have had the opportunity to study the styles of most of the first-class players of this and other countries. In this article I shall try to set forth what are, in my opinion, the main principles of good hitting. I shall not attempt to go into every detail of the stroke, because, not being a professional teacher, I should, possibly, bore and confuse the reader. . . .

The grip of the handle of the stick is of the first importance in hitting. For the purposes of a discussion of the grip, all polo strokes may be classified as either forehand or backhand strokes. The forehand strokes are the off-side fore shot and the near-side back shot. The backhand strokes are the near-side foreshot and the off-side backshot. For both backhand and forehand strokes, the correct grip is a finger grip as opposed to a palm grip. If the handle is gripped mainly by and in the fingers, the shaft becomes, in the act of hitting, almost an exact prolongation of the wrist and forearm. This is conducive to ease and facility in hitting. . . . A good many players thrust the handle well into the palm of the hand and wrap their fingers around it. The stick comes out of the hand at almost a right angle to the wrist and forearm, and the result is a cramped and awkward stroke. So far as polo is concerned, in my opinion, the finger grip is unquestionably the correct one for the strokes mentioned.

In forehand strokes the balls of the first and second fingers are the driving force in the hand. In backhand strokes, the handle should be shifted slightly in the hand and the thumb extended down the back of the handle to act as a rear brace. . . . Some first-class players do not shift the stick in the hand and put the thumb down the back of the handle. I have found that it helps me in making what are the most difficult shots in polo.

Another most important factor in hitting is the brace from which the stroke is made. I use the word brace for want of a better term. It corresponds to the stance in golf. It consists in hitting from the feet in the stirrups, braced by the

knees and the inside of the thighs against the saddle, and the feeling should be that of hitting from the stirrup irons rather than from the seat. The ball should be hit when it is about opposite the toe of the right foot, or a little behind the pony's shoulder. The place where the ball is to be hit with reference to the pony varies slightly, according to the direction in which it is hit, *i. e.*, whether it is cut, pulled, or driven straight ahead, but it is good policy to hit early rather than late. The best American players hit in this way. I have noticed that players who have been trained in India seem to hit the ball from the seat, rather than from the stirrups. The result is that they hit mainly with the arm, with very little body in the stroke, and actually hit the ball late—when it is almost opposite the pony's flank. They also use long and whippy sticks. This style of hitting may be better adapted to the Indian grounds than our style, but for our grounds, in my opinion, our style is better. It gives a better sense of balance, and more strength and accuracy to the stroke. A player should ride with long enough stirrups so that he can come up into this brace easily when he is about to hit the ball, but not so long that he cannot properly control his pony.

The third and last element of good hitting is the action of the body in making the different strokes. This varies with each particular stroke. In all strokes a player should lean out and get well over the ball when he is about to hit it. This is done by pivoting the body from the knees and the waist. Lissomeness in the waist is a great asset, as it makes the process of pivoting and leaning out fairly easy. Every stroke should be carried out thoroughly so far as the action of the body is concerned; there should be no compromise slaps or pokes. This is especially true of near-side strokes, which are inherently more difficult because they are made on the side of the pony, which is not the natural hitting side. Of course, there are times in a game when the ball has to be quickly blocked or poked out of the way of another player. As a general rule, however, there is time for a correct stroke. When a player is in a hitting slump it is a pretty sure sign that there is something the matter with the technique of his stroke. A little care and practice will generally rectify it.

The off-side fore shot is the most common of all the strokes, and is used about ninety per cent of the time, especially by the forwards. The main things to remember in making this stroke are to get the right shoulder well back at the start of the stroke and to follow through. It is a very common fault not to follow through, and it is a pretty sure sign that you are not doing so if you find yourself hitting your pony under the chin with the shaft of the stick at the finish of the stroke. The stick should, in my opinion, be held in a perpendicular position until the arm is brought back to hit. Some players start the stroke with the head of the stick pointing to the ground and swing it all the way around. This is unnecessary, and increases the difficulty of timing. It is not impossible to get results in this way, but they are due more to the eye and sense of timing of the player than to any merit in the method of hitting.

The off-side back stroke is, in my opinion, the hardest stroke in polo. It requires the most perfect timing, as the direction of the ball has to be reversed.

The right shoulder should be brought forward at the start, so as to get it into the stroke as much as possible. I always give the stick a preliminary twirl before actually making the stroke, so as to get the head in motion. I feel that it makes it easier for me to time it. The majority of players follow this practice. Others disapprove of it and argue that it increases the difficulty of timing. Neither Hitchcock nor Strawbridge, both of whom have beautiful off-side back strokes, indulge in the preliminary twirl, having been taught to get along without it. I disapprove of preliminary twirls in general, and if I were starting again I would certainly try to dispense with it.

The near-side fore shot is similar to the off-side back shot and is almost as difficult, except that the speed and impetus of the pony are behind the shot, so it is easier to make the ball travel. The main thing to remember about making this shot is to pivot the body and get the right shoulder well forward, and so make a real stroke of it. It is a most useful shot for shooting at goal, and for passing especially for the forwards, and it well repays the time and practice spent upon it.

The near-side back shot is indispensable to the three and back, the two defensive players. It is more powerful than the off-side back stroke and can be better directed. The important part of this shot is the follow-through. If it is made with a proper follow-through there is very little of the player in the saddle at the finish, except the right knee. . . . It must be made with confidence and a certain amount of abandon in order to be a success. The slight feeling of insecurity at the finish, when it is made with a proper follow-through, is the main reason why it is not properly made more often. It is a difficult stroke to make in practice, but comparatively easy in play and well repays the effort made to master it.

One other shot deserves especial mention, because it is so rarely made correctly, and that is the off-side fore shot underneath the pony's neck. It is a difficult shot, especially when the pony is fully extended and is throwing his feet and legs well out in front of him. The mistakes that are commonly made in making it are hitting the ball when it is too far behind, and too much to the right of, the pony's forelegs. It should be hit when it is either directly in front of, or, better still, slightly on the near side of the pony's fore legs. The player should get well forward in the saddle and hit in front of his pony's legs. In the average game the ball hits the pony's feet or legs about fifty per cent of the time when this stroke is made, and the reasons are those given above.

. . . It (the head of the stick) gets into the hitting position, *i. e.*, at a right angle to the direction in which the ball is to be hit, at the very last moment. Special care should be taken to carry out this idea, as it means getting the wrist into the stroke. If it is not done, the stroke is a sweep with the arms with little or no wrist work, and is very apt to be somewhat ineffective.

I strongly recommend the liberal use of saddle soap on the saddle. There is nothing that can so completely rob a player of confidence in hitting as a slippery saddle, and confidence is ninety per cent of the battle. It is as easy to drive a golf ball standing on the ice with no nails in the shoes as it is to hit a polo ball off a slippery saddle.

When a man's ponies are going nicely, and he is hitting well, the game of polo is hard to beat. When the reverse is true, there is very little joy in the life of the polo player. Therefore, time spent over the ponies and hitting is well spent, and it is wonderful what can be accomplished by a person who is neither a natural horseman nor a natural hitter. As the average player takes the game of polo up fairly late in life, the chances are that he has not got as natural a stroke as if he had taken the game up in his youth, and so there is all the more reason for him to labor to perfect it.

The Fight at Haelen

August 12, 1914, And Its Lessons

BY

GUSTAVO A. SALAS, Ex-General, Mexican Army

Translated by Lieutenant-Colonel George M. Russell, Cavalry;
Military Attache, American Embassy, Mexico City.

ON the 12th of August, 1914, the German Cavalry Corps, von Marwitz, 2nd and 4th Divisions, attacked at Haelen a division of Belgian Cavalry, reinforced in the afternoon by a brigade of Infantry (4 battalions and 3 batteries.

In spite of the fact that the Belgian account states that one of the regiments of that nation received orders to execute the attack mounted at the opportune moment, it is seen from a reading of the whole account that the entire division of General de Witte fought on foot only.

Having reached the terrain the night before and being informed pretty exactly of the number and plans of the enemy, the division organized its position defensively, prepared the destruction of the bridges, established its artillery in position, etc.

The details of this important struggle between the cavalry of two nations are already sufficiently well known in the military world. The interesting thing for us to know is that the Germans executed *ten charges*, by squadron or larger units, in close order, and that the ten charges were repulsed with very heavy losses, by the fire of Belgian cannon, machine-guns and carbines.

*Graduated from Colegio Militar in 1894. As Captain, observer with 5th German Cuirassiers at Riessenburg, 1903-08. Commanded Presidential Guard of President Diaz, 1904-08. Military Attaché to the Mexican Legations in Paris and Madrid, 1908-11. Assistant Director, Colegio Militar, Chapultepec, 1911-12. General de Brigada and Assistant Secretary of War, 1914. In exile, 1914-21, in Cuba. Professor of Military History in Cuban Military Academy. For his book, "Nociones de Historia Militar," was decorated by the Cuban Government with the *Merito Militar*. Other decorations: Chevalier of the French Legion of Honor, German Order of the Crown, and *Cruz de Constanca*, Mexican, for more than 25 years' service.

According to von Poseck, in his work, "Die Deutsche Cavalerie in Belgien und Frankreich," this Haelen combat proved:

1. That the Germans were anxious to attack the enemy with the *arme blanche*, in spite of the most severe losses;
2. "That day it was demonstrated that, with the present arms, a mounted attack on positions of the nature of those of Haelen is impracticable, and that they can be taken only by making use of the fire fight."

The French Commandant Prioux in his Analysis of the Belgian General Staff account of the Haelen Combat, reflecting that the German Cavalry before the Battle of the Marne as well as in the "race to the sea," gave few proofs of the spirit of mounted offensive of which there had been so much talk in Germany before the war, wonders if the German Cavalry Generals were not influenced by the "memory of the brilliant squadrons stretched in bloody mounds on the roads from Haelen to Izerbeck."

Now, there is nothing extraordinary in the results of the Haelen combat, the Frenchman Niessel, now General, in his book, "Present Tendencies in the German Cavalry," published in 1908, tells us: "Today it is considered in Germany that the Cavalry can very well execute a dismounted offensive combat up to the final decision. There has just been adopted, for the Cavalry, a carbine, the sight of which is graduated up to 2000 meters. Nine regiments received this arm in the spring of 1908. We should add that the carbine is provided with a bayonet."

General von Bernhardi, in "Unsere Kavallerie im Nächsten Kriege," wrote, a little before this (1907): ". . . a resolute cavalry will find itself obliged almost daily to use its fire-arm on foot, and this on the defensive, as well as in the offensive, not only against dismounted cavalry, but even against infantry."

The German Cavalry Regulations of April 3, 1909, say: "With its fire-arm the Cavalry finds itself able to carry on a dismounted combat. If it is supported by artillery and machine-guns, it can resist detachments of all arms and inflict serious losses on them. If the occasion arises, it should not be afraid to attack on foot, when the situation demands it. It will often combine dismounted combat with mounted combat."

So, then, General von Garmer, who, according to the Belgian account, was the one who directed the attack executed by the 4th Cavalry Division, in having the unfortunate idea of ordering the mounted attack on the Belgian positions, is responsible for not having applied the precepts of his regulations and for having disregarded the counsels of such serious authorities as General von Bernhardi, above quoted. He is responsible, besides, for having forgotten the teachings of history.

The valiant charges of Margueritte's Division at Sedan, brilliantly led by General de Gallifet, which excited the admiration of the King of Prussia himself, had no success against the Prussian Infantry, in possession of all of its *sang froid*.

The *bravest of the brave*, Ney, at Waterloo, like the Germans at Haelen, ten times tried to break the English squares, without achieving it, and for similar reasons: not preparing for the attack with artillery; directing the attack always at the same point, instead of maneuvering on the flanks; not having the attack supported by infantry, etc.

And even the creators of modern Cavalry tactics, the generals of Frederick the Great, do not succeed in routing the Austrian Infantry at Kollin, in spite of their bold attacks, led by the King in person.

Many analogous cases we might cite, but also many others in which the Cavalry came out victorious, when these essential conditions were combined: talent on the part of the leader, valor and equestrian skill on the part of the troops, and good-will (a high quality) of the horses. And this in spite of progress in armament, for present in the memory of every Cavalryman are the great deeds achieved by the English horsemen under the orders of General Allenby in Syria and Palestine during the last stages of the last great war.

On the day following the termination of the World War, taking into account only what happened in France, it was proclaimed, almost officially, that Cavalry, as an arm fighting mounted, had ceased to exist; but as the events that took place in the other theatres of war become better known, the too exclusive judgment of the first moments of peace are being rectified.

The French Cavalry General, Junio-Gambetta, at the end of his interesting book, "Uskub," in which he relates the feats achieved by the Allied Cavalry in Serbia in 1918, after protesting energetically against those who claim the inutility of the Cavalry and wish to see it turned into Mounted Infantry, says: "The tactics of the different arms has been modified, will be modified still more, but the rules which in all times have served for the instruction and employment of Cavalry are immutable, because they are based on good sense, reflection, decision, and rapidity of execution."

The reaction in favor of mounted combat is rather accentuated in the French Regulations: in the Provisional Cavalry Regulations of June 25, 1920, we read, "Cavalry maneuvers and fights almost always on foot; mounted combat is exceptional, but may be possible for small units (platoons, squadrons) and should be studied." In the Schools of the Platoon, Mounted, and of the Squadron, Mounted, they give a few brief rules for the execution of mounted combat; in the School of the Regiment, not even a word on the subject.

And, in the Cavalry Regulations of September 20, 1923, in the School of the Regiment, it is already admitted that, "If the Regiment surprises, within its immediate reach, mounted enemy units, it is important to attack them without loss of time—The Colonel, who marches habitually with his leading squadron, or in his absence, the Chief of those squadrons, is the one who should decide whether the attack should be launched, etc." And a little further on: "If he, the colonel, finds an opportunity to attack mounted, over a short distance, Infantry or Artillery surprised and in confusion, he launches his first units as foragers against them immediately, causing them to be sup-

ported if he can, and is ready with the rest of his regiment, to exploit the results obtained."

In conclusion, we believe that, in the last war, it was confirmed that mounted attacks are something very difficult, but not impossible. Today, the same as yesterday, perhaps more than ever, it is essential that the Cavalry leader should have many qualities, so many that it is precisely for that reason that great Cavalry Generals are very rare.

Besides, the more fire-arms are improved, so much better must the horses be, for it is clear that blooded horses will run over the danger zones faster, and thus the losses will be fewer. With reference to attacks by Cavalry against Cavalry, surely if there is nothing to choose in the valor of the men, the speediest horses will triumph, and an evident example of this is the case related by the English General H. de Beauvoir de Lisle, commander of the 2nd Cavalry Brigade, and taken by us from the *Revue de Cavalerie*: On the 7th of September, 1914, during the Battle of the Marne, Lieutenant Colonel Campbell, of the 9th Lancers, with two platoons, attacked a German squadron in order to prevent it from entering the little town of Moncel. "From the positions which we occupied on the other side of the valley we could see the two opposing bodies of troops galloping towards each other—my battery went into action immediately, but too late, however, to aid the charge, which had complete success. The charging gait of the German Cavalry is slow—480 meters a minute—because, according to them, cohesion is more important than velocity. Our charging gait should reach, in the last one hundred meters, the speed of thirty miles an hour, or 800 meters, approximately, a minute. Our soldiers penetrated the German ranks before the latter had time to lower their lances. The 9th British Lancers went through the 1st German Dragoon Guards as if they had been tissue paper. When I reached the terrain of the charge, I could see that there were numerous German dead and wounded, while there was only one of our men killed," etc.

In order to obtain speeds of 800 meters a minute, horses very close to thoroughbred are needed like those of the English Cavalry. This is the great problem: very good horses and very good riders, without which, really, Cavalry is nothing more than a poor Mounted Infantry. The efforts of the French in this sense are so serious that we see also in the *Revue de Cavalerie*, in an article by Commandant de Mesmay, "Observations on the variations in the horse strength of the squadrons in the war, 1914-18," that "the 1st Squadron of the 5th Hussars, in August, 1914, had: 7 English thoroughbreds, 11 Anglo-Arab thoroughbreds, 117 Anglo-Arab half-breds, and 13 half-breds from other regions." It is easy to understand how much can be done with Cavalry thus mounted, and well led!

Photographing Horses

BY

Major C. L. SCOTT, Remount Service

FEW people, even the best of horsemen, know how to photograph a horse. A horse is usually posed so as to conceal his good points, if he has them, as well as his bad ones, and it is seldom that you can get a true estimate of a horse from a picture.

Herewith is a photograph of "Epinard" taken by Mr. Rouch of England, who is probably the best horse photographer in the world. Note the pose—the foreleg on the side of the camera slightly advanced so as to show both front legs and the proper slope of the shoulder. If the forelegs were together, only one foreleg would be visible. If the foreleg on the side of the camera were retired, the shoulder would be straightened and show at a disadvantage. The hind leg on the side of the camera should be slightly retired so as to show both hind legs and so as *not* to shorten the croup. If this leg is ahead of the hind leg opposite the camera, the croup would be shortened and the bottom line of the horse would also appear short as compared to the top line—just what you do *not* want.

Note, too, that the horse is alert, but not stiff and contracted; he is neither sloppy nor loagy; his ears are up and to the front; he is standing squarely on all four legs, neither leaning forward nor ready to go backward; he is *perfectly balanced*, which is *most essential* to a photograph. He is so placed as to show his shoulder, croup, middle-piece, etc., to the best advantage.

The camera is so placed that the horse is taken broadside and will show all of his points in proper proportion.

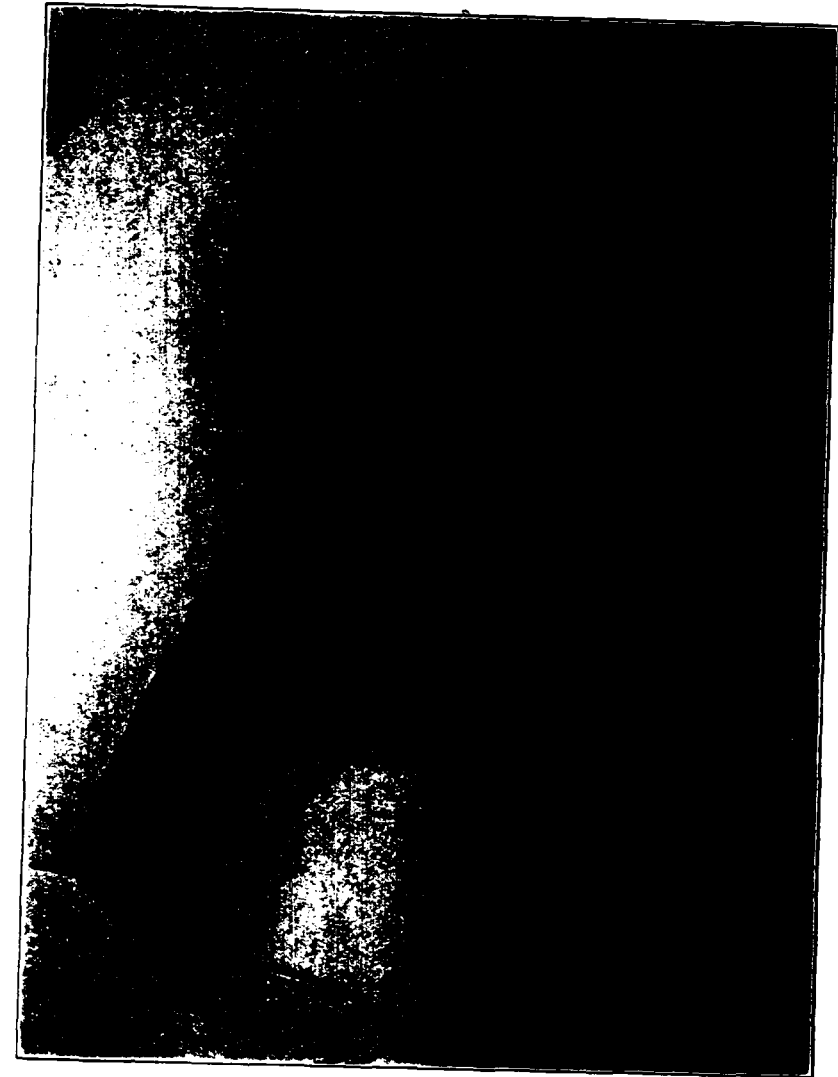
If this photograph is studied carefully and horses posed accordingly, horse photographs would be of some value. There is nothing harder to do than to pose a horse properly, and it takes a great deal of time and a great deal of pains. Mr. Rouch works hours before he can get his horse posed satisfactorily.

A 900-MILE HORSE RACE

A press dispatch dated April 16 from Buenos Aires gave the following:

"A 900-mile horse race with thirty-eight runners, which probably will last a month, commenced today on a course of about twenty miles at a ranch near here. The contest is to determine whether the criollo, the native Argentine horse of the Pampas, famed for its endurance, is superior to the best horses of pure breed.

In a series of twelve-hour races at the Palermo track last year the winners were usually horses having a mixture of criollo and foreign thoroughbred blood. Thereupon, Dr. Emilio Solanet, a breeder of criollo horses, issued a challenge for a super-endurance contest between criollos and thoroughbreds."



Courtesy of The Remount

Epinard

Liaison Instruction

Post Schools at Fort Bliss

BY
First Lieutenant MARK RHOADS, Cavalry

Fort Bliss, Texas, is the largest Cavalry post in the United States. The troops stationed thereat comprise the Headquarters of the 1st Cavalry Division, the Division Special Troops, a squadron of Air Service, a battalion of Horse Artillery, a battalion of Mounted Engineers, the Division Trains, and a brigade of Cavalry. The harmonious working of such a force in the field requires liaison of the highest type. Hence the need of adequate signal communications is apparent, and the need of signal training assumes primary importance.

The mission of the Liaison Department of the Post Schools at Fort Bliss is to prepare signal specialists, other than Signal Corps troops, mainly in their technical duties to such a degree that only a short period should ensue before they would be able to work efficiently as integral parts of their signal units.

ORGANIZATION

The Department was divided into seven courses, which were.

Course	Number of Students
	Detailed
Wire Operators' Course	30
Wire Linemen's Course	22
Advanced Wire Course	8
Radio Operators' Course	33
Advanced Radio Course	13
Message Center Clerks' Course	8
Messengers' Course	17
Total	131

The "faculty" included four officers, and twelve N. C. O.'s and selected privates. Of the officers, one was the Senior Instructor, one was placed in general charge of the Wire Courses, one in general charge of the Radio Courses. The first three of these were graduates of the Army Signal School at Camp Alfred Vail, New Jersey. Of the enlisted men, from one to three were assigned to each course, depending upon the size of the classes.

Most of the actual instructing was placed in the hands of the enlisted instructors, while the officer instructors acted as supervisors and coordinators.

SUBJECTS TAUGHT

The Senior Instructor, then the Signal Officer of the Second Cavalry Brigade, was placed on special duty for about a month before the school was scheduled to open, to prepare schedules, arrange for supplies, and to arrange and prepare the school buildings. The main subjects taught in each course, together with the number of hours devoted to them, were:

Wire Operators' Course		Radio Operators' Course	
Subject	Hours	Subject	Hours
Elementary Electricity	26	Elementary Electricity	22
Telephony, Local Battery	28	Storage Batteries	6
Service Buzzer	5	Theory Radio Telegraphy	18

LIAISON INSTRUCTION

479

Monocord Switchboards	3	Radio Procedure	19
Buzzer Procedure	10	Practical Work	19
Buzzer Operation	14	Code Practice	70
Code Practice	70	Advanced Radio Course	
Wire Linemen's Course		Elementary Electricity	10
Pole Line Construction	16	Theory Radio Telegraphy	30
Field Line Construction	12	Measuring Instruments	9
Elementary Electricity	22	Radio Sets of Various Types	36
Telephony, Local Battery	34	Auxiliary Radio Equipment	27
Monocord Switchboards	6	Practical Work	42
Operation and Maintenance of		Message Center Clerks' Course	
Telephone Nets	24	Lettering and Penmanship	11
Practical Work	43	Use of Message Center Blanks	4
Advanced Wire Course		Codes and Ciphers	8
Theory of Electricity	39	Message Center Procedure	18
Pole Line Construction	15	Practical Work	13
Measuring Instruments	15	Messengers' Course	
Storage Batteries	8	Message Center Work	8
Telephony, Local Battery	27	Duties of Messengers	8
Telephony, Common Battery	32	Map Reading	8
Telegraph Systems	13		
Practical Work	16		

Note: Hours enumerated above imply those devoted to main subjects in which are included various allied subjects.

METHODS

All courses except the last two extended over a period of four months. The Message Center Clerks' Course lasted two months, and the Messengers' Course three weeks. Each school week comprised two hours' instruction daily from 1.15 P. M. to 3.30 P. M. (which allowed for a fifteen minute intermission at the end of the first hour), except Wednesdays, Saturdays, Sundays, and holidays.

Several changes were made during the term, such as combining into one class certain subjects which were common to more than one course, mainly Code Practice and Elementary Electricity, in order to prevent duplication of work.

A limited amount of technical equipment had been accumulated during previous years, some of which was in good condition and the rest mainly in parts, the latter affording excellent opportunity for the construction of complete units by the students. The Wire Courses had the most complete line of equipment, while the Radio Courses were not so fortunate, the latter depending chiefly on radio equipment pertaining to organizations, which was used extensively towards the end of the course for instruction in the practical operation of radio nets in the field.

Text books were scarce and only in a few cases were there enough for students, so that the lecture system and blackboard demonstrations were used almost exclusively in the theoretical instruction.

As to be expected, the most important part of both the Wire and Radio Operators' Courses was Code Practice, to which one hour of each school day was devoted. A number of tables already on hand were available. These were made of wood and capable of handling ten positions each, the positions being separated by beaver-board partitions. Each position was provided with a headset and a Buzzer Sending Set, type EE-15, which is a unit containing a telegraph key, a

small buzzer, and necessary tacks. Each table was wired so that an instructor sitting thereat could send to all the others at that table, and pairs of positions were capable of being plugged together so that students could send to each other. In addition, all the tables were connected to a patching board and an instructor's table, at which were three positions, and by making various connections on this board any of the three instructors could send to any or all tables, which was particularly advantageous in sending at various speeds to previously selected groups. The small buzzer on each student's set was found to be none too rugged an instrument, and after a few months' use the vibrator contacts were burnt out with no means of replacement, and consequently there was little or no opportunity for sending practice by the students at the particular time when they were sufficiently advanced in receiving practice to take it up. However, the practical operation of Service Buzzers and Radio Sets in the field in the last month of the school period compensated more or less for this deficiency.

EXAMINATIONS

Code practice tests were held weekly and re-arrangements made of the various groups according to speed.

Examinations in each sub-course were held at the end of the period devoted thereto, and in cases where these sub-courses were comparatively long, additional examinations were held.

Final examinations were held at the end of each main course covering all the work done during the entire school period.

The students in the Wire and Radio Operators' Courses were not only required to pass the examinations, but were also required to attain a minimum receiving code speed of fifteen words per minute.

RESULTS OBTAINED

Course	Detailed	Finished	Graduated	Percentage
Wire Operators	30	20	11	55%
Wire Linemen	22	16	12	75%
Advanced Wire	8	7	6	86%
Radio Operators	33	24	18	75%
Advanced Radio	13	13	13	100%
Message Center Clerks	8	7	7	100%
Messengers	17	16	15	94%
Totals	131	103	82	79.6%

GENERAL

All instruction was made to conform as near as possible with Camp Vail practices. One of the greatest difficulties encountered was the adaptation of the old 1917 Field Message Blank to that used in all Camp Vail manuals, which is entirely different. This is a problem that has not as yet been solved to any degree of satisfaction, and one that should merit considerable thought, since from all indications the old type blank will be used for some years to come.

The instructors and students at the school performed all duties in connection therewith in addition to their other duties, and hence were not able to give it their best work, although the results obtained were fairly good. In the writer's opinion, a school of this important character should be held in the morning, and thus made the main feature of the general training scheme.

Editorial Comment

NATIONAL DEFENSE

Have the people of this country drifted back to the pre-war state of lethargy when advocates of preparation for national defense were classed as "undesirables"? Some of the signs of the times seem to point that way.

Those that have the welfare of the nation at heart and who are in a position to speak with knowledge of the subject, are under an obligation to see that no stone is left unturned in acquainting the people with the necessity of having an army and navy of the strength required by an adequate degree of security, and at the same time not inconsistent with a reasonable policy of economy.

Fortunately, no signs of war appear on our immediate horizon, or the present situation might appear to be a repetition of that of the period before the late war, when the voices of those brave and far-seeing spirits who realized what was coming, were vainly raised in an endeavor to make the nation realize the danger to which it was exposed in not making the necessary preparations to meet the emergency which was becoming more imminent every day. They failed, and as a result, the lives of thousands of our own people, and hundreds of thousands of those of our subsequent allies were lost, and billions of dollars of national wealth dissipated. This was the price the nation paid for failing to heed the warnings of Theodore Roosevelt, Leonard Wood, and many others.

The thousands of patriotic citizens who are enrolled in the National Guard and the Organized Reserves are already convinced of the necessity for national preparedness. Many of them in the World War saw with their own eyes the tragic results of lack of proper preparation in time of peace. It requires only the simplest course of reasoning in connection with our vast unnecessary expenditures during the war, to render understandable to the merest child, and convincing to the most stubborn skeptic, the statement that adequate preparedness, from the standpoint of economy, is of overwhelming importance.

The comparison of preparedness with insurance is one of the most self-evident and convincing arguments in its favor. Every one realizes the importance of personal accident, life, and fire insurance. Of how much greater importance is insurance against a vital injury to the nation, its dismemberment, or total destruction as such? Calling attention to this phase of the subject would be unnecessary were it not for the tendency on the part of certain elements of our population to limit their attention and interest to conditions which affect them directly and individually.

The necessity of having an adequate defense force should be axiomatic, as should the correlative necessity of having a properly balanced one. Each component in case of a national emergency has its part to play in relation to time and state of mobilization. A horizontal cut in all components may dangerously weaken the structure as a whole—to weaken one unduly will necessitate changing the plan of the structure and to its detriment.

The components of the land forces of the United States and their respective functions in case of emergence have been prescribed by The National Defense Act and the plans made in conformity therewith. This Act was the result of intensive study by experts who had in mind a reasonable degree of economy as well as the requirements of adequate defense. It was evolved by the military committees of Congress and adopted after full discussion of its various provisions. It was then approved by the President. Therefore as it stands it is the finished work of the representatives of the people, and it should be our guide until the representatives of the people see fit to change it.

Regardless of how desirous we may be of living in peace and amity with other nations, many of the forces working against peace are beyond our control. History teaches that the causes of war are gradual in growth and sudden in their explosions. In both hemispheres there exist economic and political conditions which contain elements dangerous to the future peace of the world, including the United States. These elements follow no fixed rule of growth and in a night may develop to an explosive stage and be set off by a spark, as was the World War by the tragedy of Sarajevo. Next time let us not be classed with the Foolish Virgins.

SIZE OF THE JOURNAL

The paper used during the past year in the make up of the JOURNAL has resulted in a thinner magazine. This fact has led some of our readers to assume that the contents of the JOURNAL had been curtailed to a corresponding degree. Such is not the case. On the contrary, the recent numbers have been larger by from six to eight pages than were the 1924 issues. It is hoped that we may be able to maintain the increased number of pages during the coming year.

OUR ADVERTISERS

We commend our advertisers to members of the Association and others who read the JOURNAL. These firms by their presence in our advertising section are lending their financial support, which means a better JOURNAL and a more complete fulfillment of the aims and purposes of the Association. They are entitled therefore to our patronage.

In writing to advertisers, mention of the JOURNAL would be appreciated. This will indicate that we reciprocate our advertisers' good will toward the Cavalry, and strengthen the JOURNAL's position as an advertising medium.

Topics of the Day

THE CAVALRY TRY-OUT MATCHES

In the try-out matches recently held at Fort Des Moines, the *Cavalry Team Championship* was won by the Thirteenth Cavalry, which thereby obtained possession of the Championship Trophy for the coming year. The team members, each of whom received a bronze medal, were 1st Sergeant Benjamin F. Longacre, Troop "F," and Corporal Joseph Yersak, Troop "A."

1st Sergeant Benjamin F. Longacre, Troop "F," 13th Cavalry, won the *Cavalry Individual Championship Match*, and was awarded the Cavalry Individual Championship Trophy and a gold medal. Sergeant Joseph Such, Troop "G," 5th Cavalry, won second place and a silver medal. Sergeant Frank Pray, Troop "E," 1st Cavalry, was third and received a bronze medal.

The 200 Yards *Individual Championship Match* was won by Sergeant Frank Kulczynski, Troop "A," 7th Cavalry, who received a silver medal. First Lieutenant Harry A. Fudge, Cavalry, D. O. L., won second place and a bronze medal.

First Lieutenant John B. Leahy, 5th Cavalry, won the 1000 Yards *Championship Match* and was awarded the Fort Bliss Trophy and a silver medal. First Lieutenant Harry A. Fudge, Cavalry, D. O. L., was second and received a bronze medal.

The Holbrook Trophy, awarded to the competitor making the highest aggregate score in the *First Rifle Elimination*, was won by Sergeant George W. Cobler, Headquarters Detachment, 2d Squadron, 4th Cavalry, who also received a gold medal. 1st Sergeant August C. Hendricks, Troop "E," 12th Cavalry, and Corporal Joseph Yersak, Troop "A," 13th Cavalry, were, respectively, second and third, the former receiving a silver medal, and the latter a bronze medal.

1st Sergeant Ben H. Harris, Troop "A," 1st Machine Gun Squadron, made the highest aggregate score in the *First Pistol Elimination*, and was awarded a gold medal. 1st Sergeant Alvin H. Newell, Troop "F," 11th Cavalry, second, received a silver medal, and Sergeant Frank Kulczynski, Troop "A," 7th Cavalry, third, a bronze medal.

It is noted that but three officers were among the place winners this year as compared with nine last year. 1st Sergeant Harris in winning the *First Pistol Elimination* this year, duplicated his feat of last year.

The Team has gone to Camp Perry for the National Matches where it is expected to make a record creditable to itself and to the Cavalry.

COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE

THE 1925 Colorado Endurance ride, which is being held at Colorado Springs, and in surrounding territory, as we go to press, promises to be the first real test of trained and prepared horsemanship in the western country, since the inauguration of the grilling cupellation of horse flesh in 1922.

Owners and riders learned a lesson in 1924, when but four of seventeen entries went as far as the third day of a five day event. There were many and varied explanations of the failure of the 1924 ride,—as far as the entries were concerned. "Too hot a pace on the first day" and "insufficient training of both horses and men," were two explanations, with the latter probably covering the entire matter.

Major Henry Leonard, Esq., well known horseman and member of the Remount Association, who is chairman of the sponsor's committee for the 1925 ride, has been instrumental in giving material aid to both horses and riders by bringing about the deferring of the ride this year until as late as September 21 to 25,—when the days are yet still warm enough to be comfortable and yet cool enough to alleviate strain on the physique of animals and men. Major Leonard has also insisted that the route of the ride be over 300 miles of roads away from motor traveled highways, and that the weight carried be 200 pounds instead of 225 pounds, as in the past.

These three items will probably make a world of difference in the result of the ride this year, as compared to last year when the killing pace and the lack of training told. Indications are that the competition in this year's event will be the keenest that has ever been seen.

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL TEAM

The Cavalry School entries for the Colorado Endurance Ride are expected to be Captain R. W. Grow, Cavalry, on *Dick Boola*; Captain R. T. Maddocks, Cavalry, on *McAlester*; Captain H. N. Beeman, Veterinary Corps, on *Vamp*; and Private Harris, on *Aline*. The latter mount is a veteran of both the Colorado and the Eastern Endurance Rides of last year, and should make an excellent showing this year.

The team was in training for some time at Fort Logan, and left there September 12th for Colorado Springs. They have had very good weather for their training and the horses appear to be in good shape.

REMOUNT CONFERENCE AT FORT RENO

A CONFERENCE of purchasing officers of the Remount Service was held at Fort Reno, Oklahoma, July 28, 29 and 30, in order to establish the type of horse to be purchased and to maintain uniformity of horses purchased throughout the United States in the Fiscal Year 1926.

All officers who attended this conference report that the information gained is of immense value to them, in that it affords them an opportunity to see the kind of horse which is being purchased throughout the United States and enables them to regulate their buying so that they will not fall below the average of the best horses secured elsewhere.

The riding horses now being purchased for the Army show a great deal

of breeding and are of distinctly riding type. Large, well-bred riding horses are impossible to secure at the Government price, but many excellent horses between 15 hands and 15-3 hands are being bought and are obtainable. The size, type and breeding of these horses are similar to those of the Waler, used to such advantage in Allenby's Palestine campaign.

It was found at the conference that all Purchasing and Breeding Headquarters had established intimate contact with the best horse sections and the best horse breeders, particularly in the west. This enables the Army to get excellent horses at very reasonable prices, and such contact will be of inestimable value in case of the purchase of a large number of horses in an emergency.

PRIZE POLO PONIES

Fifty-nine bronze medals have been awarded by the Horse Association of America to the best playing ponies in clubs affiliated with the United States Polo Association. Twelve went to horses playing with army teams and forty-seven to horses playing with civilian teams and clubs.

A committee of polo players selects the best playing pony of the season, judging entirely on performance and without attention being paid to breed or type.

Stephen Sanford of Long Island was the only man who had two ponies good enough to win medals this year. Five of the winners were developed by Fred Post, Westbury, L. I.; three by W. D. Meadows of San Antonio; three by E. B. Jacobs of Boyce, Va., and Frank Small of Hamilton, Mass. Col. Jacobs, William Anson of San Angelo, Tex., and Earle Hopping of New York each selected and trained two of the medal winners.

An analysis showed that Texas furnished most polo ponies. Twenty-one of the fifty-nine were known to be from Texas. Of the sixteen on which no information was available a number probably were from that State. Virginia ranked second with six ponies. Nine other States and Argentina, Canada and England furnished the remaining sixteen.

Because of the need of weight carrying polo mounts the height limit was abolished several years ago, but no marked increase in size was evident so far as the medal winners were concerned. Thoroughbred blood dominated in the winners, although many traced on the dam's side to a quarter-horse, bronco or mustang foundation.

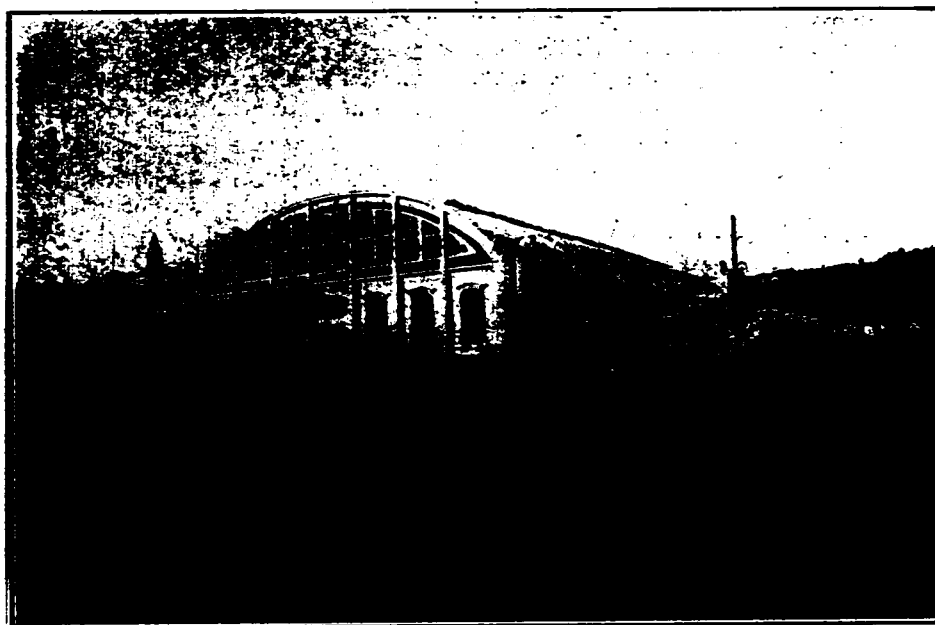
Foreign Military Notes

FURNISHED BY THE MILITARY INFORMATION DIVISION, G. S.

ITALY

The Cavalry School: The Italian Cavalry School, called School of Application for Cavalry, is situated at Pinerolo in northwestern Italy about 25 miles southwest of Turin. Pinerolo is a picturesque medieval town of about 14,000 inhabitants.

The present school is the outgrowth of the "Military School of Equitation" which was founded in 1823 at Venaria Reale, a few miles north of Turin. In 1849 Pinerolo was selected as the site of the new school because of its ex-



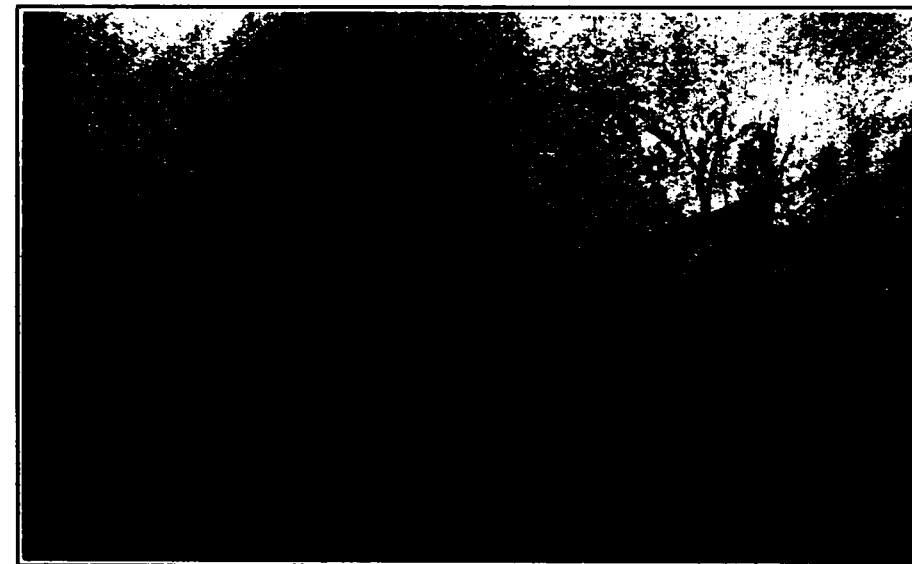
The Riding Hall at the Italian Cavalry School

cellent climate and abundant water and forage supply, in addition to the fact that Venaria Reale was to be turned over to the Artillery. Up until the time of the Franco-Prussian War instruction was given only in equitation and the use of the sabre. After 1870, in addition to the above, a general course of instruction was instituted and has been continued since that time.

In 1825, soon after the opening of the "Military School of Equitation," Otto Wagner, a German, was appointed head of the Department of Horse-

manship and remained as such until 1845. Later, Cesare Paderni, an ex-Austrian officer who had graduated at Vienna, was appointed Chief Instructor, which position he held for 30 years.

Consequently, Italian equitation was based on German and Austrian principles which were followed for many years. In 1894, however, Lieutenant Caprilli, afterwards Captain, developed his system of equitation which proved so successful that in 1902 it was adopted by the Italians. Caprilli may be



An Italian Cavalry Officer Taking a High One

called the founder of the present day school of Italian equitation which is now so well known.

At present time the student personnel at Pinerolo is composed of those officers, who, because of the World War, have not previously been able to take the course. In fact the present object of the school is to supplement theoretically the practical knowledge acquired by these student officers during the war, and to enhance their general professional education.

The number of student officers varies from 40 to 60. No quarters are furnished student officers by the Government. They rent quarters in the town.

The course at Pinerolo lasts 7 months, 6 months for the course itself and 1 month for examinations. The courses are both theoretical and practical. Special lectures are delivered on geographical subjects, history and social science, and on any topics of interest that may be selected by the Commandant.

The schedule of instruction is, as follows:

Military Art and Field Fortifications....	Length of course, 60 hours
Communications	" " " 25 "
Department of weapons.....	" " " 45 "
Topography	" " " 30 "
Hippology	" " " 20 "
Geography, political-military history, social sciences, physical education (theoretical part)	Lectures. No examinations. Theoretical-practical course. No examinations.



Italian Cavalry Officer with Full Field Equipment

Motor transport	Length of course to be decided by the Commandant.
Physical education (practical)	the Commandant.
Hygiene and administration and other subjects	Length of course to be decided by the Commandant.
Horsemanship	About five hours per day.

At the end of the course the officers must pass an examination.

All students must bring two private mounts in addition to three horses furnished by the School. The majority of school horses are pure bred.

It has been the policy of the Italian Government to permit officers of cer-

tain countries to attend the Cavalry School at Pinerolo. In this case the following requirements are made:

- (a) The officers must have had sufficient riding experience.
- (b) A sufficient knowledge of the Italian language is necessary.

HUNGARY

Remount Service: The Hungarian Government maintains a highly efficient and well organized remount service for the purpose of furnishing proper cavalry, artillery and draft animals to the Hungarian army, and improving the native stock.

The following stations are maintained in Hungary:

KISBER, about 30 kilometers to the south of Komarom, where only thoroughbred sires and mares are maintained;

BABOLNA, in the same locality, where halfbred and thoroughbred mares are bred to Arab sires; and

MEZOHEGYES, which is devoted to a heavier type of active draft or artillery horse.

Owing to the small number of units of mounted service in the Hungarian army, it necessarily follows that the major use of the remount stations is for the improvement of the native stock; therefore these remount stations are administered by the Minister of Agriculture. Usually retired Hussar officers are in command of remount stations. With the necessary assistants of military experience, they conduct the administration of the station along army lines.

Proper breeding of horses has long been a recognized art in Hungary. Before the war, practically all nations of Central Europe, as well as Russia, purchased horses to improve their own services, and the practice is being revived following the interim of the war.

The outstanding features of the remount stations are their efficient management and the remarkable cleanliness of their stables, which would serve as a model for any remount service to follow.

The quality of the Hungarian horses is extremely good, all horses in the country are of a high type, and the predominance of the thoroughbred blood can be plainly seen. A sufficient number of horses exists within the territorial bounds of Hungary to complete the services in case of mobilization, and these animals are eminently suited to military purposes.

Practically all the rural parts of Hungary are producing horses of a type suitable for military purposes.

ARGENTINA

Training of Dogs for War: That Argentina as well as Japan is interested in utilizing the services of dogs for communication purposes in war is shown by a recent report that—

Sixty-six dogs to be used for military purposes have arrived in Buenos

Aires from Brussels, where they were purchased by General Maglione, of the Argentine Army, during a recent trip to Europe.

The animals belong to two breeds known as Malinois and Groneandal. They are said to display particular qualities of courage and intelligence, to which is added a keen sense of smell.

All the dogs have been taken to the Military School at El Palomar, where they will undergo a special course of training by a man who during the war prepared quite a number of dogs to carry messages on the battlefield and between the different lines of attack.

JAPAN

Reorganization of the Army: According to the Jiji of May 1, 1925, in conformity with the reform program, the peace establishment of the Japanese Army is to consist of 198,800 officers and men organized into seventeen divisions. This is a decrease of four divisions totaling 37,000 in personnel.

All the transfers, retirements and discharges from active service, resulting from the modernization and reorganization program, will probably have been accomplished by the end of the fiscal year, that is, by March 31, 1926. Should no increase be made in the meantime, the Army would consist of 15,540 officers and 183,260 warrant officers, noncommissioned officers and men. However as a consequence of the creation of some new units such as anti-aircraft battalion and tank companies, and the expansion of other units such as the Air Service, the strength of the Army will be between 198,800 and 205,400 at the end of the present fiscal year. The modernization and reorganization program which is to be carried out by April 1, 1930, calls for the addition of 6,600 officers, warrant officers and noncommissioned officers and men, giving a total of 205,400.

Upon the completion of the Reform Program the Japanese Army, according to the Jiji, will be composed as follows:

<i>Cavalry</i>	<i>25 Regiments</i>	<i>70 Troops</i>
17 Divisions of	1 Regiment of 2 Troops	34 Troops
4 Ind. Brigades of	2 Regiments of 4 Troops	32 Troops
1 Mach. Gun. Troop per each Ind. Cavalry Brigade		4 Troops

(The organization of Independent Cavalry Brigades as given in Japanese manuals calls for 2 Regiments with 1 machine-gun troop each, or a total of two for each brigade. However, only four Regiments belonging to Independent Cavalry Brigades actually have machine-gun troops. If there are to be only 70 Troops, perhaps some change in the organization of Independent Cavalry brigades as given in the manuals is contemplated.)

The National Guard

COATS-OF-ARMS FOR THE NATIONAL GUARD

The Militia Bureau reports that of the 332 organizations of the National Guard entitled to bear colors, only 35 percent, or 116 have completed their histories and that of these 116 only 85 percent have had their coats of arms and distinctive insignia approved.

Casually, the above percentages appear small, but to one having knowledge of what is involved in the preparation of histories of organizations the showing is most creditable.

If the historic continuity of organizations is to be established without any broken links—and that is what is required—the history searching process calls for slow and painstaking labor on the part of all concerned. The papers relating to the history and claims for descent from ancient organizations call for careful certification, by both the State Adjutant General (for State service) and by the War Department (for Federal service). The presentation of these facts in proper form for verification entails much research on the part of State authorities and organization commanders.

The Militia Bureau feels that if an average of two cases per week can be finally disposed of much progress is being made.

As the designing of a coat of arms and of the distinctive insignia for an organization is based on the history of the organization, no coat of arms or distinctive insignia is approved by the War Department until the history of the organization is definitely cleared up and recorded in the Militia Bureau and in the Historical Section, Army War College. Thus it will be seen that the number of approvals of coats of arms and of distinctive insignia in any one year are dependent upon the number of organizational histories which have been submitted, verified and recorded.

MEMBERSHIP RECORDS

The 104th Cavalry, National Guard of Pennsylvania, and the 105th Cavalry, National Guard of Wisconsin, in recently enrolling practically 100 percent of their commissioned personnel as members of the Cavalry Association, have given the Regular regiments a high mark at which to "shoot". The two states concerned are to be congratulated upon having organizations whose officers exhibit such a degree of interest in the cavalry service and their own professional improvement. To Colonel Edward J. Stackpole, Jr., 104th Cavalry, and to Colonel James J. Quill, 105th Cavalry, is due great credit for bringing to the attention of their officers the advantages to be derived from membership in the Association.

TWO ENTERPRISING ORGANIZATIONS

Two periodicals have been arriving regularly at our desk which are deemed worthy of special notice. These are *Saber and Spur*, published by the 2d Squadron, 106th Cavalry, at Springfield and Urbana, Illinois, and *Saber Cuts*, published by Headquarters Troop, 104th Cavalry, Harrisburg, Pennsylvania.

Much credit is due both of these National Guard Cavalry units for the commendable spirit of enterprise which prompts them to issue and keep alive these publications which compare very favorably with those of much larger organizations.

They unquestionably have a very favorable influence on the morale of the organizations concerned.

WORTHY REPRESENTATIVES OF 109th CAVALRY

Two members of the 109th Cavalry have recently, with credit to themselves and their regiment, begun, respectively, a military and a naval career. Ford N. McNeil, of Nashville, Tennessee, of Troop "B," 109th Cavalry, and later of Troop "G," 6th Cavalry, received an appointment to West Point, and reported July 1st for entrance as a fourth classman.

Charlton Rogers, a distinguished member of the Boy Scouts of America since 1917, and a member of the Headquarters Detachment, First Squadron, 109th Cavalry, received an appointment to the Naval Academy at Annapolis and entered as a Midshipman on July 1st.

The officers and men of the 109th Cavalry are very proud of these two worthy representatives of the regiment and wish them the best of luck in their new careers.

POLO IN ALABAMA NATIONAL GUARD

The Birmingham Sabres on July 12th took into camp the Infantry polo team from Camp McClellan to the tune of 6 to 4. Line ups were as follows:

<i>Birmingham Sabres</i>	<i>Camp McClellan</i>
No. 1—O. G. Robenson	Lieut. Parker
No. 2—Captain Hurt	Lieut. Moore
No. 3—Captain Carter	Lieut. Parmlry
No. 4—Sergeant Coley	Major Shallenberger

105th CAVALRY—National Guard of Wisconsin

Colonel James J. Quill, Commanding

This Regiment traveled through the entire Field Camp of Instruction "with tails in the air," said our Senior Cavalry Instructor. There never was a happier Field Camp of Instruction for us and the men actually regretted leaving the Camp at the end of our period, July 11th to 25th, inclusive. Five of our units came into camp with 100% attendance, i. e., Hq. Det. 1st Sq., Troops A, B, and C and the Hq. Det. 2nd Sq. The attendance of the other units was very good also. Punishments for misdemeanors were unnecessary and the guard tent was used for instruction purposes only. The Camp Quartermaster, Lt.-Col. Charles R. Williams, saved us from a very serious war with mosquitoes by one of his prompt and efficient moves. He provided within twenty-four hours after arrival enough mosquito nets for every soldier in the camp. No doubt this protection saved much of our morale. In rifle range work we held our own with the Infantry, by placing first, third, and fourth, and one alternate in the Wisconsin Team for Camp Perry. In pistol firing both mounted and dismounted, great progress was made, several of the units qualifying as high as 60% of their enlisted men and practically all of their officers. Under the leadership of Captain W. T. Haldeman, Senior Cavalry Instructor, we used with marked success the overhead targets and fired all the officers on these targets in platoon formations at a gallop without a mis-

hap. It is planned to fire enlisted men by platoons on the overhead mounted targets next season. The most serious defect this year was our shortage of horses and the presence of a number of unsuitable civilian rented horses. The instruction was in every way a follow-up of instruction received at the home stations prior to camp. The officers and non-commissioned officers had worked on certain map problems during the winter. Our instructors went to great pains to transfer these problems to the Camp Douglas map and they were put into practice in actual terrain exercises in squadron maneuvers for four days. These problems stressed the employment of squads and patrols and used the non-commissioned officers normally, thus calling forth their initiative and resourcefulness.

On Friday, July 24th, our mounted field day was held, Troop E of Kenosha, winning the meet.

Sunday, July 19th, was designated as Governor's Day and was quite generally advertised throughout the State. Several railroad excursions were run to Camp Douglas for that Sunday and people were invited to be the guests of the State. A crowd of about twelve thousand people was happily entertained with a continuous program from 11:00 a. m., when the trains arrived until the Review of the entire camp at 6:00 p. m. Our Regiment put on a program of mounted exhibitions in the afternoon and participated in the assemblies of the entire command.

The most intensely interesting and instructive event of the Camp was the Officers' Test Ride on Saturday afternoon, July 18th, with every officer of the Regiment taking part. This ride involved the leading of an imaginary officer's patrol of one squad over an 11-17 mile route, at five different points on which situations were presented which would test the competitors in decision, observation, sketching and sending of messages.

110th CAVALRY—Massachusetts National Guard

Lieutenant Colonel Dana T. Gallup, Commanding

THE past spring has been a particularly active one around Boston for parades. Units of the 110th Cavalry have played an important part in nearly all of these. In March, Headquarters Troop escorted the Governor in the Evacuation Day parade in South Boston, commemorating the evacuation of the city by the British. The Mounted Band, which is coming into great demand for these affairs, also appeared.

Patriots Day, on April 19, opened the season for celebrations in connection with the 150th anniversary of the battles of Lexington and Concord. Again this year "Paul Revere" and "John Dawes" retraced the historic course taken in 1775. Service Troop furnished the riders and their cavalry escorts and "Paul Revere" was accompanied by General Pershing, and "Dawes" by the Vice-President of the United States, who is a direct descendant of the original rider.

In the parades in Lexington and Concord, Troop C escorted some of the prominent visitors to the celebration. The same troop also took part in a parade in Newton on Memorial Day.

In June the City of Quincy, one of Boston's neighbors, celebrated the three hundredth anniversary of its founding. Troop "A" and the band were prominent in the celebrations there on June 13th.

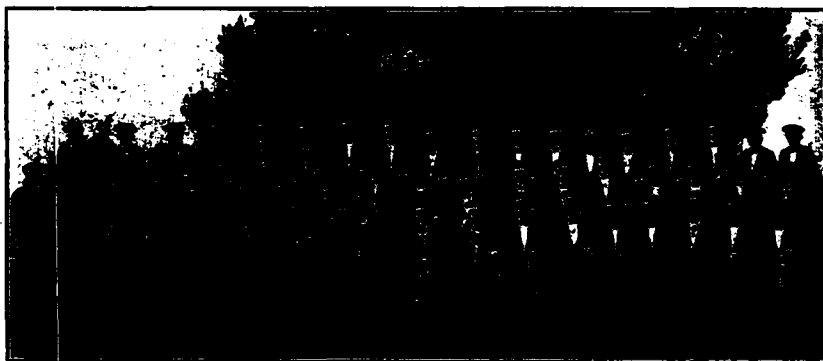
On June 18th, the regiment escorted the Governor to the Harvard Commencement exercises. A number of the members of the National Lancers, the veterans organization of the 110th Cavalry, appeared in their red tunics and helmets as the immediate body guard. Eighty-eight years ago this month, the National Lancers were formed, and one of their chief functions was this annual escort of the Governor to Cambridge. A large number of the members of the active cavalry are also in the Lancers and it is hoped that before many years it will be possible to turn out entire troops in the red uniforms when escorting prominent officials.

The final public appearance of the regiment before camp will be in Cambridge at the 150th anniversary of the day George Washington assumed command of the Continental Forces. President Coolidge will be present at this time and the regiment will form his escort.

Although it has appeared in parades a number of times the regiment has by no means neglected its other work. The annual federal inspections were later than usual this year, coming in the middle of April. This year more emphasis was laid in these inspections on the training of specialists than in the past. This fact, and plans for more intensive use of the specialists in camp, have led to a fuller degree of training being given them than in previous years. Special attention has also been paid to the training of the staff officers.

The present Governor of the Commonwealth is taking an especial interest in the mounted forces of the Commonwealth. His first inspection of troops after his inauguration was one of the 110th Cavalry and the 101st Field Artillery and other mounted units stationed at the Commonwealth Armory.

This year special efforts are being made by the mounted units located at the Commonwealth Armory to work closer together. To foster this cooperation, the artillery several months ago put on a "Mounted Service" night, in which every one taking part was a member of the cavalry or the artillery. Headquarters Troop of the 110th in May staged a "Cavalry Roundup" which had some horseshow features, some rough riding, some spectacular features, and competitive drills by both artillery and cavalry units. Both of these affairs drew a large crowd and created much interest.



Courtesy of California Guardsman

Officers of 160th Infantry, National Guard of California

BLUE UNIFORM BOOSTERS

After a glance at the above illustration it will be seen that the blue uniform is more popular than some of its opponents would have us believe. The group depicted is the corps of officers of the 160th Infantry regiment of the National Guard of California, and the picture was taken on the occasion of the encampment at Del Monte last July. The effectiveness of the old Special Evening Uniform with cape is apparent. That the *esprit* of the officers of this organization was enhanced by their appearance as a body at a public occasion in this uniform cannot be doubted.

The Organized Reserves

MISSION OF THE RESERVES

The following extract from a letter sent out by the War Department to all corps area commanders, is of interest as indicating the mission of the Organized Reserves in both war and peace:

The Officers' Reserve Corps is maintained as a general replacement pool in which Reserve officers are initially appointed and made available for assignment to the Regular Army, National Guard and Organized Reserves. Reserve officers assigned to the Regular Army and National Guard for war-time expansion should be identified with these components in time of peace and given both active and inactive training with the organizations to which they are assigned.

The Organized Reserves is composed of cadres of tactical organizations similar to those of the Regular Army and the National Guard, with definite missions as follows:

a. *Peace Mission*—To develop unit cadres trained to receive, organize, supply and train the selective service men necessary to bring the units to war strength during mobilization for a major emergency.

b. *War Mission*—To complete the organization of those Reserve units required to form six field armies under the basic plan for meeting a major emergency.

Unit training on active-duty status is not intended as the medium for imparting the maximum amount of military *information*. It should be especially a *performance* course.

It is necessary that advantage be taken of all opportunities to place responsibility upon reserve unit commanders.

Reserve unit commanders, who lack interest in the development of their units, and repeatedly request exemptions from active training should be replaced by more conscientious and active officers.

Regimental commanders should be required to render complete reports to division headquarters covering in detail the active-duty training of their commands, and to prepare, personally, and submit efficiency reports of the members of their commands.

ARMY CORRESPONDENCE COURSE

A supply of the War Department pamphlet "Announcement of Correspondence Courses, 1925-1926" has been sent to each corps area commander and by this time each Reserve officer has no doubt received a copy. The importance of these courses to Reserve officers is manifest. They parallel the methods of instruction carried on at the Special and General Service Schools, and a conscientious effort to get the most possible out of them will certainly add much to the efficiency of an officer of any grade.

Another feature is the bearing of these courses on promotion. AR 140-21 states:

5. Correspondence Courses.

(a) In lieu of tests for any subject under the head of knowledge qualifications, examiners will accept evidence of satisfactory completion of the appropriate correspondence course of instruction within five years of date of application for examination in that subject. Satisfactory completion of any particular correspondence work, once so accepted preliminary to any grade, will not, after such promotion, be again accepted toward advancement to any higher grade.

The taking of these courses by officers cannot be too highly recommended.

TRAINING CAMP AT FORT RILEY

THE morning of the 5th of July saw the Reserve Officers reporting in at Fort Riley, Kansas, for fifteen days of active duty training. All were agreeably surprised at the clock-like precision of the beginning of the schedule. Each officer as he arrived was taken direct to his quarters, where he found his name above the door of his quarters, with chairs, table and bed ready and in order. From the time the student officer arrived at the Post, the trip to his quarters and the medical inspection required but ten minutes.

It is the opinion of the majority that this year's camp gave the greatest amount of practical training that the Reserve Officers in this vicinity have yet received. Officers acted as Corporals of squads in the ranks of the troop, as platoon leaders, and as Troop Commanders. The demonstrations by Artillery, Machine Guns, Engineer and Signal Troops were practical and conducted in such a manner that each Officer could follow the progress of the demonstration and retain the principles involved.

On the completion of the School term the Cavalry Officers competed against the Artillery and Engineer Officers in the following mounted events: Equitation, Jumping and Potato Race. Did the Cavalry win? Read on.

Captain Paul R. Gerding, Cav.-Res., first in the Equitation event, won a silver cup to be defended in 1926 and 1927.

Captain Lester B. Shapland, Cav.-Res., first in the Jumping, won a silver cup to be defended in 1926 and 1927.

2d Lt. Leroy R. Wood, Cav.-Res., taking first place in the Potato Race, won a pair of silver spurs.

Captain Daniel P. Lane, Cav.-Res. taking second place Potato Race, won a Riding Crop.

To General Booth, Colonel Williams and the officers of the 2d Cavalry the greatest amount of praise is due for their interest and work during the training period.

STRENGTH OF THE OFFICERS' RESERVE CORPS

Recent reports on the Officers Reserve Corps show a total of 91,675 officers commissioned in the corps. Of these, 56,998 or 62.2 per cent, were in the combatant branches, and 34,677 in the non-combatant branches. The strength of the corps is constantly being increased, the most recent large increment resulting from the commissioning as second lieutenants of a large number of graduates of the senior division of the Reserve Officers Training Corps.

Of the total, the Infantry has 28.6 per cent, with the quartermaster section second with 11.1 per cent, or 10,144 officers. Other branches in order of strength are: medical, 9,184; field artillery, 8,926; air service, 6,813; engineers, 5,941; dental, 3,719; coast artillery, 3,661; cavalry, 3,322.

KEEP UP THE GOOD WORK

The 158th Machine Gun Squadron with 100 per cent membership in the Cavalry Association is setting a good example to other organizations. It is closely followed by the 302d Cavalry, and by the 311th and 312th Cavalry of the 156th Cavalry Brigade, all of which are well on their way to a perfect membership record.

The Executive Officer of the 158th Machine Gun Squadron is Captain Halbert H. Neilson, Cavalry; of the 302d Cavalry, Captain Gilbert Rieman, Cavalry; and of the 156th Cavalry Brigade, Colonel R. E. McNally, Cavalry.

AN R. O. T. C. HIKE

The Cavalry R. O. T. C. unit of the Massachusetts Agricultural College initiated a radical innovation this year by hiking the 200 miles from Amherst to the training camp at Fort Ethan Allen instead of traveling by train. It was an experiment and a risky one. Could students, even when guided by a Regular officer, aided by a few enlisted men, endure the hardships of such a hike and acquire suddenly and under the pressure of necessity, the skill requisite to perform the multitudinous functions vital to the success of a troop on the march? Carrying the meager equipment of a regular army trooper on field service, subsisting on the army ration, required to shift completely for themselves and to take entire care of their horses as well as themselves, could students do all this with efficiency and despatch so that the column would function properly and reach its destination on time and with the horses and men in good condition?

This they did without mishap and arrived in fine physical condition and with a wealth of experience in looking after themselves in the field.

SPRINGFIELD POLOISTS WIN

A Cavalry Reserve Officers' polo team invaded Washington the latter part of August and won two games from War Department teams, by whom they were mounted. On Saturday, August 29, they won their game by a score of 5 to 2 on the flat. On Sunday following, they won by a score of 8 to 4, having been allowed 4 goals by handicap. The good teamwork and the clean hitting of the visitors were outstanding features. Their line-up was as follows: No. 1, Captain H. M. Clark, Cav.-Res.; No. 2, Lieut. T. E. Voight, Cav.; No. 3, Captain T. W. Herren, Cav.; Back, Captain S. Clark, Cav.-Res.

New Books Reviewed

Memories of Forty-Eight Years' Service. By GENERAL SIR HORACE SMITH-DORRIEN, G. C. B., G. C. M. G., D. S. O. With illustrations and maps. E. P. Dutton and Company, New York. (Price \$8.00.)

This book by one of the distinguished British soldiers of the past half century is the most important autobiography of a military man which has appeared in recent years. Its interest as a narrative of an eventful career is equalled by its value as judged from an historical as well as a military point of view.

Soon after the beginning of his military career, the author participated in the Zulu War in South Africa, in which he had a number of exciting experiences and narrow escapes. The tragic and needless death of the Prince Imperial of France is graphically described. From South Africa, General Smith-Dorrien went to Egypt where he participated in the Arabi Pasha Campaign, and the Nile and Suakim Expeditions, 1884-1887. From Egypt he went to the Staff College for two years, and then to India where he remained until the Tirah Campaign, 1897-1898, in which he took part. In this campaign the British had their fill of hill fighting against the warlike Afridis. The Khyber Pass, the scene of many exciting fiction battles, and as many actual ones, played a prominent part in this campaign.

After a visit to England, the author returned to Egypt in time to take part in Kitchener's campaign against the Mahdi and the capture of Khartoum, which had been in the possession of the Dervishes since the death of the ill-fated "Chinese" Gordon, in 1885. From here he went with the Fashoda expedition from which due to the action of the French Captain Marchand, resulted the famous Fashoda Incident which for a time threatened the friendly relations between Great Britain and France. Sir Horace was intimately concerned in the negotiations with the French leader.

After a short tour as Governor of Malta, he proceeded to South Africa where he participated in the Boer War. Here he quickly attained the rank of Brigadier General, and then of Major General. The portion of the book (some 156 pages) dealing with the Boer War amounts to an authoritative history of the portion of that struggle in which the author participated. The following extract will appeal to cavalrymen:

"Nine hundred Boers were, however, holding a line of kopjes about three and one-half miles north of Klipdrift and between it and Kimberly, and they had to be dealt with in order to open the road. Thus came the famous charge of the Cavalry Division through the middle of the Boer's position, covered by their own artillery and the guns and infantry of the 6th Division. It must have been a magnificent sight: six thousand horsemen riding straight into what appeared to the spectators the jaws of death, for a withering rifle fire was being poured into them,—and the Boers were no mean shots. The dust raised by the galloping horses hid everything from friend and foe, and when it cleared General French and his gallant men were seen rallying a mile beyond the Boer position; their casualties were only sixteen killed and wounded and some twenty horses. Truly it was a bold conception, splendidly carried out, and rightly raised the reputation of the General commanding the Cavalry Division. The road was now open, and French reached Kimberly the same evening, to find that the investing Boers had withdrawn."

From South Africa the General went to India in 1901 as Adjutant General and remained there until 1907. During the first part of this period the evil effects on morale and efficiency of the Indian Army caused by lack of harmony between the Commander-in-Chief and the Viceroy are apparent.

From 1907 to 1911 he commanded at Aldershot and performed various duties until his promotion to a Generality in 1912. At the beginning of the World War he

was sent to France and assumed command of the II corps. He rendered much valuable service during the retreat from Mons for which he was highly commended by Sir John French who credits him with having saved the British left wing. From the Battle of LeCateau, we follow him to the Marne and the Aisne, to LaBasse in October, 1914. On Christmas of 1914 he was assigned to the command of the Second Army. Soon afterward, for some reason not made clear, his relations with Sir John French became strained, and he returned to England where he was given a high command.

In this brief resume it has been impossible to even suggest the vast amount of detail of the greatest interest that fills in the frame work of the book, which will make a valuable addition to any military library.

Official History of the Canadian Forces in the Great War—The Medical Services. By SIR ANDREW MACPHAIL, Professor of the History of Medicine, McGill University.

The latest of the Official Histories of the Great War to appear is that of the Canadian Forces which is being prepared by the Historical Section of the General Staff. The first volume of the series has recently been published and covers the history of the Medical Services. The description of difficulties and confusion in training and supply during the early stages of preparation for service in France are reminiscent of our own troubles in those respects. Weather, housing, and other conditions in England after the arrival of the first contingent made increasingly difficult the whipping of the contingent into shape, especially on account of having to be re-equipped and differently trained. The second division sent across profited by the experiences of the first, to its advantage.

The movement of a field ambulance unit from the Salient to the Somme is described in detail. The Battle of the Somme was the first important action in which all four of the Canadian Divisions were engaged, and the first one in which all of the mobile Medical units took part. The battle opened for the Canadians on September 3, 1916, and lasted until November 28th. The work of the Medical Services in this battle and in those of Vimy Ridge in the spring of 1917, and Passchendaele in the fall are fully described.

In the chapter devoted to Surgery at the front, there is much of interest in regard to surgical expedients and methods which were evolved from experience. In covering the subject of The Service in the Field the problems to be solved and the difficulties to be overcome are graphically described. Administration, organization and the ancillary services are thoroughly discussed. Of especial interest are the chapters on diseases of war, with statistics of prevalence, and the preventative and curative measures taken. Some space is devoted to poison gases, their effects and treatment.

The General Staff and the Department of National Defence have reason to view with satisfaction this initial effort in the great work which has been undertaken. It reflects credit upon them and the author. The book is very handsomely bound and its typographical features are all that could be desired.

Warfare.

By COLONEL OLIVER L. SPAULDING, JR., Field Artillery; HOFFMAN NICKERSON; and COLONEL JOHN W. WRIGHT, Infantry. Harcourt, Brace and Company, New York. (Price \$5.00.)

This work treating of the science of war from the earliest times to include the period of Frederick the Great, is one of the most important contributions to military literature that has appeared in recent years. While the authors disclaim any attempt at compressing military history into tabloid form, the book really amounts to that in addition to the other features which make it valuable to the student of military art and science. Brief descriptions of the important battles and military opera-

tions of each era, with analyses of the tactics involved, are carried along with the evolution of armament, organization, and fortification.

In each case the operation of armies is considered in relation to the community in question, to its political and economic organization, and the purposes for which it maintained armed forces. No other single volume covers this field. The manner of treatment of the subject takes the work out of the class of "dry-as-dust" tomes, and the interest of the reader is continuously maintained. Its value is much enhanced by numerous battle plans and sketches.

Ancient War, from the Earliest Times to the Death of Caesar, is discussed by Colonel Spaulding; Warfare from the Roman Empire Through the Mediaeval Period, by Hoffman Nickerson, author of *The Inquisition: A Military and Political Study of Its Establishment*; Early Modern War, by Colonel Wright.

Memories of Long Ago. By LIEUTENANT COLONEL O. L. HEIN, U. S. Army, Retired. Illustrated. G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York. (Price \$3.75.)

These reminiscences by an officer of wide and varied experiences cover a period extending from before the Civil War to the present time. As an officer of cavalry on the western frontier in the early seventies and the eighties, the author participated with distinction in a number of the Indian campaigns of that period. Later he was Assistant Instructor of Tactics at West Point, 1874-1879; Military Attache to the U. S. Legation at Vienna, 1889-1894, and Commandant of Cadets at the U. S. Military Academy, 1897-1901. In these positions he had exceptional opportunities of meeting notable personages and the book is enlivened with many incidents regarding them. His circle of friends among Americans of social and political prominence was very wide, and the side lights thrown on the social and political life of the period of which he writes are very interesting.

It will be of interest to members of the Cavalry Association to know that Colonel Hein was one of the founders of the Association and was its first Secretary, as well as the first editor of THE CAVALRY JOURNAL.

Let 'er Buck. By COLONEL CHARLES WELLINGTON FURLONG. G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York. (Price \$2.50.)

This is a dramatic and thrilling narrative, unique of its kind, and a valuable contribution to the history, not only of Oregon and the northwest, but of America. A book in which adventure, history, romance, and information are blended and the characters living men, women and horses of the range.

Having spent fifteen years in the region in which are laid the dramatic scenes depicted by Colonel Furlong, the reviewer is in a position to state that no where else can be found such a graphic description of the country, the people, their spirit and life, as this work presents.

It is a vivid panorama of one of the most romantic chapters in American history rapidly disappearing below the horizon of time, epitomizing the memories and traditions of the virile days of western life, which culminates each September in the great cowboy carnival known as "The Round-Up," held in Pendleton, Oregon.

From cover to cover this is a distinctly American book,—American in its subject, spirit and character, and in its style of writing, positive, wholesome, convincing, thrilling, real, with a punch in every paragraph and a kick in every sentence.

The author, Colonel Charles Wellington, explorer, author, soldier, cowboy, etc., is himself a famous "buckaroo" and has competed in the sports of the range and round-up which he describes. In 1914 he won the world's rough riding championship on the famous bucking bull "Sharkey."

Over fifty illustrations taken from real life, picture bucking horses, cowboy races, roping wild steers, bull-dogging Texas Longhorns, Indians, cowboys, cowgirls, and old time scouts as seen at the famous Pendleton Round-Up.

Foreign Military Journals

The Cavalry Journal (Great Britain) July, 1925

In the third of his series on *The Decisive Battles of Alexander the Great*, Colonel J. F. C. Fuller, D. S. O., describes the Battle of Arbela. Alexander's audacity in attacking with but 40,000 a horde variously estimated to number from 250,000 to 1,000,000, is amazing. In this battle Alexander made use of a tactical formation slightly different from any that he had used before, in that he placed his reserve force—consisting of two flying columns, in rear of the right and left flanks, respectively, and facing obliquely in order to take the Persians in flank should they attempt to turn the wings. The disparity in losses was remarkable. One author states that 300,000 of the Persians were slain, while Alexander lost but 100 men and 1,000 horses killed. The application by Alexander of the principles of security, economy of force, and mobility is brought out in a most logical manner. An excellent article and well worth reading.

The continuation of *German Cavalry in the Opening Stages of the World War*, by Lieut. Colonel H. V. S. Charrington, M. C., 12th Royal Lancers, takes up the action of the German cavalry immediately following the Battle of Mons, August 23, 1914, when the II German Cavalry Corps, on August 24th, which on the previous evening had been placed under the First Army (von Kluck) received orders to wheel about and try to cut off the British Expeditionary Force as it retired from the Mons position. Its failure to accomplish this and the reasons therefor make an interesting study. The employment of three German cavalry divisions in dismounted frontal attacks against an enemy in position, who had an exposed flank, and who was only standing in order to gain time, is well characterized as a criminal misuse of cavalry. Later, when von Kluck made his famous wheel inwards to attack the left flank of the Fifth French Army, he was preceded in his march to the southeast by this same II Cavalry Corps which ran up against an obstacle in the shape of the British 4th Division and Allenby's Cavalry Division. The author considers the main lesson to be learned from these operations to be the difficulty, but the immense importance, of giving proper directions to these great cavalry masses.

Horsey Fallacies, by Major T. Lishman, late R. A. V. C., is refreshing. While it will undoubtedly cause some controversy, good should be derived from it. The author states that Lampas as a disease, simply does not exist, but that the condition, and a normal one at that, is a congestion of the gums and palate seen in the horse up to five years of age, during which time the animal is cutting his teeth. Lancing or burning he considers brutal and unnecessary. Major Lishman's views on watering are sound and are backed up by good authorities. He holds that the correct time to water an animal is during its work and at the termination of its work, and not after it has completely cooled down. His comments on teeth rasping, weak back, colic, grease for brittle feet, worms, and bandages, are worthy of serious thought. They suggest the question as to how much damage has been done through uninformed action in these matters.

It is with great pleasure and relief that we observe that Captain C. C. Shaw, R. C. A., clears up the subject of PINK TEA which has been troubling F. J. A. since his reading of the verse in our April number. It must be admitted that Captain Shaw has done right well. It is quite fitting that our Canadian friends should interpret between the Mother Country and ourselves since they are in a position to know and understand each of us better than we know and understand each other.

Canadian Defence Quarterly July, 1925

In *The First March of the Northwest Mounted Police* is described a march of

approximately 2,000 miles made by the entire Northwest Mounted Police in the summer of 1874 when the force was first organized. The occasion of the march was the establishment of posts at strategic points in the great Northwest Territory. The difficulties encountered in the way of bad weather, lack of feed for horses and cattle were sometimes almost insurmountable, but beyond losing some horses and cattle through starvation and cold, the command completed its march little the worse for the hardships encountered. The author states that this march must rank as one of the most remarkable in history for a force carrying with it its own supplies.

In *Braddock's Campaign and its Lessons*, Major D. T. McManus, The Argyll Light Infantry, gives a vivid account of this ill-fated campaign and the responsibility of General Braddock for its failure. He is described as "An officer of 45 years service, brutal and insolent, a martinet of the narrowest type, but wanting neither spirit nor ability, and as brave as a lion." Trained in the School of Flanders, drill, precision, and pipeclay were his fetish. He forgot that these were only a means to an end, and that tactics suitable to the Low Countries might not be equally applicable in the backwoods of America. The lessons drawn, which are applicable to present day conditions, show the fallacy of using a stereotyped method of fighting, regardless of the terrain or of the characteristics of the enemy, as well as the conditions which are favorable for the employment of irregular troops, rather than regular troops, and vice versa.

The Employment of Air Power in Modern Warfare, by Squadron Leader R. Leckie, D. S. O., D. S. C., D. F. C., Royal Air Force, shows that our own Air Service officers are not alone in their views that air forces can no longer be regarded as adjuncts of armies and navies, that they are capable of independent action, and that those nations in close proximity to possible enemy nations must in future, regard their population as being exposed to direct military air attack, regardless of the strength of their older services.

The Journal of the United Service Institution of India July, 1925

In an interesting article on *The Concealment of Forward Communications from the Air in Moving Warfare*, Captain and Brevet-Major B. C. Denning, M. C., R. E., discusses the subject from the standpoint of line troops as well as that of the engineer. Various expedients are described. The author appears to be mainly impressed with the difficulties to be encountered and the many details of the art of concealing moving troops, which should be known by every officer.

Captain B. Bradshaw-Smith in *Protection on the March in Mountain Warfare*, takes up the discussion of Colonel Milward's article on this subject in the January number. Captain Bradshaw-Smith favors the Block System as opposed to the Normal System of protection on the march in mountain warfare. His reasons appear to be convincing.

Other articles of general interest are *The Army Co-operation Squadron*, by Flight Lieutenant R. L. Stevenson, R. A. F., and *Chemical Warfare*, by "Al Khanzir."

Revue de Cavalerie (France) May-June, 1925

Reviewed by Lieutenant Frank L. Carr, Cavalry

Concerning Recent Articles on Aviation of Cavalry Commands. Captain Schlessler, in commenting on recent articles written about the use of aviation in cavalry commands, states that the solution is a question of adaptation of first, methods; second, material; third, personnel.

As to methods, the aviator must be given the mission of the cavalry commander, must know the direction and rate of march, the hour at which certain points will be reached, and the objective. Liaison between cavalry and the air force is difficult

because the cavalry units are usually small, mobile, marching along defiladed routes, and often, not following the exact route of march planned. Under the best of conditions, it is difficult for the aviator to keep in touch with the cavalry.

The materiel should unite two essentials, first, a great burst of speed, and second, a light armor.

The most important part is the *adaptation of personnel*. There must be a mutual sympathy and understanding between the two forces if the great natural difficulties are to be overcome. Unless the aviator understands the way in which cavalry works, he cannot best follow the movements of a cavalry unit. Unless the cavalry commander understands and appreciates the difficulties of the aviator, he will not know what to ask of the observer, nor will he know what information and support to reasonably expect.

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands) May, 1925

The Cavalry Saddle, Model B. By Captain Baron van Dedem. For many years the English saddle was considered the standard, but proved unsatisfactory in various ways. At the time that the Model B saddle was designed, no army in Europe was entirely satisfied with its saddle. The American saddle is the only one which does not make the horse's back sore, but it is not well adapted to cavalry use (no reasons are given for this statement).

The great trouble with any cavalry saddle is that it does not fit all horses. The writer recommends that strips of felt be placed under the saddle to make it fit the horse's back. The saddle should be made with adjustable cushions. Great care should be taken in the adjustment of the saddle-blanket, girth, etc., and every trooper should be taught to bear his weight in the right place.

Strategic Advanced Guard or Reconnaissance Organization? By Capt. H. Mathon. Although strategic reconnaissance has long been considered the foremost duty of large bodies of cavalry, neither the French nor the German cavalry did much in this way during the early part of the World War. This apparently was due to the fact that each side tried to stick to a prepared plan of campaign instead of adjusting its movement to those of the enemy.

The fact that air reconnaissance has not superseded cavalry for strategic reconnaissance is proven by events in Roumania and Poland. In the Roumanian campaign the Germans had to depend on their cavalry, for the Roumanians were decidedly superior in the air. In 1920, the Polish air service was unable to follow the different groupings of Budeynni's army, while the latter's cavalry succeeded in finding the weak point of the Polish front at Samohorodok, where the break through was made.

The Belgian cavalry regulations state that combat is to be avoided; the English, French and German regulations take the opposite view more or less decidedly. Modern cavalry, with the auxiliary arms assigned to it, is in a position to compel the enemy to unmask his forces. Large numbers are needed for this task.

Large bodies of cavalry may also be used for conducting a delaying action. The writer considers this the most probable duty of the Dutch cavalry in case of war; instead of reconnoitering far in advance of the army, it will, together with territorial troops and advanced units of the army, act as a screen for the latter.

Destruction of Vannovski's Russian Cavalry Division. By Colonel von Waldstatten. Early in August, 1914, the Austro-Hungarian 2nd Cavalry Division met small parties of Russian cavalry along the frontier. On August 20th it was reported that a large body of cavalry was advancing beyond Turynka. General Ziegler, in command of the 2nd Division, was able to follow the movements of the Russians closely. When Vannovski, the Russian commander, found himself confronted by a strong foe, he tried to turn back, but was met by two different detachments of Ziegler's cavalry, supported by artillery and infantry.

The Russian division consisted of four regiments of cavalry, ten machine guns and the train. One regiment managed to slip away from the Austrians before some of Ziegler's forces came up, but the other three regiments were caught in partly wooded and marshy country, where they could not maneuver well. In spite of bold charges by the Russians, their organizations were broken up and the men who were not killed or captured scattered through the woods on foot. The exact number of casualties is not known. The commander of one Russian regiment was killed and Vannovski captured after being severely wounded. The train, together with 2000 draft and saddle horses, was captured without resistance.

The writer considers this episode a demonstration of the danger of reconnoitering expeditions by large bodies of cavalry. It is easy enough for such a body to penetrate into the enemy's country for some distance during the first few days of warfare, but when the commanding officer wishes to return, he is pretty likely to find his way blocked by superior forces, and if he is without artillery, the chances for getting away are slight.

The article is illustrated by six sketch maps.

Reviews by Major Harold Thompson, Cavalry

Memorial de Caballeria (Spain) May, 1925

Lieut. Javier Ramos Wintuysen continues his article on *Spanish and French Cavalry in Morocco*. It will be recalled that this Cavalry officer was killed in action the past winter.

Many functions besides the more usual ones are carried out by both French and Spanish Cavalry in the zone of the protectorate, among these being the surprise of assembling tribesmen and the "razzia," a form of destructive raid, wherein the harvest fields are destroyed and the cattle of revolting tribes are carried off, as a measure of punishment.

Much emphasis is laid upon the "razzia," above mentioned. Due to the never-ending jealousies and feuds among the different tribes, each guards and keeps separate its crops, harvested or otherwise, and flocks of goats, cattle and sheep. Once these are destroyed or driven off, the tribesmen have received a fatal blow. Consequently, both Spanish and French cavalrymen receive special instruction in carrying this form of raiding to a successful conclusion. Examples are quoted for both forces.

In the Chania campaign, Colonel Boutegourd with a column composed of two squadrons of Chasseurs d'Afrique, a battery of 75's, four companies of the Foreign Legion and two of sharpshooters, left Ber-Rechid at midnight, for a locality some fifteen kilometers to the southwest, to drive off a large sheep flock of rebel tribesmen. This herd was poorly guarded and the fifty Moors guarding it fled, leaving the herd, some three thousand head, in the hands of the French. The bulk of the work, advance guard, contact, dispersion of the guards, a rear curtain of troops and rear guard later, all fell to the Cavalry.

On falling back he sent the Chasseurs forward with the captured herd, keeping the other forces intact in rear. The tribesmen, now out in force, naturally attacked that which represented an easy victory, the small cavalry force, the defeat of which would mean the recovery of their property. The Chasseur leader chose to attack mounted, and succeeded in breaking the massed enemy force at a cost of eleven dead and forty wounded. In other words he elected the initiative and this coupled with the ability to rapidly maneuver, won out.

Again in the second occupation of Settat, General d'Amade's advance guard, composed of goumiers (Moorish Irregular Horse) and Chasseurs d'Afrique, immediately contact was made with hostile tribesmen, forced the fighting, the Chasseurs carrying on the combat, the goumiers performing the "razzia," and driving off some 2,000 head of cattle, horses, sheep, camels and mules. When the herds had been safely with-

drawn, the Chasseurs broke off combat and followed in rear of the Main forces. The maneuvering ability of the Cavalry enabled it to do this and at the same time to contain the enemy by fire power.

The editorial column of the number comments briefly on the French operations, to date in the Taza region of French Morocco. It is stated that General Polymirau had three maneuver groups, his own, the Fez force, and the Mequinez column. We note that in the first and second columns, the proportion of Cavalry was two squadrons in the first group to five battalions and five batteries, and three squadrons and one platoon of machine guns in armored cars to the nine battalions and five batteries of the second. The native cavalry (goumiers) and friendly irregular forces complete these columns.

The Cavalry squadrons appear to be serving by platoons and half squadrons rather than as units, and performed rear, flank and advance guard duties, reconnoitered localities and protected convoys; as a rule they were under the command of the Infantry battalion to which attached. Tribute is paid to the resisting powers of the Barb horses of the Cavalry, and the very slight loss among them, despite the heavy duties performed and the lack of forage.

Memorial de Caballeria (Spain) June, 1925

A continuation of *The Spanish and French Cavalry in Morocco* appears, the initial paragraph being a quotation from Galdos, in the article on the charge of the Princess Hussars at Castillejos (Tetuan), 1860. This was a charge made in close order by the above mentioned regiment against a large mass of Moors already disorganized and was most successful.

The example cited, while of the classic type, still shows what Cavalry may do by reason of its rapidity of movement and by the effect of surprise. This is exemplified by the action of the French Cavalry at Botmat-Aissaua (Central Morocco). General Mangin then Colonel commanding a punitive column, under orders to pacify the country about Uad-Zem and defeat the tribal masses of Zaian and Tadlas, moved forward slowly, the infantry protected in their advance by the fire of the mountain batteries. The Cavalry was held in reserve.

The maneuver consisted essentially in holding or containing the Smala tribesmen on the left, without letting them fall back, while continuing with the main body toward the principle enemy force, on the crests of hill range. A battalion of Senegalese was left to occupy the Smala warriors, and while the French main body continued its objective, Mangin ordered the Cavalry to proceed at all speed forward and take the enemy camp in the rear. No reserve was held out.

"Over an abrupt and rocky terrain the Cavalry advanced, in spite of the heavy fire opened and in a quarter of an hour had reached the tribal encampment, siezed it, and dismounting to fight on foot, pending arrival of the infantry, succeeded by their rapidity of movement, and surprise, in forcing the superior numbers of Rifians to fall back." The quotation is taken from Berenguer, "War in Morocco," the action being fought in 1913.

All this, as the Lieutenant author points out, goes to prove that with the fire power today possessed by Cavalry, the dismounted fire-fight in conjunction with rapid movements made mounted indicate one of the characteristic methods of engaging the mounted arm. He believes though that the present "Employment of Cavalry" (Spanish) does not emphasize this sufficiently in view of the operations in North Africa.

The editorial columns devote several pages to the Cavalry School at Fort Riley, Kansas, which a Spanish General Staff commission visited in October of 1924.

The praise bestowed upon the plant in general, barracks, school buildings, riding halls, etc., is very sincere and the discussion of the courses followed is ample and enlightening. Special reference is made to the course "Methods of Instruction," which has been instituted in the Spanish Cavalry School (Academy) at Valladolid.

Polo

INTERNATIONAL MILITARY POLO

For the second time in succession, an army team from the United States has won the military polo championship of the world. The following account is by Major E. Bell, a British polo expert, who wrote for the Chicago News:

There can be little doubt that the better team won in Saturday's game between the United States army and British army polo teams when the American players vanquished the Britons by the score of 8 goals to 4. Naturally the playing of the British team disappointed its supporters, who had hoped for a revival of the old British polo glory.



The King and Queen of England Receiving the American Players
Major Beard, Major Wilson, Captain Gerhardt, and Captain Rodes

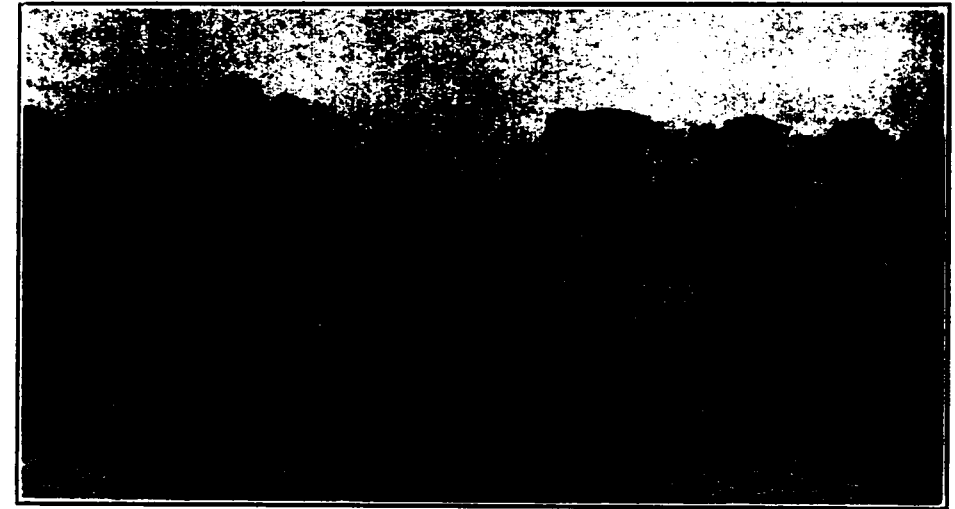
Many of the judges agreed that the British team was playing in poor form while the Americans were at top-notch pitch.

Americans More Accurate

Maj. Beard is to be congratulated on the way in which he produced not only men but ponies in the very best condition exactly at the psychological moment. The American combination of hitting, and accuracy was much superior to that of the British. While the American ponies were faster and handier. The American's stick work was also much better. This was especially noticed in the scrambles near the side lines.

The American team played well, with Wilson especially good, always dangerous, and always ahead, scoring four goals. Gerhardt was at top form and assisted well. Rodes was fine throughout. His hitting was magnificent and accurate. Beard was a tower of strength not only actively but morally. He outplayed the British advance. The American team had eighteen chances to score against ten British chances.

It is the hope of the British admirers of the game that their team was not at its best in Saturday's match. The men missed shots continually. Another fault appeared to be lack of liaison between the forwards and the backs and the relative inferiority of the British forwards. Time after time Boles and Wilson rode away leading off Gerhardt and Dening, whereupon Rodes rode up unmolested for shots at the goals. Generally the British were off form. Certainly their ponies were not up to the American mounts.



Down the Field
American Players in White

The game was played before a fashionable crowd, including the king and the queen, the American ambassador and many other celebrities. The display of marching the ponies past the royal box was marked by the best of feeling.

There was beautiful sporting spirit among the players. The following remark was typical of the friendly competition:

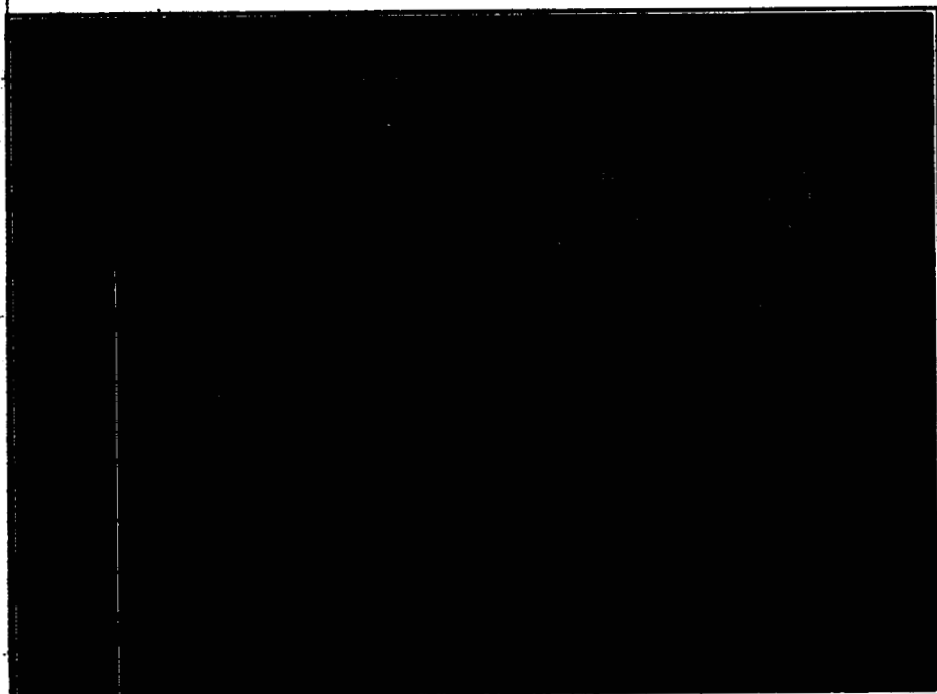
"Many congratulations, Louis. Lovely work," said Capt. Lockett to Capt. Beard and the latter replied, "Thank you, Vivian."

McCreery Opens Scoring

In the first period McCreery opened the scoring, Rodes retaliating immediately with a nice cross shot and adding another with a backhander, while Wilson missed one chance and Gerhardt missed two. In the second period the American goal was scored through a misunderstanding between the British backs. In this period McCreery equalized the score, but from then to the end of the period the American team had the best of it and scored three times, through Wilson twice and Rodes once. Both of Maj. Wilson's scores were the direct result of misses on the part of the British back.

In the third period McCreery scored for the British after Rodes had missed, while Wilson missed an easy chance for the Americans.

In the fourth period the Americans had matter all their own way and settled the result beyond all reasonable doubt. Wilson scored immediately after the start. The Americans should have scored again, as they had at least five more shots at goal, while the British had not a single chance.



**A Back Hander by Major Beard
Note Other American Players Pulling Up for the Shot**

In the fifth period the British held their own, McCreery scoring after his brother had made a good run, while Wilson scored from an acute angle. In the sixth period the British players really got a move on and had all the best of it. They had four shots at goal, two of which were sitters, but they could not score. The American players could do nothing in reply.

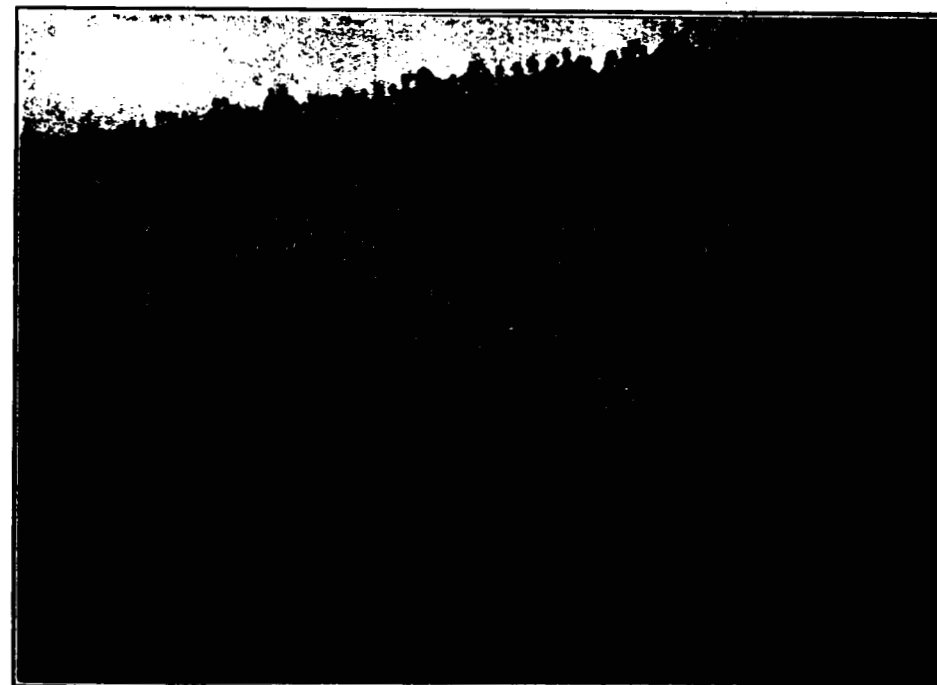
In the seventh period good combination between Beard and Rodes enabled the Americans to score with a nice near side-stroke, while McCreery missed two chances, one a sitter, and so the game ended.

In the second match for the polo championship at Hurlingham—the second win for the American army players—the teams were the same as in the first match with the exception that Capt. Dening had to stand down in the fifth period owing to an accident. Maj. Lockett took his place.

Though it was played during a continual drizzle, the game was most exciting. The fortunes of the day swayed from one side to the other. A bad start in the first

period on the part of the British army team really decided the match. From then onward the game was thoroughly well contested. The second, third and sixth periods were in favor of the British army players and the fourth and seventh were in favor of the Americans, the fifth being fairly equal. The number of equal shots missed by both side was about even. The British army team, however, missed two free hits from forty yards.

The game produced some curious coincidences. One goal on each side was scored



**Royal Spectators
The King and Queen of England and the Duke and Duchess of York.
Ambassador Houghton with Mrs. and Miss Houghton at Right**

by the opposing back. Both collisions during the day were between members of the same team.

Americans Use Good Judgment

The Americans hit over their opponents' back line twenty-four times. Wilson scored two goals from seven shots and Gerhardt three from eight. The British had nineteen chances altogether. R. McCreery scored one goal from three shots and N. McCreery two from nine.

The stick work of the Americans was beautiful. Their accuracy in meeting the ball was far superior to that of the British. So was their judgment as to where the ball would be hit. For that reason they rapidly turned their defense into an attack and entirely changed the complexion of the game.

The superiority of the American ponies was hardly noticeable in this game, except as regards handiness. Wilson was not so effective as in the first game. Boles was not only able to compete with him but held the upper hand in most of the play. Gerhardt, on the other hand, played extremely well, his meeting of the ball being exceptionally good. Rodes again played brilliantly but had the worst of luck in not scoring from some great shots. Beard, too, was brilliant. Although he was badly shaken by a collision in the fourth period his game was not at all affected.

There is no question that the better team won, which must be a matter of some consolation to the British. However, the result is a small matter compared with the feeling of friendship which the visiting Americans engendered in all classes of the community, including not only those who met them personally but also those who had a chance of seeing them play.

The start of the first chukker was disastrous for the British because the Americans not only scored two goals to begin with, but had at least seven unsuccessful shots. In the second and third chukkers the British had all the best of it, scoring three goals to their opponents' one. The combination of the British side in these two periods was good, both forwards playing exceptionally well. In the fourth the Americans had all the best of it, having four more chances at goal though they scored only once. Rodes had especially bad luck with two excellent shots, the second one swerving at the critical movement, and going outside the post.

Collision Causes Consternation

The British team on the other hand only once got near the American goal. The dangerous foul given against Rodes, who knocked over his captain, should have produced a British goal but Denning shot wide.

In the fifth period a collision between McCreery and Denning looked like very nasty business. It was obviously the latter's fault. It was some time before he could be moved as his pony was lying on top of him. After some delay Lockett took his place and the game proceeded.

In the sixth period the British nearly evened the score. They certainly had the best of it. However, another free hit for a cross against Maj. Beard was wasted while three more misses deserved better fate because they were all good shots. McCreery, however, scored once. Maj. Wilson, on the other hand, missed a fairly easy chance for the Americans. In the seventh period the Americans scored again and put the result beyond doubt, although McCreery nearly scored.

SECOND CAVALRY

A team from the Regiment consisting of Colonel Williams, No. 1; Lt. Wofford, No. 2; Lt. Koester, No. 3; Captain Rogers, No. 4, took part in the elimination tournament, held at Fort Leavenworth the last of June, to determine the team to participate in the Inter-Circuit Tournament at Colorado Springs. The team lost to the Wakonda Club of Des Moines by a close score.

In a match game at Fort Leavenworth a Regimental Team consisting of Lt. Thornburgh, No. 1; Lt. Wofford, No. 2; Lt. Koester, No. 3; Captain Rogers, No. 4, defeated the 7th Corps Area Headquarters Team by a score of 17 to 3.

The same team went from Fort Leavenworth to Des Moines to play in a tournament at that place. The Fort Leavenworth experience was repeated as Wakonda again won, and the Regimental team defeated the 7th Corps Team in a close game.

From Des Moines the team was invited to Omaha to play a series of three games with the 7th Corps Area team. Two out of the three games were won by the Second Cavalry. Mr. Gould Dietz of Omaha gave four cups to the winning team. Line-ups were as follows: First game—Lt. Thornburgh, No. 1; Lt. Bosserman, No. 2; Lt. Hol-

brook, No. 3; Captain Rogers, No. 4. In the second game Captain McDonald played No. 3 and in the third game Captain McDonald played No. 3 and Lt. Holbrook No. 4.

Upon returning from Omaha two Regimental Teams were organized as follows: The Tigers—Lt. Bosserman, No. 1; Lt. Wofford, No. 2; Lt. Koester, No. 3; Captain Cunningham, No. 4.

The Grasshoppers—Captain McDonald, No. 1; Lt. Thornburgh, No. 2; Colonel Williams, No. 3; Lt. Holbrook, No. 4.

Match games were played with School Teams during July and August. The Tigers have lost only one game since being organized, while the Grasshoppers have lost three and won four games.

SIXTH CAVALRY

The Regimental Polo Team, winners of the Fourth Corps Area and Southern Circuit Handicap Tournaments, left last week for Philadelphia to represent the Southern Circuit in the National Matches at the Meadowbrook Country Club. The team, consisting of Major Edwin N. Hardy, in charge, Captains Renn Lawrence, No. 2; Frank C. DeLangton, No. 3; First Lieutenants Frank O. Dewey, No. 4; Thomas Q. Donaldson, Jr., No. 1, and Second Lieutenant Lawrence K. Ladue substitute, will stop in Washington en route for a series of practice games.

EIGHTH CAVALRY

Since the Fort Bliss Team won the Southwestern Circuit Tournament at San Antonio, and it became certain that it would enter the September Tournament at Philadelphia, regimental polo at Fort Bliss has been largely subordinated to the preparation of the post team for its eastern trip. The post team as it will probably line up at Philadelphia will contain three Eighth Cavalry men: Major Chamberlain, Captain, at No. 2; Captain Truscott at No. 3, and Captain Huthsteiner, at No. 4. The Eighth Cavalry first team has not played a game, as such, for the past three months.

Nevertheless, polo has been played, and a great deal of it, not only by our officers on the post team, but by our second and third teams, both with the post team, and with the other units. The Regiment expects to be able to put two strong teams on the field for the fall Division Tournament.

Among the remounts recently received are many promising polo prospects, a number of which should be in the game soon. When our mounts now with the post team return to the regiment we should find ourselves with a very satisfactory string.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY

The 13th Cavalry Polo Team won both the Ninth Corps Area and the Northwestern Championships at Boise.

The team also participated in the Fort D. A. Russell Polo Tournament which was held from July 25th to August 6th. The tournament was won by Fort Sam Houston with Fort Leavenworth second and the 13th Cavalry third.

The team also participated in the Colorado Springs and the Denver Tournaments.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY

The 14th Cavalry Polo Team held two tournaments during the month of July. In the first tournament from the 5th to the 12th the final standings were: Wakonda Country Club Team, 1st; 14th Cavalry Team, 2nd; 2nd Cavalry Team, 3rd.

In the second tournament which was held from July 12th to 19th, the final standings were as follows: Wakonda Country Club, 1st; Fort Riley Reds, 2nd; 14th Cavalry Team, 3rd.

All games of both tournaments were made conspicuous by the dash and skill displayed.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY

The Regiment held a handicap polo tournament at the Delmonte Polo Field during the Civilian Military Training Camp for August 17th to 26th. All arrangements for the participation of teams was made by the Post Polo Representative, Major Sloan Doak, to whom much credit is due for the success of the tournament. The ponies of the visiting teams were stabled by the 11th Cavalry, and the Hotel Del Monte.

The tournament consisted of two phases vis: The Handicap Tournament and the Consolation Tournament.

Six teams competed: Aptos Country Club, San Mateo, 30th Infantry, 2nd Bn., 76th Field Artillery, 11th Cavalry (Yellow) and the 11th Cavalry (Black).

Following are the teams and handicaps:

San Mateo		30th Infantry		11th Cavalry (Black)	
C. G. Moore	1	Lt. Dierking	0	Major S. Doak	2
L. Howard	0	Lt. Beatty	0	Lt. M. A. Devine	1
W. S. Tevis	4	Lt. Leone	0	Lt. G. W. Read	3
C. Weatherwax	0	Capt. Scott	1	Capt. R. C. Gibbs	2
Total	5	Total	1	Total	8
Aptos		11th Cavalry (Yellow)		76th Field Artillery	
Wilson	0	Capt. R. E. Craig	2	Lt. A. R. S. Barden	2
Foulker	0	Lt. C. L. Conlon	1	Capt. C. E. Boyle	0
R. Splivalo	2	Lt. S. M. Lipman	1	Lt. C. S. Whitmore	0
H. Hastings	1	Capt. N. E. Waldron	1	Capt. G. L. Caldwell	1
Total	3	Total	5		

In the Handicap Tournament the Aptos Country Club Team was defeated by the 11th Cavalry (Yellow) by the score of 8 to 2, in a rather one sided match.

The 2d Bn., 76th Field Artillery, next defeated the 30th Infantry Team 8 to 6 in a close game. The Infantry playing fine polo during the first five chukkers, had the game almost won, but the Artillery coming in strong in the last period put over four goals winning a most exciting game.

The 11th Cavalry (Yellow) team decisively defeated the San Mateo Country Club, 6 to 2 thereby qualifying for the finals.

The 11th Cavalry (Black) played an uphill game against the Artillery, winning by a score of 7 to 6. The game was featured by hard riding, with the winning goal being scored in the last chukker.

The two Cavalry Polo Teams met in the finals. The play was close, being featured by hard riding, long hitting and excellent volley shots. Seldom was the ball knocked behind the back line. The game was probably the hardest fought in the tournament, and provided a multitude of thrills for the hundreds of spectators lining the side boards. The winning goal and tournament was won by the Black Team in the last twenty seconds of play.

In the Consolation Tournament the 30th Infantry defeated Aptos Country Club 9 to 4, but defaulted in the finals of the Consolation Tournament due to the fact that the regiment was ordered to San Francisco, before the completion of the tournament.

The San Mateo Team was victorious over the 76th F. A., by the score of 11 to 6 thereby winning the Consolation Tournament.

All trophies for the tournament were awarded by the Del Monte Hotel Company.

It is felt that the polo policy in this regiment will result in placing on the field this winter one of the strongest and best balanced teams in the Army. At present there are eight players who are capable of playing first string polo and with the addition of Major Erwin who is considered one of the best backs in the Army our team will be a credit to any regiment. At present, efforts are being concentrated on the develop-

ment of young ponies. By the opening of the winter tournament, our string will be considerably stronger than last year, due to the number of fine prospects received from the Remount Service.

The 11th Cavalry and 76th Field Artillery Polo Clubs are building a Post Field in the back pasture and by November it should be ready for use as a practice field. In this connection the willing support of Colonel H. C. Tatum, has made this possible. This has been a most difficult task and without the strong backing of our former Post Commander this field would have never been commenced. All funds for construction purposes have been advanced from the 11th Cavalry and 76th Field Artillery Polo Funds. It is contemplated that bermuda will be sowed in January so that by this time next year we hope to have one of the finest playing fields on the coast.

The 11th Cavalry (Yellow) leaves for San Mateo, August 26th, for a week end series of games against the San Mateo Country Club.



American Legation Polo Team, Peking, China

POLO IN CHINA

The above photograph of the American Legation polo team at Peking, gives an idea of the type of pony with which players in that section of the world have to content themselves. The members of the team from left to right are: Captain W. T. Clement U. S. M. C.; Major J. Magruder, Field Artillery; Colonel R. H. Dunlap, U. S. M. C.; and Captain S. V. Constant, Cavalry.

Regimental Rosters and Notes

FIRST CAVALRY—Camp Marfa, Texas

Colonel C. E. Stodter, Commanding

Lieut. Col. A. Poillon	1st Lieut. A. E. Forsyth
Major A. F. McLean	1st Lieut. H. H. D. Heiberg
Major C. L. Stevenson	2d Lieut. E. L. Harrison
Major R. B. Patterson	2d Lieut. L. C. Vance
Captain H. Herman	2d Lieut. T. Robinson
Captain H. S. Dodd	2d Lieut. P. G. Kendall
Captain P. H. Morris	2d Lieut. R. T. Willson
Captain Harry Foster	2d Lieut. G. B. Rogers
Captain E. M. Sumner	2d Lieut. C. B. Hutchinson
Captain B. A. Mason	2d Lieut. C. K. Darling
Captain S. R. Goodwin	2d Lieut. B. W. Justice
1st Lieut. F. E. Bertholet	2d Lieut. A. A. Cavanaugh
1st Lieut. G. B. Hudson	2d Lieut. J. I. Brosnan
	2d Lieut. W. F. McLaughlin

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Colonel George Williams, Commanding

Lieut. Col. G. T. Bowman	Captain J. C. Rogers
Major E. M. Whiting	Captain W. Houghton
Major A. B. Conard	Captain F. M. Hyndman
Captain T. E. Price	Captain M. Byrne
Captain J. W. McDonald	1st Lieut. W. H. W. Reinburg
Captain J. W. Cunningham	1st Lieut. F. W. Koester
Captain Le Roy Davis	1st Lieut. A. G. Olsen
Captain B. G. Shoemaker	1st Lieut. C. C. Jadwin
Captain W. A. Falck	1st Lieut. T. T. Thornburgh
Captain H. A. Buckley	1st Lieut. M. F. Sullivan
Captain W. T. Hamilton	1st Lieut. W. S. Conrow
Captain C. B. Cox	1st Lieut. W. A. Holbrook
Captain Charles Wharton	2d Lieut. F. DeL. Comfort
Captain J. C. Short	2d Lieut. J. W. Wofford
Captain M. H. Ellis	2d Lieut. W. F. Jennings
Captain H. DeB. Bruck	2d Lieut. R. B. Bosserman

The One Thousand Dollar Prize to the Platoon Leader and Platoon, demonstrating the most efficient leadership, and the greatest ability to function as a team under service conditions, was won by a Platoon from Troop F under command of Lieut. John W. Wofford, June 1, to 4th, 1925.

The First Squadron and Headquarters Troop camped on the Target Range from June 5 to July 3. The Second Squadron and Service Troop camped on the Range from August 1st to September 4th. While in camp all organizations completed preliminary and record practice with the rifle and automatic rifle.

All troops qualified more than 80% of their men with the rifle. Troop E and Headquarters and Headquarters Detachment, Second Squadron qualified 100% while Troop G qualified 24 experts and 22 sharpshooters out of a total of 82 men firing.

During the same period organizations not on the range carried on pistol and saber practice.

On July 20, Troop B left the post by marching en route to Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, for duty in connection with the Citizen's Military Training Camp held at that station during the month of August, 1925.

From July 5 to July 19th the entire regiment was engaged in demonstrations, etc., for the Reserve Officers Camp held at this station. On July 17 a Regimental Review was given for the Reserve Officers and the Regiment was presented with a loving cup by the officers of the 66th Cavalry Division.

THIRD CAVALRY (Less 1st Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia

Colonel H. S. Hawkins, Commanding

Lieut. Col. H. J. McKenney	1st Lieut. C. W. Feagin
Major A. R. Chaffee	1st Lieut. S. P. Walker
Captain J. R. Finley	1st Lieut. G. G. Elms
Captain V. L. Padgett	1st Lieut. H. C. Hine, Jr.
Captain E. A. Regnier	2d Lieut. C. E. Byers
Captain J. H. Irving	2d Lieut. T. E. Whitehead
Captain M. S. Daniels, Jr.	2d Lieut. A. George
Captain H. T. Allen, Jr.	2d Lieut. C. W. A. Raguse
1st Lieut. J. B. Patterson	

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vt.

Lieutenant Colonel F. D. Griffith, Jr., Commanding

Major Frederick Herr	1st Lieut. V. W. Batchelor
Captain H. H. Dunn	1st Lieut. H. M. Alexander
Captain P. J. Matte	1st Lieut. F. T. Turner
Captain A. J. DeLorimer	1st Lieut. C. R. Chase
Captain M. V. Turner	2d Lieut. D. G. McBride
1st Lieut. R. H. Garity	2d Lieut. L. R. Dewey

The month of July was spent in completing the regular season's rifle and dismounted pistol practice. The results of both were gratifying and better than ever obtained before by this Squadron. Headquarters Detachment 1st Squadron led the Cavalry Troops at this station, having qualified 100 per cent. Troop "C" qualified 95.92 per cent, Troop "A" 95.1 per cent, Troop "B" 83.07 per cent, and Detachment Service Troop 81.8 per cent.

On July Fourth, Troop "C" went to Middlebury, Vermont, and Troop "A" to Bristol, Vermont, to take part in the Independence Day celebrations at those places. Troop "B" was parent organization for the R. O. T. C. unit, and furnished the horses for the students to take part in Fourth of July celebration in Burlington, Vermont.

On July 27th, the officers of the 315th Cavalry arrived, and on August 1st, took over the work of the processing of the C. M. T. C. students. This is the third year that the officers of this regiment have been with this Squadron, and it was indeed a pleasure to renew association with them.

The month of August was given over almost exclusively to the training of the C. M. T. C. Students. There were approximately 350 Cavalry Students who received instruction. Generals Summerall and Brewster both inspected the camp and expressed themselves as well pleased with the results obtained during the month's training.

FOURTH CAVALRY (Less First Squadron)—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel Osmun Latrobe, Commanding

Major Emmett Addis	2d Lieut. A. K. Hammond
Captain T. A. Dobyns, Jr.	2d Lieut. H. I. Hodes

Captain J. I. Gibbon
 Cap'tain C. W. Burkett
 Captain E. W. Godbold
 Captain R. C. Thomas
 1st Lieut. R. J. Merrick
 1st Lieut. E. E. Cox

2d Lieut. F. H. Bunnell
 2d Lieut. C. V. Bromley, Jr.
 2d Lieut. R. M. Neal
 2d Lieut. H. W. Davison
 2d Lieut. G. W. West

The death of the Regimental Adjutant, Captain G. G. Ball, on June 22, 1925, from injuries incurred while playing polo, is greatly regretted by the entire personnel of the regiment. Captain Ball's good judgment, fairness and kindly spirit endeared him to all.

He was an officer of high sterling qualities and his loss is deeply felt by all who came in contact with him.

The regiment has completed rifle, pistol and saber practice. The general average was: Rifle, 95.1, Pistol Mounted: 97.4, Pistol Dismounted: 81.2, saber, 93.0.

Recent additions to the regiment are Captains Vaughn Cannon, J. I. Gibbon and E. W. Godbold and 2nd Lieutenant G. West.

Captain Cannon will captain the polo team and be in charge of remounts.

The Second Squadron and Headquarters and Service Troops departed on September 9, 1925, for Douglas, Wyoming, to attend the State Fair where various exhibition drills will be given.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort Meade, South Dakota

Lieutenant Colonel R. W. Walker, Commanding

Major Otto Wagner
 Captain N. E. Fiske
 Captain C. G. Wall
 1st Lieut. B. E. Sawyer
 1st Lieut. LeR. M. Wightman
 2d Lieut. J. I. Gregg

2d Lieut. J. T. Ward
 2d Lieut. J. K. Sells
 2d Lieut. D. F. Stone
 2d Lieut. W. L. Weinaug
 2d Lieut. W. E. Shallene

On June 4th a night ride was held at this post in which all officers and non-commissioned officers of the squadron participated. The course was approximately 40 miles long and over country unknown to the riders. Although the night was dark and rainy, very few riders failed to finish within the time limit. Corporal Ben Tomlin of Troop C won the ride, having completed the ride in five hours. He was awarded a very handsome cup which was donated by the business men of Sturgis, S. D.

On June 15th the Squadron took the field for a twelve day practice march through the Black Hills. It was accompanied by 14 Reserve Officers and 3 enlisted reservists of the 66th Cavalry Division, who were ordered to this post for their annual 15 days of active duty training. A two-sided maneuver was conducted during the first five days of the march, with Troop B representing a Red force which was retiring to the south and whose mission was to gain contact with, harass and delay the Blues. The Blues, represented by Troops A and C left the post one day later than the Reds and had an aggressive mission of pushing forward rapidly and driving out the Reds. During this phase of the maneuver the Reserve Officers acted as platoon and squad leaders, grooming their own mounts and caring for their equipment. Notwithstanding the fact that they were unused to such training, they made the long marches with no apparent trouble. Following this the squadron took up the march again under war conditions with the Reserve Officers holding commands appropriate to their grade. The Regular officers acted as the Red force and the missions assigned to the two forces were the same as in the first half of the maneuver.

Upon returning to the Post on June 28th, a review in full field equipment was held for the New Post Commander, Lt. Colonel R. W. Walker, who had arrived during the

absence of the troops. In the evening a most enjoyable dance was held in honor of Colonel Walker and the Reserve Officers. The following day the latter departed for their homes, after expressing themselves as feeling greatly benefitted by their two weeks training.

On July 4th the entire post turned out in full field equipment as demonstration of Defence Day. In this we were very ably and enthusiastically supported and assisted by the population of nearby cities.

On July 6th Troop A began its rifle practice and Troop B its pistol practice, both of which were completed by August 1st. Troop A qualified 100 per cent with the rifle, and Troop B 90 per cent with the pistol, dismounted, and 95 per cent with the pistol, mounted.

On August 11th the squadron marched to Deadwood, S. D., where it participated in the annual celebration of the "Days of '76." Such events as Roman Riding, racing, mounted and dismounted tug-of-wars, close and extended order drills were put on in connection with a number of civilian events. The troops took a very material part in the filming of "Deadwood Dick" by the Jack Hoxie troupe from the Universal Studios. On the last day "Custer's Last Fight" was staged between the soldiers and some three hundred Sioux Indians from the Pine Ridge Reservation. To make the scene more realistic the soldiers were dressed in the old blue uniforms as worn at the time of the massacre.

Troops B and C are now completing their rifle practice while Troop A is getting ready to take part in the Meade County Fair at Sturgis, S. D. On September 20th, two troops of the Squadron entrain for Chamberlain, S. D., where they will take part in the dedication of a new bridge across the Missouri River at that place.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel W. B. Scales, Commanding

Lieut. Col. I. L. Hunsaker
 Major W. Goodwin, Jr.
 Major Philip Gordon
 Major Edwin O'Connor
 Captain W. H. Kasten
 Captain R. L. Creed
 Captain W. O. Johnson
 Captain R. S. Parker
 Captain P. C. Clayton
 Captain A. L. Baylies
 Captain H. V. Scanlan
 Captain L. W. Biggs
 Captain J. Yudi'sky
 Captain Charles Cramer
 1st Lieut. F. L. Carr
 1st Lieut. J. N. Greene

1st Lieut. R. C. Wells
 1st Lieut. H. Knight
 1st Lieut. J. B. Edmunds
 1st Lieut. G. J. Rawlins
 1st Lieut. A. W. Johnson
 1st Lieut. J. E. Leahy
 2d Lieut. W. J. Eaddy
 2d Lieut. C. D. Silverthorne
 2d Lieut. J. J. Mahoney
 2d Lieut. H. S. Jernigan
 2d Lieut. W. L. Howarth
 2d Lieut. J. L. Loutzenheiser
 2d Lieut. J. H. Stadler, Jr.
 2d Lieut. W. J. Bradley
 2d Lieut. F. G. Fraser
 2d Lieut. C. S. Babcock, Jr.

The results of the rifle and pistol practice and saber instruction of the regiment were as follows:

Rifle Marksmanship—140 Experts; 167 Sharpshooters; 192 Marksmen; unqualified, none.

Automatic Rifle Marksmanship—70 Experts; 2 Sharpshooters; unqualified, none.

Pistol Marksmanship, dismounted—154 Experts; 237 Sharpshooters; 120 Marksmen; unqualified, 9; per cent qualified, 98.27.

Pistol Marksmanship, mounted—448 Experts; 21 Sharpshooters; 2 Marksmen; unqualified, none.

Saber Instruction—142 Expert Swordsmen; 150 Excellent Swordsmen; 7 Swordsmen; unqualified, 9; per cent qualified, 97.07.

Under present plans it is contemplated having the 1st Cavalry Brigade Maneuvers at this station during the latter part of October. The 1st Cavalry is scheduled to arrive from Marfa about October 17th.

Officers of the 311th and 312th Cavalry, 156th Cavalry Brigade, were attached to the regiment from August 10th to 22nd and participated in the drills, marches, and maneuvers, held during that time. They gained practical experience in the handling of troops by actually assuming command of the units during various phases of the training. A feeling of friendship and a spirit of co-operation between the officers of the regiment and the reserve officers was developed to a marked degree during the time they served together. The following letter exemplifies this spirit:

Subject: Training Period at Fort Clark, Texas, of the Officers of the 311th Reserve Cavalry.

To: The Commanding Officer, Fort Clark, Texas.

1. The Reserve Officers of the 311th Cavalry, who have just completed a fifteen day tour of duty with your command at Fort Clark, are unanimous in requesting me to write this letter.

2. We have just concluded a very busy course of instruction; we are in better health and better spirits than when we started; having profited in mind and body. Moreover we have formed lasting friendships among the officers at Fort Clark and are eager to serve with them again.

3. Our course of instruction for the fifteen days last past has been of very great value and interest. The actual operations of excellent regular troops and their functioning in the field, in camp, on the march and in maneuvers, have given us vivid mind pictures that will always rise before us as guides.

4. Your officers have made many sacrifices to enable us to profit by their instructions and enjoy the work. So, please accept this expression of our gratitude to you and to the post personnel. We all hope to come back next year.

BYRON L. BARGER.

Lt. Col. (ORC) 311th Cavalry.

On August 25th the regiment received 35 recruits and they are now being given a 10 weeks' course of instruction before being sent to their organizations.

Since May 30th, one hundred and ten remounts have been received from Fort Reno and are undergoing training at the remount stables. Among the lot are a number of promising polo prospects to add to our string, if they develop.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

Colonel G. C. Barnhardt, Commanding

Lieut. Col. O. A. McGee
Major E. W. Taulbee
Major E. N. Hardy
Captain J. W. Geer
Captain Otis Porter
Captain W. G. Ingram
Captain E. N. Harmon
Captain H. A. Myers
Captain O. C. Newell
Captain M. H. Patton
Captain C. H. Murphy
1st Lieut. J. R. W. Diehl
1st Lieut. H. M. Rose

1st Lieut. F. P. Tompkins
1st Lieut. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr.
1st Lieut. E. L. Hogan
1st Lieut. W. L. Hamilton
1st Lieut. L. D. Carter
1st Lieut. F. O. Dewey
1st Lieut. H. T. Sutton
1st Lieut. B. E. Shirley
2d Lieut. J. M. Rudolph
2d Lieut. D. A. Beck
2d Lieut. L. K. Ladue
2d Lieut. R. D. Palmer

The past quarter has been one of almost unprecedented activity for the regiment, with Fort Oglethorpe experiencing its first training camp, since the war. In accordance with the new policy of the War Department, the regiment did not go to Camp McClellan, Alabama, for summer training as heretofore.

The Second Squadron sponsored the Citizens' Military Training Camp on the parent organization scheme. Major Edgar W. Taulbee, 6th Cavalry, commanding, was designated as Camp Commander. Three hundred and fifteen trainees reported on July 2d for the largest and the most successful Cavalry Camp ever conducted by the regiment.

Twenty students from the University of Georgia reported for the Reserve Officers' Training Corps Camp on June 15th. Troop "C", Captain Renn Lawrence, 6th Cavalry, commanding, sponsored this camp, with Captain Royce P. Gerfen, Cavalry, D. O. L., on duty at the University, as senior instructor.

On Defense Test Day the entire garrison participated in a large and very successful parade in Chattanooga. The appearance of the Citizens' Military Training Camp trainees, who had barely completed processing, excited much astonishment and favorable comment.

The Hostess House and Swimming Pool were two new features at Fort Oglethorpe, opened in time for use by the trainees, and both proved very popular.

Wednesday, July 22d, was designated as Visitors' Day, and a very successful track and field meet, and horseshow, followed by swimming events was held for the Citizens' Military Training Camp trainees and Reserve Officers' Training Corps students. In general separate events were provided, but in some instances events were open to both units.

On July 28th a mounted parade of the entire Citizens' Military Training Camp was held. Following the parade, all trophies and medals won by trainees in the track and field and swimming meets, rifle and pistol marksmanship badges, medals for all around excellence presented by the Military Training Camp Association of the United States and medals for individual excellence in equitation, presented by the Civitan Club of Chattanooga were awarded. Following the awards, the squadron passed in review at the walk, trot and gallop.

One remarkable feature of the Citizens' Military Training Camp was the average qualification of 87.5 percent with the rifle and 84.5 percent with the pistol. One C. M. T. C. troop qualified 93.8 percent with the rifle and another C. M. T. C. troop 100.0 percent with the pistol.

Brigadier General Edward L. King, Commandant of the Command and General Staff School, visited the Post officially during the Citizens' Military Training Camp, and was tendered a reception and dance by the officers of the Garrison.

Colonel Robert J. Fleming, relinquished command of the regiment on July 1st, after nearly four years of continuous service in that capacity. Prior to his departure the officers of the permanent garrison gave a dinner in his honor at the Mountain City Club in Chattanooga. Attendance was a hundred percent, with Brigadier General Edwin B. Winans, as a specially invited guest and toastmaster.

Captain Wharton G. Ingram, 6th Cavalry was appointed Plans and Training Officer prior to the opening of Summer Camps and is also acting Adjutant.

Troop "A" is preparing for participation in the Southeastern Fair to be held at Atlanta, Georgia, from October 8th to 17th.

The regiment was called upon to furnish five officers for duty at Camp Perry, Ohio, in connection with the national matches. In addition to the Commanding Officer and Executive, there remain only eight officers present for duty with the regiment, of which number three are on the target range. In several instances one officer is commanding two troops; and just at present conditions are reminiscent of the days immediately following the expansion early in 1917.

During the month of August, the National Guard Cavalry was in camp here; the 109th Cavalry (from Tennessee, Alabama and North Carolina), Colonel J. Perry Fyffe, commanding, and Troop "D" separate North Carolina Cavalry, from August 1st to 15th, and the 108th Cavalry (from Louisiana and Georgia), Colonel James E. Edmonds, commanding, and the 55th Machine Gun Squadron, Alabama National Guard, Major Jaffreys, commanding, from August 16th to 31st.

Colonel George C. Barnhardt, the new Regimental Commander, and Mrs. Barnhardt arrived on August 15th and were tendered a reception and dance on the evening of August 18th.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

Lieut. Col. R. B. Going	2d Lt. J. B. Cooley
Major V. W. Cooper	2d Lt. P. McK. Martin
Major A. D. Surles	2d Lt. R. P. Lyman
Captain R. R. Allen	2d Lt. E. P. Crandell
Captain D. S. Wood	2d Lt. G. S. Armes
Captain A. W. Howard	2d Lt. F. J. Thompson
Captain H. C. Kaefring	2d Lt. Z. W. Moores
Captain P. L. Singer	2d Lt. M. B. Crandall
Captain R. Russell	2d Lt. P. C. Hains
Captain C. O. Griffin	2d Lt. F. G. Trew
Captain J. M. Lile	2d Lt. H. E. Engler
1st Lt. C. Burgess	2d Lt. T. L. Harrold
1st Lt. R. L. Freeman	2d Lt. W. H. Nutter

On June 27 the First Squadron and Headquarters and Service Troops returned from the Dona Ana Target Range, thus completing the target season for the Regiment. Final results for the season showed: Percentage qualified, 97.49; average score per man, 280.46. The organizations which qualified 100% were Service Troop and Troops "C" and "F," with "C" Troop, Capt J. M. Lile Commanding, having the highest average per man of 292.16. In automatic rifle the Regimental percentage qualified was 98.89, and the average score per man was 544.0. The highest score per man was attained by Troop "C," 563.2.

During fifteen days in July the First Squadron assisted in the training of the 111th Cavalry, New Mexico National Guard, an excellent Cavalry regiment. The training was successful and the results quite satisfactory. From July 28 to August 26 the Second Squadron was engaged in conducting the C. M. T. Camp at Ft. Bliss.

On August 3, 29 enlisted men, Capt. D. S. Wood and Maj. A. D. S. McCoy, M. C., were called out with other troops of the Post to aid in checking a flood at Fabens and Tornillo caused by a sudden rise in the Rio Grande River. Troops were engaged in this work several days and aided materially in saving property.

For the third consecutive year the Seventh Cavalry Baseball Team has won the Post League Pennant. Many hard games were played to achieve the championship. In the League series the Team played 18 games and lost one. The hitting qualities of the Team are exceptional, and have evoked no little comment from rivals and local teams which have played the "Garry-Owens." The Douglas Blues, Frontier League, of Douglas, Arizona, recently suffered a 16 to 10 defeat in an exhibition game with the Seventh. In July the "Garry-Owens" played the Mescalero Indian Team at Mescalero, New Mexico, and came off victorious. The Indians had an excellent team and played good ball. Late in August the First Cavalry team invaded our territory, and the tide of battle went against them 7 to 12. The First Dragoons had a very strong team which gave the Seventh Horse no mediocre struggle. The First aggregation are able players and fine sportsmen.

Some changes in personnel occurred during the quarter. The Regiment received a number of recruits, some of whom are still undergoing recruit instruction. Capt. R. R. Allen, Troop "A," has been appointed Regimental adjutant. The quarter saw the retirement of three excellent types of men and able soldiers: First Sergeant John H. Green and Master Sergeants Edward M. Carey and Samuel S. Simmonds. Sgt. Green served approximately nine years in the Regiment, while Sgts. Carey and Simmonds served continuously twelve years and three months and eleven years and three months, respectively. On occasion of retirement the usual parade and review held for retiring Non-commissioned Officers by the Seventh Cavalry, was given for each. Following the parade and review each received a handsome watch which was presented by Colonel Lee for the Non-commissioned Officers' Club. On the evening of the day of retirement, each Sergeant was tendered a banquet by the Non-commissioned Officers' Club, which was attended by all officers of the Regiment.

During the quarter the Seventh Cavalry Band under the leadership of W. O., Clark B. Price has given a series of delightful concerts at the Post and at various parks in the city of El Paso.

The Non-commissioned Officers' Club under the direction of Staff Sergeant W. W. Morrison has enjoyed an active program during the quarter. The Club conducted a restaurant at the Dona Ana Target Range during the target season and realized sufficient funds to defray the expenses of the Baseball Team for the season. In promoting athletics and recreational activities, the Club has been a large factor. It has given a number of dances and has given banquets to retiring sergeants. The Garry-Owen Auxiliary, composed of wives of the Non-commissioned Officers, has held regular meetings and a number of sociables.

Capt. D. S. Wood and 1st Lt. Carlton Burgess have been selected as members of the Fort Bliss Polo Team which will shortly play in a Polo Tournament at Philadelphia.

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel S. McP. Rutherford, Commanding

Lieut. Col. E. A. Keyes	2d Lt. G. W. Bailey
Major A. G. Hixson	2d Lt. E. F. Thompson
Major H. D. Chamberlin	2d Lt. C. H. Reed
Captain C. H. Strong	2d Lt. J. H. Stodter
Captain W. C. Merkel	2d Lt. D. F. J. DeBardleben
Captain D. W. Colhoun	2d Lt. L. M. Grener
Captain G. E. Huthsteiner	2d Lt. C. J. Harrold
Captain H. A. Patterson	2d Lt. A. A. Frierson
Captain H. W. Forster	2d Lieut. C. W. Bennett
Captain R. L. Hammond	2d Lt. W. J. Rardon
Captain P. C. Berlin	2d Lt. J. W. Bowman
Captain H. L. Jackson	2d Lt. R. L. Howze, Jr.
1st Lt. R. W. Miller	2d Lt. R. A. Gardner
1st Lt. J. H. Collier	2d Lt. M. H. Matterson
1st Lt. W. H. Wenstrom	2d Lt. H. R. Westphalinger
1st Lieut. Oscar W. Koch	2d Lt. W. A. Fuller

Complete results of rifle practice for the regular season show 97.64 per cent qualified in the regiment. A, B, C, and Service Troops qualified 100 per cent.

About 100 cavalry students from New Mexico Military Institute, The University of Arizona, and New Mexico A. and M. College attended the Fort Bliss, 1925 R. O. T. C. Camp. Training was conducted by the First Squadron, 8th Cavalry, under the direction of Major H. D. Chamberlin. The camp was a thorough success from a training standpoint. It was concluded by a two day march, and maneuver, July 18 and 14. by the students and parent organizations.

Early in August Reclamation Service officials appealed to the Division Commander for assistance in combating floods which were doing great damage in the Rio Grande Valley. He responded by sending 100 men from this regiment, and 100 men from other units, under the command of Major A. C. Hixson, 8th Cavalry, to Fabens, Texas. The troops moved in trucks to the vicinity of that town, and arriving there at 11:00 P. M. immediately commenced what was to be a long and arduous battle against the rising water. The men worked continuously from 11:00 P. M., until about 10:00 A. M., with only a little coffee and practically no food. Immediately thereafter they broke camp hastily and marched on foot several miles to escape the rising water.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Lieutenant Colonel W. J. Scott, Commanding

Lieut. Col. K. T. Riggs	Captain F. H. Waters
Major W. C. Christy	Captain J. T. Duke
Major R. D. Newman	Captain W. B. Bradford
Major J. F. Stevens	Captain G. B. Guenther
Captain C. C. Smith	Captain J. V. McDowell
Captain A. W. Roffe	Captain H. G. Holt
Captain D. S. Perry	Captain C. E. Davis
Captain R. L. Coe	Captain H. R. Gay
Captain H. B. Gibson	Capt. R. T. Maddocks
Captain L. G. Gibney	

Lieut. Colonel W. J. Scott took command of the regiment on June 20.

A retirement party was given on July 2 in honor of Master Sergeant James Briggs, who retired on July 11, and 1st Sergeant James Allen, who retired on June 30. After the exercises refreshments were served and a dance was held.

On July 28 the regiment celebrated Regimental Day with an all day picnic. Speeches were made by Colonel George W. Williams, 2nd Cavalry, Acting Commandant; Lieut. Colonel W. J. Scott, the new regimental commander; and Sergeant Archie Cooper. Many competitions were held and games were played. Prizes were awarded in several events.

Those attending the picnic were the officers and enlisted men of the regiment and their families and friends.

During the summer the regiment performed routine duties, engaged in target practice from July 5 to 30 and made the following improvements, among others, under the Department of Horsemanship and the School Secretary: graded bridle paths and cleared them of brush; constructed and repaired hurdles and jumps over the reservation; leveled and repaired sand rings and painted the fences; gave the West Riding Hall a new floor of sand and shavings and repaired its walls and doors; and built new garages for the use of student officers.

The regular weekly enlisted men's hops have been held on the open air pavilion which was built late last summer by the E. & R. Officer. This pavilion is similar to, but larger than, those at Fort Sam Houston.

Prizes were awarded for the best appearing flower garden and lawn and for the best vegetable garden in Rileyville, the regimental colony. They were won by Private 1-c, Spec. 5th Cl. Edward Johnson, Hq. & Serv. Troop and by Private 1-c, William Jackson, Troop "A", respectively.

This has been a busy summer in this regiment as regards discharges, re-enlistments and enlistments. Between June 1 and August 31 there were 139 discharges and 121 re-enlistments (87%). Fifty-seven recruits were received. The regiment is now up to its authorized strength.

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona

Colonel J. C. Rhea, Commanding

Lieut. Col. George Grunert	1st Lieut. K. Broadus
Major J. C. Montgomery	1st Lieut. E. N. Schjerven
Major F. K. Chapin	1st Lieut. J. H. Healy
Captain V. W. B. Wales	1st Lieut. C. W. Fake
Captain H. M. Gregory	1st Lieut. F. C. Thomas
Captain S. G. Fuller	1st Lieut. I. P. Swift
Captain N. W. Lisle	1st Lieut. D. H. Nelson
Captain F. B. Shipp	1st Lieut. J. M. Williams
Captain E. A. Everitt	2d Lieut. F. R. Pitts
Captain H. W. Maas	2d Lieut. B. G. Thayer
Captain J. B. Taylor	2d Lieut. H. G. Maddox
Captain C. A. Shannon	2d Lieut. W. S. Biddle
Captain S. G. Stewart	2d Lieut. H. J. Theis
Captain G. H. Shea	2d Lieut. G. C. Clausen
1st Lieut. L. B. Conner	2d Lieut. W. B. Wren

With only a brief respite by way of assisting the United States Forestry Service in controlling the demoralizing fire which developed on Miller Peak in the Huachuca Mountains and spread to the many canyons radiating from that peak, the 1925 target season wound up as follows:

Rifle, 95.77 percent qualified; pistol, dismounted, 85.88 percent qualified; pistol, mounted, 97.69 percent qualified; saber, 96.37 percent qualified; automatic rifle, 100 percent qualified.

The period July 1-10 was taken up in marching to Douglas, Arizona, to participate in the Defense Day ceremonies. The march was made by way of Hereford and Warren, various problems being taken up on the march. The command was quartered in Douglas at Camp Harry J. Jones, garrisoned by a battalion of the 25th Infantry under the command of Major Townsend. The regiment was royally entertained and arrangements were made for the men to visit Old Mexico. The return march was made over practically the same route, except such deviations as were necessary for the problems assumed. The squadrons were pitted against each other, each being part of a larger force, and played enthusiastically the game of "give and take" in driving each other through the canyons in the Huachucas during night marches and storms. Three officers' patrols were sent out from Douglas with missions to report at a specified hour to the Division Commander at Huachuca, 65 miles away, the same night and be ready for extended reconnaissance work the next day. The second day's ride for them was a large circuit of 70 miles through the mountains by way of Garden Canyon, Sunnyside, Parker's Ranch and Canelo Pass back home. Men and animals returned from these rides in excellent condition.

Reserve Officers now arrived for training and were assigned to the 1st Squadron, which was just completing its field training. The diversified terrain to be found near the post was admirably suited for the work in combat firing and afforded the reservists in command of troops and platoons ample opportunity to use their initiative and resourcefulness. The Reserve Officers then went on the Range with excellent results, and after firing for record, took up mess and stable management, administration and equitation. Their "work out" culminated in taking the field for two days in command of troops and platoons, the squadron being commanded by Captain Victor W. B. Wales with Lieutenant H. Jordan Theis as acting adjutant. Other officers of the squadron acted as coaches and observers for the Reservists. Wet weather and mountainous trails as well as cross country work made the march a little slow, but it terminated successfully.

Came July twenty-eighth and Organization Day, the main event of which was the Horse Show, judged by Col. Fitzhugh Lee, 7th Cavalry; Col. Reginald McNally, Cavalry; Major and Mrs. Chamberlin, 8th Cavalry; Major Jonnson, PMS&T at the University of Arizona; Mr. Packard, President of the 1st National Bank of Douglas, Arizona, and Mr. Banning Vail of the Empire Ranch.

Jumping, as usual, proved most interesting to the civilians as well as the military. A Waterloo was encountered in the post and rail by most contestants. Captain "Smiley" Shannon won the Officers' Jump handily and Sergeant Peterson on *Snake* easily earned the blue ribbon for the Enlisted Men's Jumping.

The Duggan Cup was won by Pvt. Haddox, Hq. Tr., in the best turned out E. M. class. Pvt. Mackey, Tr. "B", won the Douglas Chamber of Commerce cup for the best cavalry horse. The Palmer Cup was awarded to Sgt. Jackson, Tr. "F", for the best enlisted men's mount. In the Officers' Charger Class, Major Frank K. Chapin won the Packard Cup. As Individual Point Winner, Sgt. Jackson, Tr. "F", won the Jonansen Cup. The Itule Cup was awarded to Mrs. James Taylor for the Ladies' Jumping.

The best turned-out Officers' Charger Class was a great feature. The mounts were excellent, and the equipment was superb. Mrs. John Healy in a spectacular ride won the blue in the Best Polo Mount class. The fearless exhibition ride given by "Billie", trooper extraordinary and mascot of "C" Troop, was as clever as it was brilliant. *The Kidd*, entered by Lt. H. Jordan Theis, former champion roping horse of Arizona, won the class for horses suitable to become polo mounts.

An informal luncheon at the Officers' Club followed the show. Among the distinguished guests was General Borquez, commanding all the Mexican forces in Sonora and Chihuahua. The Regimental barbecue, following the ball game and polo, proved again what the regiment could do by way of "dominating the groceries" and many ex-Pullman chefs were suspected of having had a hand in the pot.

The C. M. T. C. ran at full blast, and the innovation of quartering the students in barracks on the post rather than in temporary shelter near the Target Range, proved a distinct success. General Hinds, with his Aide, Lieutenant Morton Jones, commented favorably upon this year's camp during their inspection. The review accorded him by the students was a mounted one, as the entire camp is cavalry. Colonel Preston, Chief of Staff, 8th Corps Area, also inspected the camp at an earlier date.

The conduct of the students has been excellent and none were dismissed. The rejections for admission owing to physical disability were little less than 3 percent. At the close of camp it was found that the students had gained a total of 290 pounds, which may be attributed to the morning ritual of washing down doughnuts with milk, a ritual of questionable military merits!

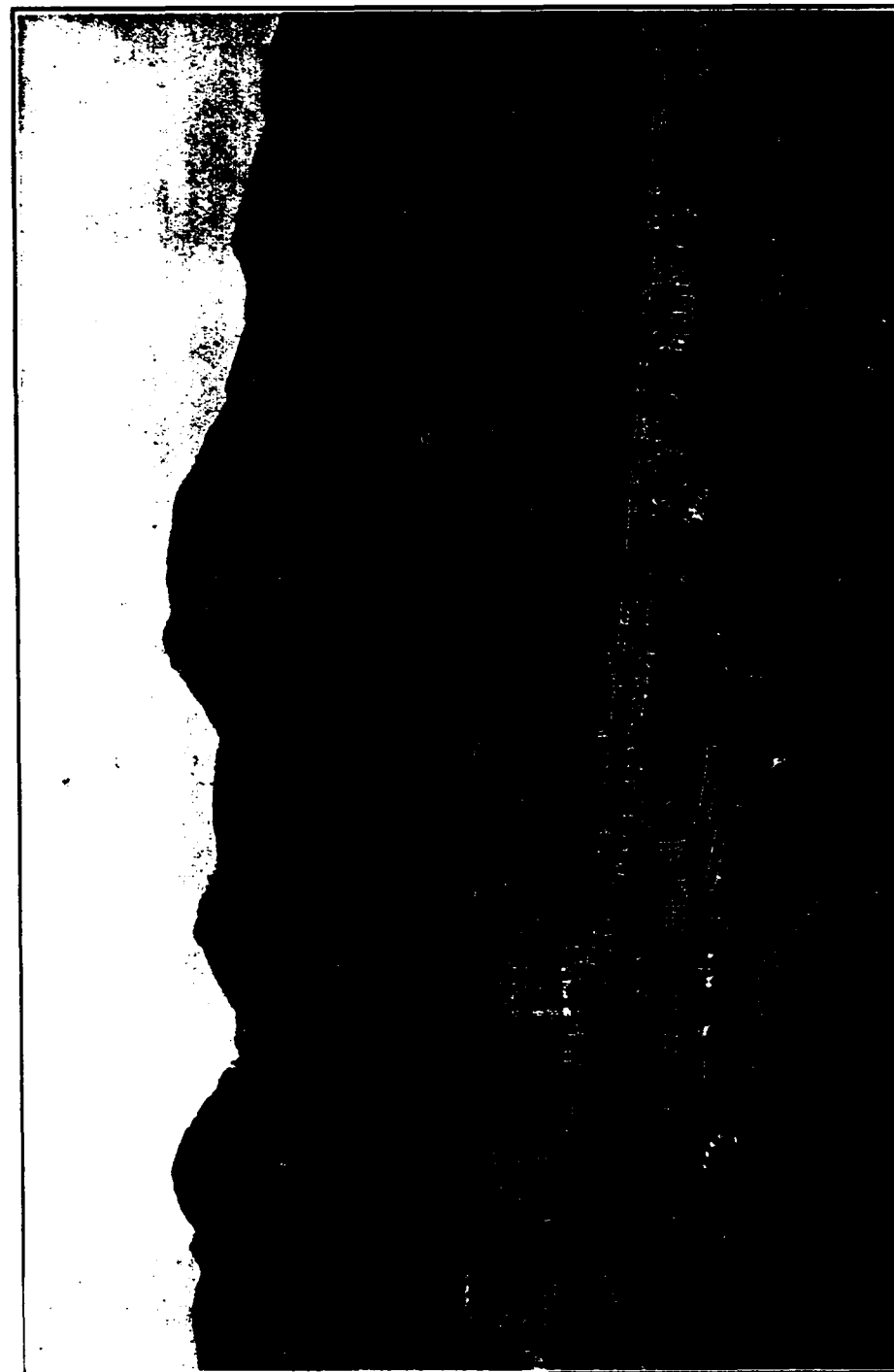
Troop 1 came out ahead of Troop 2 in both pistol and rifle firing for record, the former having 206.43 and 81.81 percent in these events as opposed to 196.07 and 77.70 percent of the latter.

Just prior to the closing of the camp, a board of prominent citizens of the State, appointed by the State Civilian Aide to the Secretary of War, visited the camp with a view to inspecting the various activities and inspiring and encouraging the students in their efforts for self improvement. Following is the concluding paragraph of their report:

"The Committee commends the high standards set by Col. Rhea, and his wisdom in the selection of sympathetic officers upon whom the details of the training devolved."

For the first time in years the regiment has recruits and they are being quickly moulded into shape by Lieutenant Pitts. The 198 remounts received last season have been trained and conditioned for the coming Autumn maneuvers.

With only the National Guard remaining of the civilian components of the army to be trained, work is being pushed for the maneuvers, and the officers are being examined three times a week on various Training Regulations—all to insure their familiarity with the various phases of field service.



Tenth Cavalry Horse Show on Organization Day, Fort Huachuca, Arizona

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, Calif.

Colonel L. B. Kromer, Commanding

Major W. W. Gordon
Major Sloan Doak
Major W. W. Erwin
Captain F. R. Lafferty
Captain J. L. Rice
Captain W. J. Redner
Captain D. C. Hawley
Captain N. E. Waldron
Captain R. C. Gibbs
Captain J. M. Adamson
Captain A. B. MacNabb
Captain L. Patterson
Captain R. E. Craig
1st Lieut. R. C. Winchester
1st Lieut. J. I. Lambert

1st Lieut. M. A. Devine, Jr.
1st Lieut. C. L. Condon
1st Lieut. C. Tye
1st Lieut. G. F. Stutzman
1st Lieut. C. K. Aiken
1st Lieut. S. M. Lipman
1st Lieut. M. A. Fennell
1st Lieut. G. W. Read
2d Lieut. W. P. Withers
2d Lieut. H. O. Sand
2d Lieut. M. H. Marcus
2d Lieut. D. H. Galloway
2d Lieut. J. H. Riepe
2d Lieut. C. G. Meehan
2d Lieut. C. L. Ruffner

Major Gordon arrived at the Presidio of Monterey, on June 30th, and assumed command of the post and Eleventh Cavalry.

During the month of June all the troops of the regiment completed their musketry problems with creditable results. This closes the range work for the year except for recruits who have joined since June 1st.

The regiment, less Troops B and G, participated in the Defense Test Day parade held in Monterey on July 4th. The Monterey Peninsula established a record by the participation of ten percent of the total population in the celebration. Twelve hundred persons marched in the Defense Test Day Parade.

On July 25th Troop B returned to this station from Camp Lewis, Washington, where they had been on temporary duty for two months with the Summer Training Camp.

While at Camp Lewis, Troop B was highly commended by Major General William H. Johnston for efficiency as an instruction unit with the C. M. T. C., and for their personal appearance, discipline and horsemanship. Troop B had the honor of winning the cup for the best associate organization, awarded to the unit having the highest standard in personal and general appearance and discipline.

Troop F left the post on July 18th to participate in the Summer Training Camp at Del Monte, California. On July 20th eight officers and fifty-six enlisted men from various troops of the regiment were detached at Camp Del Monte as instructors for the Cavalry units of the C. M. T. C. The results obtained were commendable and on Visitors Day when the Cavalry students were put to the test many thrills were furnished the spectators when they galloped by as cossack riders, Roman riders and as a three tier pyramid.

Colonel E. V. Smith, the commandant of the Camp, highly commended the officers and men of the regiment for their work at the camp. On August 20th the troops at Camp Del Monte returned to duty with the regiment.

Colonel Leon B. Kromer has been assigned to the regiment and will assume command on his arrival about October 1st.

TWELFTH CAVALRY (Less 2d Squadron)—Fort Brown, Texas

Colonel W. T. Johnston, Commanding

Lieut. Col. E. A. Buchanan
Captain H. F. Rathjen
Captain E. A. Franklin

1st Lieut. C. I. Hunn
2d Lieut. W. Burnside
2d Lieut. W. Blanchard

Captain B. Putnam
Captain E. F. Dukes
Captain C. S. Miller
Captain J. N. Merrill
1st Lieut. B. M. Creel
1st Lieut. M. L. Stockton

2d Lieut. C. Massey
2d Lieut. J. H. Claybrook, Jr.
2d Lieut. J. F. Willey
2d Lieut. R. T. Garver
2d Lieut. G. P. Berilla, Jr.

A very interesting horse show was conducted at Fort Brown on July 3rd, with Colonel C. L. Hawkins, Q. M. C., Lt. Col. C. R. Mayo, Cav., and Major A. H. Jones, Q. M. C., of Fort Sam Houston, acting in the capacity of judges. The following won places in the various events:

Officers' Chargers: Capt. E. A. Franklin, 1st; Lt. Col. E. A. Buchanan, 2nd; 1st Lt. B. M. Creel, 3rd. *Best Trained Troop Mounts:* Private 1st Class Moreyra, Troop B, 1st; Private 1st Class Darrough, Headquarters Detachment, 2nd; Private 1st Class Burge, Troop A, 3rd. *Horses Suitable to Become Polo Ponies:* 1st Lt. M. L. Stockton, 1st; Capt. B. Putnam, 2nd; 2d Lt. W. Burnside, 3rd. *Best Trained Non-Commissioned Officers' Mount:* Sgt. C. S. Ball, Troop C, 1st; Corp. H. Fair, Troop C, 2nd; Corp. U. Haines, Troop A, 3rd. *Officers' Jumping:* Capt. O. A. Palmer, 1st; Capt. E. A. Franklin, 2nd; Capt. H. F. Rathjen, 3rd. *Best Turned Out Troopers' Mount:* Private H. L. Ruhl, Service Troop, 1st; Private 1st Class Martin, Troop B, 2nd; Corp. W. Bretton, Troop C, 3rd. *Enlisted Men's Jumping:* Private 1st Class W. A. Lawton, Troop C, 1st; Private E. Smith, Headquarters Detachment, 2nd; Sgt. C. Wilburn, Troop A, 3rd. *Enlisted Men's Jumping by Pairs:* Private 1st Class A. H. Adams, and Private E. Smith, Headquarters Detachment, 1st; Sgt. S. Queen, and Corp. E. J. Trotter, Service Troop, 2nd; Private 1st Class W. A. Lawton, and Private L. Howard, Troop C, 3rd. *Enlisted Men's Novice Jumping:* Private A. H. Adams, Headquarters Detachment, 1st; Private T. J. McCormick, Headquarters Troop, 2nd; Corp. J. Holmes, Troop C, 3rd. *Best Trained Remount:* Private 1st Class K. J. Dailey, Troop C, 1st; Corp. J. Holmes, Troop C, 2nd; Sgt. C. C. Roberts, Troop A, 3rd. *Class XI—Ladies' Saddle Horse:* Mrs. M. L. Stockton, 1st; Mrs. E. A. Buchanan, 2nd; Mrs. E. F. Dukes, 3rd. *Officers' Bending Race:* Capt. F. M. Harshberger, 1st; Capt. E. A. Franklin, 2nd; Capt. B. Putnam, 3rd. *Best Light Wagon:* Private R. W. Rayser, Service Troop, 1st; Private C. F. Cowell, Troop B, 2nd; Private 1st Class W. A. Lawton, Troop C, 3rd. *Escort Wagon:* Private F. Zurcher, Service Troop, 1st; Private C. G. Stark, Service Troop, 2nd; Private R. McMillin, Service Troop, 3rd. *Officers' Pair Jumping:* Capt. E. A. Franklin, and 2d Lt. J. P. Willey, 1st; Capt. O. A. Palmer and 2d Lt. W. Burnside, 2nd; Capt. H. F. Rathjen and 1st Lt. B. M. Creel, 3rd.

Polo practice was resumed June 14th, following the completion of target practice, with fourteen officers in the squad. Scrimmages are conducted on Thursday afternoon and Sunday afternoon.

The boxing cards of July 4th and August 7 were well patronized by local civilians as well as by the members of the post. Five bouts were conducted on each night's program. Another boxing night is set for September 11th.

The Fort Brown command has been busily engaged in tactical and field training since July 1st. In addition to troop problems, and the work of officers' patrols on overnight reconnoitering missions, the training program since July 1st has included one regimental tactical problem each Friday in which the entire command has participated.

SECOND SQUADRON, TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Ringgold, Texas

Lieutenant Colonel C. O. Thomas, Jr., Commanding

Captain R. C. Blatt
Captain W. C. Burt

2d Lieut. F. L. Hamilton
2d Lieut. R. B. Evans

Captain W. Tussey
1st Lieut. J. S. Rodwell
1st Lieut. G. H. Wilson
1st Lieut. D. B. Buckland

2d Lieut. K. O'Shea
2d Lieut. A. D. Dugan
2d Lieut. P. R. Greenhalgh

The Post Baseball League finished its schedule July 15th, with Troop F winning handily as follows: Games won, 18; Games Lost, 2; Percentage, .900.

A message carrying relay race of 7½ miles between the three troops, each entering thirty men was won by Troop E. All men wore service shoes and carried a message. Time: 25 minutes.

A night ride for all non-commissioned officers over an unknown course of approximately ten miles was won by Sergeant Richard M. O'Brien, Troop G, in one hour and six minutes. Each contestant was required to visit four check stations shown on maps handed the contestants at starting time. All horses came in in good shape, showing proper handling and conditioning.

Nearly all officers of the Post are actively engaged in Tennis Practice in preparation for a tournament to be held at an early date. A silver cup will be presented to the winner.

Impromptu horse shows for enlisted men have been held two Saturdays in each month for the past quarter. These shows have included classes as follows: Open jumping, handy hunter, monkey drill teams, trick jumping and Roman riding, trooper's mounts, etc. A very noticeable interest in training mounts has resulted.

On August 23, the traditional peace and quiet of Fort Ringgold, was interrupted. Whistles blew, horns blared, Mexicans cheered and barbecue sizzled. Between two columns of galloping troopers the first train to enter Rio Grande City majestically puffed its way across the reservation. Old soldiers, old settlers, and the ancient government mules kicked up their heels in glee. The rumor, started when Captain J. H. LaMotte, 1st U. S. Infantry, first garrisoned this reservation in 1848, that Fort Ringgold was to be connected with the outside world has become a truth. Fort Ringgold has since then been intermittently garrisoned, and until the completion of this road has had its base of supply at least twenty-one miles away.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel H. R. Richmond, Commanding

Lieut. Col. S. D. Maize	1st Lt. W. N. Todd, Jr.
Major H. C. Dagley	1st Lt. G. R. Mauger
Major Mack Garr	1st Lt. T. B. Miller
Captain W. E. Shipp	1st Lt. L. N. Smith
Captain A. J. Kirst	2d Lt. J. L. Lake
Captain B. H. Coiner	2d Lt. K. G. Hoge
Captain G. M. Peabody, Jr.	2d Lt. R. Edwards
Captain E. C. Gere	2d Lt. C. P. Amazeen
Captain H. E. Kloeppfer	2d Lt. S. Ager
Captain L. A. Shafer	2d Lt. R. C. McCormick
Captain T. A. Rundell	2d Lt. W. K. Noel
Captain H. C. Minuth	2d Lt. H. D. Eckert
Captain V. M. Cannon	2d Lt. R. M. Shaw
1st Lt. P. C. Febiger	2d Lt. R. A. Browne

Colonel John J. Boniface has been relieved of command of the regiment and placed on duty with the Organized Reserves with station at Missoula, Montana.

Our new commanding officer, Colonel Henry R. Richmond, joined us on June 21st, coming from the Command and General Staff School at Fort Leavenworth, Kansas.

The regiment participated in the Defense Day program which began with a parade

through the streets of Cheyenne at 10:00 A. M. After the parade dinner was served at Frontier Park, Two hundred and five "recruits" signed up for the day.

On July 12th the entire regiment began a march to Pole Mountain where they arrived on March 18th. The regiment participated in maneuvers with the 115th Cavalry (Wyoming National Guard)) and returned to Fort D. A. Russell on July 17th.

On July 25th a review was held for Vice-President Charles G. Dawes.

Troop "C" and the Band cooperated with the Cheyenne Frontier Days Committee and presented their musical drill each day of the Frontier Days Show, July 20th to 24th, inclusive.

These same organizations presented their musical drill at the Pike's Peak Rodeo at Colorado Springs and are to go to Greeley, Colorado, where they will show in the Weld County Fair on September 8th, 9th and 10th.

1st Sergeant B. F. Longacre and Corporal Joseph Yersak won the regimental shoot at the Cavalry tryouts and both are members of the Cavalry Team.

Sergeant Longacre also won the Chief of Cavalry's cup for 1925.

Both cups are in the regimental commander's office at present and the regiment is proud of the success of Sergeant Longacre.

During the latter part of July the Famous Players-Lasky Corporation had a "Movie Company" on location at a ranch near Cheyenne. A number of the ladies of the regiment and practically all of the officers and men participated in the filming of "The Pony Express."

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa

Colonel J. R. Lindsey, Commanding

Lieut. Col. D. H. Biddle	1st Lt. H. L. Kinnison, Jr.
Major E. P. Pierson	1st Lt. H. Engerud
Captain H. C. Tobin	2d Lt. G. A. Rehm
Captain W. F. Saportas	2d Lt. A. N. Willis
Captain H. N. Christman	2d Lt. F. L. Ready
Captain H. J. Fitzgerald	2d Lt. I. D. White
Captain H. S. Beecher	2d Lt. N. F. McCurdy
Captain H. W. Benson	2d Lt. C. A. Thorp
Captain O. S. Peabody	2d Lt. G. W. Busbey

FIRST SQUADRON—Fort Sheridan, Illinois

Major W. W. West, Jr., Commanding

Captain D. H. Blakelock	1st Lt. L. G. Smith
Captain W. D. Van Ingen	2d Lt. P. B. Sancomb
Captain N. N. Rogers	2d Lt. T. F. Randolph
1st Lt. B. H. Graban	2d Lt. C. A. Burcham
1st Lt. R. H. Darrell	2d Lt. W. A. Bugher
1st Lt. F. Richardson	

On June 2, 1925, 1st Sergeant Thomas of Troop "G," retired after thirty years' of service. A smoker was held in his honor on the evening of his retirement. Impromptu plays, boxing bouts, songs and music constituted the evening's entertainment.

On the 6th of July, Troop "E," left this Post and hiked to Fort Snelling, Minn., where it is on duty with the summer camps.

Troop "G" participated in a Rodeo and Roundup at Cedar Rapids, Iowa, from July 7th to 11th.

A formal tactical inspection of the 1st Squadron was held at Camp Custer, Michigan, and the Squadron was found to be satisfactory in every way.

The Post Base Ball League Pennant was won by Troop "G", 14th Cavalry, when they defeated Headquarters Troop by a score of 9 to 2, "G" Troop having won 7 games

and lost 2 while Headquarters Troop won 6 and lost 3.

The final standings of the teams were as follows:

Team	Won	Lost
Troop "G"	7	2
Headquarters Troop	6	3
Troop "F"	8	3
Service Troop	5	5
Troop "E"	2	1
Q. M. Corps	1	Forfeited all later games

TWENTY-SIXTH CAVALRY—Camp Stotsenburg, P. I.

Colonel H. LaT. Cavanaugh, Commanding

Lieut. Col. I. S. Martin	1st Lieut. A. Fulton
Major J. A. Considine	1st Lieut. H. A. Sears
Major J. B. Thompson	1st Lieut. P. B. Shotwell
Captain R. E. Willoughby	1st Lieut. F. T. Murphy
Captain W. K. Harrison, Jr.	1st Lieut. R. H. Speck
Captain F. H. L. Ryder	1st Lieut. C. V. Barnum
Captain H. E. Featherstone	1st Lieut. S. C. Page
Captain B. C. Andrus	1st Lieut. R. Castor
Captain J. E. Selby	1st Lieut. C. H. Noble
Captain W. R. Irvin	1st Lieut. D. S. Holbrook
Captain W. R. Stickman	1st Lieut. C. H. Bryan
Captain R. H. Gallier	1st Lieut. W. L. McEnery
Captain P. S. Haydon	2d Lieut. C. C. Clendenen
Captain A. J. Wynne	2d Lieut. J. H. Walker
Captain L. L. Gocker	2d Lieut. W. W. Yale
Captain W. C. Steiger	2d Lieut. J. B. Reybold
Captain C. L. Stafford	

FIRST MACHINE GUN SQUADRON—Fort Clark, Texas

Major F. C. V. Crowley, Commanding

Captain H. C. Fellows	1st Lieut. T. F. Sheehan
Captain C. R. McLennan	2d Lieut. G. V. Morse
Captain R. E. Tallant	2d Lieut. H. E. Walker
Captain Sexton Berg	2d Lieut. D. E. Carleton
1st Lieut. R. F. PERRY	2d Lieut. E. G. Johnson

SECOND MACHINE GUN SQUADRON—Fort Bliss, Texas

Major A. M. Milton, Commanding

Captain J. C. Daly	1st Lieut. E. W. Fenn
Captain R. W. Carter	1st Lieut. C. O. Burch
Captain P. D. Fryer	2d Lieut. J. L. Ballantyne
Captain I. G. Walker	2d Lieut. E. C. Greiner
Captain A. H. Seabury	2d Lieut. Joseph Smith
1st Lieut. T. J. Heavey	

UNITED SERVICES AUTOMOBILE ASSOCIATION

THE annual meeting of the United Services Automobile Association was held at the office of the Association at Fort Sam Houston, Texas, pursuant to call on the 17th of June. 1133 members were present in person or by authorized proxy. The management reported a very prosperous year with great improvement in financial condition, for the twelve months ending June 1st, 1925.

The surplus to policy holders amounted to \$24,055.25 with total assets of \$105,519.99.

2511 claims were received during the year.

2505 were allowed and paid.

6 were disapproved by the Executive Committee.

The claim payments for the period totaled \$52,642.08.

A fire-proof vault has been added to the Association's building at Fort Sam Houston. Sixteen employees carry on the work there.

Dividends to members have been allowed since October, 1924. The meeting amended the By-Laws to provide for dividend payments to be made in cash, instead of credit on renewal premium as heretofore.

The membership was reported as slightly below 4000.

The members of the Association include Commissioned and Warrant Officers of the Army, Navy, Marine Corps, and Coast Guard Service, active and retired, and Field Clerks, and are scattered all over this country and its insular possessions.

ESTABLISHED 1818
Brooks Brothers
CLOTHING
Gentlemen's Furnishing Goods
 MADISON AVENUE COR. FORTY-FOURTH STREET
 NEW YORK

Officers' Uniforms

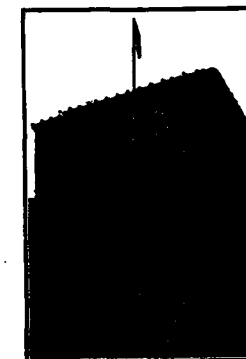
Agents in the United States
 for the

"Woodrow" Cap
 and

Messrs. Peal & Co.'s
 "Sam Browne" Belt

Send for Circular

BOSTON PALM BEACH NEWPORT
 LITTLE BUILDING PLAZA BUILDING AUDAM BUILDING
 TRINITY CH. Bldg. C. O. B. Bldg. 222 Bullfinch Bldg.



BROOKS BROTHERS'
 Building, convenient
 to Grand Central, Subway,
 and to many of the lead-
 ing Hotels and Clubs



MILITARY
FIELD
RIDING
BOOTS
SADDLES
WHIPS
CROPS
KIT BAGS
&
CASES

Representatives visit principal Cities and Army Stations.
Itinerary sent on request.

AUTOMOBILE INSURANCE

"For Officers, Warrant Officers, ACTIVE AND RETIRED, and Field Clerks, of the United States Services". Application blanks may be obtained from U. S. Cavalry Association, or

WRITE FOR PARTICULARS
(giving description of your car)

If application sent, enclose \$5.00 Membership Fee to apply on premium. Coverage at cost.

UNITED SERVICES AUTOMOBILE ASSOCIATION
(Formerly U. S. Army Auto Ins. Ass'n)
FORT SAM HOUSTON, TEXAS

Frank J. Krupp

Successor to

Henry Schick & Co.

**Army and Navy
Uniforms**

1421 F STREET NORTHWEST

Washington, D. C.

CIVILIAN DRESS A SPECIALTY

The United States Cavalry Association would like to receive ALL the magazine and book business of its members. It can handle this as well and at as good rate as any agency. The small profits find their way into the Cavalry Journal and other activities of the Cavalry Association.

The Cavalry Journal

PUBLISHED BY THE UNITED STATES
CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

Index to Volume XXXV, Numbers 142-145
January, - April - July - October, 1926

Index of Authors

	No.	Page
D'Adamovitch, Boris Some Russian Cavalry Charges During the Great War.....	144	408
Ashton, John A Visit to Saumur.....	143	183
Beeman, H. N., Captain, Veterinary Corps The Cavalry School Team in Colorado Endurance Ride.....	142	60
Bradford, K. S., Major, Cavalry The Junior Polo Championship.....	145	559
Brown, Lewis, Jr., Lieutenant Colonel, Cavalry Army Polo, 1925.....	143	226
Butler, F. B., First Lieutenant, C. of E. The China Pony.....	144	382
Clifford, Charles L., Major, Cavalry Mounting a Guard Troop.....	143	205
Colbern, Wm. H., Captain, Field Artillery The Pursuit After Jena.....	144	370
Colby, Elbridge, Captain, Infantry Military Personnel in State Courts.....	145	553
Considine, John A., Major, Cavalry Big Game Hunting in Indo-China.....	143	40
Considine, John A., Major, Cavalry A Philippine Hunt.....	144	418
Day, Jean H. A., Lieutenant Colonel The First Charge (translation).....	142	75
Dickman, J. T., Major General, U. S. A., Retired Has the Buffalo a Sense of Humor?.....	143	216
Duckwall, Bertram F., Major, Medical Corps A Psychological Analysis of Eccentricity in its Effect on Leadership and Morale	145	523

Index of Subjects

Hill, Charles A., Major, Cavalry Reserve Promotion of Reserve Officers.....	143	199
Hicks, Norman E., Captain, Cavalry The Black Hills Endurance Ride, 1926.....	144	406
Goleston, H. N., General Modern Cavalry and Its Organization.....	142	29
Graham, W. A., Lieutenant Colonel, J. A. G. An Historic Jag.....	143	210
Graham, W. A., Lieutenant Colonel, J. A. G. The Story of the Little Big Horn.....	144	295
Green, Fred M., Major, Coast Artillery Corps Ye Ballade of Ye Anciente Cosmoline.....	143	217
Hamilton, John C., Lieutenant, Cavalry Surprise and Destruction of a Platoon of German Dragoons by Mounted Combat (translation).....	143	221
Harbord, James G., Major General, Retired The Part of the Horse and the Mule in the National Defense.....	143	159
Hawkins, H. S., Colonel, Cavalry, G. S. C. The Importance of Modern Cavalry and Its Role as Affected by Develop- ments in Airplane and Tank Warfare.....	145	487
Hunter, A. T., Colonel, V. D. R. of O. If Only We Had Read the Prophet Clausewitz (reprint).....	144	397
Jacobs, Fenton S., Captain, Cavalry Gaits of Horses.....	145	538
Joyce, Kenyon A., Lieutenant Colonel, Cavalry The British Army Maneuvers, 1925.....	142	17
Kling, E. L., Brigadier General, U. S. A. Command.....	142	7
Margetts, N. E., Lieutenant Colonel, F. A., G. S. C. Cavalry in Morocco.....	145	531
McClernand, Edward J., Brigadier General With the Indian and the Buffalo in Montana.....	145	500
McMurray, George J., Chaplain, 7th Cavalry The Seventh Cavalry at the Fiftieth Anniversary of the Battle of the Little Big Horn.....	145	543
Pride, W. F., Lieutenant, Cavalry The Principle of the Offensive.....	142	54
Pride, W. F., Lieutenant, Cavalry The Principle of the Objective.....	143	192
Scott, C. L., Major, Remount Service, Q. M. C. Object and Value of Preston System of Branding Animals.....	144	426
Sullivan, M. F., First Lieutenant, Cavalry, D. O. L. Mounted Messenger Relays.....	145	568
Waldstätten, Egon Bar., Colonel The Battle of Lawrow, October 26-27, 1914.....	143	166
Webb, J. Watson Polo Horsemanship.....	143	203
Williamson, Royden, Captain, Cavalry Cavalry in the Syrian Campaign (translation).....	145	512

	No.	Page
American Military Literature		
Editorial Comment.....	143	230
An Annual Feature		
Editorial Comment.....	143	232
Another \$1,000 Competition		
Editorial Comment.....	142	100
Army-Navy Club of Philadelphia		
Topics of the Day.....	145	582
Associate Membership		
Editorial Comment.....	142	100
Big Game Hunting in Indo-China		
Major John A. Considine, Cavalry.....	142	40
Branding Animals, Object and Value of Preston System of		
Major C. L. Scott, Remount Service Q. M. C.....	144	426
British Army Maneuvers, 1925, The		
Lieutenant Colonel Kenyon A. Joyce, Cavalry.....	142	17
"Bug" Ideas		
Topics of the Day.....	143	237
Cavalry Fund, The		
Editorial Comment.....	142	232
Cavalry in Morocco		
Lieutenant Colonel N. E. Margetts, F. A., G. S. C.....	145	531
Cavalry in the Syrian Campaign (translation)		
Captain Royden Williamson, Cavalry.....	145	512
Cavalry Medal Winners in National Matches		
Topics of the Day.....	142	112
Cavalry School Horse Show Team		
Topics of the Day.....	142	103
Cavalry School Notes.....	143	260
Cavalry School Team in Colorado Endurance Ride		
Captain H. N. Beeman, Veterinary Corps.....	142	60
Changes in Army Polo Handicaps		
Topics of the Day.....	143	237
Change of Address		
Editorial Comment.....	142	99
Charge, The First (translation)		
Lieutenant Colonel Jean H. A. Day, Cavalry Reserve.....	142	75
Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show, The		
Topics of the Day.....	142	112
Chief of Cavalry, Extracts from Report of.....	142	94
Chief of Cavalry's Rifle Team		
Topics of the Day.....	143	235
China Pony, The		
First Lieutenant F. B. Butler, C. of E.....	144	382
Combat Principles, Cavalry		
Topics of the Day.....	145	581
Colorado Endurance Ride		
Topics of the Day.....	142	107

	No.	Page
Command		
Brigadier General E. L. King	142	7
Command and General Staff School (reprint)	144	412
Communications Literature		
Editorial Comment	142	101
Craig, Major General Malin		
Editorial Comment	143	230
Discipline and Loyalty		
Editorial Comment	142	98
Dismounted Combat		
J. H. S.	143	165
Early Days of the Association		
Topics of the Day	142	109
Editorial Comment		
Colonel Ezra B. Fuller	142	97
Discipline and Loyalty	142	98
Change of Address	142	99
Associate Membership	142	100
Another \$1,000 Competition	142	100
Communications Literature	142	101
Old Issues of Cavalry Journal	142	101
Regimental Rosters	142	102
Training Regulations	142	102
Major General Malin Craig	143	230
Our Third Chief	143	230
American Military Literature	143	230
Inspection	143	231
An Annual Feature	143	232
The Cavalry Fund	143	233
Military Reading	144	437
The Little Big Horn	144	438
Proportion	144	439
The Journal	144	439
Army Polo	145	577
Endurance Rides	145	577
Training Competitions	145	578
Endurance Ride, The Cavalry School Team in the Colorado	142	60
Endurance Ride, The 1925	142	42
Endurance Ride, The 1926		
Topics of the Day	143	234
Endurance Ride, Anent the		
Topics of the Day	143	236
Endurance Ride, The Black Hills, 1926		
Captain Norman E. Fiske, Cavalry	144	406
Endurance Ride		
Editorial Comment	145	577
Field Maps on Cloth		
Topics of the Day	142	107
Foreign Military Journals	142	133
	143	251
	144	460
	145	595

	No.	Page
Foreign Military Notes	142	114
	144	447
	145	583
Fuller, Colonel Ezra B.		
Editorial Comment	142	97
Gaits of Horses		
Captain Fenton S. Jacobs, Cavalry	145	528
Goodrich Trophy, The		
Topics of the Day	142	235
Guard Troop, Mounting a		
Major Charles L. Clifford, Cavalry	142	205
Has the Buffalo a Sense of Humor?		
Major General J. T. Dickman, U. S. A., Retired	142	216
Historic Jag, An		
Lieutenant Colonel W. A. Graham, J. A. G.	142	210
Horse and Mule in the National Defense, The Part of		
Major General James G. Harbord, U. S. A., Retired	142	159
Horses for Philippine Service		
Topics of the Day	145	580
If Only We had Read the Prophet Clausewitz (reprint)		
Colonel A. T. Hunter, V. D., R. of O.	144	397
Inspection		
Editorial Comment	142	231
Jena, The Pursuit After		
Captain Wm. H. Colbern, Field Artillery	144	370
Journal, The		
Editorial Comment	144	439
Lawrow, The Battle of, October 26-27, 1914		
Colonel Egon Bar. Waldstatten	142	166
Little Big Horn, The		
Editorial Comment	144	438
Little Big Horn, Side Lights on the Battle of the	144	438
Little Big Horn, The Seventh Cavalry at the Fiftieth Anniversary of the Battle of the		
Chaplain George J. McMurray, 7th Cavalry	145	543
Little Big Horn, The Story of the		
Lieutenant Colonel W. A. Graham, J. A. G.	144	205
Magazine Subscriptions		
Topics of the Day	144	445
Maneuvers, 1925, The British Army		
Lieutenant Colonel Kenyon A. Joyce, Cavalry	142	17
Military Personnel in State Courts		
Captain Elbridge Colby, Infantry	145	553
Military Reading		
Editorial Comment	144	437
Minutes of Annual Meeting	142	279
Modern Cavalry and Its Organization		
General N. N. Golovine	142	29
Modern Cavalry, The Importance of and Its Role as Affected by Developments in Airplane and Tank Warfare		
Colonel H. S. Hawkins, Cavalry, G. S. C.	145	487

	No.	Page
Morocco, Cavalry in		
Lieutenant Colonel N. E. Margetts, F. A., G. S. C.....	145	531
Mounted Combat, Surprise and Destruction of a Platoon of German Dragoons by (translation)		
Lieutenant John C. Hamilton, Cavalry.....	143	321
Mounted Messenger Relays		
First Lieutenant M. F. Sullivan, Cavalry, D. O. L.....	145	568
Mounting a Guard Troop		
Major Charles L. Clifford, Cavalry.....	143	205
National Guard, The.....	143	116
	143	240
	144	449
	145	585
National Rifle Team Match, The		
Topics of the Day.....	142	106
New Books Reviewed.....	142	139
	143	249
	144	457
	145	592
Object and Value of Preston System of Branding Animals		
Major C. L. Scott, Remount Service, Q. M. C.....	144	426
Old Issues of Cavalry Journal		
Editorial Comment.....	142	101
Olympiade, Apropos of the Next		
Topics of the Day.....	144	441
Olympic Games, 1928		
Topics of the Day.....	143	236
Organization, Modern Cavalry and Its		
General N. N. Golovine.....	142	29
Organized Reserves.....	142	120
	143	243
	144	451
	145	587
Our Third Chief		
Editorial Comment.....	143	230
Pensions for Widows and Children		
Topics of the Day.....	142	110
Philippine Hunt, A		
Major John A. Considine, Cavalry.....	144	418
Polo, Army		
Editorial Comment.....	145	577
Polo, Army, 1925		
Lieutenant Colonel Lewis Brown, Jr.....	143	226
Pole Championship, The Junior		
Major K. S. Bradford, Cavalry.....	145	559
Polo Horsemanship		
J. Watson Webb.....	143	203
Principle of the Objective, The		
Lieutenant W. F. Pride, Cavalry.....	143	192
Principle of the Offensive, The		
Lieutenant W. F. Pride, Cavalry.....	142	54
Promotion of Reserve Officers		
Major Charles A. Ellis, Cavalry Reserve.....	143	199

	No.	Page
Proportion		
Editorial Comment.....	144	438
Psychological Analysis of Eccentricity in Its Effects on Leadership and Morale, A		
Major Bertram F. Duckwall, Medical Corps.....	145	523
Pursuit After Jena, The		
Captain Wm. H. Colbern, Field Artillery.....	144	370
Radio Communications, Cavalry		
Topics of the Day.....	145	579
Regimental Notes.....	142	128
	144	464
Regimental Notes and Rosters.....	143	261
	145	600
Regimental Rosters		
Editorial Comment.....	142	101
Report of Chief of Cavalry, Extracts from.....	142	94
Reserve Officers, Promotion of		
Major Charles A. Ellis, Cavalry Reserve.....	143	199
Saumur, A Visit to		
John Ashton.....	143	183
Selected List of Books, A		
Topics of the Day.....	144	440
Semi-Centennial of the Battle of the Little Big Horn		
Topics of the Day.....	143	234
Seventh Cavalry at the Fiftieth Anniversary of the Battle of the Little Big Horn, The		
Chaplain George J. McMurray, 7th Cavalry.....	145	543
Side Lights on the Battle of the Little Big Horn.....	144	428
Some Russian Cavalry Charges During the Great War		
Boris d'Adamovitch.....	144	403
Spartan Commander, A		
Topics of the Day.....	144	444
State Courts, Military Personnel in		
Captain Elbridge Colby, Infantry.....	145	553
Story of the Little Big Horn		
Lieutenant Colonel W. A. Graham, J. A. G.....	144	395
Summary of Unintelligence, A.....	145	573
Surprise and Destruction of a Platoon of German Dragoons by Mounted Com- bat (translation)		
Lieutenant John C. Hamilton, Cavalry.....	143	231
Syrian Campaign, Cavalry in the (translation)		
Captain Royden Williamson, Cavalry.....	145	512
Topics of the Day		
Cavalry School Horse Show Team.....	142	103
The National Rifle Team Match.....	142	106
Field Maps on Cloth.....	142	107
Colorado Endurance Ride.....	142	107
Early Days of the Association.....	142	109
Pensions for Widows and Children.....	142	110
Cavalry Medal Winners in National Matches.....	142	112
The Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show.....	142	112
Semi-Centennial of the Battle of the Little Big Horn.....	142	234
The 1926 Endurance Ride.....	142	234

	No.	Page
Chief of Cavalry's Rifle Team	143	235
The Goodrich Trophy	143	235
Olympic Games, 1928	143	236
Ament the Endurance Ride	143	236
"Bug" Ideas	143	237
Changes in Army Polo Handicaps	143	237
United Services Increases Dividends	143	238
A Selected List of Books	144	440
Apropos of the Next Olympiad	144	441
A Spartan Commander	144	444
Magazine Subscriptions	144	445
Cavalry Radio Communications	145	579
Horses for Philippine Service	145	580
Cavalry Combat Principles	145	581
Army-Navy Club of Philadelphia	145	582
Training Competitions		
Editorial Comment	145	578
Training Regulations		
Editorial Comment	142	102
Travels in Pennsylvania and Maryland		
C. S. C.	143	229
United Services Increases Dividends		
Topics of the Day	143	238
With the Indian and the Buffalo in Montana		
Brigadier General Edward J. McClernand	145	500
Ye Ballade of Ye Ancients Cosmoline		
Major Fred M. Green, Coast Artillery Corps	143	217